THE HISTORY OF THE

most Noble and valyant knight, Arthur of little Britaine, translated out of French into English by the noble Iohn Bourghcher Knight, Lord Barners.



Imprinted at London by Thomas East.

BRITISH MUSEUM

FOrasmuch as it is delectable to all humane nature to read and to heare these auncient & noble historyes of the valiaunt feates & martiall prowesse of the victorious Knightes of times past, whose triumphant dædes if writing were not, should be had cleane out of remembraunce. And also because that idlenesse is reputed to be the mother of all vices, whereof somewhat in eschuing thereof, and in the waie of erudition and learning, I Iohn Bourghchere Knight, Lord Berners, haue enterprised to translate out of French into our naturall tongue a noble historie, making mention of the famous dædes of the right valiaunt Knight Arthur, sonne and heire to the noble Duke of Britaine and of the faire Ladie Florence, daughter and heire to the mightie King Emendus, King of the noble Realme of Norroloys, and of the greate trouble that they endured ere they attained to the performance of their vertuous and amorous desires, for first they ouercame many hard and strange aduentures, the which to our humane reason should seeme to be incredible, wherefore after that I had begun this sayd processe, I had determined to haue left and giuen vp my labour, for I thought it should haue bene reputed but a follie in me to translate by being such a fayned matter, wherein seemeth to be so many vnpossibilities, howbeit then I called againe to my remembraunce that I had read and seene many a sundrie volume of diuerse noble historyes, wherein were contained the redoubted dædes of the auncient inuincible conquerours, and of other very valiaunt Knightes, who atchiued many a straunge and wonderfull aduenture, the which by plaine letter to our vnderstanding should seeme in a manner to be supernaturall, wherefore I thought that this present treatise might as wel be reputed for truth as some of those. And also I doubted not but that the first author of this booke deuised it not without some manner of truth or vertuous intent, the which considerations and other gaue me againe audacitie

to continue forth my first purpose til I had finished this said booke, not presuming that I haue reduced it into the fresh English praise, for I knowe my selfe insufficient in the facundious art of Rethorike, nor also I am but a learner of the language of the French, howbeit I trust my simple reason hath lead mee to the vnderstanding of the true sence of the matter, according to ꝑ which I haue followed as nere as I could, desiring all the readers and hearers thereof to take this my rude translation in good part, and if any fault be to laie it to my vnconning and darke ignorance, & to diminish, adde, or augment, as they shall finde cause requisite, & in so doing I shal pray to God that after this vaine and transitorie life, he may bring them vnto the perdurable ioye of heauen. Amen.

Thus endeth the Prologue.

Heere after foloweth the Table of this preſent Booke.

OF the birth of the noble knight Arthur, ſonne & heire to the Duke of Britaine. Chapter.i. Folio.i.

How the Duke of Britaine deliuered his ſonne Arthur to ỹ gouernance of a prudent knigȝt named ſir Gouernar, who did inſtruct him in al gȝod manners & dȝds of armes, ſo that afterward ther was none like vnto him. Chapter.ii. folio.i.

How Arthur found in the Forreſt a noble Ladie without ſuccour, and with her a faire young maiden her daughter, named Jehannet, before a little lodge, the which they hadȝs made of the brauches of the trȝs: and how Arthur was amorous of the ſaid Jehannet. Chap.iii. fol.ii.

How Arthur cauſed to be deliuered to Jehannet and her mother the reuennes that belonged to the ſtang or pond of the Forreſt, wherby there ſtod a faire gȝdlie place of pleaſure, & afterwards Arthur did often times reſort thether to paſſe the time with them. chap.iiii fol.iiii

How within eight daies after Arthur and Gouernar went to the ſtang to ſȇ the Ladie Jehannet her daughter. chap,b foli.iiii

How the Duke and Dutcheſſe toke counſaile to marrie their ſonne Arthur, and how they ſent their ſteward to the Ladie Luke of Diſtridge, for to demaund her daughter for Arthur, chap,bi folio,b

How the Seneſchall demaunded the daughter of Diſtridge for Arthur of Britaine, the which requeſt with great ioye was graunted him, chap.bii folio,bi

How Arthur was ſore diſpleaſed for that his father wold marry him to the daughter of Diſtridge, becauſe it was ſaid ſhe was of ill gouernance, chap,biii fol,bii

Howe that Arthur went to ſȇ Jehannet, and declared to her

hir how the duke his father should marry him whereof he was sore displeased for the love of hir, ca.ix. fo.viii

How that Arthur and Hector his cosin germaine were made knights for the love of Arthur, who than did ensure Perron daughter to the ladye Luke of Dstrige, and of the great tournay that was ther done at Nauntes for the love of Arthur, ca.x. fo.eodem

How that Arthur wedded faire Perron daughter to the lady Luke of Dstrige. And of the protestacion that he made before all the barony, ca.xi. fol.xi

How this lady Luke of Dstrige sent for Jehannet and caused hir secretly the first night to lie with Arthur because that Perron was no mayde, to tentent that Arthur should not perceive it, ca.xii, fol.xii

How that Jehannet who was a bed with Arthur in the stede of his wyfe Perron, and or she would suffre him to touch hir she demaunded hir endowrie, ca.xiii. fol.xiii

How that Arthur, hector and Gouernar went early in the morning to see Jehannet at the stange, who shewed vnto Arthur all the treason of his wyfe, and how that she had layne with him all that night in stede of Perron, whereof he merualled greatly, ca.xiiii, fol.xiiii

How that Gouernar vanquished in bataile sir Ansel, & caused him to make knowledge of this treason, and confessed how that he brought Jehannet from the stange for to ly all night with Arthur, ca.xv. fol.xvii

How Arthur demaunded licence of his father and mother to go play him out of his owne countrey for he would go seeke aduentures to shewe thereby his force and prowesse, cap.xvi, fol.xviii

How the mightie King of Norroloys called Emendus held open court in his realme, where as was foure puissant kinges, who were all his subiects, and there ye shal here of thinges right merualious, cap.xvii, fol.xiiii

The discripcion of the facion & situacion of the mount perilleus, the which was conquered by the prowesse of Arthur, cap.xviii fol.xvii

How

How it was determined that the Quéene Fenice should take hir chamber in the palays beside the castel of the port noyre, ca.xix folio, xxiii

How that the daughter of the mightie king Emendus and of Fenice his quéene was bestenied ouer the fountaine in the herber of the mount perillous by foure Quénes of the fayry, the chiefe of them was named Proserpine, who was the most faireft creture of al the world, ca.xx fo.x iiii

How the king of valefound sent his sonne to the citie of Babba for to be brought vp in the company of Florence, capitulo, xxi folio xxb

How the Quéene Fenice mother to Florence dyed, and how she made hir testament, giuing to hir daughter a ring in putting hir therby in possession of the realme of blaunch toure, ca.xxii fol, eodem

How the Quéene Fenice mother to Florence was nobly buried, ca.xxiii fol, xxbi

How the Emperour of Inde the more demaunded of kinge Emendus the faire Florence his daughter in marriage. And of the anf were that king Emendus made to him And also of the terme that was taken to marry Florence, and how that maister Steuen knew by the regarding of the planets, that ther was comming out of the west a knight, who should achiue the aduentures of the port Noyre. And how hee should haue and enioye the white hælde and the sword and obtaine Florence in mariage, whereof she was greatly comforted, for in no wyse she loued the Emperour. capitulo.xxiiii fol, xxbii

How that Arthur slew twelue knights, who had taken awaye a young damosell from hir father and mother, and had tyed hir to a Tree, there to haue defiled hir virginitie, who was saued by Arthur, ca.xxb fol.xxx

How that Arthur, Hector and Gouernar slewe thirtie theues in a great forrest the which was a great welth to all the countrie, for they had pylled and wasted the countrie all about, ca.xxbi fol.xxxii

How that sir de la launde shewed to Arthur the accaf-

on why that this tourney was first taken by the lord Beauuien.ca.xxbii fo.xxxb

How that Arthur hadde the honour in the tourney that was made at Wien betwene the Marshal of Pirpoys and the Earle of Beauieu, where as was diuerse great kings, Erles, barons, and many other good knights right valiant, whereby Arthur gate him great thank and praise and was greatly honoured of all Ladies and damosels there assembled ca. eight and twentie, fol. thirtie nine

How that Arthur the second daye had the honour of the tourney, and so with him abode the prize of the fælde. capitulo nine and twentie, folio fortie foure,

How that the marshal of mypoys for enuy that he had because that Arthur had the honour of the tourney, and because he had beaten him downe, for he had thought him self to haue bene the best knight of the worlde, therefore he defied Arthur and challenged him to Iust. And how that Arthur vanquished him and dyd breake one of his armes and two ribbes in his sides, capitulo thirtie. fol. fortie eight.

How that Arthur was crowned to be Kinge of all the knightes of the tourney, and they promised him faith and trouth to serue him in dædes of armes alwaies and in euery place where as it semed him best, and the young king of malogres did crown him, capitulo thirtie one, folio fiftie

How that Arthur after his crownacion toke leue of the young king and of all the other lordes and knightes, ladies and damosels, who conuaied him on his iourney-ward. and hadde greate sorrow to leaue his companie, chapter. xxxii fol. li

How Arthur and his company arriued in the Erledome of Brewle marching against the land of Sorolois and entred into the citie of Brewle, the which was belleged by the Duke of Orgoule named Palaquis, because the Earle would not let him haue his daughter in mariage, whereof by false treason he slew the Earle, ca. xxxiii fol. li

How that Arthur went alone to the Duke of Orgoule and

and gaue him his answere and bad him abide no longer for the faire Alice, and shewed him how that he hadde given her to Hector his cosin, and how that hee hadde promised to her his head because he slewe her Father by treason, with the which answere the Duke was sore displeased, insomuch that there was betwéene them a greate battaile, chap xxxiiii folio.lb

How Hector and Gouernar, and Sir Othes rode out of the Citie well accompanyed, to rescue Arthur, who all alone assailed the Duke of Orgoule and all his armie. chap.xxxv folio,lbi

Howe Arthur, Hector, Gouernar, and Sir Othes, discomfited Peter the Cosune, Brother to the Duke, who was come to him with foure hundred Knightes, and there this Cosnu was slaine, and all his people slaine and taken prisoners, and how Arthur toke the dukes horse named Aillie, the best horse as then in the world, chap.xxxvi folio,lix

How that Arthur and his companie vtterlie discomforted the Duke and strake off his head, and did send it by Gouernar to the faire Ladie Alice and to her mother as hee hadde promised before, cap,xxxvii folio,lxi

Howe Arthur and his companie went to the Citie of Orgoule for to take it by force, but the Burgeses thereof brought vnto him the keyes, and dyd vnto him homage, and so did all the nobles of that Countrie, as vnto their chiefe soueraigne Lorde. Chapter xxxviii folio,lxiii

How that Arthur made his cosin Hector Duke of Orgoule, with the assent of all the Lordes of that Countrie. chap.xxxix folio,lxb

Howe that Arthur and Gouernar departed asunder, and of the terrible aduentures that each of them founde ere they met together againe. Chapter.lx. folio.lxvi

How Gouernar after that he was departed from Arthur

found in a great forrest two knightes armed who had beaten and wounded another knight, and wold haue rauished his sister, and how he rescued her, and did vanquish all her enimies, chap, xli folio, lxbii

How Gouernar came to a strong Castle called the Brosse, and vanquished the knight that kept it: and how that afterward he was kept in that castle against his wil in great daunger of death, till at the last Arthur deliuered him, as you shall heare hereafter. chap, xlii. folio. lxbiii

How Arthur conquered the Castle of the Port Noire by his prowesse, and slew all them that kept it, and how after that he entered into the halls of the pallace, where he was assailed of two great and horrible Lions, and of a great giant, and how he ouercame them all with great paine, and atchiued all the meruailous aduentures of the Castle, the which are right wonderfull to rehearse, cap, xliii. fol, lxix

How Arthur after that he had atchiued the aduentures of the pallace, and deliuered the prisoners, and after how ꝑ he atchiued the aduentures that was in the gallerie going into the garden of the mount perillous, and by his might with a great barre beate downe two masline Images of copper, each of thē holding a flaile that was of such weight that ten men might scarce lift one of them from the earth, wherewith they were euer beating with greate strokes, made by inchantment, to the intent that none should passe into the gardens of the mount perillous, and so then failed and ended all the inchauntments of that place, chap, xliiii. folio. lxxb

How maister Steuen went with Arthur into the Pallace within the castle, to the intent to see the wonderfull aduentures that Arthur had there atchiued, chapter, xlv. folio. lxxbii

Howe Proserpina Quéene of the Fairies about midnight appeared to Arthur with greate light of Torches, & how that she shewed him that within ꝑ mount perillous there was the white shield & the good sworde inchanted called Clarence, and how that he should haue them with much honour

honour if his heart durst serue him. And how the next daye maister Steuen ledde Arthur into the herber where as the white shelde was, the which could neuer be remoued from the tree whereon it hanged, and how that Arthur toke it at his ease, and clarence the sworde also, the which could neuer before that tyme be drawen out of the shethe, nor it would help no body but all onely Arthur who drew it out lightly, and after that it dyd him much helpe as you shall heare after, ca. xlvi fol. l. xix

How maister Steuen shewed Arthur how that Gouernar his knight was in the castel of brosse, and how that the custome of the castel was first begun, ca. xlvii fol. lxx. i

How that Arthur when he was departed from the port Noyre for to go to deliuer Gouernar out of the castel of the brosse, and also for to fight with the monster, he found in a faire medow the neuew of the duke of bygor accompanied with thirtene other knights, who assailed him right fiercly, but he defended him selfe so valiantly that he slew three of them and wounded so the dukes neuew that he was faine to be caried away in an horse litter, ca. xlviii. fol. lxx. iii

How that Arthur fought with the monster, the moste fouleste and horrible figure that euer was seene with mans eyen and so vanquished him by his valiant prowesse, and strake of his heade, and did sende it to the faire Florence cap xlix fol. lxx. vi

How that the king Emendus sent a knight named Brisebar accompanied with a thousand men of warre to thentent that he and his company should go fight with the monster, and how the saide knight arriued at the monsters pytte the same season while that Arthur and the monster were fighting together, & ther he and al his company dyd see how that Arthur slew the monster without help, ca. l. fo. lxxi viii

How sir Isembartes cosin ambushed him in a great forrest with a great multitude of men of war, to thentent to slay Arthur by treason, and there Arthur did with his handes such dedes, that in a maner it was incredible. And how that Gouernar and Brysebar were taken prisoners

and led forth to a toure, and there Arthur slewe of his enemies fiue hundred, and mounted into the toure, and so rescowed the prisoners in the spite of all the towne, and there wan the palays. ca. li fo. x. cl

How Arthur and his company were besieged in the palays by the duke of Bigor, but thanked be God they escaped by the subtil art of maister Steuen clearke to the faire Florence of Sorolops, ca. lii. fol. xcv

How maister Steuen by the vertue of his arte of nigromancie deliuered Arthur and his company from perill and daunger of the duke of Bigor and his neuew. capitulo liii. fol. x. cviii

How the neuew of Bryfebar arryued at the court of the mighty king Emendus with the head of the monster, and dyd salute the king & also the Emperour of Inde who was ful in the court attending that the king should giue him in mariage his daughter the faire Florence, & to hir the head of the monster was presented from Arthur, and shewed hir how that all onely by his noble prowesse he had slaine the terrible monster of the bryolle. ca. liiii. folio. c. ii

How that Arthur and maister Steuen went to the garden partaining to the palays of the port noyre, and entred into the rich pauilion where as the Image was holding in hir hands the chaplet the which she dyd set on Arthurs head in signification how that he should haue the fayre Florence to whome the Image was resemblable, for ther was none that should haue Florence in marryage with out he should dye an euill death, without it were he that the Image dyd giue vnto the sayd chaplet. ca. lv fo. c. iii

How that Arthur slew and discomfited fiftene knights right mighty and puissaunt, who were come to assaile his host, who was called the squier of the plalhes, capitulo. lvi. fo. c. vii

How the great vilaine brought Arthur where as he did fight with a great and terrible Lyon, but finally Arthur slew him: and how after he fought with a great giauntesse and

and an horrible gyaunt, and by his prowesse he conquered them bothe, and after that fought with a great Gryffon, and this was the beginning of the aduentures of the foure tenebrous, wherein ye shall heare many terrible and mervailous thinges, the which were all achiued by the onely prowesse of the valiaunt Arthur, ca.lvii. fol.c.rr

How on the next morning the vilaine brought Arthur to an other aduenture nyeto the foure tenebrous, where as he was first assailed with terrible monstrous Byrdes and great Gryffons without number, and after that he was assailed with foure and twentie knights, and how he by his prowesse slew them all. And also he beate downe the great Machomet of brasse, out of the which there issued suche a wynde that it tourned about great millstones lyke pouder, and also how that he entred into the castell tenebrous, and quenched the fyre which was the cause of the great darkenesse the which contained the circuite of fiue leages compasse as ye shall heare afterward, ca.lviii c.rrii

How Arthur beate downe the great Machomet sitting in the vessell of brasse, and thereby the wynde ceased. capitulo.lix fol.c.rv

How that Arthur entred into the foure tenebrous, and how he there quenched the fyre, whereby all the terrible enchauntment ceased.ca.lx c.rvi

How after that Brysebar and maister Steuen were departed from Arthur from the port Royre they arryued at compte wher as king Emendus was, and in his company the Emperour of Inde, and his other foure kinges holding the same tyme a great sumptuous open Courte, and there maister Steuen and sir Brysebar recounted to them all in open audience the noble chiualry of Arthur, and this same meane season there came into the court a knight all armed and brought tydings to the king how all the aduentures of the foure tenebrous were achieued by the onely prowesse of one noble knight.cap.lxi fol.c.rviii

How the Emperour was afeard leaſt Florence ſhould caſt her loue on Arthur, wherfore he demaunded of ỹ King her father to haue her in marriage without anie longer delay, wherewith the King was content, but Florence would not agrée thereto, wherwith the King her father was right ſore diſpleaſed with her as you ſhall heare afterward. chapter. lxii fol. c. xx

How Florence when ſhe knew that maſter Steuen was come to the court, ſhe was right glad, & how that he by his pollicie gate her longer reſpite, that was till Barthelmew next after. chap. lxiii fol. c, xxiii

How Arthur was receiued of the faire Lady Margaret into the citie of Argence. chap. lxiiii folio cxxvii

How that the next daie the maſter anſwered for the Ladie, and Arthur toke her quarrel in hand againſt the dukes nephew ſir Ilembart. chap, lxv folio. c, xxx. iii

How the ſame ſeaſon while the King of Orquenie and al theſe other noble people were at dinner in greate ioye and mirth, ther came a meſſenger from the wounded Knight to Arthur, deſiring him to come and helpe him, or elſe he wold wit him of his death, wherwith all the court was ſore troubled, and ceaſed all their ioy for the loue of Arthur, for incontinentlie he went forth from the court with the meſſenger, and how that all the Court feared greatlie Arthur for that enterpriſe, for there was neuer anie that euer retourned againe aliue from that aduenture. chap. lvi fol. c. xl

How Gouernar in ſearching for Arthur had the honour of a tourney that was made by the Earle of the Ile Perdu, and there Gouernar was amorous of the Counteſſe: And how the Earle charged the Counteſſe that ſhee ſhoulde not ſpeake to Gouernar, whereof euill came to him, for the next date Gouernar did beate him well in the tourney, and late all night after with the Counteſſe his wife. cap. lxviii. folio c, xlii

How Gouernar did beate downe at the tourney the earle of the Ile Perdue. cha. lxviii fol. c, xlviii

How after Arthur was departed from Argenton to goo

to

to the Castle of hurtbise to the wounded knight who had sent for him, in his waie at the last he found at the entering of a faire Forrest three Ladies of right excellent beautie, of whom the chiefe was called Proserpina Quæne of the Fairies, who greatlie desired Arthur of his loue. but in no wise he wold agræ thereto, and there he lost the varlet that was his guide, wherefore it behoued him to tarrie there all that night, for it was dark and he knew not whether to go. chapter, lxix. folio. c, li

How Arthur conquered the Castle of hurtbise, the most strong place of the world sauing the Port Noire, whereas was the damsell by whom the wounded knight was hurt, and there Arthur did so much by his prowesse that the said knight recouered health, chap, lxx folio. c, lix

How Arthur when he was departed from the Quæne Proserpina, it fortuned him to take his lodging with the nephew of sir Ysembart, who tooke Arthur and lodged him in a towre, to the intent to haue slaine him by night, but there Arthur did so valiantlie that he brake out of the tower and slew the knight and all his people. Chapter, lxxi, folio. c. liii

How Gouernar in searching for Arthur, by aduenture he passed forth by the same Castle whereas Arthur hadde slaine the Lord therof, and there was assailed of the friends of the sayd knight, and there did so valiantlie that he slewe the most part of them. chap. lxxii foli, cliiii

How Arthur found fortie knightes who hadde taken a Damsell, the which they found in a Forrest, and they wold haue rauished her, and there Arthur rescewed her, and slew all the knightes who would haue pilled and robbed the ladies castle, & haue slaine all that had bene within. cap. lxxiii folio, c. lxi

How master Steuen departed from the Port Noire to goe to the turney at Cornite, and toke with him the noble Florence rich Pauilion, wherein was the Image with the Chaplet, who resembled in all things the ladie Florence the most fairest creature that was as then in all the worlde.

chapter, lxxiiii. folio.c.lxb

How sir Rowland of Bygor appeached Arthur of treason, because that he had slaine his cosin at Argence, and so defied him at the vtteraunce, but Arthur at the first stroke drane him horse and all to the earth, and brake one of his armes and two of his ribs, wherof Florence was right ioyous, and specially when she sawe her louer Arthur, whom she neuer sawe before: and how after sir Rowlands seruants assailed Arthur to haue slaine him, but he valiantlie defended himselfe & slew many of them. chap, lxb, fol. c, lxvii

How Duke Philip and master Steuen went for to fetch Arthur to the king of Orquenie, and to the faire Florence. chap. lxxvi fol, c, lxviii

How a great and puisant knight defied Arthur because he sate by Florence, and did pull downe a corner of her kerchiefe, the which the winde had blowen vp, and so Arthur did iust with him, and did cast him to the earth so rudelie, that he was not able to leape on horsebacke fiue monethes after, chap. lxvii. foli, c, lxvii

How Florence and Arthur spake together at good leasure at the end of a Forrest, and there promised to loue each other, and there the Queene Proserpina appeared to them and shewed to Florence how that Arthur loued her trulie, and howe that they shoulde haue each other by the waie of marriage, but first they should endure great paine & trouble, cha, lxviii folio c, lxviii

How Arthur had the honour of the tourney the first day, the which was made for the faire Florence betweene the king Emendus and the Emperour, who would haue had Florence to his wife, on the which daie Arthur gate himselfe great praise among al the Barony, insomuch that euerie knight was glad to be in his companie, wherefore the faire Florence was right ioyous, for she loued him aboue all other, cap. lxvix. folio. c, lxxxv

How Florence fained her selfe to bee sicke, to the intent that Arthur should not tourney the nert daie, for shee was in feare that Arthur had ben wearie because of the trauaile that

that he had indured the firſt daie of the tourney: and howe that the Emperour when he knew that he went to ſee her, and ſo did her father king Emendus, and al ẏ other kings, Dukes, Earles, and Barons, and all the whole chiualrie. chap, lxxx fol.c.lxxix

How that the tourney the next daie was deferred becauſe of the diſeaſe of Flozence, chap, lxxxi folio, c, lxxxxiii

How the image in the Pauilion did ſet her chaplet on Arthurs head in the preſence of the Emperour, and often other kings, and of all the whole aſſemblie, wherewith the emperor was right ſorowfull, becauſe he thought to haue had Flozence in mariage, but he failed of his purpoſe, for the Image toke no regard neither to the Emperour, nor none other there, but all only to Arthur to whom fraly ſhe did giue her ſelfe, cha, lxxxii fol.c.lxxxv

How Proſerpina Quæne of the Fairies, who reſembled Flozence, laide her downe in Flozence bedde in Flozence ſteed, and ſhe ſent her vnto the Port Noire with the Archbiſhop and all her knights, chap. lxxxiii folio, c lxxxviii

How the Ladie Margaret of Argenton with all her noble Baronie went & met Flozence, and receiued her into Argence with great feaſt and ioy. lxxxiiii folio, cc

How that Proſerpina was aſſured to the Emperour in the ſtede of Flozence, and how that the king banniſhed out of his Countrie the King of Orquenie, and alſo the King of Walefound, and maiſter Steuen & Arthur, cha, lxxxv. fo cc, i

How that Proſerpina Quæne of the Fairies was lead to Church to haue bene wedded to the Emperour, thinking that it had ben Flozence, but when the Biſhop had thought to haue put the wedding ring on her finger, ſodainlie ſhee vaniſhed away, ſo that none knew where ſhe was become, and ſo then they ſtod all abaſhed as though the clowds had fallen from heauen, chap, lxxxvi fol, cc iiii

How Arthur ſent Gonernar to his coſin Hector duke of Orgoule, deſiring him to come and ſuccour him againſt the Emperour of Inde, & againſt ẏ king Emendus, who wold beſige him in ẏ caſtle of the port Noire, cha, lxxxvii, fo.cc, vi

How

How that Hector as he went toward the Port Noire to succour Arthur, he encountered one of the kinges that was comming to succour the Emperour, and had in his companie well to the number of eighteene thousand men of war, the which king Hector slew and all his people, so that there was none that euer escaped saning two, and so they fled awaie, and there Hector got a great bootie, and much treasure, and great abundaunce of victualls, the which was all brought into the Port Noire. chap, lxxxviii. folio, cc, vii

How that the Emperour of Inde and the king Emendus accompanied with eight kings, and wel to the number of foure hundred thousand men of warre, laide siege about the castle of the Port Noire, wheras Florence and Arthur were, whereof euill turned to the Emperour, for there hee lost three of his kings, and an hundred thousand of his men. chap, l xix folio, cc x,

How Duke Philip of Sabarie and master Steuen, sonne to the king of Valefound, were made knightes, and of the discomfiture that Arthur made on the Emperour. chap, lxxxx folio, c, c, xiiii

How the Emperour spake with the Maiene Proserpina, thinking to him that it had bene the faire Ladie Florence, but he was deceiued, for she did set a great discord betwæne him and the king Emendus, as you shall heare after, chap, lxxxxi fol. c, c. xviii

How after the Emperour was thus departed in displeasure, and had defied the king with mortall warre, the next night following by the subtill arte of master Steuen all the kings hoast was brought euerie man fast a sleepe, and in the meane time the master and fiue other knightes with him bare the king Emendus fast a sleepe as he lay, bed and all vp into the pallace of the castle of the Port Neire. chap, lxxxii fol, cc, xx

How that king Emendus when hee awaked forgaue all the ill will to Florence his Daughter, and did put all the gouerning of his Realme into her handes, chap, lxxxxii fol, cc, xxii

How

How Arthur demaunded lisence of King Emendus, father to his Ladie Florence, to depart into Britaine to se the Duke of Britaine his father and the Dutchesse his mother, the which lisence they gaue him with much paine, and Florence was in great sorow for his departing. ca. lxxxiiii folio. cc, xxvi

How Arthur in the waie as he went to Britaine he arined in a faire medowe that was ioyning to the towne of Lyons sur le Rone, and ther he found the king of Galagore accompanied with diuerse Earles and other Barons, and they had there cried a great tourney. and there Arthur and his companie were friendlie receiued, and had great cheere both of the king and of all other Lords and Knightes.
chap, lxxxv fol, cc. xxviii

How Arthur and Hector his cosin with all their companie arined at Blois, and how the Earle of Bloys father to Hector, and the Countesse his mother, and al the whole Baronie of the Realme met them on the waie & receiued them with great ioy, for they had bene before in great feare that Arthur their nephew and Hector their sonne had ben dead.
chap. lxxxvi folio. cc, xxxii

How Arthur arined in Britaine, and how the duke his father and all his chiualrie met and receiued Arthur with great honour and triumph, and how that the dutchesse his mother sowned for ioy when she saw her sonne Arthur, and in likewise did Iehannet his olde loue, whereof the master and Philip had great feare least that Iehannet wold draw awaie Arthurs hart from Florence, because of ẏ great loue that they saw betweene them. chap, lxxxvii folio. cc, xxxiii

How after that Arthur was departed from king Emendus and Florence to goe se his friendes, Florence then departed from the Port Noire, and the Queene of Orquenie and the Ladie Margaret of Argenton with her, and went to sport her in her owne Realme and Castle of the Clere tower, wher as the emperour came and besieged her ere she was ware thereof, and his companie were laide round about the towne, and they were to the number of two hun-
dred

dred thousand, what of Emperines and of Saraſins, chap. lxxxviii folio.cc.xxvi

Howe Arthur was right sorrowfull because that his horse did stumble vnder him, and howe the master shewed him holy that Florence was besieged by the Emperour in her castle of the Clære towre, wherof Arthur was in great feare and trouble.chap.lxxxix folio.cc.xxvii

How that Arthur and the master, Hector, Gouernar, and sir Brisebar, entered into the Clære towre whereas Florence was besieged, and they fine discomfited a puisaunt king Saraſin, who was called the Soudan, who was come thether to helpe the Emperour, and there were all the Saraſins and Turkes slaine.chap.c. fol.cc.xxix

How that truse was taken for a moneth betwæne the Emperour and Arthur.chap.c.i fol.cc.xliii

How the young king of Galagore & the Duke of Britaine, with diuerse other Earles and Barons, and accompanied with a great armie of men of warre, arriued at the Clære towre, to the intent to succour Florence and Arthur, who were besieged by the Emperour, who had nigh enraged out of his wit when he knew that they were come into that countrie.chap.c.ii folio.cc.xlv

How that king Jonas all alone came to the Castle of the Clære towre, and ther did his message from the Emperour of Inde the more.chap.c.iii folio.cc.xlix

How the Emperour and king Jonas accompanied with fiftie thousand men of warre came to the Clære towre for to haue made assault thereto, and then they found the gate open, and entered both into the towne and into the Castle, for they thought verilie that all the French men had bene fled, but they were deceiued, for then the French men leapt out from their ambushmentes and shut fast the gates, and there slew king Jonas and all their fiftie thousand, so that none escaped aliue but one and the Emperour who was taken prisoner.chap.c.iiii fol.cc.lii

How Gouernar went to the Realme of Horoloys, to the

the intent to giue knowlodge to king Emendus how that the Emperour hadde besieged his daughter Florence in her castle of the Cléere tower, desiring him to hasten his host to rescue her at that time. chap, c, v folio, cc. lb

How that Arthur accompanied with the French men discomfited king Floripes brother to the Emperour, & slew all them that were in his companie. chap, c, vi fol. cc, lvii

How master Steuen by his art and cunning caused the Emperines to goe a wrong waie from Arthur, and so encountered the mightie king Emendus and all his hoast. chap, c. vii folio. cc, lx

How that the emperour died in prison for sorrow, when he knew that his kings and people were all slaine and discomfited, chap, c, viii folio, cc, lxiii

How that king Emendus came to the Blaunch tower with all his noble companie, to the burying of of the Emperour and of the other foure kings, cap, ix. fol, cc, lxv

How after the discomfiture of the emperour and al his people, the king gaue lisence to all his hoast to depart euery man home, and went himselfe to Argence, ther to make the wedding betwéene Arthur and Florence, & how that Florence went to the Port Noyre to make cheere to the Dutchesse of Britaine and to the other Ladies, & to bring them to Argence to her Father king Emendus, chapter, c, x folio. cc, lxvii

How Florence because of the doubt that she had least ỹ Iehannet shuld take her loue from Arthur, she gaue her to Gouernar, & gaue them the Realme of Normall, and caused them to be assured the same houre, and also the same time shee caused the Ladie Margaret to be assured to master Steuen, chap, c, xi fol, cc, lxviii

How Arthur wedded the faire Florence Daughter to the mightie king Emendus, with great honour and triumph, and king Gouernar wedded the faire Iehannet, and master Steuen wedded the faire Margaret of Argenton, al in one date and one houre, chap, c. xii fol, lxxi

How

How the French knights, and those of Hozolois, of Argence, of Dzquenie, of Ismaelite, of Valefound, and of Sabarte did tourney together, whereof Arthur and Gouernar had the honour, chap, c. xiii fol. cc, lxxiiii.

How after the marriage of Arthur the Barons and Ladies of Fraunce retourned into their owne Countries, except King Alexander whom king Emendus kept still, and made vnto him great chère, and he tarried there so long til that Flozence was deliuered of a faire sonne, whome King Alexander held on the font, chap. c, xiiii folio. cc, lxxvii.

How King Alexander returned into his Country, & led with him Arthur, Gouernar, Hector and master Steuen, and tarried in Bzitaine so long till Flozence sent foz Arthur, because that her father King Emendus was departed this life, wherefoze shz made great lamentation. chap, c. xv folio. eodem

How Arthur was sent foz because of the death of King Emendus, and how he was crowned king of Hozoloys. chap, c. xvi folio, cc. lxxviii

Hère is deuised how long that the noble Arthur liued, and how that he was buried. chap. c, xvii folio. eod.

Thus endeth the Table of this present hillozie.

The Historie of Arthur of little Britaine.

Of the birth of the noble Knight Arthur, sonne and heire to the Duke of Britaine.

CHAPTER. I.



After the death of good King Arthur, who was right noble and gentle, speciallie in cherishing and enhauncing of noblenesse, & maintaining of the chiualrous knights of the world. As was Gawyn & Launcelot, & many other noble knights, as it is more plainely contained in diuerse auncient Chronicles. It is of truth that in those daies, in Britaine there was a Duke right prudent, and aboue all other right vertuous, rich, and puissant, both of behauiour & friends, who was come of the noble and high lignage of the valiant Knight Lancelot du Lake, who was in his daies of right high and noble prowesse, as it is more at large compriſed in the bookes making mention of his chiualrie. This Duke had to name John, & was so endued with sapience, that the King, who as then gouerned all Fraunce, loued and honoured him aboue all other, insomuch as it was said wheresoeuer he went, behold yonder is the wise man of Britain: he was one of the kings priuie Counsaile, so that the king was onely gouerned by his noble aduise, because of the great truth and stedfastnesse that was euer found in him. This Duke had a right noble Ladie to his wife, of good & holy life, who was daughter to the Earle of Leycester in England, and they loued together right fermently by heartie loue all their life, and in accomplishing betweene them the workes of marriage, ordained by nature, finally, it pleased the good Lord to send them a faire sonne, who in the remembrance of good king Arthur & of his high renowme, was named Arthur. This child was goodly and of full great beautie: for afterward he grew to

be the most fairest creature that then was found in al christendome, and the Duke and Dutchesse loued him so well, that they endeauoured nothing but onely the profit of their child, and specially to increase his honour and riches.

How the Duke of Britaine deliuered his sonne Arthur to the gouernaunce of a prudent Knight, named sir Gouernar, who did instruct him in all good maners and deedes of armes; so that afterward there was none like vnto him. Cap. 2.

AND when this child Arthur was nine yeares of age, the Duke his father deliuered him to be kept vnder the gouernaunce of a noble and a gentle master, named Gouernar, who was right prudent, puissaunt, and hardie, vertuous, valiaunt of bodie, and well approued. Who among other thinges did teach this noble childe Arthur the plaie at the Chesse and Tables, so that none was in running like vnto him. And when he was twentie yeares olde, then his master taught him the manner of skirmishes, so that within a little season there was none able to be compared with him. Thus prospered this childe from daie to daie, and grewe so goodly, that in all the worlde there was none seene like him, neither so faire, so gratious, nor so courteous, insomuch that the king of Fraunce desired oftentimes that he should be nourished and brought vp with his owne children. Howbeit the Dutchesse his mother could in no wise suffer it, nor scant let him be out of her presence euer a whit, she loued him so entirely. So long this childe soiourned with his mother, that it greatly grieued him to his heart, insomuch that thereby he became right pensiue, and sore troubled in his minde: so that Gouernour his master demaunded of him what was the cause of his sorrowe. In good sayth Master sayde Arthur, this long soiourning and abiding at home greatly vexeth me, for I would gladly goe seeke aduentures in yonder fayre Forrest, to winne some chiefe ad-

ter

[illegible] great [illegible] for to haue so great reason sith I went [illegible] Certainly sayd Gouernar, faire sister, it is right well your noble minde. Therefore goe to my Lorde your Father, and desire his licence that ye may chase in the Forrest. Then Arthur went forth to the Duke his father, and demaunded of him licence. When the Duke had herd the tidings and the will of his sonne, he greatly ioyed and right willingly graunted him his request, and commaunded and desired Gouernar that she should take good heede to him, and not suffer him to ruinne or followe too fast after his game. Gouernar answered that she would take good heede of him. Then Arthur caused the Hunters to be warned to make readie their greyhoundes, houndes, and other neteffaries, for he would goe the next date betimes to chase in the Forrest. The next morning Arthur and Gouernar mounted on their horses with greate ioie, and manie other Gentlemen to kepe them companie: and Arthur was mounted on a great courser, his Hat hanging on his backe by a lace of silke, his Bonet on his head, and the Hunters went before leading his greyhoundes, and houndes. Thus they rid forth toward the Forrest in great ioy.

Howe Arthur founde in the Forrest a noble Ladye without succour, and with her a faire young maide her daughter, named Iehanne, before a rude lodge, the which they had made of the braunches of trees, and howe that Arthur was amorous of the said Iehanne.

Chap. 3.

In this time there was in the Realme of the Desert, a knight of great power and right rich of goods & friends, and he was Lord of a Castle called the Moure. This knight was named Alciers, and was of such strength, that he douted nothing of ten knights armed, and of so valiaunt courage, that since the time he could first beare armes, he was neuer, but in such places as he knewe the feates of armes were vsed, and employed himselfe euer in such exercises,

and in deeds of armes, and did so worthely, that there was no report of him, but that he was the noblest knight of the world, yet finally he lead his life so, that he spent and wasted his goods so largely, to the intent to get him laud and praise, that in the end he became thereby verie poore, and then was faine to sell and to make shifte of all that he had, both of his owne, and of the good Ladies his wife, & so dyed in great povertie. And when he was buried, such persons as he was indebted to, toke all the landes & goods that pertained either to him or to the ladie his wife, so that therby the good ladie fled and departed prively out of the Countrie, so that none of her friends knew where she was become, for she thought she had rather live povely in a straunge Countrie farre from her friends and acquaintaunce, then to indure povertie in her owne countrie, where she had bene noblie brought up before. So this lady went, & her daughter with her, who was of the age of viii. yeres, right beautiful, howbeit she was poorely apparailed, and had to name Jehannet. And they travailed so long by their journeies, that by aduenture they came into the Forrest where Arthur and Gouernar vsed to chase and to hunt. And in a desolate place of the Forrest, farre from anie high waie, there these two ladies did rest them, and made them a lodge to abide in of boughes, and of such things as they coulde get. Thus they continued the space of a moneth, and this ladie went euerie daie right poorely to the next village for to get such thinges as she and her daughter needed. And so it fortuned that the same daie that Arthur and Gouernar departed from the court of his father, and was entered into the said forrest, anone his hounds had found a great hart, and a noble knight that was in his companie, named the lord Oliuer of Jryac, followed after this hart on a great courser, and al the other hunters after him. And this young Arthur began to follow after, howbeit Gouernar toke heede that he should not followe too fast, so that this saide Lorde Oliuer and all other were past forth by him, and were gone so far into the thicke of the forrest, that Arthur & Gouernar had cleane lost both

the sight & hearing of thē their hounds, & so by gesse they followed faire & easely after: and so long they followed, that by aduenture they came to ỳ same place wheras ỳ lodge was made for ỳ lady and her daughter, who wer both the same time sitting without the lodge doze. And as sone as Arthur saw them he lighted downe off his horse, and Gouernar with him: and when this Ladie saw Arthur, she was greatly abashed, for she thought wel that he should be some great man, and therewith she arose, and Arthur right courteously saluted her, & the Ladie in like manner him, it was at that time about three of the clocke. But when the Ladie saw Arthur and Gouernar descende from their horses, she remembred the state of her Father and of other Gentlemen that she had sene before in her owne countrie where she had bene nourished, wherewith her heart was greatly troubled. Then Arthur toke her by the hande and her mother also, and set them downe altogether, and demaunded of the young maide, saying: faire damosell what is your name? Sir quod she, I am called Iehannet: Iehannet sweet loue where wer ye borne? certainly sir, I was not borne in this countrie: then her mother said, sir, my daughter saith truth, for verely she was borne in the land of Desart in a Castell called the Moure. Then said Arthur, whose daughter was she? God is my witnesse said the ladie, a knights right strong and puissant, who in his time loued euer deedes of armes, & was acquainted with manye noble men, howbeit his fortune was such ere he died, that he lost and wasted both his landes and goodes, and mine also, who was his poze wife, and we wer brought so far behinde, that litle or nothing was lefte vs. Then after his death, such persons as he owed any thing to, & peraduēture some other that he owed nothing to, wer so importunate on me, ỳ I was fain to sel all I had: and when I saw that I was so far brought vnder that I had nothing lefte me whereby to lyue, the occasion thereof caused me to steale awaye by night: for I thought it better to go like a poze woman a begging in a straunge countrie, than there where I was Lady and go-

uernour, and therewith right pitedully she wept, and said: ah gentle Knight now am I come into this countrie, onely accompanied with this young maid my déere daughter, who was wont to be brought vp in faire pallaices and rich halls and chambers, and to lye in a bed with curtaines of silke, and now she is constrained to lye on the molle in this lodge couered with græne boughes. Then Arthur answered and said, ah faire Ladie, why did you not require your friends to helpe and succour you in your necessitie, at least to giue you meate, and drinke, and cloathing: in my minde that had bene more honourable for you, then thus desolately to come into this straunge countrie. Truly sir said this Ladie, poore folkes haue but few friends, howbeit I ought to haue many, but betwæne the rich & the poore there wanteth friends, for the rich maketh his friend of his money, & the poore is put out in euery place: and I sorrowfull creature who haue bene a great Ladie and much honoured, and haue had much people vnder my obeysaunce, thought great shame to require any creature in my own countrie to help or succor me, and specially for this young maid my daughter, she is come of noble lignage: alas, as for me I am old, and alwaies she hath serued me right well, and now she is like with me to lose her time, and therewith she began again to wæpe. When Iehannet saw her mother so wæpe, she could not abstaine her selfe from wæping tenderly. Arthur séeing them so full of sorrow, had great pitie, and sayd to the Ladie: Right déere Ladie, wæpe ye no more, but set your heart at rest: for from henceforth I will be in ỹ stæde of your olde Lord, and in all good honour loue and cherish you to the best of my power: and all this while Iehannet made still great lamentation. So there Arthur toke the young maide in his armes, and right louingly saide: My owne deare Ladie and loue, abandon your heart to ioye & leaue this sorrow, for as God is my succour, I shall cause you to haue more honour and wealthe, then as yet euer came vnto you, for I am and shal be your owne good louer, & will take you into my hands, to deliuer you frō all pouer-

tie, faithfully assuring you, to kéepe the honor of you and of your bodie, as much as your owne proper brother would or might doe.

How Arthur caused to be deliuered to Iehannet and her mother the reuenues that belõged to the stang or pond of the forrest, whereby there stood a faire goodly place of pleasure: and afterwarde Arthur did oftẽtimes resort thether to passe the time with them. Cap. 4.

AT ỳ time as Arthur had this cõmunication with these Ladies, there came to them the maister Forrester named Piers, who was also receiuer of the reuenewes of the forrest: and he had all that daie sought his master Arthur, and by aduenture there he founde him talking with these ladies: and incontinently as Arthur saw him, he called him by his name, and demaunded of him, if he had receiued at that Mawdleintide the reuenewes of the forest: And Piers answered and said, sir I haue alreadie at your commandement, the sum of fiue hundred pound. Well quoth Arthur I command thée incontent to deliuer it to this ladie and to her daughter, also the manner place pertaining to ỳ stang of this forrest wherein thou hast dwelt till this time. It was so that in this stang or water the wilde beastes of the forrest did euer resort to drink, and nére adioyning to this water there were houses and manners [illegible] which the duke had giuen to Arthur his sonne to sport him in the forrest: & this Piers was kéeper thereof to Arthurs behoofe. Then said Arthur to Piers, I deliuer to thée these two ladies, and I charge thee that thou truly keepe and honour them, and bring them to my manner, and deliuer to them such things as appertaine to so goodly Ladies as they be, and as such a man as I am, haue taken into my hands & keeping. Therfore keepe them well and truly, for by the faith that I owe to my lord my father, if I know that thou intende or imagine against this ladie or her daughter any displeasure. I shall cause thee to suffer an euill death, & I warn thee loke they lacke nothing. Sir said Piers I will so vse my selfe.

that both you and they shall be with me content. And so when Arthur had bene there a greate season, he toke his leaue of this Ladie and of her daughter. So Piers did conduct them to the sayd manno3, and brought fo3 them abilements and iewells, meate and d3inke of the best that could be gotten, and all other things that was conuenient fo3 noble Ladies to haue. And garnished euery office in the house with plate of siluer, and with al other necessary things: and when Arthur and Gouernar were departed from these Ladies, they rode after the track of sir Oliuer of Iryae and his companie, and at the last they met together farre in the fo3rest in a great dœpe valley, whereas sir Oliuer had killed thræ great Hartes, & was b3eaking of them: and therwith Arthur came to him & lagbed right heartely. Then reso3ted other of the hunters frõ all parts, and so ther Arthur commaunded a seruaunt belonging to the sayde Piers, to take one of these hartes and to beare it from him to saide Ladie & to her daughter: and the second Arthur did giue to the Abbot that was come to them by aduenture, and the third he commaunded that it should be conueyed to the Duke his father, who had great ioy thereof.

How within eight daies after Arthur and Gouernar went to the stange to see the Lady and Iehannet her daughter. Chap. 5.

THe eight daie after that Arthur was come from the fo3rest, he rose earely in a faire mo3ning and saide to Gouernar, friend let vs goe leape vpon our ho3ses, and goe sæ our damsell in the fo3rest we two alone, gladly sir sayd Gouernar. So Arthur toke a Sparhauke on his hand, and Gouernar a Gerfaulcon, and Arther apparailed himselfe all in græne silke, and his hat auailed, with a fresh chaplet of flowers on his head. And they rode so long, that by the Sunne rising they came to the stang, and founde the Ladie Iehannet apparayled right noblie: fo3 Piers the Fo3rester had pur ueied them of all things necessarie to such Ladies:

dies: and as then Jehannet had dronke good Wines and taken her sustenaunce of good meates, and had forgotten all her sorrowe, whereby her beautie was newly renued. And when Arthur saw her, she pleased him much better than she did when he sawe her first, and so he toke her by the hande and set them downe together aparte, and in the meane season the Ladie her mother and Gouernar were talking together, and the morning was verie faire and clære, and the earth all bedewed with clære siluer drops, and the Birdes sung melodiously on euery branch: so that these two young lustie louers greatly reioyced, and had great myrth in their harts because of ỳ swæt season, being timely for such yoũg people to play and laugh, & they loued together with true harts, without thinking of villanie or shame each to other. Then Arthur said to her merely: My swæt damsel haue ye any louer: she halfe smiling, beholding Arthur right lovingly, said by the faith I owe to you my own dære lord, I haue one right faire and gratious: and where is he my swæte Jehannet. By my faith sir, he is of a Countrie whereof hæ is Lord: and fayre loue, how is he called? Syr be you not displeased, this that I haue said is sufficient at this present time. Howbeit syr I wold ye knew, ỳ King Arthur was a noble knight and of great vertue and sir, I wold my louer were so good, if he be not better alredy. But one thing sir I assure you, he resembleth you more then anie other vnder the Sunne liuing, both in bodie & all other things that one person may be likened to another. My owne swæte and faire damsell said Arthur, I would faine sæ him, and if it be to you no dishonor, I praye you shew him me, and I promise you faythfully I shall loue and cherishe him ryght deerely, and for loue of you, if hee will, he shall be one of my house, if he be no greater of lignage nor riches then I am. My right deere Lorde sayde this Damsell, I humbly thanke you, howbeit he is no greater Gentleman than yee bee, but hee thinketh well to haue as greate honour and friendes as ye haue, but as nowe ye may not sæ him,

but it may well be that hereafter ye ſhall haue knowledge of him. And ſo thus they communed together of manye things, till it was time that Arthur ſhould returne to the Court, for as then it was about Prime. Then Arthur toke his leaue of the Ladie and of Iehannet, and ſo he and Gouernar mounted on their horſes, and rode forth, alwaies deuiſing of the behauiour of this damſell Iehannet. And at the laſt Arthur ſaide: Maiſter, how ſaie you by the ſwéetneſſe of our damſell, and the frænelle of her heart, and how ſagely and graciouſly ſhe anſwereth to euerie demaund, remembring alſo her gentle manner and noble countenaunce, her beautifull faſhion of bodie and of viſage: as God helpe me maiſter, al theſe things and many other that ſpring of vertue be in her, which cauſeth me to loue her hartely. Sir ſaid Gouernar, that ye ſaie is true, howbeit mine owne déere Lorde, take good heede to your honour, and remember howe great a Lorde ye be, both of linage, honour, and friends, and thinke how ſhe is but a poore Gentlewoman, for ought you knowe, and if you doe anie villanie to her bodie, as in taking from her that ye cannot render againe, it were a great ſinne, and you ought therein to be more blamed, then another meane perſon. Maiſter ſaid Arthur, I pray God neuer to helpe me, if I thinke to go about to diſhonour her, but I will loue her and keepe her honour faithfully, in like caſe as ſhe were mine owne proper ſiſter, without euer deſiring any wrong to her bodie. So they rode forth talking till they came to the Court, and then went to dinner, for it was by that time neere two of the clocke.

How the Duke and Dutcheſſe tooke counſaile to marrie their ſonne Arthur, and how they ſent theyr ſteward to the Ladie Luke of Oſtridge, for to demaund her daughter for Arthur. Chap 6.

In this wiſe Arthur ſoiourned a long ſpace, ſo that there was no weeke but that twice or thrice he and Gouernar would

would ride to the ſtang without anie other companie: and it ſortuned one daie he tarried ther longer then he was accuſtomed to doe, wherefore he was ſought all about by the commaundement of the Duke his Father, howbeit no tidings could be heard of him, but that he and Gouernar wer gone together to ſport them, but no man wiſt whether. The the Dutcheſſe ſaid to the duke, ſir I know not what it meaneth that our ſonne goeth forth ſo priuely euerie daie, and no man can tell whether, for he taketh none with him but Gouernar, verily I doubt me of our child, leaſt he ſhould ſet his heart and loue of ſome perſon, whereby we ſhould haue anie dishonour: he is now of yeares ſufficient to perceiue and knowe the guiles pertaining to loue, wherfore I wold he were noblie married, for it is time, he is xvii. yeares of age. Madame quoth the Duke, ye haue right wiſely ſayde: and I accord thereto, but to whome thinke ye beſt we giue him in marriage. Sir ſaid the Ladie, in my minde it were well done, that we demaund the faire Perron of Oſtridge, and I truſt my Ladie Luke her mother wil be therof right glad, verily madame ſaid the Duke, I haue heard ſaie, that this Ladie Perron hath not wiſely demeaned her ſelfe, but hath had great blame for her nise keeping companie with a knight of her Countrie, and I would for no good that wee ſhould demaund ſuch a perſon as hath deſerued blame. O ſir ſaid the Ladie, beléeue not ye the reporters of them that luſteth to ſaie ill, for as God helpe me ſhe is ſlaundered wrongfully, for I am ſure ther is not a better maid liuing, wherefore they are in greate fault that reporte otherwiſe of her. Ladie ſayd the Duke, if it be ſo, I am right ioyfull, let vs therefore ſend thether in all haſt. Then was called to them ſyr Oliuer that was Seneſchall. And the Duke ſayd to him, ſir Oliuer, my will is that ye go to Oſtridge to my Ladie Luke, and deſire of her in my behalfe Perron her Daughter, to bee giuen in Patrimonie to Arthur my ſonne. Then ſir Oliuer prepared him to ride foorth and tenne other knightes in his companie, and ſo departed and rode foorth ſo long, that the Wedneſdaie

after Walwetintide they came to Ostrige. When sir Oliuer was in the great hall whereas the lady Luke was accompanied with many great barons, ladies and damoselles, he did right reuerently salute her, and all the other Lordes and barons as a messenger sent from the Duke and Duchesse of Britaine: and this lady Luke right honourably did receiue him and al his company, and demanded what was the cause of their comming.

How the Seneshall demaunded the Daughter of the Duke of Ostrige for Arthur of Britaine, the which requeste with great ioy was granted him. Cap. vii.

Then sir Oliuer began his proposition and saide: Right high and mightie Princesse, my lord and ladye of Britain hath sent vs hether to publish vnto you their intents, for they are right desirous to be in loue and affinitie with you as it well appeareth, hauing heard such brute & fame of my lady Perron your doughter. Wherefore they haue sent me hether to your presence to require you in their behalfe to giue your daughter Perron in mariage to Arthur their sonne, who is right gentill, noble and valiaunt. Madame this is the effect of our request. In the name of God said the ladie Luke humbly I thanke the Duke your lord, that it will please him to haue with vs acquaintance, wher of I haue great ioye: and with a good heart I giue frelye to him my daughter Perron to be all wholye at his commandement. Madame said Oliuer, this deed ought greatly to be thanked: and how say you faire lady Perron, how you accord to this marriage. Sir said Perron, I shall euer fulfill the pleasure of my lady my mother. Certainly faire lady then do you wisely, for I ensure you, ye shall be coupled to him that is both faire and goodly. Then this Lady Luke and her doughter, did giue to sir Oliuer and his companie many noble Iewells and other things. And their appointment was to be at Nauntes within viii. daies of the middle of the next August.

How

How that Arthur was sore displeased for that his Father wold marrie him to the Ladie of Ostridge, because it was said she was of ill demeanor. Chap. 8.

Then the Seneshall toke leaue of the ladie Luke, & the faire Perron & returned into Britaine. At which time he found the Duke risen from dinner & the Dutchesse with him: and Arthur and Gouernar were playing at ỳ chesse, and as sone as the Duke saw sir Oliuer, he friendly intertained him, and the knight right humbly saluted them, and thanked them greatly for the great loue and gifts that the Dutches of Ostridge had bestowed on him for their sakes, and shewed him how the ladie Luke would be at Nauntes, and bring with her Perron, readie apparailed to be giuen to Arthur about the middle of August nert ensuing. And when Arthur heard that his father would marrie him, hee stepped forth & left his plaie, & said, what is that right dere father, wil ye marry me. Yea faire son said ỳ duke, right nobly. And good father vnto whō will you giue me, Faire son, vnto the gentle Perron of Ostridge. What sir, as it is noised she hath trespalled with another knight, set ye so litle by me: that ye will now giue me Perron who is of ill name & fame: Certainly it is not for your worship nor honour so to doe, nor to any of my friends. Therefore in no manner of wise will I take her. Faire sonne sayd his mother, bee not displeased, neither beleeue euill reportes that are made by this ladie, it is greate sinne to saie such thinges as cannot be proued, for I am certaine that she is a cleane maiden: and therefore we will that ye shall haue her, or else ye shall greatly displease my Lord your father and me also. Well madame (said Arthur) sith that it behoueth me to take her, and that it is your pleasure that I so do, I am content, how be it if she be of such conditions as is sayd of her, I shall neuer loue her. Then sayd Gouernar to the Duke, sir if yee will that Arthur shall haue this damsel. Neuertheless may it please you to graunt that if this case be found true, thē let Arthur leaue & forsake her. And if that she did neuer such

trespalle,

trespalle, then let Arthur kepe her as he ought to doe his wife, but how shall this be knowen said the Duke, whereas wisedoms in such things are lightly done so couertly, that it is harde to knowe: sir said Gouernar, let it be enquired wisely of such as doe presume shoulde knowe of the matter. Also let the damsell her selfe be wisely examined, and if she be good she will kepe her selfe, if she be other wise, peradventure it will be espyed. I am content with this said Arthur, and for that time they leste their communing of that matter. Then the Duke sent out his commandements to all his Barons, knights and Damsells that they should be all readie at Nauntes by the middest of August, for then he would kepe open Court, and make Arthur his son knight, and marrie him to the faire Perron of Dstridge. The duke also did write to the Earle of Blois, brother germaine to the dutchesse his wife. He sent also for the Earle of Anion, who was nere of kinne to the duke, and also to the Archbishop of Tours, desiring him to be at Nauntes at ỳ said day. How that Arthur went to see Iehannet, and declared to her how the Duke his father wold marry him, wherof he was



sore displeased for the loue of her. Chap. 9

Then Arthur and Gouernar toke their horses, and rode to the Kang in the Forrest, whereas they found Jehannet and hir mother, who made great ioy, and Jehannet beheld Arthur, who was as then right pale for displesure, and demaunded of him what was the cause thereof. Certainely my loue saide Arthur, greater displeasure coulde neuer haue fallen. For my Lord my father will now marrie me, the which I forethinke with all my hart, because of ỳ loue that I haue to you, for I thinke verily ye will not bee content therewith. And your displeasure pearceth mine hart, Mine owne swéet Lord said Jehannet, for Gods sake trouble not your selfe for no such cause, for certain I am in like case intreated to bee married. A good loue, sayd Arthur, I praie you to whome: Sir, to him of whom I haue spoken to you before, is that of a truth faire Damsell, quoth Arthur, I require you when shall ye be marryed, in truth the same daie that ye shal be married: now faire damsell, by the faith that ye owe to him, I desire you let me sée him, sir yée may not sée him as yet, but certainly he shall be apparailed in the same clothing, as ye shall be the daie of your wedding. In the name of God said Arthur, I haue of this great meruaile, for ye haue sayd héere before to me, that he is as great of linage as I am, and as greatly endued with behaniour and friends, and how that he resembleth to me in all pointes, and also how that he hath a rich and puissaunt vnkle. I wot not whome I should thinke, without ye meane all this by my selfe, for I knowe well the Earle of Bloys is my vnkle by my mothers side. Well sir, sayde Jehannet, nor I will not shew you at this present time. So thus they communed together of that and of other thinges, till finally Arthur toke leaue of her for that time, and retourned to the Court of his father. And thus daylye hee rode to sée this faire Damosell Jehannet, till it came the next daie before his wedding. And the Earle of Anion and the Archbishoppe of Tours were come, and also the Earle of Bloys, who brought with him Hector his

sonne,

sonne was a gentle and faire creature, and was descended of the linage of Britaine, and was cosin germaine to Arthur, and also of one age, for they were borne both in one yeare. And when Arthur sawe him, he joyfully intertained him, and alwaies they kept companie together: And there came from all partes Lordes, Knights, Ladies, and Damsells, by great flockes for to goe meete the Ladie Perron of Ostridge, and then mounted the Duke and all other Barons and knightes, to goe likewise to encounter Perron, who was as then come within the space of halfe a league, and brought with her a great companie of Lords, Knights, Ladies, and Damsells.

How Arthur and Hector his Cosin Germaine were made Knightes for the loue of Arthur, who then did ensure Perron doughter to the Lady Luke of ostridge. And of the great tournay that was held at Nauntes for the loue of Arthur. Cap. 10.

AND when all these noble people were assembled together, the Duke and Dutchesse, and all the other Lordes made great ioy and feast at the meeting of this Ladie Luke and Perron her daughter. And the Dutchesse toke her in her armes, and said, mine owne swete daughter you are right welcome into this countrie, and kissed her oftentimes, weping for ioy, for she was so faire a creature that the Dutchesse could not abstaine her selfe from imbracing & kissing her. And therewith called to her Arthur & said, Son Arthur, behold here this faire Ladie, who is and shall be yours. Madame sayde Arthur, will it please you to suffer her to mount vppon her horse, and we shall speake of this matter well inough hereafter. So they went all to horse and rode forth to Nauntes, & their Lords, knights, & other, toke vp their lodging in the citie, & some were harboured in the pallace with the Duke. And when it came to the time to speak of the marriage, the Arthur sayd in open audience. My Lord and father, & also my Ladie my Mother, ye will cause me here to take this

Dame

damsell. And yet I know not what name or fame she is of. Howbeit sir I saie surely both to you and to my Ladie Luke, who is mother vnto her, that I take her against my heart, because of the suspitious noise and ill reports which I haue heard of her. Neuertheleſſe it behoueth me to take her to eschew thereby the displeasure of my Lord my Father, and my Ladie my mother, and other of my friends, for I perceiue well it is their mindes, howbeit I saie openlye here to you all, if that I finde the noise as ronneth on her to be of trouth, I ensure you that while I liue she shall neuer haue anie good daie with me in rest. O my faire sonne said the Dutchesse, what if ye finde her good and true, and that all such ill report as ye haue heard of her be vntrue and false? Well madame said Arthur, then shal I loue her as I ought to doe my wife. Then the Duke called forth the Archbishoppe of Nauntes, and so caused Arthur to bee there openlie affiaunced to Perron, and on the nert daie to be married: Then began great feasts and ioie in the Pallace, and dauncing of Ladies and damsells, and breaking of speares, and battering of harneies with swords in euerie streete of the Citie. Then the Duke saide, that whosoeuer wold take the order of chiualrie with his sonne Arthur the nert daie, with a good will he woulde giue it them. Then Arthur said to Hector his cosin, sir, I require you to moue you to take the order of Knighthode with me, and from hence forth let vs keepe companie together in iusts and tourneies and in all other things as swome brotheren. Deere cosin said Hector, I require you let vs goe knowe the pleasure of my Lord my father, whether he will agree to this or not: ye saie well said Arthur. Then Arthur came before the Duke his Father and all other Lordes, and held his cosin Hector by the hand, and said openlie to the Earle of Blois: My Lord and vncle, I require you let my cosin Hector be made knight to morrowe with mee, for wee shall loue together the better euer after, certainelie saide the Earle: Faire Nephewe, Hector hath as yet too little lande to maintaine therewith the noble Order of Knighthode:

and that he said because he would not that his sonne should be made Knight so sone. Truly sir said Arthur, he hath riches to be a Knight, for as long as you liue he can not lacke, and though he faile of you, yet God hath so prouided for him, that after your daies he shall be Earle of Blois. Yea faire nephew quoth the Earle, we maye both be deceiued by that, for it may so fortune that I maye lese all my right in the Earledome of Blois, and his also. Neither let my sonne Hector looke to be Lord ouer me, for as long as I liue one foote of the land of the Earledome of Blois getteth he not, no sir said Arthur, and tourned to Hector and saide: faire cosin it would seeme well by my Lorde your Father, how y he is verie poore, howbeit I desire you to be knight with me, and I faithfully promise you that I shal giue you as much land or more as my Lorde your father will giue you, and I praie you from hence forth let vs be together as companions in horse, in attire, in land, in house and in euerie thing, and so I retaine you from this present time forward. As God helpe me sonne saide the Duke (who hadde heard what Arthur had said to Hector, I am well content that ye thus retaine Hector your cosin: also I require him that he will be your companion, and to the Earle of Blois he said: also sir I desire you to giue licence to your son here present, that he may be Knight with his cosin Arthur. Then the Earle of Blois did laugh thereat, and said to the Duke. Sir, as God me helpe I am right well content. But of one thing let him be sure, y as long as I liue he shall neuer be the Earle of Blois. Then Arthur said to his cosin Hector. Well sir we be young inough, therefore wee shall seeke to get our liuing, for I trust God will helpe vs. Then he said to the Duke his father, sir Gouernar hath serued and nourished me vp swetly, therefore I require you let me make him Knight, and when I maye, I will bee better to him: certainly faire sonne it pleaseth me right wel. So then they were made Knights with great triumph: and there was great ioie both with Lordes and Ladies, and a great tourney was there ordeined for the loue of these new Knights.

And

And while this triumph and tourney endured, Arthur said to Hector: Faire cosin come on with mee and wee will goe see the most sweete and gentle damsell that euer yee sawe. In the name of God quoth Hector, I am well content, and so Arthur, Hector, and Gouernar mounted on their horses, and rode forth to the manor of the stang, whereas they found Iehannet and her mother leaning in a windowe talking together, & when they sawe Arthur they came to him and were verie ioyfull, and then Iehannet demaunded of Arthur, what Gentleman is this that yee haue brought with you. Faire Lady said Arthur, he is sonne to the Earle of Blois, and he is my cosin germaine. In the name of God sayd she he is welcome hether for your sake. Then Iehannet beheld wel Arthur, & she perceiued by his countenance that hee was troubled, therfore she desired of him to know what he ailed, in good faith good loue, this daie haue I made a dolorous iourny, for I haue affiaunced a woman against my will, the which I sore repent, because it is grieuous to me to leaue your companie: certainely faire loue Arthur, quoth she, take no displesure though you haue fianced a ladie, for certainly in the same proper houre ỳ ye fianced your Ladie, I was affianced to my loue, & my dere Lady quoth he, I require you who is that, and where is he? By the faith that I owe vnto you syr, I knowe full [illegible] where hee is. Well faire Ladie said Arthur, I praie you then shew him to me: surely syr that will I not doe as yet, but I promise you to shew him to you within these three daies next comming, and ỳu knowe you for certaine that hee resembleth you both in gate, in behauiour, in friendes, in gentlenesse, in fashion of bodie, and all other thinges. In the name of God sayd Arthur, I merualle greatlie: for by your wordes it should appeare that it is my selfe, for there cannot two persons bee resembled together, but there must be some faulte and difference. I beleeue you deuise these wordes by mee, howbeit I am troubled againe when I thinke how yee saie, that yee were affiaunted to daie, and howe that yee shall bee married to morrowe the same

houre that I shall be wedded in: as God helpe me sir saide Iehannet, it is truth, he resembleth you, without failing of anie point, verilie saide Arthur I cannot thinke whome it should be, and so they talked together so long, till it was time for him to depart, for he doubted to be blamed of his friends: So he toke leaue of the Ladies and departed, and as they rode Hector said to Arthur, sir, vndoubtedly this is a faire young ladie, right gratious, sweete, and of good behauiour, as God helpe me faire cosin saide Arthur, she is mine owne, howbeit she is a poore Damsell and hath nothing but that she hath of me. But by the faith I owe vnto my lord and father the Duke of Britaine, I loue hir better all naked, than she ye I shall haue with all the riches of the world, for I must take her against my will, and therefore cosin I am verilie purposed that as soone as this triumph is passed, and all straungers be departed, and mine vncle your father and all gone, then I think to aske license of my father to goe seeke aduentures in some strange countries, and to take with me onelie Gouernar, and to abide from home the space of fiue or sixe yeares, and so shall I leaue her that troubleth me, for in her companie in no wise I can abide. Trulie sir said Hector, and if that ye will thus doe, by the faith that I owe to you, I will depart with you, and neuer leaue you while I liue. Ah good cosin Hector, quoth he, it pleaseth me verie well to haue your companie, and heartelie I thanke you therefore. Howbet I beseech you keepe this thing secrete that it be not knowen till the time of our departure. And as soone as Arthur was departed from Iehannet, shee did send all about for minstrelles and instrumentes of musicke, and caused all the house to bee hanged with silke, and commaunded all her folkes to make as greate ioie as they could imagine. Arthur rode foorth still till hee came to Nauntes, whereas the Tables were couered to Supper, and the Duke sate him downe, and all the other Lordes, euerie one in his place, and they were serued right richlie & with greate ioie, and after supper they plaied and sported themselues,

eue-

euerie man as he best liked till it was time to goe to rest. For then it was past midnight, the Duke entered into his chamber, and Arthur Hector, and Governar went to sée Iehannet, & when they came nære to the place of the stang, they heard great noise and mirth of instruments, & found all the house newly hanged, and the Ladies araied with vestures of pleasure, & they found as great apparell as though a King should have come thether, and Iehannet was apparailed as though she should haue ben married incontinent: and when she heard that Arthur was come thether, shee came royally vnto him. It was a maruell thē to behold her she was so faire: as soone as Arthur saw her comming, his heart reioyced and he sayd vnto himselfe. Oh Iesu, a gentle and a gracious mæting is this, as God helpe me I had rather haue your compane then to be combred with her I must haue, and therewith he clipped her in his armes and sayd. My sweete loue, God that formed all the world send you a better daie then I haue had a night. Sir said Iehannet, God giue you as good a day as he hath done to me. For this same night I shal be with my louer: and God send you in likewise with yours. Certainly saide Arthur, I repute her not for my loue that I shall be with. But ye that shall be as ye saie with your louer, shall be nærer to my heart then she shall be. But I praie you sweete Iehannet shew me your louer, sir I haue alredie promised you that ye shal see him within these three daies, therefore I beseech you to abide till that season. With a good will said Arthur, and so tarried there so long till it was faire daie, and then it behoued him for to depart.

How Arthur wedded faire Perron, daughter to the Ladie Luke of Ostridge. And of the protestation that he made before all the Baronie.

Chapter. II.

C.tit. Now



NOwe sheweth the Historie howe that when Arthur, Hector & Gouernar wer departed from Iehannet, they came to the court, & by that time were al ỹ Lords, knights, and the rest risen from their rest, and the Archbishoppe of Tours was readie to say seruice, and solempnise the Matrimonie. Then the Duke and the Dutchesse and all the other Lords, Knights, Ladies, and Damselles, did conuaie Arthur and this Ladie Perron to the Church, and there in the sight of al the people, & in open audience Arthur said. I will that it be knowen that if euer I finde true such words as I haue heard of this Ladie, though I were wedded to her a hundred thousand times, yet I will leaue and vtterlie forsake her, and on that condition here I am nowe con-

tent

sent to take her to my wife, and no otherwise: and thereto agreed her mother and al other of their friends, and so with great solempnitie they were wedded together, and greate was the feast and ioie that then was made in all the citie, Ladies and damsells did daunce, and made greate ioie and mirth, and made garlands and tokens, and did giue them to Lords and knights in the sight of loue.

How this Ladie Luke of Ostridge sent for Iehannet, and caused her secretly the first night to lie with Arthur, because that Perron was no maide, to the intent that Arthur should not perceiue it. Chap. 12.

WE must vnderstand how that Ladie Luke during all this season that this great ioy & mirth was made, was in great thought in her heart because she knew well that her daughter Perron was no maide, therfore she doubted greatly to haue reproch, therefore she knewe not what was best for her to doe. So at the last she called to her one of her owne knightes whom she trusted best in all her businesse, and shewed vnto him all the demeanour of Perron, and desired him to giue her in that behalfe the best counsaile that he knew, for she sawe well how that Arthur woulde faine find some cause by her, to the intent that he might be departed from her companie: For sir, quoth she, if Arthur finde her to be no maid, then I doubt me of infamy, therfore I require you for Gods loue to counsaile me in this case. Then this knight, who had to name sir Aunsell, answered & said, madame sith it is thus the case must be suffered as rasilie as it maye bee, for when the deede is done it is time to take counsaile both sage and secret. I shal tell you what we wil do, here by is dwelling at the stang in the forrest a poore damsell, right faire and young, who hath to mother an auncient Lady, and I thinke verily she be a good maide: send vnto hir mother some of your money, & promise to doe much for her, so that she will lend you her daughter, for this first night to lie with Arthur till midnight be past.

And I thinke verily ye shal haue her if she be wisely intreated and secretly: & then if ye haue her, when Perron should be laide in the bed, she shall be in her stede till that Arthur be a sleepe, and then she shall rise, and so Perron shall lye downe by Arthur. O sir, said the Ladie, for Gods sake remember to bring this matter about. Take my chariot and fiue hundred pounds of gold, and beare it vnto her mother, and shew her how I shall giue her large lands and rentes, and shall marrie her daughter right highly, so that I maye haue hir this night. Then incõtinently this knight leapt on his horse, and toke with him the golde and the Chariot, and caused it to be couered, and rode vnto the sang, whereas he found this faire Ladie and her daughter, & did salute them right curteously, and drew them a part, and said to the Ladie. Madame I am come hether to you from my ladie Luke of Dstridge, who right tenderly sendeth greeting vnto you, as she that from hence forth will be your especiall louer & friend, and aboue all other will loue and honour you, and in the signe of loue she hath sent you fiue hundred ponnds of golde: and furthermore promiseth to giue you great lands and goods, and to marie right highly Iehannet your daughter, so that you will doe her that curtesie and pleasure now at this time, as to send your daughter to her, to the intent to lie this first night with Arthur of Britaine til midnight. For ỳ case is so, that Perron her daughter is not in so good point as she would she were, for she hath trespassed with another knight. Therefore good Ladie I humblie require you for to be her special louer and friend in this matter, for great charitie it is for one Ladie to saue the worship & honour of another. Then said the Ladie, I thanke my Ladie Luke for the great loue and honour that she presenteth to me, if her wer either loue or honour in this case, sir knight as me thinketh, heere lacketh loue when she requireth my shame and dishonour, for she wold that I should sell to her my daughter for her money, certainely that I shall neuer doe it. I die therfore, I praie you beare her againe this money, and God giue her good aduenture. Then Iehannet

said vnto her mother. Madame, for Gods sake be ye not displeased with my wordes, for saying your grace, the desire that this knight maketh is no selling of me, for my Ladie Luke is a great and noble Princesse. Therfore her reproch should be more spoken of, then if she wer of a meane estate, and all women ought to endeauour to couer and hide such matters, and also to helpe and sustaine the blame & defame of other, and this Ladie requireth not your discredit, for she doth it to hide her owne dishonour. Truly daughter quoth the Ladie, the mother that demeaneth not wisely her childe is to be blamed, and if my Ladie Luke haue not kept this Ladie Perron her daughter, as curiously and as wisely as I haue done you, by the which negligence she is nowe run into folly and daunger, let her take it in good worth & thank no bodie but her selfe. Madame said Iehannet, it is a hard thing to ouercome youth, if this Ladie Perron haue done amisse, yet remember how she hath bene easily and sweetly nourished, and euerie creature desirous to serue her flourishing youth. For Gods sake madame beholde the might of loue, by whom she was ouercome, for she loued and was loued againe: remember also the greate ease wherein shee hath all her youth bene nourished. In the which one came and put into her heart amorous loue. Madame if I trespasse I aske mercie, for by the faith that I owe to you, I will fulfill the pleasure of my Ladie Luke, in sauing of her honor I shal put mine in icopardy: howbeit sir knight, take againe your money, for if I should take money I shoulde sell my bodie, the which I will not doe, for that I do is freely for the loue of my Ladie Luke, and she shall doe me good when it shall please her best. Then her mother said to her, sith ye will needs doe as ye list, and if ye follow folie take the aduenture that will fall therof. For much better worth is a woman poore and true, than welthy and rich: ye shall not goe for me nor by my will. For honour surmounteth all things. Madame that ye saie is of troth, howbeit I require you to hold your and let me alone. Sir knight, let vs depart, we tarrie ouerlong: mine owne faire Damsell [illegible]

the knight, I humblie thanke you, and for certaine I ensure you ye shall be right highly rewarded, and thereto I will be pledge. Then the knight left the gold there for all that Iehannet could doe: and so Iehannet mounted into the chariot and rode foorth, and when they were come to the Court, the Ladie Luke receiued her priuelie, and kept her till it was time to goe to bedde, and then priuelie they laid Iehannet in the bed in the stéd of Perron, and the curtaines of the bed were hanged betwéene the light and her, and then came Arthur and the Duke his Father, and then the Duke said, sonne Arthur, you shall giue to Perron your wife this night the Charter of her endowrie, wherein is comprised the land of the Citie of Saintes and of Pois, attaining to the bounds of Gasgoine. And also ye shal giue her this ring, with this rich and precious Emeraulde, this dowrie amounteth to the summe of ten thousand pounds by annuall rent, then it was time for Arthur to goe to bed, and when he was going thereto, the Ladie Luke saide to him, Déere sonne Arthur I require you that ye speake this night as little as ye maie to Perron my daughter, for shee is somewhat shamefast. Well madame quoth Arthur, with a right good will, and so he went to bed.

How Iehannet who was a bedde with Arthur in the steed of his wife Perron, before she would suffer him to touch her, demaunded her dowrie. Chap 13.

When Arthur was thus a bed, he began to drawe néere to his wife as he thought. Then Iehannet counterfaited her speech, and saide softlie. Sir it is so ere ye touch me, I will know what shal be mine dowrie, I require you sir first assigne it to me first, then shall I be readie to fulfill all your commaundement. Then Arthur take the Charter and the ring, and deliuered it to Iehannet, and saide, my Ladie Perron ye shall haue a faire dowrie, for it draweth néere to the summe of tenne thousand pound: and so did put

the ring vpon one of her fingers: My right dere Lord said Iehannet, I humblie thanke you, and so toke the Charter and the ring and laide them vp priuely vnder the beddes side. So thus was Iehannet most part of the night with Arthur in great ioie and mirth vntill the time that Arthur fell a slæpe, for he had not slept of all the night before: and while that he thus slept, Iehannet priuelie rose, and tooke with her the Charter of Perrons dowrie, and came to the Ladie Luke, and incontinent she was conueied againe priuely to the stang to her mother, and then was Perron put softly into the bed to Arthur, who waked not till it was faire daie, when he was waked he sawe where Perron laie fast a sleepe by him, for she had not slept of all the night till then.

How Arthur, Hector, and Gouernar, went early in the morning to see Iehannet at the stang, who shewed vnto Arthur all the treason of his wife, & how that she had lien with him all that night in the steed of Perron, whereof he greatly merualled. Chap. 14.

AND when Arthur sawe her so sleepe, he let her lie, and rose faire and softly. And at that time there were none in all the Pallaice out of their beds, for it was about thrée of the clocke, saue onely Hector and Gouernar, and when Arthur sawe them he curteouslie bad them good morrow, and said, sirs I praie you let vs leape vpon our horses, and goe see Iehannet, wherewith they said they were well content, & so rode forth til they came to the stang, at which time Iehannet was laide on her bedde in her clothes, and fallen a slæpe, couered with a mantell of grëne. But shée awaked when she heard that Arthur was come, and rose vp halfe slæping, and set her vpon her bed side, and therewith Arthur came into the chamber, & incontinently as she saw him, she ware greatly ashamed & blushed, & cast down her loke to ỹ earth, wherof Arthur had great maruell & said, what cheere make you faire Iehannet, ye were wont to come clip & kisse me, and make me greate mirth, and nowe it semeth

ye be halfe slæpie, what is the cause ye be risen so early, and slæp this clothed on your bed; sir said Iehannet it behoueth me so to doe, for I was nære to my Lord and loyer, when it was conuenient for me to rise: and how faire ladie was it your lord & loue did not retain you stil, for I meruaile y he would suffer you to rise from him so early, certainly syr, when I rose he was a slæpe. O sweete loue, why did ye not then wake him, certainly said she, I thought not to doe him so much trouble: Then it seemeth faire Iehannet that yee loue him, certainely that is more true then all the world. O faire Ladie, is that he which you haue said should marry you, certainly sir, yea, and this night he hath lyen with me: well faire Ladie, I praie you what hath he giuen you for your dowry, sir he hath endowed me right richly, for he hath giuen me well nære ten thousand pound by annuall rent. Ten thousand pound said Arthur that is a great gifte. It seemeth then he is a right noble man and a rich, and hath great friends, Perron my wife hath no greater a dowrie. Sir I cannot tell what she hath, but I am put in possession thereof by a charter and a faire ring: by my faith quoth Arthur, the same possession haue I giuen Perron my wife. But I pray you Iehannet shew me your charter & ring, sir with a right good will. Then she toke a bore that was at hir beddes side and did open it and deliuered it to Arthur, and when he sawe it, he knew right well the seale of his father, and loked on the ring, and knew it right well, whereat hee greatlye meruailed. Then he called vnto him Pector and Gouernar, and demaunded of them if they knew that seale or not, sir said they this is the seale of my Lord your Father. O God quoth Arthur, sweete Iehannet tell me where had you this Ring and Charter, sir you deliuered it out of your owne hands to mine. Of my deliuerance quoth Arthur, I praie you sayze ladie where was that, certainly syr in your bed: in my bed, and when? as God helpe me sir this same last night. And how faire lady may I haue perfect knowledge thereof: mine owne dære lord and loue, may it please you to remember that when ye wer a bed you wold

haue

yaue bad me to fulfill your pleasure: but first I desired of you to know what shoulde be my dowrie, & you answered me, that ye had giuen me the citie of Saintes and of Pois, and all the countrie pertaining to the bounds of Gascoin, & this ring ye did put on my finger, and then deliuered me this charter. In the name of God quoth Arthur, these tokens beare witnesse, that all which you say is true: but I require you sweete loue tell me how ye came into my bed? Sir, knowe ye for a truth, that Perron your wife was no maide, for before this time she had bene faultie: and there she shewed vnto him, how that ladie Luke of Oltrige doubted greatly to haue reproch, wherefore she sent sir Aunsell her trustie knight vnto my mother and me, and fiue hundred pound of golde, all which is here as you may see: and furthermore she shewed to him all the conference of the knight and her mother, and how in conclusion she went to the court, and by the ladie Luke was brought into his bed, in steed of his wife Perron and how about midnight when he was a sleepe, she priuely rose from him, and then Perron came into the bedde. When Arthur had heard all this processe, he meruailed much thereat, howbeit he greatly reioiced thereof in his heart, and friendlye imbraced and kissed Iehannet saying, faire loue, ye spake full true to me, when you shewed me, that you had ben all night with your louer, and truly so haue ye ben, for I assure you I am your faithfull louer, and am right glad of this aduenture, for nowe shalll you abide still with me, and she that hath wrought this treason against me shall depart with sorrow & shame, therefore keepe surely this ring and charter, and when I send for you, be not dismaied, but boldly come to me apparailed in the best manner that ye can, and your mother also. Sir with a right good will saide Iehannet, howbeit I require your noblenesse not to be miscontent with me for this deede, nor to thinke that I did it for anie wanton or sensuall appetite, for I take god to recorde I did it for no intent but onely for the singular loue that I haue to you, & that by this meanes you might haue knowledge of ȳ false

demea-

demeanour of your wife, for I would rather haue suffered my selfe to haue bene drawen with wilde horses, than I would haue consented to haue done this deede with anie other creature liuing, for other louer then you bee, will I not haue, nor euer had. O my deere Ladie saide Arthur, I pray God I liue neuer longer if I shoulde for this matter thinke anie ill in you, for of right I ought to thanke you as much as all my pleasure in this world commeth to, for if you hadde not bene, I should haue continued my daies with dolour and gelousie, wherof I am now discharged by your meanes. I will now vtterly forsake her companie, and so shall I liue out of doubt and trouble, and you shall haue me as faithfull and true as euer ye had, e better if it might be, and so right gently he toke his leaue and departed, and rode forth deuising and talking with Hector and Gouernar of this matter. And Hector saide to him, as God helpe me cousin Arthur this great treason that is done to you, shall surely be reuenged, for by the grace of God, yet before Easter nexte comming I will ouer runne her Countrie with banners displaied, and leaue standing neither Castell nor tower vpright, but beate them downe to the earth, and by the faith that I owe vnto God almightie, if she wer a man as she is a woman, I would neither eate nor drinke, till I had striken her head from her sholders. Well friend quoth Arthur, this matter must be wisely handled. So these gentle Knightes rode forth, deuising on this matter till they came to Nauntes, and then they went to the Pallaice, at which time all the Lords and Knights were readie apparailed, and there was so great ioye and mirth, that it was meruaile to thinke thereon. When the Duke saw Arthur his son he began to smile, & demaunded of him whether his wife wer dead, nay sir quoth ỳ Earle of Anjou, I think she sleepeth fast in her bed: well my Lordes quoth Arthur faire & softly, ther are other things that ye know litle of, & to his father he said: sir, & it please you, you haue maried me, & giuen me the charter of ỳ dowrie of Perron my wife, & also a ring with a flaming Emeraulde, sir I know not whether

there

there be in this charter anie thing which ought to be amẽ-
ded, therefore I woulde not though otherwise come of mẽ
than well, that Perron should lose her dowrie for lacke of
formall making. Therfore I require you let the charter bee
brought forth & read openly in the presence of mine vncles
and of the Archbishop, & if it ought to be amended, I beseech
you let it be reformed by them: it is wel said son quoth the
Duke, where is it? sir said he, Perron hath it, for I deliue-
red it her the last night. Let it be sent for good neuewe said
the Earle of Bloys. Then the ladie Luke and Perron wer
brought forth to the duke, who said, daughter Perron, Ar-
thur your husband hath a care for your profitte, therefore
bring forth ỳ charter of your dowrie that Arthur gaue you
this night, & if it ought to be reformed it shal be amended:
sir said Perron it sufficeth me verie well as it is, for I am
therwith right well content: well daughter said the Duke,
yet because it pleseth me, let it be seene & read. Sir quod she,
in truth I haue it not, why wher is it then quoth the duke,
surely said she, I haue sent it by a trustie messẽger into my
owne countrie. Well faire daughter quoth the Duke haue
you no doubt nor feare thereof, for here is none that would
beguile you, and therefore bring it forth before me. Here-
with Gouernar stepped forth, his hart was so great for the
wrong that was done to Arthur his master, that he could
not abstain nor forbeare any longer, but in open audience
he said to the duke, sir it is so that ye haue married my lord
your sonne to such a woman as ought not to be receiued in
matrimonie with so great a gentleman as he is: for she is
a woman dishonoured in euerie noble mans Court, as one
that hath abandoned her will vnto another man, beside my
lord Arthur, as it well appeareth, for she hath defiled her
bodie with another knight: & therefore this night she cau-
sed a damsell who was a true maid to lie by my lord: and to
proue that this I saye is true beholde heere this knight sir
Aunsell, who conueyed the damsell, and left with her mo-
ther v C. pound in golde which the ladie Luke of Dstridge
sent vnto hir, and when he had brought this Damsell, shee

was

was laide in bed with my lorde Arthur: howbeit she was not so foolish, but ere she would suffer him to touch her, she demanded her dowrie, who deliuered to her the Charter and the ring thinking no ill: and to verefie this thing, send for the damsell, and then shall ye know by her own mouth all the troth how my Lord was betraied. Then incontinently this damsell was sent for and her mother also, & when Iohannet was come there, openly she declared all ỹ matter, and shewed forth the charter and the ring. Then was the Duke and Duchesse greatly dismaied, and all the other Lords and friends of Arthur. Then stept forth sir Aunsell and cast his gloue against this damsell, saying, that he neuer went to fetch that maide, nor brought the forsaid monie to her, and that he would proue against anie that durst saie the contrarie. Therwith the gentle Hector came forth, and cast his gloue against the Knight in the damsells quarell, and said he would proue that he falsly lied like a traitor: and as for you ladie Luke of Ditrige I assure you, ye haue not in all your countrie, castell nor tower so strõg, but I will breake them downe to the earth, and from henceforth repute me for your enimie, for surely so I am & will be: and sir Duke I beseech you receiue my gloue against this Knight, who hath falsely and traiterously deceiued my cousin Arthur. Sir quoth Gouernar, ye shall not doe so, for it is against reason that so high a person as you be, shoulde haue battaile with such a false traitour, sith there be other to take the quarrell in hand: this matter toucheth my lord, and I am his man, and haue norished him vp in his youth, therefore I ought to defende his right. Wherewith he cast downe his gloue and said, most honourable Duke receiue my gage, and do iustice to my Lord your sonne, for I saie that this damsel saith true in euerie thing, and this Knight falslie lieth, and that I will proue with my bodie against his: and therewith the Knight receiued Gouernars gage. And by the Knights the battaile was iudged to be held the next daie following without anie longer delay.

How

How Gouernar vanquiſhed in battaile ſir Aunſell, & cauſed him to confeſſe the treaſon, and how hee brought Iehannet from the ſtang to lie all night with Arthur. Cap. 15.



When the battaile was thus determined to bee on the next daie, Hector was not content in his minde, becauſe his gage was not receiued, ſo in this manner for that daie they went to their reſts: & the next morning betimes Arthur and Gouernar, and al the other Lords his friends, went to Church to heare ſeruice, and there Gouernar did firſt offer, and after him all the reſt, and when the ſeruice was ended, Arthur led Gouernar to his chamber to bee armed. When hee was ſurelye armed he leapt on a mightie courſer, and Arthur and Hector were armed and mounted on their horſes to keep the field, ſo the intent that ther ſhuld

be no treason, & the Earle of Blois went to the place where as they shoulde fight, by that time was sir Aunsell armed, & came into the place, so then ther was brought forth a booke, whereon Gouernar did sweare that sally and vntruly Iehannet the damsell of the stang, was brought by sir Aunsel vnto the court, & by his aduice put into the bed to Arthur, in stæd of Perron his wife, and when he had thus sworne, he kissed the booke, and rose vp like an hardie knight. Then sir Aunsell did sweare with great feare and trouble, howe that Gouernar said by him vntruly, and he rose with great trouble and paine, so that all the people which saw him said that he had an euill countenaunce and seemed to bee in the wrong. When they were both mounted on their horses, it was cried by an Herald of armes that each of them should do their best. Then said Arthur to Gouernar, now my good friend, acquite you like a valiant knight, and so these two drew a part either from other, & placed their speares in the rests, and dashed their spurs to their horses sides, and met together so fiercely that they broke their Speares to theyr hands like hardie knights, and full of great valure, howbebeit sir Aunsel was not to be compared with Gouernar, for Gouernar had ben a man greatly renowmed: and after the breaking of their Speares they past by, but spædely returning, they set their hands to their swoords, and Gouernar stroke sir Aunsell so fiercely, that he brake his shielde to the buckle, and brake a greate parte of his harneis, so that the swoord entered deepe into the flesh, & sir Aunsel stroke Gouernar againe on the helme, and brake with the stroke many barres therof, and the stroke glaunced downe on the left side, and tooke awaie a great part of his harneis to the sadle, but God kept him that it entred not into the flesh. Then Gouernar flourished about his swoord, and stroke sir Aunsell on the top his helme, and cut it to the hard circle of the stæle, and the stroke glanced downe by the shæld so furiously that he clane it to the middest, and with the stroke the swoord did light on the necke of his horse, wherewith being sore wounded, he fell downe to the earth, when sir Aunsell

felt his horse fallen vnder him, he leapt on his feete with his sword in his hand, wherefore he was of some greatly praised, and other did greatly commend the stroke of Gouernar. But when Gouernar saw him on the earth, he thought not to run on his enimie with his horse, he being of foote, therefore incontinently he did alight downe on foot, and put his sheeld before him, and went towarde his enimie, and gaue him such a stroke that he cut awaie part of his cheeke, and the stroke descended to his shoulder, & wounded him to the hard bones, wherwith sir Aunsel was constrained to kneele and well neere to fall. Then all the Lordes said that there was none could long endure the strokes of Gouernar, and therwith Arthur laughed heartely, so that Gouernar heard him, wherby his heart doubled in courage. When sir Aunsell felt himselfe thus hardly bestead, he sware in his mind that he would be auenged of that stroke, and therewith lift vp his sword to haue striken Gouernar, but when he sawe the stroke comming, he put his shield before him & marked well how sir Aunsell had his arme aloft, and with a crosse blow he stroke him vnder the armour so strongly, that his arme and sword and all flew into the field. Wherewith sir Aunsell had so much paine ỹ he fell to the earth in a trance, and Gouernar leapt to him to haue striken off his head, but he cried for Gods sake for mercie. Then came the duke and Arthur, Hector, and other Lordes and knightes, and in the presence of them all he recounted all the treason, and howe that he went for Iehannet, & brought her to his lady Luke, and how that he was of counsaile that she should be laid in bed with Arthur in the sted of Perron. Then he had iudgement for his trespasse as he hadde deserued, and Gouernar was led home by Arthur and Hector, and vnarmed, whome they found without anie hurt, whereof they thanked God, & Iehannet had as great ioie as anie creature could haue, and she embraced and kissed Gouernar oftentimes with merry hart. Then all the other Earles and Barons came to Gouernar, and demaunded him how he dyd. He answered & said, right well thanked be God, & that he felt no hurt,

the same very houre the Ladie Luke departed sodainly out of the court, and her daughter Perron with her, greatly ashamed, and when they were in the field on their waie, the Ladie Luke said vnto her daughter. This great shame that we haue hast thou caused, for now we shall neuer haue honour, nor be reputed honourable, and therwith bitterly she wept, whereof Perron toke so great inward thought, that she died within xx. daies after, and so thereby Arthur was again at liberty, and Iehannet from thencefoorth remained still in the Court with the Dutchesse, and was right well beloued with euerie creature, and the Duke and Dutchesse were well content that she should keepe still the dowrie that Arthur had giuen her, and so shee kepte it till such time as Arthur caused her to be a crowned Quéene, and gaue her Gouernar in mariage, as it is more plainly shewed in this present booke.

How Arthur demaunded lisence of his father and mother to depart out of his owne Countrie, for he would go seeke aduentures, to shew thereby his force and proweſſe. Chapter. 16.

After the end of fiftéene daies, tidings came vnto the duke and Arthur that the faire Perron was deceased & departed out of this world, of ỹ which tidings Arthur had great ioy, and especially Iehannet, howbeit the Duke for his honor and worship, caused her obsequie to be kept right solempnly in the Church, & then after this the court departed, & euery man repaired into their owne countries, sauing onelye Hector, who remained stil with Arthur, & so in great ioy they continued with the Duke, and Arthur when it pleased him toke his pleasure with the faire Iehannet. It fortuned on a night that Arthur, Hector, and Gouernar, were all three lodged in one chamber, and that night Arthur was sore troubled in his sléepe, and turned and sighed many times. So that Hector and Gouernar heard him, and saide eache to other, Arthur is

is not well at ease, let vs goe wake him, and then Gouernar awaked him & asked him what he ailed. O friende Gouernar said Arthur, I haue bene sore troubled in my sleepe, for I dreamed that I was farre out of this Countrie. Ah sir said Hector, we ought to go into straunge countries, for before this time yee haue promised vs to doe, therefore set your minde no longer to tarrie at home, but shortly let vs depart: as God help me cosin said Arthur, the daie is come, so that if I might haue the citie of Paris I would tarrie no longer, for to morrow will I aske lisence of my father and of my mother, and will haue with me no more companie but you and Gouernar, and Jaket my Squire. Sir sayde Gouernar, ye saie well, for a young man without paine is little worth, howbeit I doubt me greatly that ye shall get no leaue. Verily said Arthur, I will assaie to morrow, and so they laie still all that night till it was daie. Then arose Arthur and his companie, and when the Duke was vp, Arthur came before him with his hat in his hand, and kneeled downe to the earth, and humblie required both his Father and mother that it woulde please them to giue him lisence to trauaile a season out of that countrie, wherwith in their mindes they were sore displeased, & intreated him as much as they might to leaue this enterprise, but in no wise they could turne his minde, and at the last with sore weeping they gaue him licence, and enquired of him with whom hee would be accompanied. Right deere father, I will haue no other companie, but onely my cosin Hector and Gouernar, and Jaket my Squire. Well sonne (said he) sith ye will not abide take with you gold and siluer at your pleasure. Then Gouernar came to Arthur and demaunded of him what space it would be or he would returne into his owne countrie. Verily quoth Arthur, the space of fiue yeares. So when and the these tidings were spread abroade in the court, and all about the countrie, how that Arthur would depart, and tarrie out fiue yeares, and at the last Jehannet heard thereof, where with all her blood trembled, and she ran out of her chamber to the Pallace whereas the Duke and Duc-

chelle were together weeping, and then she perceiued well how it was truth, wherewith her life neere failed, and shee fell downe in a deadly traunce in the armes of her mother. and beeing reuiued, she cried and said, O Arthur my sweet loue, with this iourney shall thy poore Orphane lose her good Lord and chiefe father: Ah Arthur my deare heart will ye thus leaue mee? When the Duke sawe her make this great lamentation, his hearte melted, and he rendered many a fait teare from his eies, and in this season Gouernar prepared all such necessarye thinges as was needfull for their iourney. Then Arthur toke leaue of his father and mother, who were right sorrowfull of his departing, & then he went to Iehannet to take his leaue of her, and as soone as she sawe him she ranne and toke him in her armes, and said right sorrowfully, O good sir, the ease of my heart, and the comfort of my life, how can you finde in your heart to leaue me poore Orphane. When Arthur heard her speake so lamentablie, it touched his heart nearer then all the sorrow both of his father and mother, and of all his kinne. But finallie he commended her to God, and said, Sweete Ladie I require you to praie to God for me, for I promise you if I liue I will doe more good and honour then euer yet I did, and so kissing her sweetly he departed, and mounted on his horse, being in a garment couered all with greene, girt about with a red lase, and both hee and Hector, and Gouernar, were all in a suite in skarlet hosen, and each of them a garland on their heads, like young lustie louers. They rode so long till they were out of the Towne, then Arthur entered into a great thought, and rode musing along space, which when Hector sawe, he called Gouernar to him, and said: Friend, see ye not how Arthur rideth musing, I think it best we breake him out of his thought, so there with Hector called Arthur, and demaunding of him what hee ailed to ride so sadly: and when Arthur heard him, hee turned his head to him warde, and saide; Cosin I praie you come ride heere by my side, and you Gouernar on the other side. Beeing betweene them he sayde, friendes I haue mused all

this while of my dreame that I hadde the laſt night when yee awaked mee, I tolde you parte and not all, and ſurelie it is the chiefe cauſe wherefore I haue taken vppon mee this iourney: Hearken to mee and I ſhall ſhewe you my whole dreame, for I can hide nothing frō you: this laſt night when I was in my firſt ſleepe, me thought I was in the moſt faireſt Pallace in all the world, where I ſawe a freſh Fountaine, and me thought the beautie of it cauſed mee to ſit downe on the brimme thereof, and with the faire cleere water thereof waſhed my face and handes: finallie I caſt vp mine eies aloft, and on my right hand me thought I ſawe the richeſt pauillion pight that euer was ſeene, and in the toppe of this Pauillion was an Eagle of golde, the richeſt and fayreſt that coulde be deuiſed, and me thought I ſawe this Eagle come downe and light on my boſome, and ſhewed me ſo greate a ſigne of loue, that it pleaſed mee ſo much, as I could not bee ſatiſfyed with beholding thereof, and me thought it flickered about me with her winges, in token of greate affection, and at the laſt me thought I ſawe come to mee ward, a greate Griffon foule and horrible, and he brought with him a greate multitude of Serpents, wherewith all the earth about me was couered, and would haue taken from me mine Eagle, who was afeard, and kept her euer by mee, and loked on mee louinglie, as though ſhe would haue ſaid, Arthur keepe mee. And then me thought I tooke my ſworde in my hande, and fought with this Griffon and all theſe ſerpents, by whome mee thought I ſuffered much paine and greate perill, but at the laſt me thought there came a Turtle to helpe mee, and brought with her manie Doues. And out of another parte I ſawe where came a Sparhauke, accompanied with many Fawlkons, and all theſe did ſuccour me, ſo that we ſlew the Griffon and all the other ſerpents, and ſodainely me thought that the Eagle, and the Turtle, and I, were in a high tower, and both you and Hector and Gouernar with me, and by vs my thought people without number, then me thought there was a Lyon and foure greate Leopardes,

and all they did encline themselues to me ward, and did me great honour, and they were all crowned with golde, & mee thought they gaue the Eagle frælye to mee, and she pleased me so well that I woulde neuer haue departed by my will from her companie, and euer sith I awaked, my heart and loue hath bene set on that Eagle, that I cannot drawe my minde from her, for I loue her so entirely, that so long as I liue I shall neuer cease to labour and trauaile till I haue found her, and is the verie cause wherefore I am departed out of mine owne countrie. Uerilie sir said Gouernar, this betokeneth that great honour shal come to you, for ye know well the Lion, who as ye thought did giue you the Eagle, is a beast roiall. For the Lion is the king of all beasts, and the Eagle is king of all foules. So the signification thereof is, that a King shall giue you a Quæne, howbeit great paine shall be first suffer: & the Griffon that wold haue taken your Eagle, betokeneth some great man that wold haue her that shall be giuen to you, and therefore it shall behoue you to conquere her with the swoorde, and I Gouernar your seruaunt am hee that neuer will faile you while I liue, no more will I cosin said Hector, by the faith that I owe vnto my Lord my father. Friends said Arthur I heartely thank you, and so they rode forth on their waie, and because yee shall vnderstand the signification of the Eagle and the Lyon, therefore we will leaue speaking of Arthur & his companie a while riding on their iourney, and ye shall heare of this Eagle till time serue that wee retourne againe to Arthur.

How the mightie king of Sorolois called Emendus, held open Court in his Realme, where as was foure puisaunt kings, who were all his subiects, where yee shall heare of things meruailous. Chap. 17.

About the time that Arthur thus rode as ye haue heard heare before, there was in the realme of Sorolois a king, the which realme is in Inde the more, ioyning to the great

sea called Erythinium, and also to the red sea betwéen Mesopotamia and Persia. This king was called Emendus, béeing right puissaunt of honour and friends, for he hadde vnder him foure Kings, mightie and valiaunt, who were to him obedient, and held all their Realmes of him. Whereof the first was the King of Orquenie, which land is on the one side of Babylon, and extendeth to the red sea, and this Countrie was full of Gyants. The second was King of the Realme of Normall, which is in the land of Sodome and Gomorre, and it extendeth to the region ioyning to the red sea: & this King might well bring into battaile more then a hundred fighting men. The third had the gouernment of the realme of Calefound, a verie obscure and darke land, the people whereof are as blacke as sote, and it extendeth into the Orient, whereas the Sunne riseth, the which people were greatly feared in battaile, for they were without pittie, and did eate rawe flesh like dogges. The fourth king was of the realme of Ismaelite, which extendeth into Aegypt, and vnto the land of Femene. These four kings wer subiects to the mightie king of Sorolois, Emendus, who had to wife a noble Ladie named Fenice, by the reason of the countrie that she was borne in. For it was named Fenicia, because in that countrie bred a birde that was called Phenix, and in all the world there is neuer but one, and as it is said when she is olde & auncient, ther maketh her neast of drie thornes on the toppe of an high mountaine, as nære the Sunne as she can, so that by the heat of the Sunne the neast quickeneth and flameth on fire, and then she burneth her selfe, and of her ashes there is another Phenix ingendered. This Ladie Fenice wife to King Emendus, was Quéene by inheritance of the clære Tower, the which was a noble and rich Citie, and by great force hadde subdued the Citie of Comeine, of Constantinople, of Cornite, of Macedonie, of Phesale, of Boeme, & of all the Countrie of Denmarke. She was a right high and mightie Princesse, and both good and vertuous, so that it was hard to haue founde one Ladie comperable to her: and it fortuned in the frel e

and merrie moneth of Maie, at the feaſt of Pentiroſt, that King Emendus held open Court at the Citie of Cornite, at the which feaſt wer theſe foure afore ſaid Kings, and all the ſeauen Pæres of his Realme, and this feaſt was great, & the Court full of people, & the firſt daie of this feaſt the king Emendus was in his Pallaice leaning on a Scepter of gold ỳ he helde in his hand, and about him there ſtod theſe foure Kings, and his ſeauen Pæres, accompanied with the high and mightie Duke of Alatre, and xviiii Earles, and his noble Quæne Fenice ſate by him great with child, and nære to the time of her deliueraunce, and the king of Orqueney beheld her well, who was her nære coſin, and ſaid: Madame me thinke it ſhould bee mæter for your grace from hencefoꝛth to drawe to that place where the king will that you ſhall take your chamber, for I thinke your time approcheth on faſt. In dæde coſin ſaid the Quæne, yee ſaie right truely, howbeit I knowe not as yet where my Lorde will that I ſhall lie. Hæreto the King anſwered and ſaid: In dæde as yet I am not determined in what place yee ſhall lie in. Then ſaid the king of Normall, who was a ſage Prince, ſir I wil counſaile you to let the quæne lie at the Port Noire, & when ſhe is deliuered, let the child be borne to the hil of aduentures, & if ye do thus, I think ye ſhall do wiſely. By my faith quoth ỳ King of Walefound I know not what to ſaie in this matter, whether it were beſt to beare the childe thether or not, for this is your firſt childe, and it is harde to tell what deſtinie the child ſhall haue, for if it be good, then were it well done that it were borne thether, but peraduenture the aduentures of this childe may be ſuch that it were better it were hidden & kept ſecrete, then be openlie knowen. For inchaunce lieth oftentimes as well euill as good. Wel quoth the King Emendus, Madame I will that yee goe to the Port Noire, and when ye be deliuered I will haue the child borne vp to the mount perillous, there to know what deſtinie the childe ſhall haue.

The

The description of the scituation and fashion of the mount Perillous, which was conquered by the proweſſe of Arthur. Chap. 18.



IN this mount Perillous there was a Caſtle named the Port Noire, this caſtle was right ſtrong and of greate ſurenesſe, & it was ordained by Proſerpina, who was one of the Queenes of the Fairie, and the ſcituation of this caſtle was ſuch, that ten leagues of length there ran a greate riuer about the circuit of this caſtle, which was ſo deep frō the earth, & bankes ſo high, that ſcant the water might bee ſeene running vnderneath, & it ran ſo ſwiftly, that whoſoeuer entered into it, was vtterlye periſhed, it was blacker then Smiths water, and ſmelled loathſomely: Alſo it was full of craggie and ſharpe Rockes, ſwarming with vermin,

vermine, this riuer enuironed the Castle on euerie side: adioyning to this riuer there was about the castle mountaines so high, that no creature could attaine to the toppe of them, neither on horsebacke nor on foote, and they were so bare and hard, that the birdes with great paine could scant raise or get any grasse, or sustenance on them, & among these mountaines there was a passage about the largenesse of a chariot waie, whereby one might go and enter into the castle, and in certaine places there were Barbicanes that defended the entrie from all people, and vnder these mountaines there was a great marrish deepe and foule, so that none might enter into it, but incontinent he was lost and perished, for there were pits of water innumerable, so that it seemed in a maner to be an arme of the sea, howbeit ther was neither barke nor ship that might abide in it: and this marrishe was so deepe, that it might well bee thought that it attained downe to the depth and entrailes of the earth, the which marrish endured well nigh the largnesse of two leagues, wherein there was a passage of the breadth of a Speare length, made by Nigromancie, wheron there were thirtie drawe bridges: and so this marrish enuironed the castle ouer all partes, and the mountaines compassed the marrish, and the riuers the mountaines, so that it was impossible to be assaulted, besieged, or wonne: The castle also was closed with double walles made of chalke stone and sand, and great barres and crampones of yron and steele fixed in Lead: the Walles were xb foote thicke, and xxxb of height, enuironed with three hundred Towers, cramped & knit together with great chaines of yron, & the bulwarkes were bended and bordered with steele. To saie the trouth, this castle of the port Noyre, doubted not al the world: & in this castle wer halls of strange aduentures, where no creature might enter without death, and many Knightes had there perished, which toke on them to vndoe the enchauntments of that place, but in conclusion all such there died & finished their mortall liues. For none could euer bring the aduentures to an end, saue onely Arthur of Britaine, as ye

shall

shall after heare. And before the gates of this Castle, a little higher on the hill, there were pallaices, hals, and chambers, with great and high strong battlements, whereas foure Kings might well haue bene harboured, and to these pallaices men might go surely without anie perill, for thether came all such as passed through the Countrie: and out of this pallaice, men might go to the mount of aduentures, whereas the foure Quænes of the Fairie walked euerie night, and did much hurt to them that came there agaynst their wills: and to this hill accustomably these ladies came nightly. The chiefe of them was called Proserpina a fresh young ladie, and faire without comparison: for if the beauties of all the women in the worlde had bene ioyned together in one person, yet she shoulde not haue had the fourth part of ỹ beautie that Proserpina had, who was ỹ quæne and ladie of the other thre, and the chiefe ladie of this Castell of the Port Noyre, and of the mount perillous, whereas she had pight a rich pauilion with a displaied Eagle of golde on the top thereof, which was the same Eagle that Arthur saw in his dreame: and in an other Tent by, was the white shæld of the Fairie, and the good sworde named Clarence, which shæld was of such force and might, that it could not be impaired, neither with yron, nor stæle, nor anie other thing. The which shæld was ordained to helpe no creature but onely him whom it was destinied vnto, & the sworde should not be pulled out of the sheathe to helpe anie man, but onely by him that it was predestinate vnto.

How it was determined that the Queene Fenice should take her chamber in the pallaice beside the castell of the port Noyre. Cap 19.

THus as you haue heard before the mightie King Emendus agreed that Fenice his Quæne should lye in childe bed at the port Noyre, and that her childe should be borne

vp

vp to the mount of aduentures, and he obtained that the King of Orquenie her cousin germaine shoulde goe with her, and the Archbishop of Cornite, who was brother to the king Emendus, and also the Quene of Ismaelite, and manie other Ladies and Damsells, Lordes and Knightes, should accompanie ỳ Quene Fenice. And there they made to the kings and the xii. peres of the Realme faithfull assurance, that they would make true report of euerie thing, that they should heare or se in the mount of aduentures. And also the king Emendus and the twelue peres sware and made faithful assurance, that whatsoeuer should be destinied of that childe, they woulde not withstande in ante point the childes destinie, but kepe & maintaine the childe, like the sonne of a King: and of this promise there was made a Charter, sealed by King Emendus and the twelue Peres of his realme, which was deliuered into the kepping of the Archbishop of Cornite. And by that time they were readie to heare seruice, which finished, the tables wer layed, and they were serued right richlye, as it appertained to the honour of such a noble King: and this feaste and triumph endured the space of fiftene daies. Then the King Emendus did giue great plentie of golde and siluer, horse and harneis to Lords and Knights, & euerie person after their degree, and so euerie man repaired into their owne countries, and the Quene Fenice prepared all her necessaries to remoue to the mount perillous. And so shee toke her leaue of the King, and toke with her all such companie as you haue heard declared heere before, and laboured so long in her iourney, that at the last she arriued at the Port Noyre, and went to the pallaice before the gate of the Castle, and there she remayned, till in processe of time she was brought a bedde of a verie fatre daughter. Then the Archbishop toke the childe vp in his armes, and went ther with to the mount perillous, and with him was the King of Orquenie, and the Quene of Ismaelite.

And when they were aboue on the Hill, they founde a faire

faire & goodly ground, where also was a meruailous faire Fountaine, and rounde about there were set foure riche chaires, and on euerie fountaine there was pight a stone, wherein there was ordained a place for a childe to lie in, in the which place they layed faire and easely this noble child: and then they withdrewe themselues into a priuie place there by her, to see what should fortune after. Then anone it began to wexe darke, and within a little space they saw where there came foure of the faireſt Ladies in the world, two and two together with great torches and lightes before them, being all crowned with gold like noble queenes: the first was so excellent faire that the beauties of ỹ other three were nothing to be compared to her, who was the queene and ladie ouer the other three, and the Castle of the Port Noyre pertained to her, and also the faire Pauilion with the Eagle of golde, wherein was an Image holding in her hands a chaplet made of paunces, the which Image in all points resembled this faire Queene Proserpina: wherein was also the white shielde and swoorde inchaunted, the which pauilion was not farre pight from the fountaine whereas this childe wos laid.

Then these foure Queenes wrapped in mantelles of silke, sate downe in the saide foure chaires, and the childe was in the middest betweene them all foure.

How the Daughter of the mightie King Emendus, and of Fenice his Queene, had her destinie tolde ouer the Fountaine in the arbor of the mount perillous by foure Queenes of the fairie, the chiefe of them was named Proserpina, who was the most faireſt creature then of all the world.

The xx. Chapter.

Then



Then this Quéene Proſerpina beganne firſt and ſaid: I perceiue well, hére is the daughter of our déere friende the king Emendus, whom he hath ſent hether to vs with great triumph, therefore it is good reaſon that we doe him ſome good & pleaſure. Madame ſaid the other three quéenes, begin you, and we ſhall followe. Certainly ſaid ſhe, with a right good will: Firſt, I wil that this child be named Florence, and that ſhe be the floure of beautie of all other creatures, as long as euer ſhe ſhall liue, for I will that ſhe reſemble me both in face, bodie, and countenaunce, and in all other things ſo like, that whoſoeuer ſhall ſée vs both together, ſhall not be able to diſcern the one from the other: and alſo to her I giue this my Caſtle of the port Noyre, & my pauilion with the Image holding the chaplet, and alſo my white ſhield and ſword: and therewith ſhe held her peace.

Then

Then the second Queene said. Madame sith that yee haue made her to be faire without comparison, I will also that she shall be gratious and amiable. Well quoth the third Queene, sith I see that she shall be exceeding faire and gratious without comparison, and madame sith shee shall haue your countenaunce, and your sheeld and sword, I will that the best Knight of the world shall haue her in marriage, and that he shall beare the white sheeld, and the sword, and that they shall helpe no other creature but alonely him, and I will that he shall atchieue the aduentures of this Castle, and put to death Malegrape the monster, and to him I giue the sheeld and the sword, and the Chaples that the Image holdeth in the Pauillion, and also I will that hee shall haue this maid Florence in marriage. Then the fourth Queene said, well sister sith yee haue giuen this maiden to the best Knight of the world, I will then that if ante other be so bold to take her, that incontinent he shall die bedy he haue power to touch her. And therewithall these Queenes arose and went their waies. Then the queene of Jsmaelite and the king of Orquency, and the Archbishop tooke the childe and bare it to her mother, and there openly recounted to her all that they heard & seene of these queenes of the Fairie. Then the Archbishop did christen this child, and named her Florence, and the queene of Jsmaelite and the king of Orquenie held her on the fount, the which childe was brought vp by foure Nurses, and she grew and prospered dailie so, that she was like to be the fairest creature of the world. When the queene was purified shee went to the Citie of Sabba, whereas the king Eurendus was accompanied with his kings, and the seauen Peeres of his realme. And this was in Whitsontide, whereas he kept a great open Court. When the queene was come the king met her with great triumph. And she was led to the Pallace with a king and an Archbishop, and there openly they recounted all the destinie of the child, and how that she should bee giuen in marriage to the best knight of all the world

E. How

How the king of Valefound sent his sonne to the citie of Sabba, to bee brought vp in the companie of Florence, Chap. 20.

IN this time the king of Walefound had a sonne who was named Steuen, and hee was sent to Sabba to bee nourished and brought vp in the companie of Florence and so these two children were brought vp together so long, till this childe Steuen could go to schole, then the king Emendus sent him to the schole of Athens to learne. And by processe of time this childe learned so well and profoundlye, that he became a meruaigne clarke, specially in Astronomy and Nigromancie, that in no part there could bee found anie like him in cunning. Then the king Emendus did send for him to be in his Court. And Florence desired of her father that he might be her clark, and of her counsaile, and the king with a right good will graunted to her request, & Florence loued him right well, for hee serued her noblie and truely, and she had after great need of him, as ye shall heare more plainely when time shall serue to speake thereof.

How the Queene Fenice, mother to Florence died, and how she made her Testament, giuing to her daughter a Ring, putting her thereby in possession of the realme of Blaunchtoure. Chap. 21.

THen this Queen Fenice loued exceedingly her daughter Florence, who was the most fairest creature that as then could be found in all the world. For there was none that euer sawe her, but incontinently they were rauished with her beautie: yet the Queene her mother kept her so derely, that there were but few men that had sight of her, for the king her owne father sawe her not so oft as hee would haue done, and in this manner she was kept till she was eighteene yeares of age. Then it fortuned on a season that this king Emendus held his Court at Pontispone, & to him were come all his other kings & barrons, at which time

time the quéne his wife was right sore grieued with a fe-
uer, and curtie daie impaired more & more: & so the second
daie of this feast the noble quéne Fenice as she laye in her
bed, sawe wheras her daughter Florence stood wéping be-
fore her beds side, wherewith she began to make a pittifull
lamentation and said: Ah déere daughter Florence, I haue
kept and cherished you vntill this date with great honor &
ioy, and now the time is come that I must néeds leaue you,
and I feare me that after my death ye will haue néed of me,
and therewith she sent for the king Emendus her hus band,
and for the other foure kings, and for all the seauen Péres
of the Realme, and when they were all come into her pre-
sence, she said to king Emendus her hus band: Right noble
Lord, I am sure the destinie of your daughter Florence is
not out of your remembrance, therefore now in my last
daies I humblie require you that ye will kéepe and vphold
the promise and oth which you made in that behalfe hérto-
fore, to the which you are bound by your seale and writing,
and suffer her neuer to be giuen to anie other Lord in mar-
riage but to him that she is predestinate vnto. In the name
of God quoth the king, madame I faithfullye assure you to
vphold all that I haue promised: wel then to you sirs, quoth
the quéne to the other kings, & seuen péres: How say ye,
will ye all vpholde the same? & all they anf wered that they
would neuer agrée to the contrarie. Then the quéne toke
a ring from her finger and openly thee said: Florence my
faire daughter, I giue you my realme of Blaunch towre, &
put you in possession therof by this ring: and Florence toke
the ring and deliuered it to the Archbishoppe her vncle to
kéepe. Then the quéne said to the King of Orquenie, and
to the Arrhbishop: My Lordes, I leaue in your hands my
deere daughter Florence, praying you to keepe her well &
truly, for sir Bishop she is your own neese, & to you sir king
of Orquenie, she is both cosin & God-daughter, therfore ye
ought to take good heede vnto her: & of you my owne deere
lord & hus band, & all other, I humblie require pardon for
euery thing wherein I haue trespassed against any of you,

beseeching you all to praie for my soule, and to the tuition of the blessed Trinitie, I commit you, & therewith she marked her with the signe of the crosse, and commended her spirit to God, and therewith lost her speech and mortall life. Then began in the Court so great sorrow and lamentation that it was lamentable to behold and heare, for the king powred forth abundance of teares, and all other that were there present, and Florence right pitiously cried and said: Alas sorrowfull and poore Orphane that I am, O my hart why doest thou abide anie longer in my wofull bodie. Ah deare Ladie and mother, how is it that you be thus gone, & leaue behinde you your sorrowfull daughter Florence, hat with she wrong her tithe white hands and said: Alasse sorrowful and desolate creature, and there with would haue gone and kissed the dead corse of her mother, but her heart failed her, and she fell down to the earth in a deadly traunce. And euerie one was so full of sorrowe, that no bodie tooke heede of the wofull Florence, till at the last the Archbishoppe and master Struen tooke her vp in their armes, and so reuiued her, and bare her out of the sight of the dead corse, and then to her there came the Abbesse of our Ladies monesterie in that Citie, and all her couent for to comfort her: And these sorrowfull tidings anone ranne ouer all the Citie, wherefore all the bells in euerie Church began to ring, and euery creature made great lamentatio for y death of the queene, and the king caused her bodie to be kept aboue the ground xv daies, for to abide for the Barons and Knights of the Realme of Blanneh tower, to the intent they might bee at the enterring of their queene and Ladie.

How the Queene Fenice, mother to Florence was honorable interred. Chap. 12.

About the end of xv daies ther came a knight to king Edmendus from the Emperour of Inde the more, who had heard tidinges howe the queene Fenice was departed this transitorie life, and hee desired the king to pro-

long

long foure daies moze the Obsequie of the Quæne, soz hée sent woꝛde that he would be with him by that time, wherof the King Emendus was verie gladde, that so high a perſon as the Emperour was, wouldе take the paine to be at the burying of the Quæne his wife. And at the daie of his comming he was receiued right honourablie, and then the ſeruice was miniſtred to the dead bodie ful ſolempnly, and she was laide in the Cathedꝛall Church of the Citie. And this Emperour abode there a great ſpace afterwarde with the King, to the intent to ceaſe him of his great ſoꝛrowe: and all the other Kings, Earles, and Barons, departed euerie man into his owne Countrie, and alſo the Archbiſhop returned to Coꝛnite, and toke his leaue of the King his bꝛother, and carried with him Flozence his Nèce. So Florence toke leaue of the King her Father, and of the Emperour, being then all bedewed with teares, and not apparailed as appertained to her eſtate, but after the manner of a ſoꝛrowfull mourner. Nowbeit in the ſtate she was in, shée was of great beautie, wherby this Emperour was ſtriken with ſuch ioie that he was almoſt in an extaſie: and from thence foꝛth he loued and deſired Flozence ſo much, that he thought on nothing, but onely on her. And thus departed Flozence with the Archbiſhop her vnckle, and trauailed ſo long till at the laſt she arriued at Coꝛnite on a fridaie about the houre of euenſong time and there was receiued honourablie, and remained ther a great ſeaſon. And maſter Steuen euer ſerued her well and truly, and she truſted moze in him than anie other after the death of the Quæne her Mother.

How the Emperour of Inde the more, demaunded of King Emendus the faire Florence his daughter in marriage, & of the anſwere that King Emendus made to him. And alſo of the tearme that was taken to marrie Florence in, and how maſter Steuen knew by regarding of the Planets that there was comming out of the Weſt a knight, who ſhould atchieue the aduentures of the Port Noire,

and how he should have and injoy the white sheeld, and
to obtaine Florence in matriage, where with she was great-
ly comforted, for in no wise shee loued the Emperour.

Chap. xx.

THus the Emperour abode still with the king Emendus, and departed together from Pantopone, and went to Macedonia, but euer the Emperour was in greate trouble and thought for the loue that he had to Florence, so that the king Eustydus demaunded of him what hee ailed to bee so sad, and the Emperour answered and said, I will tell you the troth. For I cannot send to you a more certaine messenger then my selfe, because ye may beléeue my saying rather then anie other meane messengers. Sir it is so that you be a Prince of great power, and also it is well knowen that my strength is not small, for I thinke now we two are in a manner the greatest men that raigne in anie place of the world. Therefore it will be a great commoditie for vs to continue together as faithfull friendes, and truely from hence forth I will be your friend & familiar. For certain it is, that I am a man vnmarried, and I thinke I can set my loue in no place so well as on Florence your daughter, therefore here in mine owne person I desire of you to haue her in marriage. O sir quoth the king it may not bee, for shee may haue no other marriage but that which she is destinyed vnto, for if that anie other presume to take her hee shall presently die, and also I haue sworne and set to my seale to vpholde her destinie, and neuer to breake it. Sir sayde the Emperour, beléeue you then the fantasies of the Fairies, surely they haue no power nor might, but I require you to giue mee your daughter, and so wee shall bee together as friends: truely sir said the king I would bee gladde thereof, but I promised my Queene to keepe faithfullye the promise that I made. In the name of God sayde the Emperour, sir your Queene is dead and past, and will neuer retourne againe, nor complaine of you for the breaking of anie couenaunt made to her, and there is none

other that will bee so hardie as to reproue your deede, for if they doe they shall leese their heades: wherefore sir I require you to fulfill my desire, and then ye shall binde mee to be your faithfull friend, well sir quoth the King, if my Daughter bee content therewith, it shall please me right well, wherefore let vs ride to morrowe towarde Cornite, and speake with her and knowe her minde in this matter: So be it in the name of God quoth the Emperour. And on the next daie betimes they leapt on their horses and rode forth to Cornite, and rode so long that on a wednesdaie they arriued at the Citie of Cornite, and went to the Pallaice. Then the Archbishoppe came to see the King, and brought Florence with him, and they altogether went vp into the Pallaice, and entered into a faire chamber, then the Emperour and the king sate them downe together, and betweene them the faire Florence, and at the last the King Emendus saide: Faire daughter, your mother is departed this life, and it is now time that from hence forth I prouide for your noble estate, you bee a greate Ladie and a puissant, therefore I will marrie you to this noble Emperour heere present. And when Florence heard her father speake to her of marriage, all her bloud beganne to quake and tremble, for she hated the Emperour euer since the beginning of her youth, howbeit she answered right wisely and said: Deere Lord and father, ye knowe well that it is not yet three monethes sith the death of my Ladie my mother, and if I should marry so quickly I should be greatly blamed, therefore sir I require you let this yeare passe, and then I will take counsaile and tell you what I will doe. And when the Emperour heard her speake so reasonablie, he could not charge her any farther at that time, and accorded to abide the tearme of her desire, and beheld well how that she chaunged coulour, and sore trembled, and so did the king her father also: Howbeit he made no countenance thereof, so they were together a long season, till at ꝯ last she toke lisence of thē & departed into her chamber sore amazed, and so abode till the Archbishoppe and maister

Steuen were come from the Court: & as soone as they wer entered into the chamber of Florence, they sawe where she was sitting sore sighing and weeping. Then the Bishoppe toke her by the hand and demaunded of her why she made that lamentation. O vnkle said Florence, my Lord my Father kéepeth not the couenauntes that be made to my Ladie my mother, for now he is minded to marrie mee to the Emperour. And ther is no man that I hate so much as him, certainly I had rather to suffer death then to haue him, and I haue no longer respite then the end of this yeare. Why Madame quoth master Steuen, if ye haue purchased so long a respite, I faithfully ensure you that I will giue you two yeare longer, for I warrant you that two yeare after your daie ye shall not be married to him. Master saide Florence I thanke you of your comfort. Well quoth the Bishop, the Emperour is vnwise to demaund you against your will, for there may fortune little good come to him thereby. Then the Bishoppe toke her by the hand and led her into a faire garden to walke. And ther on a faire grééne bench she sate downe betwéene the Bishop and master Steuen, and passed the time with many pleasaunt sportes. At length it began to waxe late, and the euening was verie cléere, and the Starres shined full bright: Then master Steuen beheld them a great space, and at the last he saide, madame I knowe for certaintie by the course of the Planets that ther is a Knight comming into this Countrie, and is now well onward on his waie, who shall atchieue the aduentures of the castle of the Port Noire ere this yéare be past. And surely it is he that shall haue the white shielde and the sworde Clarence, verilie sayd the Bishop, if this be true, the Emperour may goe fish in another place, for héere he shall be sure to faile, for I am sure that it is the same knight that my ladie Florence is predestinated vnto, therefore I am right gladde of the Emperours chaunce. And how saie you master, doe you not hate him. yes sir thereof he may bée as sure, as an ell of cloth will make his head a hoode, whereat the Bishop laughed. Thus they were long together in this

talke,

talke, till it was time to goe to rest. Then they brought Florence to her chamber and departed to their owne lodgings, about midnight this Ladie awaked, and then came vnto her remembrance the displeasure that she doe to the Emperour, and as she was in this thought, she beheld the foure Tapers of Waxe that stode burning before her beds fete, wherewith she saw how there came into the chamber a faire Ladie as white as the lillie, with a mantel of grene hanging about her shoulders, fastned with a lase of golde, and a crowne of golde on her head, and she held another Ladie by the hand, and saide vnto her. Faire sister, sawe you not the Leopard with the seuen heads crowned with gold, who hath the lake of a grim Boze, and the heart of a Lyon, the bodie & armes of Lead, and the fete of a white Hart, and when she had thus said, the other Ladie demaunded of her, what all this might meane, for herin are diuers things to be considered. Then she aunswered and said, Sister this Leopard shall haue the Eagle of gold that is on my Pauilion, and by him shall the gates be opened of my castle of the Port Noire, and then shall all inchauntmentes faile, and therewith both these Ladies vanished awaie, so that Florence knew not where they were become, wherewith shee was right sore afraied, for she vnderstode not what it might meane. In like case the same vision came that night to the Archbishop, and also to maister Steuen, where as they laye seuerally each from other, whereof they had great meruaile what their dreame might signifie. And within a litle while after the light of the daie began to appeare, the Archbishop arose, and maister Steuen also, to attend on their ladie, and whē it was seruice time, maister Steuen went for Florēce, who was then readie apparailed, and went to Church: and there the Archbishop read seruice. When it was finished, the Bishop saluted Florence, and demaunded what good rest she had taken that night. As God help me deare vncle said Florence, there neuer as yet came to me such a chance as did this night, neither was I euer so afeard, for about midnight I did awake, and as I laie waking, I saw before

my bed the moſt faireſt figure of a Ladie that euer I ſawe, hauing a crowne of golde vpon her head, and there ſeemed to be another Queene in her companie, crowned likewiſe, who was alſo me thought a verie faire Ladie, but nothing in compariſon of the other Queene, and ſuch wordes mee thought ſhe ſpake vnto her fellowe, and there Florence recounted worde for worde as yee haue heard before of her whole viſion, and how they were ſodainely vaniſhed awaie from her. When the Biſhoppe heard this, he ſaid: Ah faire Neece Florence, by the faith that I owe vnto you, euen in like caſe as yee ſais it fortuned to mee this ſame night, and certainly I thought properly it hadde bene you: for if the Queene that I ſawe and you were both together, I coulde not diſcerne the one from the other, you are ſo like. In the name of God ſaid maſter Steuen, the ſame viſion appeared alſo to me in euerie part as you haue rehearſed, and verilie I alſo thought it hadde bene my Ladie Florence here preſent: verilie ſaide the Biſhop this thing is not thus fortuned to vs all three without ſome cauſe, maſter I require you goe loke what the ſignification of it may be. Then the maſter went from them and entered into his chamber, and toke his bookes and ſearched for this matter, ſo long, that he perceiued finallye the myſterie thereof: and then came againe to Florence, and ſaide to the Biſhoppe, ſir let vs ſette our heartes at reſt, for verilie my Ladie needeth not care for the Emperours being her huſband, for there is another worthie Knight, amiable, & faire, who is the fountaine of al chiualrie, for his prowelle ſurmounteth, and ſhal paſſe all other. Therefore knowe for certaine that whereas the viſion ſhewed vs how that out of the Weſt ſhuld come a Leopard which ſignifieth a gentle Knight, borne about ỹ Countrie of Fraunce, and whereas this Leopard hath the looke of a Boare and the heart of a Lyon, in likewiſe this Knight is the hardieſt that euer was borne, and where his bodie ſhoulde bée of Steele, it betokeneth that there is no Knight ſo ſtrong as to abide the bruntes hee canne, and where it is ſayde that his armes bée of Lead, which is an

beaute thing, it betokeneth the beste strokes of this knight, which cannot be suffered: and as for the feete of the Hart which is a light beast and a mightie, it signifieth this knight is strong and light, and quicke to goe towarde his enimies, and whereas he shall haue the Eagle, the which is soueraigne and King of all fowles, it betokeneth this knight shall haue my Ladie Florence, who is Queene and Soueraigne of all beautie and riches, aboue all Queenes of the world, and he shall be the confusion of the Emperour of Inde, whereas he beareth seauen heades crowned with golde, signifieth that this knight shall beare the crownes of seuen Kingdomes, the which he shall conquere with his sworde: and whereas the gates of the Castle of the Port Noyre, shall be opened by him, and that all the inchauntmentes shall then faile, it representeth the highe prowesse of him that shal beat downe al the aduentures of the Port Noire, and surelie this is the signification of our whole dreame or vision. Therefore it is necessarie that I repaire to the Pallace of the Port Noire, to knowe when this knight commeth, and to see by his estate what manner of man he is: verily said the Bishoppe I allowe well that you doe as you haue deuised, and that you remoue thetherward as hastely as yee canne. But when Florence heard tidinges of this knight, she was sodainlie striken with so greate loue, that from that houre forward she gaue vnto him her hart. Thus she loued him trulie and knewe him not, and Arthur loued the Eagle and hadde neuer seene it, so then this Ladie Florence made great ioie all that daie. The next daie betimes maister Stenen arose and prepared for his departing, and then asked lisence of king Emendus to goe to the castle of the Port Noire for matters pertaining to his Ladie Florence, & the king gaue him leaue. Then the maister came to Florence, & to the Bishop, and toke leaue of them, & Florence toke him aside & said, gentle maister, if yonder knight come to ỹ port Noire, bring him to me if it may be possible, for verily I haue great desire to see him, & know his estate. Madame, said ỹ maister, w a good wil if I can bring it about.

And

and so he departed and foure other knights with him: and rode so long that on a saturday he came to the Port Noire, and take his lodging at a Pallace without the castle gate. For there was none that entered into the Castle without death: and in this Pallace master Steuen remained nigh a whole yeare. Now let vs leave to speake of the Master and Florence, and of the Court of king Emendus, and the Emperour of Inde. And returne we to Arthur and his companie.

How that Arthur slew twelue knights, who had taken awaie a young Damsell from her Father and Mother, and had tied her to a tree, there to haue defiled her virginitie, who was deliuered by Arthur. Chap. 25.



ARthur, Bedor, and Governar, were riding after they departed from the Court of the Duke his Father 15. dayes without abiding in anie place, or finding of aduentures, whereof anie

quiemention is made. And they rode so long, that at the last they came into the countrie of Nomarch, and entered into a great thicke covert, in which they trauailed a long space, and at the last they founde a great stang or water, & a faire greene meddowe ioyning thereto, the which contained the length of two miles and a halfe, wherin they rode still keping the side of the meddowe: finally, in the bottome of a great valley, they espied a strong towre closed with mightie walls, and Arthur sawe well, how the gates of the place were open, wherefore they lighted from their horses, entered into the towre, and went vp into the hall, and all that while they found no creature, whereof they had great meruaile: at the last Arthur heard the voyce of a woman in a little chamber beside him, who cried right pitteously and said, O Lord God help me, and send some maner of succour, & there with Arthur lept into the chamber, where he found a right faire Ladie, who had bene drawen all about the chamber, with her yeolow haire torne & cut from her head, and she was so sore beaten, that she had no power to helpe her selfe: and in this chamber there stode a table readie couered, whereon there stode wine and meate great plentie, whereat Arthur greatly merueiled, and demaunded of the ladie who it was y had done her so much harme. When the ladie saw Arthur & heard him speake, she was sore abashed, & all afraid said: Ah gentle knight I require you saue me not now for I haue paine inough already. Faire ladie said Arthur be nothing afraid, for I will warrant and defend you from all enimies, therefore shew vnto me who hath thus intreated you. When the Ladie felte much paine arose vpon her face, and said: Sir as God helpe me, there departed from hence right now two knights all armed, and they haue thus vsed me as you see, and I thinke they haue slaine my lord my husband, and haue away with them my deare daughter to be their vnchastitie, if God vouchsafe not prouide some remedie for her. Well faire Ladie quoth Arthur, where is the Lord of this place? faire Sir quoth she I cannot tell whether he be aliue or dead.

I beseech you take about for him, for I thinke I shall finde him either quicke or dead. Then Arthur sought all about the place, and at the last in a little bowre he found him, and his hands bounde behinde his back, he wounded in y head and on the shoulders. Then Arthur did unlose his bandes, and Governar did search his woundes, and Arthur demanded him why he was so dealt withall. Sir, in good faith quoth the knight, I know no other cause, but that the last daye there was a straunger did overthrow the maister of the said twelue knights, wherefore thus they have used me without cause, and have lead away my daughter to doe her villanie: as they thus talked together, the Lorde of the place sawe where his squire and clarke lay dead, whereat he had great griefe. Well quoth Arthur, this is a great outrage, come on friendes get us our harnets, and when they were all armed, they followed after these Knightes, and rode so long, till at the last they found the chiefe maister of them at the entering into a faire forrest, who was busie about this damsell to have defiled her. Then Arthur espied him and sayd. Thou shameleſſe knight, be not so bardie as once to touch her, for I assure thee thou shalt come to her father in spite of thy hart, to the intent that he may take vengeance of thy trespasse, and therefore I defie thee: wherewith he and all his companie leapt on their horses, and the captain of them bowsed his horse against Arthur, and stroke him so rudely, that he broke his speare to his hande, but Arthur stroke him so puissantly, that his speare head entred cleane through his bodie, and he fell downe dead to the earth. Then Arthur drew out his sword, & smote the second so strongly, that he pearced his heart, and the third he stroke so that he cut him downe to the saddle, and from the fourth he tooke the head from the shoulders. And Gedor for his part stroke one of them so furiously, that he ranne his speare into his bodie more than a foote, and then he take his sworde, and stroke among them so, that he made all that were before him to kneele. Also Governar made them of their heads flye into the field. When the remnant saw their companie thus

dealt

dealt withall, they betake them to flight for dread of death. & as they fled they said each to other, let vs saue our selues from these diuells of hell, for surely they be no earthly creatures. Arthur followed them no farther, but came to the damsell whereas she was fast bound to a tree, and did vnlase her, and caused her to mount on a horse of one of the Knights that was slaine, and then brought her againe to her Father: who when he saw his daughter, his heart reuiued, and he kneeled downe before Arthur, & rendred him great thankes. Then Arthur toke him vp by the hand, and so remained ther all that daie and night, and the next morning he and all his companie tooke leaue of their host, and of the Damsell, who loued Arthur with all her heart: and so they departed and entered into their iourney, and rode forth so long till they came into the countrie of Vienne, whereas they met a messenger, hauing as it seemed great hast with a iauelin in his hand, a schochen of armes on his breast, & a bouget with letters hanging at his saddle bow, whom Arthur courteously saluted, sir saide the Page, God giue you good aduenture: my friend quoth Arthur to whom doe you pertaine? Sir said he, I dwell with my Lorde the Earle of Beauieu. Then quoth Arthur can you tell vs anie newes. Sir I cannot tell whether you alreadie know of the Turnaie that my Lord of Beauieu hath taken against the Marshall of Pirpois, which shall be holden on the Sunday next after Holy roode daye. Is it of a troth quoth Arthur, that the Earle of Beauieu hath taken on him this enterprise? yea sir, without faile. And good friend I praie you, what manner of man is your Lord? Sir as god helpe me he is a noble man for the Earle of Foresta is his vncle, and the Earle of Mount Belial is his cousingermaine, & of himselfe he is as courteous, as liberall, and as meeke as may be. But the Marshall of Pirpois is contrarie, for he is fierce and cruell, and a diuers man to dwel withall: howbeit he is a good knight of his handes, and is of that hardinesse, and of so fierce a courage, that he feareth nothing to fight against three as lowe Knights.

where-

Arthur and his companie, and incontinently they toke all the stuffe, and did beate & ill intreate them that were conducters thereof, till at the last Jaket Arthurs Squire drew his sword, and to his power did helpe to aide and defende his maisters stuffe, but they were so many on him that hee was sore wounded, wherewith Arthur and his companie came to them. And when he espied his seruaunt Jaket sore wounded and in great ieopardie, hee drew his sword and stroke the first so, that he claue his head downe to his chin, & of the second he stroke awaie the head, and from the third he cut cleane awaie the shoulders with the arme. Then Hector and Gouernar right strongly laide on eurrie side among these theeues, and by the helpe of Arthur they slewe and killed all that euer were before them. When they were all dead, Arthur commaunded to search whereas they were wont to resort, & thus by the prowesse of these three knights these thirtie theeues were brought to death and confusion, & at the last they found a faire auncient man vnder a tree, lying naked and bound fast with two cheines, so that hee could not helpe himself, then Arthur did lose him and gaue him the apparell that was on the dead bodies of the sayde theeues, wherefore the good man humblie thanked Arthur, and specially for sauing of his life. Then Arthur and his companie rode forth, and trauailed so long, till at the last they found a strong house, and knocked so long at the gate, till there came to them a seruant bare legged, readie to goe to bed, for all other in the place wer as then gone into their rests, and this fellow demaunded of them who it was that knocked so fast at the gate at that time of night. Good friend quoth Gouernar, it is a Knight that wold faine this night haue lodging for him and his companie. Sir saide hee, if it please you to tarrie, I will goe speake with my Lorde and master, and shew him your minde, howbeit I thinke hee bee nowe at his rest, for hee is olde and auncient, and hath beene in his dayes a verie good Knight, and as yet hee is gladde to heare speake of good Knightes, and loueth them that vse noble deedes of armes, and therewith

the seruaunt departed and went to his maister, saying: Sir, there is at your gate three Knightes armed, which seeme to trauaile to Vienne to the Turney, and they desire by waie of curtesie this one nightes lodging: howe saie ye sir, shall I open to them the gates? Hie thee a pace quoth the Lorde, for I am not content that thou hast made them tarry without so long, and when they be entered come againe to mee and bring me worde what manner of men they be, & what harneis and armes they beare, then the seruaunt went againe to the gate and set it wide open, and suffered Arthur and his companie to enter, whereof they had greate neede. Then the seruaunt beheld Arthur, and sawe well that hee was like a Gentleman, being well proportioned, and meruailous faire aboue all his companie, and next him he sawe Hector, who was right faire, tall, and well made, and also he beheld Gouernar, who was in all pointes like a man, bigge, and browne of coulour, and he perceiued well howe all their harneis were faire and rich. Then was ther Torches brought forth, and seruaunts ran for their horses, then the first seruaunt returned againe to his Lorde, and saide: Sir, since I was borne I neuer sawe so godly Knightes as they be, and specially the chiefe of them, and as for their armour it is both faire and rich, for I assure you it shoulde seeme that they be right greate men, and come of noble linage. Well quoth the Lord, looke that thou in all haste prepare their lodging, and see that they be serued right honourablie. Well sir quoth the seruaunt, it shall bee done incontinently. Then the Lorde saide to the Ladie his wife who was then lying a bed by him: madame by reason of your honour and gentilitie you should rise and keepe companie with yonder noble Knightes, for I thinke they bee some great men, and it will greatlie grieue them if they see not the chiefe of the house to make them some cheere, for as God helpe me, I would haue greate ioye to speake with them, if I might arise and not hurt my selfe, therefore madame in my absence I praie you go and make them the best cheere that ye can, sir said the Ladie, with a right good will,

if

if it pleaſe you I will doe ſo. Then the Ladie roſe and apparailed her ſelfe right richlie, being a right faire younge Ladie, of the age of xii. yeare. And when Arthur and Hector ſawe her, they roſe and curteouſlie each of them did ſalute her, and ſhe ſate downe betweene them. Then Arthur ſaid, madame, you haue taken great paine to leaue the companie of your Lorde to come to ſee vs, ſir ſaid ſhe, it pleaſeth my Lord that I ſhal doe ſo, and therefore I am come to you in the ſteede of him, for hee would with a right good will haue come to your himſelfe, if he might ſo haue done, but he is auncient, and it would hurt him to haue broken his reſt. And ſo thus they talked of diuerſe things, and in the meane ſeaſon there was meate prouided for them, and the Tables were couered, and they waſhed and ſate them downe Arthur and the Ladie together, and Hector and Gouernar, but Hector had his eyes on the Ladie, and did neither eate nor drinke, the which Arthur and Gouernar right well eſpied. Then Arthur ſaid to him, friend it is yours all that ye ſee, ſir ſaide Hector, I haue ſeene ſome thing, of which if I might, I would faine be maſter. O Hector, quoth Gouernar, a mans will ought euer to followe the order of reaſon, and ſo I beleeue ought yours to doe, and therewith they left theſe wordes, howbeit all that little or nothing refrained Hectors loke, for ſtill he beheld this Ladie till it was time for them to goe to their reſts, and taking their leaue of the ladie, they thanked her for the great cheere that ſhee hadde made them. And on the next daie betimes they departed, and entered into the Forreſt, the morning was faire and cleere, and warme, for it was as then about the ende of Aprill. So theſe lordes rode forth with greate ioye, tyll at the laſt Gouernar ſaide to Hector, ſir, was your will accompliſhed this laſt night, when as you ſaide yee would gladlie haue fulfilled your will, to ſaie the truth, I thinke your will was on our Hoſteſſe, who was both fayre and young. By my faith quoth Hector, I would haue ben right glad to haue fulfilled my will with hir, for vndoubtedly ſhe is faire and gratious, and I loue her with all my heart.

And sir what was your will quoth Gouernar, by my faith said Hector, that thee shoulde haue bene all night in mine armes & I in hers, now truely sir said Gouernar, that will was neither good honest, for it was against reson, seing the good Lord her husband did cause her to rise from him to the intent to honour vs and to kepe vs companie, remembring also how honestly she receiued vs, and the good chere wee had of her, and would you haue then done such villanie to that good Lord, as to haue had his wife vnto his dishonour in his owne house, by the faith that I owe vnto God it had not bene well done, nor yet it was no honest thought. A sir Gouernar quoth Hector, I am sure ye be so sage in science, that you will doe no follie, wisedome is great if the Cat neuer touched milke, I meane when loue toucheth, wisdome is oftentimes ouercome. Well, as for all that quoth Gouernar it maketh no matter, but yet I saie as I saide, that it should not haue bene well done of a Gentleman to haue done as ye thought, for it were treason so to doe, wherwith Hector began to be sore chafed and saide, what Gouernar saist thou that I am a traitour, thou liest falsely I was neuer anie, and drew nere to Gouernar, laying hand on his sword, then said Gouernar, strike me not, I saie not that you be a traitour, neither be you so great a man that your nobleneſſe forethinketh me, for I would you were greater then you are, yet for all that, I saie that this deed according to your wish had ben treason, remembring the trust that ỳ Lord had in vs, if in the colour wherof we should haue dishonoured his wife, surely I saie it is no noble thought, with the which worde Hector was so angrie, that hee drew his sword & stroke Gouernar on ỳ helme, so ỳ he was therwith astonied, wherwith Arthur was sore displeased. Then Gouernar said, sir strike me no more, by the faith I owe to our lord, if you do I will not forbeare you. Why good sir (qd Hector) what wold you do elſe, that shal be sone sene, & so stroke Gouernar againe, wherwith Gouernar drew his sword & stroke Hector on the helme, & there began a great battaile betweene them, & Arthur labored w̃ gentlenes to part thē,

but

but they were so sore displeased and vered each with other, that Arthur could in no wise cause them to leaue: & when Arthur sawe that, he drew his sword, and stroke Hector so sore, that hee made him stoupe downe to the necke of his horse, and with another stroke he hit Gouernar so, that hee was sore astonied therewith, and had nigh fallen from his horse, and as Arthur would haue recouered on him another stroke, Gouernar went from him. Then Arthur came to Hector and would haue striken at him againe, but Hector said, cosin what will ye doe, are ye displeased with mee? yea verilie said Arthur, right sore, for Gouernar shewed to you your follie, and therefore you haue smiten him in my presence, wherewith I am not content. Sir said Hector, I repent me, but he displeased me so, that I coulde not refraine my selfe at that time: well quoth Arthur, now from hence forth be in peace, or by the faith that I owe to my Lorde my father, the first of you that beginneth, shall leese my companie, and also my good will for euer, therefore come on Gouernar and make amends vnto my cosin Hector, in that ye haue striken him, sir said Gouernar, with a right good will. Then he put off his helme & desired Hectors good will, now cosin Hector quoth Arthur, make you him amends, sir sayd Hector, right gladly, for it forethinketh mee greatly of the displeasure that hath bene betweene vs, & so hee did also off his healme, & there each of them imbraced other, and passed forth on their iourney, and rode so long till they were passed the forrest. And then they sodainly encountered the Knight sir Delalaunde, and the messenger that they had met with the daie before, and there each of them did salute other. Then sir Delalaunde demaunded of Arthur to what partes he would goe vnto: Certainely said Arthur, it hath bene shewed me, that at holie rood tide next comming, there should be at Vienne a great assemblie of noble men & good Knightes. Therefore I am riding thetherward to see that turney, and to be acquainted with some of the good Knights that will be there, trulie saide sir Delalaunde, it is of truth that there shall be a great assemblie of Knightes, and there

shall bee a greate tourney. I praie you sir saide Arthur, for whom, and for what cause was it first taken, sir if I should shew quoth sir Delalaunde, you shoulde then knowe some thing sounding to my reproch, neuertheleſſe it seemeth that you be a noble man and the chefe of your companie, therefore I will shew it you.

How sir Delalaunde declared to Arthur the occasion why this Turney was first taken by the Lord Beauieu. Chap. 27.

SIr, it is true my Lord the Earle of Wenion hath alwaies loued me since the beginning of my youth, and it fortuned when I was young and luſtie, I thought to goe out of mine owne countrie, accompanied onelie with my squire, hoping to vanquish all the valure of the world, and at the laſt I came into the lande of Myrpois, and fell there in acquaintance with two noble Lordes of greate lignage, who did me much honour, and one of them had a right faire ladie to his wife, named the faire Ladie of Rollyon, for whō this tourney was first taken, and she had such affection to me and love, that within a little while I was made chiefe ruler and Seneſhall of all her countrie, and was of her priuie counſaile, and ther was nothing done without my consent, for she truſted more in me than in anie other person of the world, and in like caſe I was loued with the good Lord her huſband. And so I continued with this loue and fauour more then the space of fiue yeares, and it fortuned one yeare that for my sake they kepte a Chriſtmas with open court, wher to came many knights of the Countrie. When the first daie of this began, the Lady of Rollion wife to my sayd Lord, was riehly apparailed as it appertained to the leaſt and to her eſtate, at which time to me she seemed so faire, so gentle, and so proper, that I thought I had neuer seene her halfe so faire before, & then her beautie stroke so inwardly to my heart, that I loſt thereby both meat and drinke, & euerie day I began to waxe leane of body, that euerie

rie man had merualle what I ailed, and demaunded often times of me what was the cause that I so impaired, but euer I couered it as priuelye as I coulde, yet at the end it auailed me nothing. For at the last Loue constrained me to shew vnto my loue and Ladie, all the dolour and paine of mine inward hart. And on a daie as it happened I rose verie early, for the thoughtes of the night euer troubled mee, and betimes I found this Ladie leaning in a windowe, by whom boldly I leaned me downe, then she bad me god morow, and desired God to send me my health, well madame quoth I, then the king that hath formed all things giue you a better daie then I haue had a night, and also better heith, for my health is verie weake, the which sorelye troubleth me. When this Ladie turned her toward me & said, sir, how is it that your health is so farre from you, maye it not bee brought neerer for siluer or golde. Madame quoth I, peradventure if I shew you, you woulde not indeauour to helpe me, although you can verie well do it, therefore it were better that I kept it still secret, then to shew it, and bee neuer the neere. Sir said she, I require you shew it, and I will with all my hart be glad to labour for your ease & health, wherefore it is great shame for you when you maye haue counsaile and remedie, & will not seeke it, but thus to suffer paine and hearts griefe, the which I ensure you griueth right sore both my Lord and me: therefore good friend by the faith that you owe vnto me, shew me your griefe, and therewith she came neerer to me & embraced me in her armes, and shewed me great tokens of loue and kindnesse, as these women be accustomed to doe, when they will draw out of a mans mouth that is inclosed in the heart, and when I sawe her gentlenesse and sweete behauiour, my heart was rauished and brought into that case, that of a greate season I could speake no worde for weeping. But sir, quoth this Knight to Arthur, though I shewe vnto you my fondnesse, I praie you thinke not anie hurt in it, but take it in good parte, for that youth doeth verie manie foolish thinges, By my faith saide hee, sir no more I will, and

therefore proceede forth in your tale. Sir then I ſaid vnto this Ladie: Madame, whatſoeuer fortune fall thereby I will ſhew you all my deſire. Deere Ladie, it is of truth that I haue ſet my heart and all my thought on you, more then on all the creatures of the world, with ſo faithfull and profound a loue in my minde, as it well appeareth, and ſhall euer doe by me, for no other perſon I loue nor can loue, but onely you. And therewith my heart failed me that I could ſpeake no more, but ſate downe, and ſhee ſate by mee, and ſaid, What ſir Guy Delalaunde, is it then thus as you ſay, yea madame ſaid I, without faile, well ſir quoth ſhe, ſpeake you theſe words either to aſſay me, or elſe for verie loue, I require you tell me the truth: on my faith madame quoth I, this that I haue ſaide is for the greate griefe that I am like to be in without your helpe, therefore Ladie for Gods ſake haue pittie on me, and therwith I ioyned together my handes with great ſorrowe of heart. Then ſhe beheld mee well and ſaid, ſir you be a wiſe and prudent Knight, therefore conſider well if your deſire bee not preiudiciall to any perſon: Madame quoth I, for trouth I ſee and know well that I deſire againſt my Lorde treaſon and falſenelle, who loueth and honoureth me ſo much aboue all other, howbeit good Ladie, knowe well that youth and loue bringeth mee to this, ſo that meaſure and reaſon faileth in mee, therefore I hadde rather die then liue. Then this Ladie who was both wiſe and diſcreet, ſayd, ſir be in reſt and let ioy increaſe in your heart, for wee will ſpeake more of this matter at better leaſure: this ſhe ſaid to giue me comfort, and not to the intent that ſhe would in anie manner wiſe treſpaſſe againſt her husband: In this manner I drawe of the time a great while, but as ſoone as I coulde finde her at leaſure, and in a conuenient place, I was euer reaſoning with her of this matter, and importunatelie each daie required her to haue pittie of my diſtreſſe, and ſo it fortuned on a daie that we were together leaning in a windowe looking out toward a Forreſt. Then I ſpake to her ſo faire, and in ſo pittifull order, that ſhe could no longer driue of my requeſt,

but

but saide: Sir, your suite is so importunate, that it behoueth me to assent to fulfill your desire, therefore see yee not yonder great Oke standing in the forrest, yes madame sayd I, right well, well quoth she, I am content to fulfill your desire on this condition, loke that this same twelue moneth, and this houre, you faile not to be vnder yonder Oke, and without faile thether to you will I come readie apparailed to accomplish your intent, and before that daie neuer loke to haue it. Ah mine owne deare Ladie (quoth I) I humblie thanke you of your good will, sith I cannot haue it sooner, at the least I shall passe the time more ioyfully, hoping for that fortunate daie, wherefore I will take my leaue nowe of you, and you shal not see me againe til that time be come, for if I should abide in your dailie presence, the delaying of the time would be my death. Then I toke leaue, praying her to kepe conenant with me, & she promised me that she would. Then I got licence of my Lorde her husbande, shewing him how I would depart into mine owne countrie for a while, yet he was loth to giue me leaue: but when he sawe that I would needs depart, he offered me to haue forsaken his owne Countrie, and to haue gone with me, he loued me so entirely, & at the last with much ado I gat leaue, and departed priuely on a night, and disguised my selfe, and went wandering about the Countrie till the yeare was past. At the same daie and houre that mine appointment was, I came to the said Oke in the forrest, before the castle windowe, and incontinently I perceiued where this Ladie stode talking with my Lord her husband in the same windowe whereas she and I made our agreement together, and then I made so many tokens and signes that at the last she perceiued me, and began to smile: when her Lorde sawe her laugh, he demaunded the cause, and she answered and said, sir for nothing: for nothing quoth the Lorde, I am sure yee will not laugh for naught, therefore shew me the cause, for surelie I will know it, wherefore I commaund you to tell it me: sir quoth she, sith it pleaseth you I am content to shew you, but first I require you tel me when you sawe or heard

of sir Guy Delalaunde. In good faith madame said he, not a great while, wherof I am full sorry for if I had knowen y he would haue tarried so long, I wold haue sought him out ere this time, well sir quoth this Ladie, he is not now farre hence, for it is of trouth he hath before this time desired me of loue, and in a manner his suite was importunate; and the loue that he bare me was so feruent, that he was right sore afflicted thereby, which was well seene by him while he was here with vs, and there this Ladie tolde the Lorde her husband all the matter that was betweene her and me vnto that present daie, and then she shewed him e saide, sir this is the daie that I promised him to fulfil his desire, thinking by this time he would haue forgotten his suite, but loe sir you may see him vnder yonder great Oake, whereas he is all amazed because he findeth mee not there as I promised him. And you may see by him how that these foolish lovers are ouercome with loue. And this is the cause that he departed from you, for that he might not endure anie longer the great torment that he was in. Yea madame quoth the Lord, if it be this, I commund you on the loue that ye beare vnto me, that you go and apparaile you in the best manner that you can deuise, and then come again hether to me. Then the Ladie did as he commaunded, and came againe to him. Then he said: Madame I will and also desire you euen as you think to keep my loue, that you go to yonder Knight vnder the Oke, and suffer him to doe whatsoeuer he will with you, and commend me heartely to him. A sir said the Ladie, verilie I will not doe thus, for if I hadde euer thought to haue fulfilled his foolish desire, you shoulde neuer haue knowen it by my will: and sir if I should now doe it, it were to mee great rebuke, both before God and all the world. Madame said the Lord, I will take all the sinne on mee, and I sweare to you faithfullie on my trouth, that I will loue you and keepe you the more derely euer after, therefore I will that yee doe thus incontinentlye. Well sir saide the Ladie, it behoueth me thus to doe sith it is your pleasure, if honour come thereby, take it to you, and

it shame come thereby, yet must take it in good parte, and so this Ladie came into the Forrest to mée, and as soone as I sawe her I was neuer so ioyfull as then. For I thought I could haue giue all the world for her, then I came to her and embraced her in mine armes right sweetelie, and sayd: My déere Ladie and heartes desire, you bee to mee most heartely welcome. Sir Dekalaunde quoth shée, God put it into your heart that you do no wrong nor trespasse against anie person, but first sir, my Lorde my husbande heartelye commendeth him vnto you as to his onely friend. Howe so madame quoth I, where is my Lorde certainely said she, hée is hére by in this Castle. But madame quoth I, how is it, doth he know that you be come hether to me. Yea sir, said she, as God helpe me, for he hath caused me to be apparelled in the best maner, to the intent I should please you the better, and so he hath sent me hether to you to the intent to fulfill all your will and desire, and therfore beholde me here readie for to accomplish your will, as for hurt or ill ther shall come none vnto you, neither by my Lorde, nor yet by anie other for him, and so my Lorde dooth faithfully assure you, and sendeth you worde by mee that hée loueth you in all things better then he doth himselfe. When I heard the great curtesie of my Lorde, and howe that hée loued mée as well as himselfe, and that hée had sent me the thing that hée loued best in all the worlde to fulfill my desire therewith, & how that he would suffer that villanie for my sake, all my follie and vnreasonable desire was quenched. For then I thought it was better to leaue my sensual appetite, then to haue done y which I had intended in my hart, for I thought then it wold haue been to great a shame for me to requite with iniurie so noble and lordly curtesie. Then I kneeled downe before the Ladie requiring her of pardon for the great outrage and follie that I thought against her, desiring her for Gods sake to helpe to make peace againe with the good Lorde her husband for mee. Then shee tooke me by the hande and brought mee into the Castell before the presence of her Lorde.

And

And as soone as he sawe me he imbraced and kissed me, and I kneeled downe before him and cried him mercie, & there the accord was made betweene vs, and euer since hee hath loued me as well as euer he did before or better. Now good sir I haue shewed you all mine aduenture, which is right well knowen to many: and so it fortuned that but now of late my Lord Beauieu was at the feast with the Earle of Forrest, and there my said Lord tooke his Ladie Rossylon by the hand to daunce, and the Marshall of Pirpoys was there present, who is verie enuious, and when he saw this my Lord and Ladie daunce together, he said how that my Lord of Beauieu shuld be the second. Then the lord of Beauieu knew well inough what he meant, and said. Sir Marshall, as for sir Guy de la Launde, he is a good Knight, both wise and true. The Marshall answered and said, his bountie appeared well when he tooke his owne Lords wife. Sir said the Earle of Beauieu, though he desired her loue, yet I dare well saie that hee neuer trespassed, either against his Lorde or her, for he did not disguise himselfe like a ribaude, for to come vnto the wife of his fosterer, as some haue done, that I knowe right well: wherwith the marshall was sore displeased, because it touched his owne dealing, and saide. Sir ye be but a foole to speake these words to me, and thus they multiplied language so farre, that the Earle of Forrest and the Earle of Nemers hadde much a doe to appease them, and for this cause was the Tourney taken of both parties, which shall be on Wednesdaie next comming, and there wil be many great lords of the marshalls partie, as the Earle of Foix, the Earle of mountbeliall, and the Dolphin of Vienne, and many other Knightes, and also Alexander the young King of Malagore. And on my Lords partie will be sir James Earle of Forrest, and the Earle of Nemers, and diuers other, yet I doubt me greatly of the Earle of Beauieu, for I would be verie sorry if he had not the honour, therefore I praie you and all your companie to be at this tourney on my Lords party, for when you see him you will saie it were pittie but he should haue the victorie.

Thus

Thus haue I shewed vnto you all the troth of the matter. Verely sir saide Arthur, with a good will I shall bee with your Lord, but I pray you will this Ladie of Rollylon bee at the Turney? Yea truly she shall be there, and manie o-there great ladies and damsels: and also it is ordained by common consent, that he which doth best, shall be held as a King ouer all other Earles, Barrons, and Knights, that shall be there assembled, and crowned with gold as a King, and all they with all the power that they can make, shalbe content to goe with him in battaile whether soeuer he will haue them, and so from thencefoorth he shall be called king of the company: and this marshall intendeth to haue the honor if he may, for surely he is a good knight of his hands, & much goodnes is in him, if his tongue were not, but that little member shameth all the rest of his bodie, as it doth all them vnto whom God hath giuen an euill tongue.

How Arthur had the honour in the Turnay that was made at Vienne, betweene the Marshall of Myr-pois and the Earle of Beauieu, whereas wer diuers great Kings, Earles, Barons, and manie other good



Knights

Knights right valiantly whereby Arthur gate him great thankes and was greatly honoured of all the Ladies and Damsells there assembled. Cap. 28.

After that sir Guy Delalaund had shewed all this processe to Arthur and to his companie, they rode forth together, and came to Lion sur le roine, and so passed ouer the bridge, and rode through the towne, and in a faire medowe vnder the townes side, they espied where tents and pauilions were richly pight, at which time ther were assembled many great and noble Kings, Earles, Barrons & Knights as well of the one partie as of the other. Then sir Guy Delalaund sent a messenger [illegible] of Beauieu, certefieng him howe he [illegible] of valiant Knightes with him, and that in any [illegible] he should retaine them to bee of his companie. And when the Earle of Beauieu, and the Earle of Forest, and the Earle of Neuers hearde these tidings they came out of their tents, and saw where sir Guy Delalaund and Arthur and his companie came riding. And when they came neere they alighted and saluted these Earles, who did behold Arthur, and perceiued well that he was a meruailous faire Knight great, bigge, and well furnished, and seemed well to be of great fiercenesse, and noble estate: and also they saw Hector, a bigge Knight, and well made; both of bodie, armes and legges, and also they beheld Gouernar, who was a bigge man and well proportioned, & those Earles praised much these Knights in their harts. Then the Earle of Beauieu toke Arthur by the hand, and said: Sir, you be right heartely welcome into the Countrey of Viennes, praying you to take your lodging with mée & with these other two Earles heere present. Then Arthur said, Sir with a right good will, and so they lead him into their tents, and there Arthur, Hector, and Gouernar were vnarmed. And when they were out of their harneis, euerie man beheld Arthur, for he was meruaylous faire: so that tidings came into the Ladies tents how that sir Guy Delalaunde was come, and hadee brought with him three

goodly

godly Knights, and specially one of them, who was ỹ fairest and properest that euer was seene, so that ther was no brute nor talking throughout all ỹ hoast but of these three Knights. Some saide, of whence be they, or who knoweth them, thus they communed of them in euery place. Then Arthur and his companie issued out of the tentes, and beholde the fresh banners, standerds, and stremers wauering in the winde, pight before euerie Tent and Pauilion, and hearde also the trumpets, drums and cornets sounding in euerie corner of the field, and great coursers braying, and Knights running to assay their horses, casting of speares, shining of shieldes against the Sunne, and glistering of helmes, and knights by great companies talking together: also they espied the great tent of the Ladies, and on the top thereof there was a great shining apple all of burnished golde, and Ladies and Damsells therein singing & dauncing. Then Arthurs heart began to reioyce, and he said to Hector: Cousin, how say you, is it not better to be here to see all this worthinesse, then to creepe into our mothers lappes? Yes verely said Hector, for now here shall appeare who be noble men. You say true said Arthur, and ther with he returned into the Earle of Beauieus tent, and went to supper, and first there sate down the Earle of Neuers, and Arthur next him, and then the Earle of Forest and Hector, and the Earle of Beauieu and Gouernar, and they were richly serued. And after supper they played and sported the till it was time to goe to rest, and they went to their lodging, till the next morning, at which time they arose & heard seruice, and then walked & talked together without their tents, wherewith came to them a Knight from the Marshall of Pirpois, & said to the Earle of Beauieu: Sir, whensoeuer you will begin this turnay, my Lorde the Marshall is readie. Now as God help me said the Earle of Neuers, let vs goe to it incontinently: But sir Knight, I pray you tell me, with what compante doth your lorde the Marshal turney withall? Sir saide the Knight, he hath in his companye well neere the number of nine hundred Knightes,

rest-

redie appointed to the turney. In the name of God saide the Earle of Foreſt, but that is great odds, for I thinke our companie passeth not fiue hundred. Well sir saide Arthur, what then, care not for the number of people, wherefore let vs shortly goe and see these noble men, and I truſt God will helpe vs. Sir said the Earle of Beauieu, as God will, so be it: but will ye then helpe vs & be of our partie? With a right good will, said Arthur, Hector and Gouernar also. And then this Knight of the Marshalls praised Arthur much in his heart, and returned to his maſter, who as then was in the companie of the King of Malogre, and with them the Earle of Mount Beliall, and the Earle of Foys, and the Dolphin, who was a little diſeased, and therefore he would not as that day turnay. Then the Knight said to the Marshall, Sir, the Earle of Beauieu demaundeth of you the Turnay incontinently: but one thing I will tell you, sith you were borne, you neuer saw three so goodlye Knights as sir Delalaund hath brought with him, but I cannot know of whence they be, but one of them surmounteth the other two, both in beautie and ſtature. Jeſus saide the King of Malogre, what Knights be they? In good faith sir said ỳ knight, there can no man tel. Will they turnay to daye said the King: yea verelye saide the Knight, for right now when the Earle of Beauieu frared that he had not companie ſufficient to aunſwere your power, I heard the chiefe of these three knights, say vnto him, Sir care not for that, for God shal helpe vs, let vs shortly go see them. Then it seemeth said the King, that he hath a good heart. Yea sir said the Marshal, belike he beleeueth, that there is not in all the world his peere in deedes of chiualrie, therefore let vs goe shortly see what he can doe: he said truer then he was ware off, for Arthur could verie wel giue great ſtrokes, as was well approued after by his noble deedes. Then was it commaunded that trumpets & cornets should bee ſounded, and then Knightes on euerie part went to their harneis: then the Marshall, and the Earle of mount Beliall, and the Earle of Fois, with the number of nine hundred

Knights

knights were anone readie armed, and the young king of Malagozes was mounted on a great courser, and the Dolphin with him to the intent to sée this turney, for they wold not turney that daie, and incontinent as the Ladies and damsells heard the sounding of the Trumpets and hornes, they issued out of their Pauilions, and there was together in companie the Countesse of Neuers, the Countesse of Forrest, and the Countesse of Nounbeliall, and the Ladie of Rollylon, and a Ladie who was the marshalls sister, named madame Blaunch. Then the Countesse of Neuers said, let vs take good hède of this knight that is come with sir Guy de la Launde, and sée what he can doe. In the name of God said the Ladie of Rollylon, there bee three as I vnderstand, but I know not what they be, and all this while Arthur was in companie with the Earle of Forrest, and with the Earle of Neuers, and the Earle of Beauieu, and when they were readie armed, they mounted on their horses, and the Earle of Neuers and Arthur rode first together, and after them the Earle of Forrest and Hector, and the Earle of Beauieu and Gouernor, and after them al the other of their companie, and in right good order they rode forth to the turney: and then the Ladie Rollylon said to the other Ladies that were in her companie, beholde yonder is one of the straunge knights that commeth riding with the Earle of Neuers, and another with the Earle of Forrest. In the name of God said the marshalls sister, the third commeth with the Earle of Beauieu, it séemeth that the earles make much of these three straunge knights, but they know not as yet the force of the marshall my brother, but when they méete héere in the turney, they shall haue of him such acquaintaunce, that they will wish that they had not come héere to daie. No faire Ladie said the Ladie of Rollylon, I praie you then shew them some curtesie, send some word to them that they flie awaie before they sée the marshall your brother, for I am sure if they sée him they are but lost forquer. At which wordes all the Ladies did laugh and hadde greate sporte. Thus the Earle of Neuers and Ar-

thur rode forth till it was time to beginne the turney, and when the Earle of Nevers sawe the marshall on the other part readie prepared to iust, hee shewed him to Arthur. Then Arthur sayd: Sir he commeth verie hastilie, wherefore I require you let mée encounter him first. Goe your waie in Gods name sayde the Earle. Then Arthur rusht forth so fiercelie as Thunder had fallen from Heauen, and all the other Knightes of the tourney beheld him well, and praised him in their heartes. Then the Ladie of Rossylon said to the marshalls sister: Faire Ladie, I thinke yonder knight hath espied your brother, for you may se how fast he flieth, and at that course the marshall hitte Arthur in the middest of his shéeld, and brake his spere, but Arthur strake him so stronglie on the bealme, that hee shéuered his speare all in péeces, with the which stroke hee sent both Knight and horse to the earth, and at another course Arthur hitte another Knight so sore, that hee brake a greate péece of his bealme and shélde, & ouerthrew him flat to the earth in a great traunce sore wounded, and when the young King of Walogres saw ý, hée sayd to the Dolphin: Good Lord who is yonder Knight, hee séemeth to bee the best Knight of the worlde: Verilie sir saide the Dolphin, I neuer sawe such strokes giuen of anie Knight before. Then saide the Ladie of Rossylon to the marshalls sister: Madame, beholde how yonder straunge Knight flieth, but your brother the marshall holdeth againe, I had thought hee durst haue gone no farther for feare of your brother. At which time Hector also for his parte strake a Knight with so greate force, that hee ouerthrew him flatte to the earth, and Gouernar strake another downe horse and man, and put himselfe in the thickest of the preasse, and did meruailes in armes, so that all that beheldе him praised him greatlie. Then the Ladie of Rossylon sayde: Faire Ladie Blaunch, howe saie you, are not these straunge Knightes right valiaunt, therefore madame for Gods sake cause the marshall your brother to absent himselfe out of their fightes, and in so doing, I thinke verilie you shall doe a greate almes deede. Then Arthur

rusht

rusht into the thickest prease, and strake on the right hande and on the lefte so mightelie that it was meruailous, for there was none that euer abode him but hee leste the arson of his saddle and fell to the earth, at the last Arthur espyed where there was a Squire holding in his hande an axiltree of an olde broken Chariot, the which hee pulled out of his hande with such force, that hee cast downe the Squyer flat to the earth, whereat the Ladies and Damselles laughed, and then Arthur put vp his sworde, to the intent that hee shoulde maime or hurt no man, but with that peece of the Chariot hee thrust into the prease, and gaue therewith so greate and beauie strokes, that all that hee touched went flatte to the earth. For he was of that condition, that the more he had to doe, the more his strength increased, hee vnbarred healmes, and claue asunder shældes, and beate downe many Knights, for whom so euer he touched, were so astonied, that either hee auoided the saddle, or else his horse bare him in a traunce all about the fielde: also Hector and Gouernar did as well for their partes as anie Knightes might doe. So it fortuned as Arthur went searching the rankes and prease, hee encountered the Earle of Foys, who had nigh vnhorsed one of the knightes of the Earle of Beauieus partie, then Arthur spurred foorth his horse, and strake the Earle so fiercelie, that he thrust downe both horse and man flat to the earth, then Arthur turned againe to him, and whether hee woulde or not, hee caused him to yelde himselfe prisoner to the Earle of Beauieu, who was Lorde of that tourney on his side.

Then the knightes of the Tourney assembled them together by flockes, heere tenne and there fiftene, and ponder twentie, and fought eagerlie together, so that when one was fallen another didde relæue him. Some laughed, and other some complained, but Arthur was euer in the most thickest of the prease, and fared so among them, as the wolfe doth among shæpe, and laide on with so great and beauie strokes, that hee droue downe all that euer hee touched. Then ỹ earle of Beauieu said, so did all the other

knight, how that they neuer sawe knight of so greate courage nor valure in dedes of armes. The Ladies and damsels also greatly meruailed at him, and said that better then he was neuer any, and they concluded among them that hee was likelie to attaine to winne the crowne of that turney if he continued his prowesse according to his beginning. Then it fortuned that a great part of the marshalls companie ranne all at once on the Earle of Neuers, and on his companie, who were farre ouermatched, wherefore hee was sore bestead, and lost manye horses, and manye of his knights sore beaten, and hee himselfe ouerthrowen downe from his horse, and was likely to haue bene taken and yelded to the marshall. But then an Heraulde of armes began to crie, and saide. O Arthur of Britaine where art thou, now the Earle of Neuers is beaten and nere taken prisoner. When Arthur heard that, who as then had by the help of Hector and Gouernar discomfited a greate companye of knights, and espied the Earle of Neuers on the ground, he spurred foorth his horse, and ranne into the thickest of the prease, and strake the first that he encountered so, that hee fell downe to the earth both horse and man, then hee strake on the right side and on the left, that he beate downe al that was before him, so that none durst abide, and also Hector and Gouernar laid on so on all sides, that all that were before them trembled for feare, and by cleane force in spite of all his enimies he horsed againe the Earle of Neuers, and when he was thus remounted, Arthur then leapt againe into the prease, and did meruailes with his handes, for he claue asunder shields, and vnbarred healmes, and beate downe knightes by greate heapes. Thus was Arthur regarded of all people, who saide each to other: Jesus, what a wonderous knight is yonder, God defend and kepe him. And the young king of Malogres had his eyes euer vpon him, and sayde to the Dolphin. I thinke yonder knight bee no earthlye man, but I suppose hee is some spirite or fiend of the aire, for hee confoundeth all that hee meeteth. Then the ladie of Kollylon said to ỹ marshalles sister:

madame

Madame you haue done right well, for I beleeue surelie ye haue praied your brother that he should do no hurt to these straunge knightes, and all the other ladies had right great sport at the merrie iesting of these two ladies, and thus alwaies Arthur was fighting, and at the last ther were three knights ranne all at once on the Earle of Forrest, & beate him downe to the earth, and woulde haue taken him prisoner. But when Arthur sawe the Earle at that point, hee spurred his horse thetherward, and the first that he encountered he drawe downe flat to the earth, and the seconde hee toke in his armes, and pulling him out of his saddle, hee cast him downe on him that he had ouerthrowen, the which grieued him right sore, for the knight was great and beauie, because of the harneis that was on him, then hee that laie vnder him said: A sir you be but ill welcome to me, nor he that sent you hether, I praie God hee may haue some ill aduenture, for you haue all to bruled me with your falling. Then Arthur toke the knights horse and caused the Earle of Forrest to mount thereon, and Arthur put himselfe againe into the chiefest prease, and began againe to fight as freshlie as though hee hadde done nothing before of all that daie, so that he was doubted in euerie place, for there was none durst abide him, but all fled from him, so at the last hee came whereas the chiefe Standard was, whereas he found the Marshall, who did indeauour to beat downe all y was before him, at which time he hadde striken from Gouernar his shield, and therewith Arthur stroke him on the helme so fiercelie, that he drawe him downe too the earth all astonied, and Arthur toke his horse and gaue it to Hector, for his horse failed him and was sore wounded, and then Hector mounted on him, and this stroke was seene of the King and the Dolphin, and of all the ladies and damsells, and they all said that the Marshall hadde bene the best knight of the world, but now he hath met his master, for certainely yonder faire knight surmounteth in prowesse all other knights of the worlde. Then the ladie of Rollylon saide vnto the Marshalls sister. Madame your brother is not so mischie-

nous as you spake off before, you may behold these strange knightes how they are before him, and yet he doth nothing to them, I thinke hee sleepeth, you may see yonder how still he lyeth on the ground, for all that while he laie still on the earth sore astonied, and in a greate traunce, and when all the knightes of his partie sawe him lie so still vppon the ground, they feared least he had beene dead and said one vnto another: yonder is the diuell, I thinke he will confound vs all, therefore let vs depart out of this field, and therwith they went their waies, and so there remained still Arthur, Hector, and Gouernar, and when the young king and the Dolphin, and many other sawe Arthur alone in the fielde, they came to him and saluted him saying: Sir, God keepe you that are the best knight of the world, and increase your noble honour and valure: my Lord said Arthur, God that hath formed all thinges of naught increase your honour and be your sauegard, and sir sauing your grace I am no such knight, worthie of such praise as you giue mee. Well sir saide the King, wee haue seene right well how it is, therfore mine owne sweete friend, I require you that you will bee one of my house, and you shall bee my companion. Sir saide Arthur, I am yours to my power whersoeuer I bee, howbeit I haue a Lorde alreadie, who hath nourished mee like his owne childe. Sir, in truth sayde the Earle of Forrest, it is then good right right that you loue him. And as they were thus talking together, the marshall arose from the ground, and when hee sawe that the tourney was finished, and that he had done nothing to him that had beaten him downe, hee was right sore displeased, and then hee sent a Knight to the Earle of Beauieu, desiring him for to haue the turney to begin againe the nert day, and how that hee would encounter yet againe with Arthur. This knight found the Earle of Beauieu in the companie of the young King and Arthur: and then he said, sir my Lord the marshal saluteth you, and desireth you againe to haue a tourney to morrowe. By the good Lorde, quoth the young King, your master ought to bee content with that which hath

beene

beene heere this daie, wherefore it is reason that he now rest himselfe, for the King full well thought that the marshall woulde not bee in rest till hee were reuenged of Arthur. Ah sir sayd Arthur, the marshall is not yet wearie, and he woulde thinke my Lord of Beauieu for recreant, if hee should refuse his request, therefore sir for Gods sake graunt it him. Sir said the Earle with a right good will, sith it pleaseth you, but sir I require you to helpe our partie: Verilie sir said Arthur, with all my heart to the best of of my little power: then there was graunted to be another tourney on the next daie. Then sir Guy de la Launde came vnto Arthur and ledde him to bee vnarmed, and Arthur toke his leaue of the King, who woulde right gladlie haue had him in his companie, and the people ranne to beholde Arthur, and saide with a common voice, beholde him that hath vanquished: When Arthur was vnarmed, the Earle of Beauieu kept him companie, and also Hector and Gouernar were vnarmed, and the Ladies and damsells returned into their Pauilions, alwaies speaking of Arthur, and they assembled together in companies, heere ten and there twelue, and all the Countesses were together in one place, & with them the marshalls sister dame Blaunch, and the Ladie Rossylon speaking euer of Arthur: verilie saide the Countesse of Forrest, sith I was first borne I neuer sawe so good a Knight nor so valiaunt in armes as hee is. It is of a trouth sayde the Ladie Neuers, sawe you not howe hee brake the greate companies of Knightes, and tourned and ouerthrewe all that euer hee couched. By my faith sayde the Countesse of Foys, I sawe him when hee embraced a Knight in his armes all armed, and cast him downe vppon another Knight, and bruised him right sore therewith: and also sawe you not howe that he strake the marshall downe to the grounde, to saye the trouth hee is the best Knight that now liueth in all the worlde, and the most hardiest. And moreouer all the beautie of the worlde that maye bee comprised in any man is in him.

Also he is replenished with all grace and vertue, for hee is free, meeke, and gentle as a lambe. By the faith that I owe vnto God said the ladie Rosslon, my ladie the Countesse of Forrest I would he were your knight, I beléeue you well said the ladie Blaunch, for then I thinke verilie you would speake with him oftentimes, when other ladies were a bed fast on sleepe, with as few a companie as you might, without making of anie noise, but shame haue she that will forfaite with an other that which is not her owne. Certainly aunswered the Ladie Rosslon, I thinke there be but few in this world borne, that liueth cleane both in thought and dæde, howbeit I am not she that closeth priuelie knights in her chamber by night times, without the lisence of my lord, nor kæpe anie vnder my couerture, how saie you faire Ladie, know you anie otherwise by me, if ye doe, spare not, but speake it héere openlie, if you be of that conditions, or haue done so your selfe, you ought then the rather to be more secret, if you knowe that malydie to bee in anie other, when you know your owne estate, leaue to enquire farther then nædeth of another, for I am certaine that you be sometime in the shadowe oftner then I am in the Sunne, with companie oftner then I am alone. Then al the Ladies & Damsells began to laugh, and turned all the matter into iestes and sports, and all this while Arthur was in the Earle of Beauieus Tent, and there was with him sir Guy de la Launde, and there he was well serued and much honoured of euerie man, and after supper they passed foorth the time in great ioy and much mirth, till it was conuenient time to goe to rest.

How Arthur the second daie had the honour of the Turnay, and how with him abode the price of the field. Chap. 29.

THE nert daie betimes Arthur arose, and all the other Earles, Barons, and knightes, to heare seruice, and after they armed them all on both parties, and came into the

field, whereas they shoulde turney, and as soone as Arthur and the Marshall sawe each other, they prepared themselues to runne together, and dashed their spurres to their horses, & encountered so fiercely that they all to brake their speares the which were great and big, as though they had ben but rodes, and so passed forth without hurting of each other, & when that Arthur had performed his course, he encountered another Knight, and strake him so with the tronchon of his speare, that he was therewith sore wounded and fell downe to the earth. Then Hector and Gouernar began to striue and to beate downe Knightes valiantlie, and did enforce them to doe noble deedes of armes, and Arthur fought so among them, that he caused all the rankes and prease of Knightes to auoide and giue him place, euerie thing fel to him as he would wish it, for hee hewed shaldes and beate downe Knights, and wanne horses, and enforced prisoners to yeld them at his pleasure, so that all fled before him, and none durst encounter his mightie strokes. Then the Ladie of Rollylon who was then neere to the Countesse of Forrest, said to the Marshalls sister. Madame, yet I spake truly yesterdaie, when that I said this Knight was worthie to be retained of a noble Ladie, wherefore I woulde hee were pertaining vnto my Ladie the Countesse of Forrest heere present, for he is no Knight to bee common for all Ladies, such as spinne in the chimney, and I thinke some such you knowe verie well, for ther be many that chose not by their will one onely, but are gladde to take such as they may get, or else peraduenture they might tarrie verie long or they found such a like Knight as this is. Then the Countesse of Neuers said to the Countesse of Forrest, madame this Ladie saieth without pawning, truelie saide the Countesse of Forrest, they that speak well, shall heare no worse, but this marshals sister spake yesterdaie villany to my ladie Rollylon, and therefore now she remembreth her thereof: and it fortuned that in this season the Lord of the Castle Pleembert, and Reinolde of Pierrile, and welnigh fiftene other Knightes of their companies, toke their counsaile to runne

all at once againſt Arthur, to the intent to bring him to the ground, and when they ſawe Arthur had bene well trauailed, and that they thought he had beene wearie, they all together ranne at him and ſtrake him on all ſides, and charged him with ſo many blowes that his horſe founded vnder him, howbeit as his horſe fell, hee toke ſir Iſſembart that was before him in his armes, and caſt him downe to the earth in ſpite of his heart, and when they both on ẏ ground, then Arthur ſtept vpon his feete and laide hands on ſir Iſſemberts horſe, and mounted thereon againſt the will of all his enimies, and when Reinolde of Pierrele ſawe that he went with ſuch good aide, he embraced Arthur with both his handes, and ſo each of them helde other right fore, and therewith other Knightes came ſo fiercelie on them, that they were driuen downe to the earth horſe and man. Then Arthur leapt on his feete againe, and as hee ẏ was was right diſpleaſed, ranne to the Earle of Foys and toke him in his armes with greate force, and pulling him ſo ſtrongly that he brake girthes, pattrell, and harneis, and ſo the Earle fell with the ſaddle betweene his legges, and Arthur leapt on the horſe bare backed, and toke from a ſquire a maſe of Steele that he hadde, and laide on with both his handes, ſtriking the firſt that hee encountered ſo fiercelie, that he turned his legges vpward, and then hee went to a ther Knight and ſtrake him ſo ſore, that he was ſo aſtonied therwith, that his horſe bare him halfe a mile ere he knew where he was, and in this rage Arthur droue downe ten Knightes or euer hee reſted, and laide on both on the right ſide and on the left. with ſo greate ſtrength, that e confounded all that euer he touched, for hee confounded all that euer he touched, for hee was in ſuch a furie, that hee knew not well whether he was on horſebacke or on foote, with ſaddle or without ſaddle, and hee foamed ſo at the mouth, that all thoſe which ſawe him, ſayde hee was out of his wit: ſo that all fledde before him, and gaue him waye where ſo euer hee went, and hee did ſo much that hee eſcaped cleane from all the Knights which thought to put him

to rebuke and shame, so that the place whereas hee stode was clean auoyded. Then came to him Hector and Gouernar, who when they sawe him without a saddle, greatlye meruayled: and therewith Hector rode towarde a Knight so fiercely, that he bare him downe to the grouud, and Gouernar tooke his horse and brought him vnto Arthur. And when Arthur perceiued that hee had no saddle vnder him, he meruailed greatly, for he was so sore vered before, that he tooke no hæde thereof. Then he asked of Hector & Gouernar how he had lost his saddle, and whether he had anie fall or not, and they shewed him howe it came to passe, whereat they laughed. And when that Arthur was mounted into the Saddle, hee sawe before him where as there stoode all the Countesses, and diuerse other Ladies and Damsells without their tents for to beholde the tourney, then hee spurred his horse, & came to them and alighted downe to the earth, and humblie saluted him and saide: Faire Ladies, God that guideth all thinges giue ioye and honour to all your noble companie, which is right faire and beautifull. Sir saide they, all you bee heartelie welcome. Well faire Ladies saide Arthur, for Gods sake bee not displeased that I am so bolde to come to you, for it shoulde haue bene great shame to mee, seeing that I was so neere your presence, if I had not done my duetie in saluting of your honour: and in the meane time as they thus talked together, the Earle of Foys and his companie ranne to the Earle of Forrest and his traine, and held him so short, that hee brake all the ranke of this companie, and had nigh taken prisoner the Earle of Forrest, for was beaten downe to the earth: and when the Countesse his wife sawe her Lorde so nigh ouercome, shee sayde vnto Arthur: Gentle Knight, I praie you of what companie bee you off in this tourney. Faire Ladie saide Arthur, so it is that I am of the companie pertaining vnto the Earle of Forrest: certainelie sir aunswered the Ladie, I ranne scarcelie beleeue that, for if so be that you were anie of his companie, you woulde not suffer him to be

dealt

dealt with as he is nowe, but I thinke you loue better eaſe and reſt then to turney and in ſo doing, you doe well and wiſelie, for it is better to bee in the ſhaddowe then in the Sun light. When Arthur heard her ſaie ſo he was greatlie abaſhed, and turned his face toward the turnay, & ſawe where the Earle of Forreſt was beaten from his horſe, and ſtode defending himſelfe on foote, & then he ſaid to the countelle of Forreſt: madame I beſeech you pardon mee, for I thought full little that my Lorde your huſband had bene in this caſe, but by the grace of God I will ſone help and ſuccour him. Yea ſaid the Ladie, but you be verie farre, nowe you ſee him almoſt ouercome, & yet you ſtand here ſtil preaching to vs. When Arthur heard that, he was ſore diſpleaſed, and mounted on his horſe without anie longer delaie, and dasht into the thickeſt of the rout ſo fiercely, that his horſe went like the thunder, and all the Ladies beheld him verie well, and ſaid, God keepe and defende thee from miſchiefe or ſhame. And Arthur ruſht into the preaſe, & ſtrake the firſt ſo rudelie, that he ouerthrew both horſe and man, then the Ladies began to laugh, then Arthur toke another with his hands by the ſhoulders, and call him rudely to the earth, then he toke his maſe of ſteele hanging at his ſaddell bowe, and ſtrake ſo fiercely therewith round about him in euerie place, that hee brake the preaſe, and beate downe Knightes, ſo that there were none that durſt approch vnto him, but they all fledde before him, as the ſmall fowles doe before the Faulcon. Then Arthur came to the Earle of Forreſt and brought him a new horſe, and helped him to mount thereon. Then Arthur rode to the Earle of Fois, and the earle gaue him a great ſtroke on the helme, but Arthur moued no more for all the ſtroke, then though he had ſtriken a great tower, but Arthur ſtrake him againe ſo fiercely, that he cauſed him to auoide the arſon of his ſaddle, and Jaket Arthurs ſquire toke the horſe, then Arthur ſaid to him: Jaket, goe with that horſe and preſent it from mee to my Ladie the Countelle of Forreſt, who euen now blamed me full ſore. Sir quoth Jaket, with a right good will,

and

and so went forth with the horse: and Arthur all this while held vnder him the Earle of Foys, in such wise, till at the last the Earle of Forest came to them, and there to him the Earle of Foys was faine to yéelde himselfe. Then Arthur put himselfe againe into the preasse, and strake so on all parts, that finally euerie man fled from him, and lefte him in the place all alone. Then Arthur cried openly and said, If there be anie Knight that dare come, let him appeare: but he might haue tarried long inough, or anie ther would haue come to him. Then sir Guy Delalaund came to him and saide: Sir, I haue promised you that I would shewe vnto you the Ladie of Rossylon, pleaseth it you now therfore to come with me, & you shall see her. By the faith that I owe to God quoth he, I will goe with you gladly: & then they two and Hector and Gouernar rode forth to the Ladies tent, and by the way they encountered Jaket, who had done his message, and he shewed to Arthur howe that the Countesse of Forest right heartely thanked him. When they were before the tent they alighted, and then generally all the Ladies and Damsells came towards them with great ioye: and when Arthur was within the Tent with the Ladies, they affectionately beheld him, and the Countesse of Neuers and the Countesse of Forest right hartely welcommed him, and he said: Faire Ladies, great wealth and honour God send vnto you all. Then the Countesse of Foys did salute him, and said: Sir, I ought not thus to salute you, sith you haue so ill intreated my lord my husbande this day. Déere Ladie said Arthur, you ought not therfore to blame me, for it was but the Fortune of the play. Truly sir said she, you say nothing but troth, neither beare I to you therfore any euill will. Then the Countesse of Forest who had spoken to him before right sharply said: Sir, I humbly require of you pardon, and I will make you amends, in that I haue so straungely spoken to you before this time, wherefore noble and gentle Knight, take no regard to the vaine words of a woman, who lightly openeth her mouth to speake: but weigh your great bountie and

noble-

nobleneſſe, wherewith you be greatly endued: yet ſir, that which I ſaid, was becauſe I ſaw my Lord in great nede. Then came to them ſir Guy Delalaund holding the ladie of Roſſylon by the hand, and ſaide to Arthur: Sir, I haue before this time promiſed to ſhow you my Ladie of Roſſylon, therefore beholde her, for heere ſhe is now preſent before you. And when Arthur ſawe her he had great ioye of her, and promiſed her faithfully to be alwaies her owne knight, and ſhe againe right courteouſly thanked him, and all the other Ladies and Damſells ſtedfaſtly beheld him, and required him that he would take the paine to vnarme himſelfe among them, for they ſaid that they would faine ſee him vnarmed: and somewhat for curteſie he withſtode their deſire, but finally they deſired him ſo earneſtlye, that he was fain to agree to their requeſt, and when he was vnarmed, he was of ſuch a ladie merualous faire and comely to behold: for he was bigge, tall and ſtraight. Then theſe Ladies beheld him merualouſly, and ſaid each to other: how that ſhe ſhoulde bee right happie, that might haue ſuch a knight vnto her louer, and all theſe Counteſſes and great Ladies wiſhed each of them, that he might haue bene pertaining vnto their Lordes. Then a Ladie brought to him warme water in a baſen of ſiluer to waſh his necke and viſage becauſe of the ſweating in his harneis, and the ladie of Roſſylon put a mantell of ſcarlet about him, the which was pertaining to the Counteſſe of Neuers, to the intent he ſhould take no colde after his labour, and ſo he remained a good ſpace among them, and finally toke his leaue. Then the Ladies deſired him that he would be their knight, and that hee would ſuffer his harneis to remaine ſtill among them till he had nede thereof, and that he would vouchſafe to weare the mantell of ſcarlet ſtill on him. And Arthur did graunt them their deſire, & ſo mounted on his horſe, & al his companie, and rode forth till at the laſt he met with all the whole aſſemblye of both parts, and there was ỳ young King of Valogre, and all the other foure Earles, and the Dolphin, and fiue hundred other knights.

Then

Then the young King sayde to Arthur: Sir, you bee right heartelye welcome, as hee that is the flower of all chiualrie, and the best Knight of the worlde, and there he desired him greatlye to abide with him, and that they might bee companions together euer after and friendes. But Arthur excused him as well as hee might: and all this season hee hadde on the fresh mantell of Scarlet, wherein he semed bigge and long, and meruailous straight and fayre, and generallye all the Knightes beheld him and sayde, howe that hee was highly blessed of God, in that hee was both faire and hardie, and in chiualrie surmounted all other: for they all sayde, that the valour of all other Knightes was nothing in respect of his prowesse.

How the Marshall of Myrpoys for enuie that hee had because Arthur had the honour of the Tournay, & for that hee had beaten him downe, who thought himselfe before to haue bene the best Knight of the worlde, and howe that therefore



he

he defied Arthur, and challenged him to fight. And how Arthur vanquished him, and brake one of his armes, and two of his ribbes on the left side.

Chapter 30.

Then the marshal who had his hart inflamed with great yre, because Arthur had put him to the worst, and also because he heard so much good spoke of him, had so great enuie in his heart, and so great despite, that he could not hold himself in rest, for he beleeued himself to be the best knight of the worlde: then openly he spake, so high and lowd that euerie knight might heare him, and Arthur also, saying in this manner of wise: Certainly this straunge knight can not swowne when he is led by the hand with faire ladies & damsells, and cloathed with their mantells, he lacketh nothing but a softe pillow to play thereon with some of them. And when Arthur heard him, he answered and said: Sir if these ladies take me by the hand, I thanke them therefore, for it is by their courtesie, and not by my deseruing, therefore I loue them the better, and will be the gladder to serue them, and to be a faithfull knight to them all in general: for as much is a knight worth, as he can deserue praise of ladies and damsells. Then the marshall full of anger answered: In faith as for you ye be but little worth, and that appeareth well, when you are faine to take the reuersion of these ladies olde cloathing. Well sir said Arthur, as for all that loke whatsoeuer they doe to mee, I am right well content therewith, I thinke I haue nothing of yours, if I haue take it from me if you may. Certainlie saide the Marshall, if you had anie thing of mine, so would I doe, therefore thinke not the contrarie, for I would not spare neither for you nor for anie other to take it, grudge thereat who would. Then Arthur smiling said, well sir then I am verie gladde that I haue nothing of yours, for if I had, me thinks I should not keepe it long by your will. And when the marshall sawe him smile he thought he did it for despite of him and said. Sir, will you doe so much for all these la-

dies sakes, that you & I may plaie together with two saire Speares. Sir said Arthur, you be so valiant a Knight that you ought not to be refused or denied for so small request. Then the marshall was blamed of the King and of all the other Knightes, and they would full faine haue letted these iusts, because they thought Arthur was wearie of the labour which he had in the tourney before, but the marshall said, he hath promised it me, and therefore if it please him, I trust he will not faile me, if he doe I will saie that he is recreant. Naie said Arthur, by the faith that I owe vnto God I will not faile you: and so euerie man praied God that the shame might fall vnto the marshall, because of his proude and disdainfull minde. Then Arthur demaunded incontinentlie for his harneis, and sir Guy de la Launde went vnto the Ladies tent, and shewed them how the marshall had challenged Arthur to iust with him again, then the Ladies gaue him all his harneis, and praied God for to giue vnto Arthur the honour of that course, for they said how that the marshall was a fole, and of an outragious & wilfull minde, wherefore they praied vnto God that hee might spæde the worse. Then madame Blaunch said to the Ladie of Rossylon: Ladie I beleeue now that your straunge Knight shall haue yet ere it be night great need of some soft bed to lie in your chamber, by that time my brother hath burd a candle for his head, for I assure you he neuer as yet encountered so deere a Phisition. Well madame said the Ladie of Rossilon: Faire and softly, at the end shal be seene who will win the wager as yet you can make no boast, for you haue got nothing. Then Arthur and the marshall both did arme them, & being both in the field, there was brought to them great speares, and they spurred their horses with so greate furie, that the bloud dasht out of their sides, for they were both good and redoubted Knightes, but the marshall was not to be compared vnto Arthur, for sith Arthur was first made Knight, he feared no man liuing, wherefore the marshall committed greate follie to enterprise anie such thing against him: but it so falleth out, that pride dooth often-

times much harme to his maſter: well, the marſhall at the firſt courſe ſtrake Arthur, and brake his Speare to his hande, and Arthur for all that moued no more then if there had bene but a rēede broken on him, but he ſtrake the marſhall ſo ſtronglie, that he bare downe horſe and man to the earth. Then began all the Ladies and damſells, Knights, and Squires to laugh, and the Ladie of Roſſilon ſaid to the Ladie Blaunch: madame, your brother is not ſo outragious as I had thought that he hadde bene, for he taketh no more of the earth but his own length, I thinke hee ſlēepeth, beholde how ſtill he lieth: and when the marſhall awaked out of his traunce, hee was ſore aſhamed in that hee was ſo ouerthrowen, and demanded if he had ouerthrowen Arthur, then it was ſhewed him nay, wherwith he was right ſore diſpleaſed: yet againe he praied Arthur on his Knighthode that hē would iuſt with him another courſe: but all that euer heard him thought he played the proude fole, and counſailed him the contrarie, but all that auailed not, for he ſaide he woulde needes yet iuſt once againe, and when Arthur heard him of that minde, he had great diſdaine thereat, and waxed angrie in his heart to conſider his fooliſh and preſumptuous minde, and ſaide, well, if hee will nēedes abide the ſecond, I thinke he will gladlie let the third paſſe. Then they toke much greater Speares then they had before, and with great ire ranne together ſo eagerlie, that it ſēemed the earth trembled vnder them, and the marſhall ſtroke Arthur right fiercely, for he was a verie good knight, and ſhēuered his Speare all to prēces, but Arthur hit him with his Speare, the which was greate and bigge, ſo that the Saddle, Patrell, Girths and all burſt, and horſe and man went downe to the ground ſo rudelie, that with the fall, the Marſhall had one of his armes broken, and alſo two of his ribbes, and his bodie ſore bruſed, ſo that he laie ſtill a greate while without mouing, and then all the Knightes that ſawe the ſtroke were greatlie abaſhed, and ſaide each to other, howe that the marſhall was beaten downe to the earth both horſe and man, and in greate

leopardie of his life

How Arthur was crowned King of all the Knightes of the tourney, and they promised him their faith and troth to serue him in deedes of armes, alwaies and euerie place whereas it seemed him best, & the young king of Malogre did crowne him. Chap. 31.

THen when the marshall was thus ouerthrowen, the ladies did laugh, and said: Blessed be God, pride alwaies ouerthroweth his master. Then the Ladie of Rossylon said to the Ladie Blaunch: madame, now it seemeth that your brother hath lost the wager, it had bene better for him that he had bene in his chamber, hee speaketh no more wordes, he hath little care now for the Flies, beholde how hee shaketh his legges. Then all the other Countesses and Ladies that were there present did laugh, and said, the pride of him is now well abated. God kepe and defend such a Knight that can giue such valiaunt strokes: as God helpe me sayd the ladie Rossylon, the marshall is now in good rest, I think he hath little lust to remount again, let him be wel apaied, for now he hath that he sought for, & so each of them spake their verdite. Then the young King and the other Earles came to the marshall, and demaunded of him how hee did, and he aunswered and saide, right ill, for I haue two of my ribbes broken, and one of my armes, but I praie you how doth Arthur? In good faith said the Earle of Beauieu, he is yet in the field, whereas hee attendeth if you will goe to him to breake the third speare. Alasse saide the marshall, I beleeued this daie in the morning that I had bene the best Knight of the world, for I thought that ther was none that had anie power in comparison vnto mee, but nowe I haue found my master, therfore I require you cause him to come to me. Then the earle of Beauieu toke Arthur by the hand and saide, Sir, the marshall would faine speake with you.

In the name of God said Arthur, let vs goe to him, by that time the marshall was laide on a pillow that was brought to him, and when hee sawe Arthur, hee saide that all might heare him: Sir you bee to mee right heartelie welcome, as he that is the chiefe flower of all chiualry, and sir I crie you mercie of the great pride that I vsed, the which mooued me to iust with such a Knight as you bee, verilie I was enuious and sorrowfull of the honour that I hearde spoken of you, and therefore I toke on mee to iust with you, intending to abate your praise and renowme: but such there be that thinketh to grieue other, and the hurt tourneth vnto themselues, God hath done to me according to my thought, for hee hath brought me into the same case, that I hadde thought to haue you in, therefore gentle Knight, I require you to pardon my follie that I haue thought against you: and when Arthur heard him speake so louinglie, hee hadde greate pittie of his hurt and saide. Ah sir I ought to crie you mercie because that I haue hurt you so sore, wherefore it fore-thinketh mee, and I praie you to pardon mee, certainelie sir, saide the marshall, with all my heart, and I giue you my voice for the crowning at this tourney, as vnto him that is the best Knight of all the worlde. Then the King saide, sir marshall then you bee content that hee shall bee crowned as the best Knight of this tourney. Sir saide the marshall, as God helpe mee with all my heart, and the King saide, by the faith that I owe vnto God, hee shall haue my voice and good will, and all the other Earles saide that they were agreed thereunto, for hee was worthie and none other. Then came to them all the Ladies and Damselles, and they were all of one minde, that hee shoulde bee crowned for the noblest Knight of all other, and then presentlie the crowne was brought foorth, and the noble young King of Walogres didde sette it vppon Arthurs head by the common consent of all the whole assemblie that were there present, and they were all verie well content that hee shoulde bee King

of those knightes that were there assembled, and they all proferred him succour and aide in all places and against al people, and as often as he would commaund them. Thus they remained in great feasts and ioy welnigh the space of fifteene daies, with all manner triumph sounding to nobleneſſe.

How Arthur after his coronation tooke leaue of the young King, and of all the other Lordes and Knights, Ladies and Damſells, who conuaied him on his iourney, and ſorrowed greatly to leaue his companie. Chap. 32.

AT the end of the fifteene daies Arthur tooke leue of the king, and of all the Earles and Ladies, who were not well content at his departing, and the king ſaid, right deere knight and friend, I require you as heartelie as I can, that you will goe with me into my Countrie, and I promiſe you by the faith of a king, that you and I will be in all thinges as companions and friends, and I will loue you right deerely, and giue you land ſo great and good, that you ſhall be right well content therewith, therefore mine owne ſweete friend, I require you graunt me my deſire, and therewith hee embraced and kiſſed him, and when Arthur heard him, he ſmiled and ſaid: my good Lord I thanke you, and woulde to God moſt puiſſaunt Prince that I might do as you deſire me, for it were great ioye vnto mee to abide in your noble companie, if it were not for one thing that I haue enterpriſed, and as yet I knowe not well what it is, nor where to finde it, but as mine aduenture happeneth. I haue tarried here verie long. therefore now it is time that I depart, and when they heard that he would needes goe, they were right ſorrowfull, and the king and all the other offered him to goe in his companie to helpe and aide him to attaine his deſire, but Arthur woulde not conſent thereto, and ſaid that he would haue no companie but ſuch as came with him. Yes ſir ſaid the king,

you shall haue with you Bawdwin my Squire, and I will deliuer him to you for good and true, for I will vndertake he would rather die then his master shoulde take anie hurt or domage by his default, and also he knoweth the vertues of all hearbs, and he is a soueraigne Surgion. In the name of God, said Arthur, I am content to take him of you, and for his cunning I will loue him better then two thousand pound of yearelie lande. Then Arthur, Hector, Gouernar, Bawdewin, and Jaket, toke leaue of euerie man, and departed and entered into their iourney, and Bawdewin and Jaket rode before, Hector and Gouernar rode together, and Arthur betweene them, and as they rode together they communed of the great valure of the young King of Valogres, and of the other Earles and Knightes, Ladies and Damsells, and of the great honour that they had among them. In this manner they rode euerie daie the space of three weekes, without finding anie aduenture whereof mention is made.

How Arthur and his companie ariued in the Earledome of Brewle, marching against the land of Sorolois, and entered into the Citie of Brewle, which was beseged by the Duke of Orgoule, named Malaquies, because the Earle would not let him haue his daughter in marriage, wherfore by false treason he slew the Earle. Chap. 33.

AT the end of three weekes Arthur and his companie entered into the Earledome of Brewle against the land of Sorgloys, and ouer this earledome there gouerned an Earle, noble of behauiour and of frends, and accounted verie wise, and had to his wife a noble Ladie and a vertuous, who was named Isabell, and they hadde betweene them a faire and a gratious daughter, named Alice, ioyning to this Earledome there marched a Dutchie wherein there was a Duke which was named Malaquies, a cruell man and an enuious, and this

Dutchie

Dutchie was called Dergoule, and this Duke had often and many times demaunded of this Earle his daughter Alice in marriage, but the Earle nor the good ladie his wife would not in anie manner of wise graunt thervnto, because of the euill conditions that wer in this Duke, and when the duke sawe that he could not get this faire Ladie Alice, he bare in his heart greate hate and enuie to the Earle her father, insomuch that at the last, this Duke had knowledge vppon a daie how that the Earle was gone to chase in the forrest, & there by his prepensed mallice he caused this Earle shamefullie to be slaine and murthered, and when the Earle was thus mischieuouslie slain, he was brought home to his wife which was right sorrowfull for his death, & made him to be honorablie buried, but this sorrowful ladie in no wise could verilie tell how he was slaine, but she had great suspition in the Duke, and so within halfe a yeare after the Duke came vnto this Countesse, and demaunded of her dame Alice her daughter, but the Countesse because she had him in suspition for the death of ỳ Earle her husband, would in no wise graunt therto, also this faire maiden Alice wold in no wise haue him, but rather desired to die, and when the Duke perceiued that he might not haue her at his pleasure, he hadde great despite therat, and so defied the Countesse, and assembled a great host, and he besieged the Citie of Brewle, and wasted all the Countrie round about, and made a vow that he would not depart thence till that hee had wonne her by force, and in the meane season Arthur and his companie arriued in that Countrie and the Duke had lien at the siege as then the space of a yeare before, and in the Citie there were foure hundred knightes besides other souldiers, and thus Arthur and his companie rode through this Countrie, the which he found all desolate and wasted, and met with much pepple flying out of the land, whereat he was greatlie amazed, and demaunded of two victuallers, that hee met leading of victualls to the host, what was ỳ cause of ỳ exile & wasting of ỳ countrie, & they answered, that the Duke of Dergoule had wasted it in such sort. My friends said Arthur,

and I praie you for what cause? Sir said they, that will not we tell you, for we haue neede to sell our victuall, to getto thereby our liuing, and therefore it behoueth vs not to sate ill, nor to accuse anie person, but if you will know, you may demaund of this people that you see flying out of the countrie. Then Arthur demaunded of them the cause, and they shewed him how that the Duke of Orgoule demaunded in marriage the Earles daughter, and how that he caused the Earle to be slaine by treason, because that he would not agree to his desire, and now how he hath besiged the Countesse in the Citie of Brewle, and hath wasted all the countrie: and when Arthur heard all this, hee saide: Sirs, God spéd and helpe you all, and when he was ridden farre from them, he said to Hector his cosin. Cosin, howe saie you, what is best that wee shall doe? Sir saide Hector, in the name of God let vs enter into this war. I allow it wel said Arthur, but we will not aid the Duke who is in the wrong, though he haue the better power: nay sayd Hector, that is not mine intent, let vs aide them that be within the Citie, who be in great ieoperdie & nigh vndone, wherefore they are in right great feare, and this in my minde is best for vs to doe, because they are in the right, wherefore God will helpe and succour vs. Truelie said Arthur, it is well saide, and so we will doe, but how shall we enter into the Citie, seeing this Duke hath besieged it round about. Well quoth Gouernar, we must enter by one way or other, and thus they rode forth till at the last they espied the Citie of Brewle, the which was verie strong, with high walls and mighty towers, and round about the Citie they sawe Tents and Pauilions pight, & glistering of standards, and streamers wauering with the winde, and much people prepared for the warre. Then saide Arthur: Friends, this Duke belike hath much people, I will goe and speake with him ere I enter into the citie: ye saie right well said Hector, to the intent that ye may know him & better another time, if it fortune you to encounter with him in & field. So they rode forth straight vnto the great Tent of the Duke, and there they

found him standing without the said Tent, commaunding his Seneshall that the next day betimes he should assalt the Citie with three hundred halberds, and with those woordes Arthur and his companie lighted of their horses, and saluted the Duke right curteouslie, and when the Duke sawe them, he praised them greatly in his heart, and friendly did salute them againe. Sir saide Arthur, wee departed from our Country when we heard speake of this warre that you haue in hand, and we three Knightes are of Fraunce, and wold gladlie serue some noble man, and be retained to him for his wages. In the name of God saide the Duke, you bee hether right heartelie welcome, and though it bee so that I haue people sufficient, yet wil I be glad to retain you all to be of my house, and haue wages, meat and drinke, horse and harneis, and all that you can conquere of your enimies shal be your owne. Sir said Arthur, I thank you, of this matter I shall speake with my companie and know their mindes. But sir, I require you against whom shall we haue to doe: as God helpe me, said the Duke, against the Citie, wherein ther is a ladie who hath refused to giue me her daughter in marriage, wherfore I wil win her by force. Sir said Arthur, how long hath it bene since you haue besieged this citie. Verilie said the Duke, it is now more then a yeare, but I will abide here this seauen yeare but I will winne it. Well sir said Arthur, heard you anie thing of late from this Ladie, whether she will agree to your desire or no. Naye in truth saith the Duke, I heard not from them a great while. Well sir said Arthur, peraduenture this Ladie repenteth her that she hath not fulfilled your will, for now at the end she knoweth better her owne follie then shee did in the beginning, and euer the longer, the better shall she know how that her lande is wasted, and she may well see how that shee is inclosed within the citie, & it wasteth her goods, & her people also by all likelihode are greatlie annoyed with so long penning in, so all these thinges ought to moue her to fulfill your desire: Sir said the Duke, it is verie true, howbeit I thinke there is none of her counsaile that can shew her so-

much reason, or else they will not shew it her. But since you haue saide so much as you haue done, I will desire and praie you to doe so much as shew her that which you haue done to me, for you be as yet indifferent, and of neither partie, therefore you may speake to her the more boldlie, & if she will not agree, let her bee certaine that I will take her by force, and burne her in my sight, sir you haue good reason so to doe, saide Arthur, and sith it pleaseth you that I shall goe on this message, I am verie well content therewith. Then Arthur and his companie mounted vpon their horses and rode toward the Citie, then Hector saide: sir where is your Scutchon of armes on your breast, for you be a good Pursiuaunt, and thinke to end well your message: yea sir saide Gouernar, this Duke hath a rich messenger, hee ought to giue you good wages: so thus they rode forth talking and sporting them til they came to one of the gates of the Citie, and knocked thereat so long, till at the last the Porter opened a little windowe, and there he sawe three Knightes all armed and well horsed, and hee demaunded of them what they sought, Arthur answered and saide, wee be messengers sent from the Duke to speak with the Ladie and gouernour of this Citie. Sir saide the Porter, staie a little space and I will goe and speake with her, then the Porter went to the Ladie, who was then among her Barons and Knights, and Alice her daughter in her companie, and hee said: Madame may it please you to knowe how that there is at the gate three goodlie knights armed, the fairest that euer I sawe, and they saie that they are messengers come to speake with you from the Duke, therefore I came to knowe how you would commaund me to answere them. Then sir Othes who was cosin germaines to the Ladie, saide: Madame, mee thinketh it were well done to let them come in, sith they bee messengers. In the name of God saide the Ladie, open the gates to them, and let them enter: Then the Porter tourned againe to the gate, and suffered them to enter. When Arthur was within the Citie, hee sawe greate plentie of shields and Speares,

horse,

horse and harneis, knights and squires, and great & mighty houses full of riches, and in his heart he praised much this Citie. And all the knights of the Citie beheld these three knights as they rode, and saide each to other, what knights be these, or frō whēce they come. & some answered and said, how they could not tell, and some saide they were messengers sent from the Duke, but whatsoeuer they bee they are meruailous faire knightes. And thus they rode forth to the palais, and there lighted from their horses and went vp into the hall where they found the Countesse and her barony about her. Than the Countesse and her daughter Alice, & all her barons arose against Arthur, and welcomed him, and caused him to sit downe by her and the faire lady Alice and Hector, and sir Othes and Gouernar. Than Arthur said. Madame we be come hither from the Duke of Orgoule, who demaundeth of you that ye should giue to him in mariage my lady Alice your daughter, & me thinke that diuerse reasons ought to moue you thus to do. First ye ought to consider how ye shal set her in a right hie and honourable place. Also you see well the great number of people, & the strength which he hath, and how that your lande is destroied and wasted, and all the people therof put to exile. Also you ought for to consider how that ye be locked & enclosed here in this citie, and all your noble knights and gentlemen are in great perill of their liues, and leseth their time and substance, the which is right great domage vnto them, so madame all these thinges, and many other wisely considered, ought to moue you to accomplishe this his desire, sith it is but for your honour, and no shame, therfore Madame may it please you to giue me an answere what is your will in this behalfe. Then said the Ladye I will giue to you an answere quickly without takinge of anye other counsayle. Rather than I would giue my daughter to a false murtherer, and specially to him that by false treason hath slayne her Father, as GOD helpe me, I would rather suffer her to bee burnte to powder.

For

For gladder would I be to giue her to the poorest groome or Page in all my house, than to him: but I require you tell mee whether you be anie of the Knightes retaining to the Duke or no. Madame said Arthur, I am not retaining as yet vnto him, nor with anie other, for I and my companie are Knightes arrant, who haue forsaken our owne Countries to seeke aduentures, and by fortune we are arriued into this Dukes host, who would gladly haue vs retained in this his war against you. Sir saide the Countesse, I know not what you be, nor of what linage or Countrie you be of, but it seemeth to me that you are come of some noble house, therefore sir if it would please you to help to deliuer vs out of this thraldome, and defend vs from our enimies, I will giue you my daughter for to do with her what it please you, sauing her honour: yea madame said Arthur, and is that your minde, will you put her into my hands to marrie her, whersoeuer it shall please me, and to put all your trust into me in that behalfe. I trulie sir with all my heart, said the Countesse, & how saie you faire Ladie Alice, wil you agree to this. Then Alice beheld Arthur, & perceiued right well how he was faire and gratious, and saide: Sir I will accomplish the will of my mother. Well madame quoth Arthur, then will it please you to know of all your noble Barons and Knights, whether they will accord that I shall haue your noble daughter in marriage, or else for to marrie her whersoeuer it shall please me. Sir Othes, saiue the Ladie you be neere a kinne to her, call together all my Barons and my Knights, and conferre with them of this matter to knowe their mindes. Then they all entered into a great hall, and there they communed of this matter, and diuerse opinions there were among them, but finallie they were all agreed to put their verdits on sir Othes, the which they all promised to keepe firme and stable. Then they all came before the Ladie and Arthur, and there sir Othes said, madame we perceiue it is your will to giue Lady Alice your daughter to this Knight, either for himselfe, or else to giue her whersoeuer it shall please him best, and we

be

be all accorded vnto your minde, that he shall haue her himselfe, if it pleaseth him in marriage, or else giue her vnto anie other whereas he thinketh best, so that she be not thereby abated of her honour and estate: verilie sir said Arthur, I shall bestowe her in as great place and lignage, or greater then she is of her selfe. Then they all answered and said, we desire nothing else. Well madame said Arthur, are you then agréed, and my Ladie your daughter also, and they answered both, they were well content. In the name of God said Arthur, how saie you al my lords, are you agréed thereto also, and they all answered with once voice & said: Sir, we be right well content, and promise you faithfullie that you shall haue helpe and aide of vs and of ours, to the vttermost of our powers. Well sirs, said Arthur, I thanke you as heartely as I can for you good will, and as God help me I will bestowe her in such a place, where shee shall bee better content then with the Duke of Orgoule, who would full gladlie haue her, therefore faire Alice come hether to me. Then the maiden arose and came to him, and he right louinglie toke her in his armes, and laide vnto her: Faire Ladie Alice, from hence forth you shall be my daughter, my cosin, and my loue: cosin Hector arise and come hether to me, then Hector came to him, and Arthur said to him, mine owne good cosin Hector, I put you in possession of this faire maiden, and with great honour and ioy I frælie giue her to you, to haue her in marriage, and al such riches as we may get of the Duke of Orgoule, if it bee our fortune for to discomfit him, as I trust to God we shall, and I giue it frælie to you, and as for you faire Alice, sith hee hath slaine your Father by false treason, I promise you therefore his head for recompence. Sir saide the Damsell, I humblie thanke you of that gifte, for I rather haue that than he made a Quéene. But sir, I require you tell mee what is this Gentleman to whom you haue giuen mee: Madame saide Arthur, as God helpe me he is my lignage and of great bloud, for I assure you hee is sonne and heire vnto the Earle of Blois, who is a great Lord and much feared, and when the

Countesse

Countesse and her daughter, and all her Lordes heard that, they were right glad and said, how that God had visited them. Then Hector right heartelie thanked Arthur for his gift of the faire Ladie dame Alice, and the same houre they were affiaunced together, and then beganne there a greate feast, and much ioye was made throughout all the Citie. Then the Tables were couered for dinner: where they wer right richly serued, and after dinner they sported them together till it was time to goe to their restes. In the next morning Arthur rose betimes and hearde diuine seruice, and then went vp to the pallace, where hee found all the Barons readie apparailed, and there was Hector and Gouernar, and sir Othes. Then Arthur saide: faire Lordes, I promised yesterdaie to the Duke when I departed from him, that I woulde retourne to him againe the same night, to shew him the will and intent of my Ladie the Countesse, therefore I will goe now to him all alone, and shewe him his aunswere, for all you shall abide heere still till I come againe, therefore gette mee my harnets, and so anone it was brought to him, and there hee armed him. Then Hector saide plainelye hee woulde goe with him, but Arthur bad him neuer speake thereof if he would haue his loue and fauour.

How Arthur went alone to the Duke of Orgoule, and gaue him his aunswere, and badde him abide no longer for the faire Alice, for he shewed him how that hee had giuen her to Hector his Cosin, and how that hee had promised to her his head, because hee slew her Father by treason, with the which aunswere the Duke was sore displeased, insomuch that there was betweene them a great battaile.

Chapter. 34.

Then



Then when Arthur was mounted on his horse, hee issued out of the Citie all alone. Then Hector saide to Gouernar and sir Othes: Friendes, let vs take our harneis, for I feare mee least Arthur shall haue somwhat to doo, or euer hee come againe. You haue right well saydo quoth Gouernar, and they armed them, and so did all the men of warre that were in the Citie: and when they wer all armed, they went to the battlements of the walles to beholde the demeanour of Arthur, who as then hadde rode so farre, that hee descended from his horse at the Dukes Tent, and there hee saide to the Duke: Sir, verely I answere you, how you nede not to tarrie here anie longer for the faire Ladie Alice, for certainlye I assure you, I haue giuen hir to my cousin Hector, and all the lande that belongeth to her both by father and mother: therefore sir, with faire meanes I require you to departe quickly out of his Countrey, and if you will not, I haue promised the faire Ladie Alice, to render her your head in recompence, because you slewe the Earle her Father, by false and deceiptfull treason.

Then the Duke of Dygonle was so sorrowfull, and filled with displeasure and griefe, that of a greate space hee coulde speake neuer a worde to Arthur: but he had by

him a cousin, who said to Arthur: Sir Knight you do great wrong to demaund the head of my Lord the Duke, but by the faith that I owe vnto him, in the first place that euer I méete you, I shall make him a present of your head. Yea sir said Arthur, and why will you abide so long, seeing you may doit now if you can, wherfore behold me I am héere present, mount vp shortly on your horse, and you shal soone méete with me: you say right wel said ỹ knight, get me my harneis, and so he armed him, & Arthur then mounted vpon his horse, and he espied well where there stoode before the Dukes tent a great speare, the which hee tooke in his hand, and withdrew him from the tent to abide the knight: and so when the knight was armed, he leapt on his horse, and saw where Arthur was abiding for him. Then Hector as he was vpon the wall of the Citie saide to Gouernar: Sir, it séemeth my Cousin Arthur shall not come againe without iusts. Then the knight ranne to Arthur, and hee at him, and they met so fiercely, that the knight brake his speare, but Arthur hit him so violently, that ỹ speare head entred into his heart, wherewith he fell downe dead to the earth, and when the Dukes knights being in their tents, saw him fall downe dead, they were sore displeased: and also this knight hadde fiue knights to his brethren in the Dukes hoast, and they armed them all at once to runne at Arthur.

How Hector and Gouernar, and sir Othes, roade out of the Citie well accompanied to rescew Arthur, who alone assailed the Duke of Orgoule, and all his Armie. Cap. 35.

And when Hector sawe them of the Dukes hoast runne to their harneis, he said vnto Gouernar, Friende let vs issue out spédely: and sir Othes deliuered the chiefe standerd of the Citie to sir Lionet his nephew, and so they issued out of the Citie in good order, and well ranged in battaile: and when Arthur saw the foresaid fiue knights comming

ming towarde him, hee darkt his spurres into his horse, and encountered so with the first, that he thrust his Speare through his bodie, and so he fell downe dead. Then hee set his hand to his sword, and strake therewith to the second, that he clave his head nigh to the chin, and from the third he cut his shoulder with the arme, so that all together flew into the fielde, and when sir Othes sawe such merualous strokes as he gaue, he said, O God what Knight is this, hee is the best of all the worlde, God defend him from anie damage, verilie his strokes are greatly to be doubted, for they are right beaute, and when the Duke sawe his Knightes so slaine onely by one man, he was right sore displeased, and cried out to his Knightes, firs to harneis. Then the most part of his hoast shortlie mounted vppon their horses, and ranne all vpon Arthur by heaps, here ten, and there twentie, and when Hector sawe that, hee pricked forth his horse as rudely as though the thunder had driuen him, and when sir Othes sawe that he ranne so hastelie, hee saide: By my faith it semeth he will not recule backe againe, sith hee seeketh for his enimies so hastelie, and Hector encountered the first so valiantlie, that he ranne him throughout with his Speare, and he fell downe dead, & then he drew his sword and strake off the head of another, and laide about him in the thickest of the prease, and gaue such strokes that hee slew Knightes and drane downe horses, that it was merualle to beholde, and when Arthur sawe him, he smiled and said: Ah good cosin, you followe right well after your predecessors, and Gouernar at his comming beate downe all about him whatsoeuer he attained to, that it was wonderfull to beholde, and when Arthur sawe them, hee saide: I ought neuer to faile these Knights sith they take such paine to rescew mee, verilie by the grace of God I shall helpe and aide them, and by that time there were against them many of the Dukes Knightes, and Arthur strake among them, that the first that he encountered, hee clane his head downe to his necke, and laide so rounde about him, that hee made hands, armes, and heads, and shiuered shields flie into the

field, and vnbarred helmes, and maimed many Knightes, & beat them down on euerie side, so that he made all to tremble that were before him, for there was none that abode his strokes without death or grieuous woundes. Then sir Othes had great meruaile at the valiauncie of these Knights, and specialtie of the chiualrie of Arthur, and said to his nephew sir Lionet: as God helpe me these Knights are able to discomfit the Duke and all his hoast without any more helpe; and all this season the Countesse and faire Alice her daughter were mounted on the walls of the citie to behold the noble deeds of these three Knights. Then the Ladie said to her daughter Alice, beholde your Lord and his companions, I thinke there be no more such in all the world, beholde howe they driue asunder the greate preases, and howe the Knights flie before them for feare, but specially beholde Arthur, who I thinke be ỳ chiefe flower of all chiualrie. God of his grace hath well prouided for vs when hee sent them into this countrie. Right deere ladie and mother said Alice, me thinketh Hector is well armed and demeaneth himselfe right well. Well daughter said the Ladie, dooth he please you: yea verily madam said she: ye haue a good cause daughter so to bee, for among our enimies he is a good Butcher of his hands, and by that time the Duke himself was come to that skirmish, accompanied with fiue hundred men of warre, and sir Othes and all the hoast of the Citie assembled together and fought with the duke, there began a great mortall battaile betweene both parties, but the Dukes companie was more then that of the citie, and therefore they suffered much pain, insomuch that sir Othes was ouerthrowen and taken prisoner: and when sir Lionet his nephew saw that, he let fal the chiefe banner which he bare, and when Arthur espied that he was neuer so sorrie, and came to sir Lionet & demaunded of him why he did let fall the banner: and hee aunswered and said. Sir, because mine vncle sir Othes is taken prisoner. Then saide Arthur, God defend that, but where is he. As God helpe me sir, he is led forth into yonder great prease that you see yonder. Well said Arthur, litt vp

againe

againe the banner, for by the grace of God he shall be shortlie relcewed. Then Arthur dressed him thetherwarde, and met with Hector and Gouernar, and saide: Sirs let vs go relcew sir Othes, who is taken prisoner. Then rusht they all into the preale, and Arthur met so with the first, that he stroke him downe to the earth starke dead, and laide so on euerie side, that they made him a large waie whersoeuer hee went and Hector and Gouernar were greatly to be feared, for they made great plentie of saddles to bee voided, so that all that sawe Arthur & his companie said, these be no men, they be fiends of hel, let vs flie from them, for shame haue he that first brought them into this countrie, & when the duke sawe these three Knights do such wonderfull merualles in armes, & slew so great plentie of his Knightes, hee was so sore displeased that he was almost beside himselfe, & thereuith dasht to Hector and strake him so fiercely, that he pierced both his sheild and his helme, and when Hector felt that rude stroke he was not well content, and lift vp his sword and strake the Duke so fiercelie therewith, that the sword sanke throughout haulbert, sheld, and healme, and entered deepe into the flesh. In the meane time Arthur came to the, & there he sawe the Duke and Hector fiercelie fighting together. Then Arthur strake the duke so sore, that the arson of his saddle could not keepe him, but that hee went to the ground. Then Gouernar tooke the Dukes horse and deliuered it to Hector, for his owne was sore wounded & verie faint with bleeding, & so Hector forsooke his owne & mounted thereon hastelie. Then the dukes companie came to relcew him, and so there began a sore and terrible battaile, for there was many slaine and sore wounded, but finally the duke with much paine was relcewed & right sore hurt, and was borne into his tent. When the night drew on, so y both parties withdrew each from other, the duke & his companie went into their tents, and Arthur and all those that were with him of his companie repaired to the Citie, and as they went, they sawe betweene the woode and the Citie,

the Dukes Seneschall going to make assaulte to the Citie with foure hundred men in harneis, and when sir Othes perceiued the Seneschall, he shewed him to Arthur and said. Sir se yonder wheras is sir Clarembault, Seneschal to the Duke, going to assaile the Citie. Verilie sayd Arthur, mee thinketh it is verie late, yet I will ride to him. Ah gentle knight, said sir Othes, deale not too hardlie with him, for hee is a good Knight, and as gentle as anie liueth, therefore it were great hurt if he wer slaine, & sir your strokes are very beaute, for there is none ỹ can endure thē, therfore for gods sake let sir Hector first encoūter him. With a right good will said Hector, & so he spurred his horse & escried the Seneschal, and when he heard him like a good knight he ranne at Hector, and they met so fiercelie, that Hector ouerthrewe him horse and man at the first course. Then his souldiers ranne to haue rescewed him, but then Arthur and Gouernar were there present, and dealt among them such almes that it was wonderfull to beholde, and with cleane force Arthur take sir Clarembault prisoner, and did incontinentlie send him to the citie vnto the countesse, who was right glad of such a prisoner, and caused him to be vnarmed in all hast, & made him to mount vpon the wall with her for to behold how her Knights did demeane themselues among her enimies, and there sir Clarembault sawe how Arthur did meruailes, for he claue asunder shields, and drawe downe knights, & cut off armes, hands, and heads: also Hector & Gouernar for their parts did meruailously wel, so that nothing endured before them. Good Lord said Clarembault to the Countesse: Madame where got you these Knightes, as God helpe me they are the best of al the world, for if ye had these three Knights they were able to chase out of your countrie the Duke & all his hoast. Sir said the Ladie, God hath holpe me to them: & finallie Arthur, Hector, Gouernar, and sir Othes, did such meruailes of armes, that all the Dukes companie ỹ were with sir Clarembault were cleane discomfited, & there Arthur take xl. prisoners, & sent them into the citie, & other xl. fled to the duke, & all the rest of foure hundred were slaine,

and

and when they were before the Duke, and many of them sore hurt, said: A sir, it goeth ill with you and vs, for sir Clarembault your Seneshall is taken prisoner, and fortie other Knightes with him, & all the remnaunt slaine, saving who be right ill dealt with all as you may see. And the Duke demaunded of them who it was that had done that deede: as God helpe vs sir, it was three Knightes that was in that companie with sir Othes, but we thinke they be fiends and no earthlie men: and when the Duke heard this, he waxed nigh madde for anger, and I wote how that he would neuer depart from siege till he had hanged those three Knightes, and burnt the Countesse and her daughter. Then incontinently he sent messengers out to his Bailiues Prouostes, and sent for his brother Peter the Cornu, who shortly came to him ward, and brought with him foure hundred men of warre, and the Dukes great courser named Assile: and this horse was such, that there was none like him in all the world, for he was named fellowlike to Bucephall the horse of Alexander the greate, there was none that could mount on this horse but onelie the Duke, and the varlet that kept him, and both daie and night hee was euer tied with foure great chaines of yron.

How Arthur, Hector, Gouernar, and sir Othes, discomfited Peter the Cornu, brother to the Duke, who was come to him with foure hundred Knightes, and there Cornu was slaine, and all his people slaine or taken prisoners, & how Arthur tooke the Dukes horse named Assyle, the best horse as then in the world. Chap. 36.

When Arthur had taken sir Clarembault the Dukes Seneshall and discomfited all his people, then he entered into the Citie, whereas the people ranne to welcome him, and saide: God keepe thee in thy strength and vertue, and blessed be the houre that euer thou wert borne. So thus hee came to the pallace, whereas the Countesse and her daugh-

ter met him, and demanded of him how he did: and he said right wel thanked be God, and Alice toke Hector her Lord and vnarmed him. Then Arthur caused all such as were hurt of the prisoners to bee brought into the Pallaice, and caused Surgions to search their wounds, and euerie day he would visit them three or foure times, whereby he gate him such loue of euerie creature, that they promised neuer to faile him as long as they liued. Then when Arthur was vnarmed, there was in his companie Hector, Gouernar, & sir Othes. Then Arthur toke sir Clarembault by the hand and said: Sir make good cheere, for you shall haue heere no hurt if I may keepe you therefrom, and verilie you shall be heere in a good prison. Sir said the Countesse, hee shall haue no hurt heere, sith it pleaseth you the contrarie, whereof he thanked them greatly, & all that euer heard Arthurs words praised him much, & loued him therefore farre better. Then they went to meate, and Arthur and sir Clarembault sate both together. Thus Arthur and the whole armie sojourned still without doing anie thing the space of a moneth, & by that time such as were hurt were recouered to health, & the Duke and all his hoast in likewise laie still, for he abode for more companie. So it fortuned that on a wednesdaie Arthur was risen betimes, and had heard seruice, and stood leaning in a windowe and loked into the Dukes hoast for to see the order of the enimies, and in his companie was Hector Gouernar, and sir Othes, and Clarembault. At the last Arthur beheld ouer the Forrest, and espied where there came much people in harneis downe from a great mountaine, he sawe sheeldes and helmes shine against the Sun, and saw a great banner wauering with the wind, and Arthur shewed this to his companie: at the last sir Clarembault knew the banner and said: Sir these people that come yonder are not for your profit, for it is Peter the Cosnu, the Dukes brother, who is come to helpe him. Well saue Arthur he is welcome, it may fortune he commeth too soone, therefore Hector my friend, if we abide and suffer him to assemble his companie with the Dukes hoast, we shal haue

then much a doe, wherefore by my counsaile let vs go meet with them before in this Forrest, and let vs shewe them what manner of people we be: as God helpe mee saide sir Othes, you have right well deuised, therefore let vs goe arme vs presently. Sir saide Arthur, cause all your people to arme themas priuely as they can, to the intent that they wout may know nothing therof, and let vs enter as secretlie as we may into the forrest, that we be not espied of them that are comming, & so shall we be in hand with thē or they be aware, and as he had deuised, so it was ordained & done, and they rode forth right priuelie into the forrest, and parted their companions into ambushmentes, till at the last their enimies iver among them. Then espied sir Othes the Dukes horse Alile, who was lead in his keepers hand, and shewed him to Arthur & said: Sir, beholde yonder is the best horse of all the world, for he was neuer as yet weary with labour, and whosoeuer sitteth on him can take no hurt, he is so mightie and strong, in the name of God sayde Arthur, the duke hath done right wel to keepe him so well for me so long as he hath done, for by ỳ faith that I owe to God I wil goe seeke him incontinentlie. Then Arthur dressed him toward the man that led the horse, and ere he tooke any heede Arthur caught him by the shoulder and cast him flatte to the ground, then he toke the horse by the bridle and lightlie leapt on him, then Arthur assaied him in the field, and found him right strong and light, whereof he was wonderfull glad, and would not forgoe him for much golde and siluer, and as Arthur thus proued his horse, Peter the Cornu the dukes brother espied him, and ranne and strake him behinde vpon his backe or euer he was ware, and when Hector sawe that, hee pricked forth toward him, and so each of them ranne at other, and mette so rudelie, that Peter the Cornu brake his Speare, but Hector marked him so well, that he put his Speare through his bodie, and hee fell downe dead in the same place. And when that Peter the Cornues man sawe that, they assailed Hector on all sides, and enclosed him among them, and wounded

so his horse, that he fell down vnder him, but he anone leapt vpon his feete and noblie defended him, so that none durst approch neere him, but they did cast at him swordes and other weapons, and so wounded him in diuerse places: at the last Gouernar espied him and said to Arthur: Sir, for Gods sake goe and succour Hector your cosin who is in great neede, and when Arthur heard that, hee spurred his noble horse Affile, and leapt foorth fifteene foote of plain ground, and so rusht in among them that were in hands with Hector, and encountered the first so, that hee clane him downe to the chinne, and another he carued his head to his teeth, and made heads, armes, and handes flie into the field, and therewithal the whole companie came together, whereas there was a terrible battaile. At the last Gouernar got a good horse, and brought him straight to Hector, who mounted shortlie thereon, and dasht into the prease, and there did merualles of armes, for hee confounded all that euer he attained vnto, and Arthur and Gouernar did valiantly for their part, and sir Othes and his companie were not behinde, but they did full noblie, and so finallie Arthur and his companie bare them so well, that all their enimies were discomfited, and there were taken prisoners about three score, which were ledde into the citie of Brelwle, and many fledde awaie sore wounded, and a great number of them were slaine, and then Arthur and his fellowes returned to the citie, and there the Countesse receiued them right curteoullie with greate ioye and triumph, and when she knew how the Dukes brother was slaine, and Ally's the good horse wonne, shee greatlie reioyced thereof, and sayde to Arthur: Ah sweet friend, you ouercome mine enimies one after another. Then sir Clarembault was right sorrowful when he knew of the death of sir Peter the Cornew, and sayd, Duke you haue had but an ill acquaintance with this knight, and wonne but little therby, and I feare me you are like to lose more: ah good Peter the Cornu, God receiue thy soule, and thus he shewed greate sorrowe, and Arthur did as much as he coulde to comfort him, and such

as were escaped from the battaile fledde to the Duke, and shewed him how that his brother Peter the Cornu was slaine, and all his men slaine and taken, and his good horse Aillie ledde into the Citie of Brewle, wherewith the Duke was so sorrowfull that hee could not sustaine himselfe, but fell downe in a traunce, and when he reuiued he sayd: Ah swéete brother, déere haue you bought the séeking of this Countesse, sith you haue lost your life for her, then he commaunded that the bodie of his brother should be fetcht, and carried to the Citie of Orgoule, and so it was done, and there he was solempnly buried, and the Duke bewailed the death of his brother the space of eight daies continuallie.

How Arthur and his companie vtterlie discomfited the Duke, and strake off his head, and did send it by Gouernar to the faire Ladie Alice and to her mother, as he had promised before. Chap 37.

AT the end of eight daies the Duke commaunded that all his people should be armed and readie prepared to the fight, to the intent he might assault the Citie, whereat he said hee would bee himselfe. and when Arthur hearde all that noise without in the Dukes hoast, and sawe euerie man in harneis, hee knew right well therby how they intended to assaile the citie. Then he called to him Hector, Gouernar, and sir Othes, and said: Friendes let vs arme vs and all our companie, and let vs go for to encounter the Duke, who is comming to assaile this citie. O my Lorde Arthur, saide sir Othes, for Gods sake be well aduised what you doe, for they be a great multitude of people, and a great part of our men bee sore wounded, and as yet not throughe whole, therefore sir by mine aduice we shall not issue out, but let vs defend this citie within. O sir said Arthur, if God be pleased, wee will haue no such reproch, therfore let vs issue out & go into this great wood ioyning to the diches of our towne, till our enimies

mies be come to the walls, then let vs assemble & fight with them, and when we shall see our time, we may if nede be, withdraw vs againe into this citie in spite of them all. Sir said Hector, you saie right wel, so let it be done. Then there was sounded a great horne, and by the noise thereof euerie man in the citie ran to their harneis, such as was able, and so they all issued out, and all they passed not the number of two hundred, and when they were issued out, they went betwæne the forrest and the ditches, so that they were not espied of anie of the Dukes hoast, & anone Arthur perceiued where there came foure hundred halbertes well araied for the warre, and xxiiii. crossebowes, and also he sawe a merueilous great banner wauering with the winde, and did shew it to syr Othes, and when he sawe it he knew it right wel and said. Now gentle Knights be merrie, for this banner is pertaining to syr Gace, brother to my ladie the countesse, who is come out of the land of Northland for to succour my Ladie. Well, good friend said Arthur, ride on afore and knowe the truth whether it be he or no, and then syr Othes rode forth a great pace and approched neere vnto syr Gare, & made a token of peace, & when they sawe each other, they put off their healmes & made to each other great ioy. Then syr Gace demaunded how it went with the warre of his sister and of the duke, and who as then had the better: as god help me said syr Othes, as yet we haue ỹ better & the ouer hand thanked be God, and that is by the reason and aide of three Knights that God I thinke hath sent vnto vs, for aboue all other Knightes they are full strong and mightie, and yonder Knight that you may see sitting on Assile which was the Dukes good horse, is the chiefe and soueraigne Knight of all the world, for his chiualrie surmounteth all other, for this is hee that one daie did discomfit the duke, and also he hath taken sir Clarembault prisoner, and discomfited all his rout, and also hath wonne the Dukes horse Assyle, as you may see, for he is mounted on his back, and that other Knight that is by him is his cosin, and he

he slew on a day Peter the Cornu the Dukes brother. Also this knight that sitteth on Allile the good horse hath promised to my ladie your sister and to her daughter the head of the Duke, because he slew by false treason my Lord her husband. God that hath created all things saide sir Gace, give him power to accomplish his promise, let vs ride to them. So then they rode forth and all his traine, and when Arthur sawe them he put off his helme, and spurred forth Allyle his horse, and came to sir Gace, and each of other made great ioy. Then sir Gace thanked Arthur right hartely for the paine that hee had taken in his sisters warres. Sir said Arthur, I trust this day we shall end all the matter, for I know well the duke is gone to assaile the Citie, therefore me thinketh it were good y he were nobly withstood, and in my minde it is best to parte our companie in twaine, therfore syr if it please you, you shall haue in your companie my Cousyn Hector, Gouernar and syr Othes, & you shall goe along vpon these diches, and so encounter your enimies face to face, and I and my companie will come in behinde their tents, so that when you be in hande with them I will be at their backes, whereby you shall see them so abashed, that they will loose the best halfe of their hardinesse. Sir you haue right well deuised the matter saide syr Gace, and so they departed each from other, and syr Gace, Hector and Gouernar and syr Othes rode forth together so couertly, that neither the duke nor ante of his knew ther of, and so the duke when he came to the fortresses of the citie, he prepared himselfe and all his men to beginne the assault, and therewith syr Gace & his companie fell on them fiercely. Then Hector spurred his horse, & incountered the Gosser, who was a great officer of the dukes, and strake him so fiercely, that he pearced his heart, and so he fel down dead to the earth before the duke, then Hector set his hande to his sword, and gaue the duke such a stroke, that hee was faine to stoope downe vnto the necke of his horse. Then the Dukes men fell on Hector on all sydes, but hee defended him like a noble man.

Then

Then Gouernar for his part, beate downe knights on all sides, and when sir Gace saw him doe so well, hee praised him greatly in his heart: then he & all his companie freshly ranne vpon the dukes hoast, howbeit the dukes companie were farre aboue them, wherefore hee indured much paine. And when Hector saw that, hee was right sorrowfull, and spurred his horse and abandoned himselfe among his enimies, & Gouernar likewise, who gaue such strokes, that he confounded all that euer he attained vnto, till at the last his horse failed vnderneath him, and he fell to the ground, and then his enimies fel vpon him on all sides, but he fought so fiercely, that none durst approach him, for hee confounded all that euer hee attained vnto, and sir Gace followed him as neere as euer he could, but for all that Gouernar was so ouermatched, that he was taken prisoner, & ten other knights pertaining to the companie of sir Gace, and so they were lead toward the Dukes tent, and at that time Arthur was among the tents, cutting of ropes, beating downe of pauilions, and at the last he espied Gouernar whereas he was lead forth like a prisoner, wherwith Arthur was right sore displeased, and rusht in among the, and the first that he encountred with, hee departed life and bodie asunder, and he smote the head from an other, and so then by the help of sir Gace, they brought to death all those that lead forth sir Gouernar, and remounted him againe vpon another horse. Then Arthur strake so in the preasse, that he droue asunder shields, and frushed to death all that euer he touched, so that all fled before him, for there was none that durst abide him without that he would receiue the death, and that sir Gace saw right well, and sayde, O good Lord what knight is this, I thinke there is not his peere in all the world. Then sir Othes and Gouernar and their companie laid on with so great and so beauie strokes, that they might well bee heard a great way off, and the Dukes people were sore afraid, when they perceiued how they were assailed on all partes both before and behinde, and Hector by chaunce encountred the duke and strake him

so sore, that he cut awaye a great peece of his harneis, and caused him to recule nigh to his horse crupper, and when the duke felt that stroke, he strake again Hector so fiercely that he clave his shielde, and pearced through his harneis, but as fortune was, it did not enter into the flesh, and so there was a great battaile betweene them, but the greate preasse of both parties did depart them, & as Arthur went searching the great and thicke preases, he found where sir Gace was on foote defending himselfe right valiantly, and Gouernar was there doing his best to rescue him, but the preasse was so great that they indured much paine, then Arthur strake into the thickest among the so fiercelye that he ouerthrewe knightes by heapes, and did such deedes of armes that it was wonderfull to behold, and so he remounted againe sir Gace in despite of all his enimies. Then the dukes companie beganne to wexe feeble, which when the Duke perceiued he was right sorrowful, and so it fortuned him to encounter with sir Hector, who had beaten downe in his sight two of his knightes, and therewith hee strake Hector so fiercely that nigh with the same stroke he was sore astonied: but Hector strake him againe so strongly on the helme that he entered into it foure fingers depe, and right sore wounded him on the head wherewith hee was brought into a traunce, and his horse bare him all about he knewe not where. And at last hee came before the sight of Arthur, and as soone as he sawe him, he knewe well it was the Duke, and strake him so rudelye betweene the necke and the heade, that his heade fell on the horse necke, and Gouernar tooke and receiued it. Then Arthur said, Gouernar I will that you goe and beare this Dukes head to the Countesse, and to her daughter Alice, and shew them how I do send it them, to accomplish the promise which I made. Sir said Gouernar, with a right good will, and so he departed from the hoast, and entered into the Citie. And anone the tidings came all about the Citie how that Gouernar had brought the Dukes head to the Countes from Arthur, and so all the people ranne to see the dukes head, and sang

all

this faire Ladie Alice is freelie giuen to my cousin Hector, howbeit I will that you know that he is a Gentleman, and sonne and heire vnto a right mightie and puissant Lord, the Earle of Blois, therefore I shew you this to knowe your minds whether you will agree to this marriage or no. In the name of God said sir Gace, if there were no more in him but onelie his noble chiualrie, hee is worthie to haue one much better then she is, and therefore I accord thereunto with my heart: well said Arthur, sith that ye be agreed, the matter is the better. Sir it is so, now this Duke hath his reward for his trespasse, and you haue here much people, and also my Ladie hath great plentie of men of war now here in this citie and in the countrie; and Souldiers will come to vs dailie if we neede, therefore by my aduice we will goe into the Dukes countrie, and conquere all that land, for I haue promised it to Hector my cosin, & sir if wee neede anie succour or aide, I promise you I cause to come vnto vs a king and three great Earles with all their strengths, so that it will be hard to number them. Then sir Gace said: noble Arthur beholde mee heere, I will bee the the first and all that I can make, is and shal be at your commaundement, and I will followe you with all my heart: and all that I can make saide the countesse, shall be readie to attend on my deere sonne in lawe noble Hector your cosin, and he shall haue all my power to followe your commaundement. Madame sayd Arthur, I thanke you. Then they left their counsaile and went to meate, whereas they were richlie serued, and after meate Arthur did visite all them that were hurt. Then Arthur and the countesse, and all other Barons and Knightes, went into the hall, & there Arthur departed all such treasure that was wonne at the battaile against the Duke, and gaue to euerie bodie so largelie, that each man was well content. Then the countesse sent out her commaundement to all her subiects, such as might beare harnels, either on horsl backe or on foote, to come to her in all hast possible, and sir Gace did in likewise on his partie, and so thether came souldiers on euerie syde,

and

and there they all assembled together the mundaie before Pawdelaine tide, vnder the citie of Brewle, and by that time such as were hurt were recouered to health, and all things necessarie was made readie to remoue, and a moneth after that the Duke was slaine, Arthur and Hector toke leaue of the Countesse and of Alice her daughter, and commaunded all the hoast should take the next waie to the Citie of Dzgoule, and then Arthur mustered his people, and found howe there were two thousand horsemen, and eight hundred on foote, so they rode forth toward the Countrie of Dzgoule. But when the Gentlemen of that Countrie vnderstode how Arthur came on them with banners displayed, and sawe well how they had no captaine sith the Duke and his brethren and cosins were all slaine at the siege of Brewle, & they knew well howe Arthur had done all this, they assembled them together in the citie of Dzgoule, and there toke counsaile what they might best doe. At the last they concluded and said, how that they were weary & hurt, and lost all that euer they had in the last battell of Brewle, both their goods, their fathers, their sonnes, their nephews, their friends, and all their linage, therefore they saide they had lost inough, wherfore they were of purpose to ieopard no farther, & finally cõcluded not to defend their cõtrie from Arthur, but vtterly to yeld all vnto him, for they said they knew wel though they would, they were not of ỹ power to resist against his chiualrie, & of this accord was all the burgeses of the citie, & so by common consent they sent certaine messengers vnto Arthur, desiring him if it were his will that he should do no hurt to their countrie, for they wer in minde to yeld all to him, & to receiue him as their chiefe Lord. And when Arthur heard that, he was right ioyfull, & commaunded incontinently throughout all his hoast, that no man vppon paine of death should hurt any creature of ỹ country, & so long they rode, til at the last they arriued at the citie of Dzgoule, and all the Gentlemen & burgeses when they perceiued that he was nere the citie, they all issued out vnarmed, & receiued him with great ioy, and yelded to him

the keies of the citie, & gaue him full possession of the countrie. Then all the hoast lodged without, & Arthur & a certaine number with him entered into the Citie, and remained there three daies.

How Arthur made his cosin Hector Duke of Orgoule by the assent of all the Lords of that Countrie. Chap. 39.

ARthur called before him all the Lords and Barons of that realme, & said: Sirs, you haue rendered heere to mee this Citie, and all the whole Countrie, therfore it is right and necessarie that you haue a Lord and gouernour ouer you, wherefore I will giue you one, I assure you right puissaunt both by birth and friends, which is Hector heere my cosin, therefore make him Duke of all this countrie, & I wil that you do him homage, and sir Clarembault I wil that you begin first, and heere I release you of your imprisonment. Verely sir said he, I am right well content so to doe sith my Lord is dead, and hath no heires to whom his land should succæde, and so he arose and did homage to Hector, and after him all other did so, & tooke him for their duke and soueraigne Lord. Then Arthur sent to Brewle for the countesse and Alice her daughter, to the intent that Hector and she should bee married together within the citie of Orgoule, & when she was come the marriage was made betweene them with great triumph & ioy, the which endured fifteene daies, and at the end of the fiftéen daies al the hoast departed, euerie man into his owne countrie, and then Arthur called to him Hector, sir Gace, sir Clarembault, sir Othes, and Gouernal, & said: Sir Gace behold heere Duke Hector my cosin, who hath wedded your neece, therfore ought you to loue him from hence forth, and sir Othes, she is your cosin, therefore I beseech you loue Hector, & beare him faithfull trath, and if his people happen to rebell against him, succour and help him, for from hench forth you are bound ther vnto: and cosin Hector, if any war fall vnto you, send me word into Brittery of Sorolois, whether I am pur-

purposed to go, & I wil presently come to youe sir Clarembait & put my cosin Hector into your hands, therfore I desire you kepe your faith to him as you haue promised, & he shal loue you, and put his chiefe trust alwaies in your wisdome. Sir I shal said sir Clarebault beare to him faithful aliance and loue, as to my soueraign Lord, and so he did euer after, for he was a true knight. Then Arthur said to Hector, cosin deale wisely among your Lords & subiects, & then you shall do well, & now I commend you to God: when Hector heard that, he said: sir if God bee pleased there is neither land nor wife shall holde me but I will goe with you, that shall not be said Arthur, therefore kepe wel your land, and acquaint you with your Barons, and when I returne againe I wil come by you. Thus Arthur toke leaue of the countesse and Alice her daughter, the dutchesse of Orgoule, and of al other knights that offred to go with him, but he in no wise wold, and so toke with him Gouernar, Jaket, and Bawdewin, & duke Hector and sir Gace, & many other conuaied him two daies on his iourney, then Arthur toke leaue of them, and they returned verie sorrowfull for his departing, and went to Orgoule, whereof Hector was then Duke, and Earle of Brewle by his wife, and he vsed himselfe so noblie, that he got the loue of all his Lords, & kept his land in great peace and tranquilitie, and great loue there was betweene him & the faire Ladie Alice his wife. Now let vs leaue to speake of Hector till another time, and returne wee to Arthur.

How Arthur and Gouernar departed a sunder, & of the terrible aduentures that each of them found ere they met againe. Chap. 40.

When Arthur was thus departed from Hector his cosin, who was then Duke of Orgoule, he and his companie rode so long till they had passed into many straunge countries, and among other they past the land of Constantinople, and Armice, and at last entered among the mountaines ỹ were betweene the Empire of [illegible] nde the more, and ỹ realm of Sorolis, ther they arriued in a most sauage place,

whereas there were many wilde beasts of diuerse kindes, and at the last they issued out of ỹ forrest, and entered into a faire grene medowe, whereas they sawe standing a great towre, and thether they went and found a young Squier, who was Lord of that place, who receiued them that night, and made them good chere, and after supper as they stod in a windowe, the Squier demaunded of Arthur whether hee was going. I will goe euer forward said Arthur, till I see my time to returne againe. Sir said the Squier, I demanded it of you for no ill, for behold yonder before you whereas there lieth a forked waie, the path that lieth on ỹ right hand is daungerous, for ther is none that entereth into that way but shortly he receiueth death, and that I know well, for as yet there was neuer anie which went that way that returned againe, and as for the other waie that lieth on the left hand, it is good inough, and without ieopardie, for that is the readie passage into the Country of Inde the more. Then Arthur demaunded of him what was the cause ỹ the other waie was so deadlie and ieoperdous: Sir said the Squier, I cannot tell you the truth, but as it is said, it is the way to a castle, the which is so strong and aduenturous, that none scapeth ther without death, howbeit it is said, that a knight shall at the last atchieue it, and fordoe all the aduentures of that place, the which are right great e meruailous, but it is thought that knight is not yet born, to be brief, sir I know not what I shuld saie, but I know wel that al such as haue gone thether neuer came againe, wherefore I knowe well that they be all dead, and this saide strong castle is named the Port Noire. Well good friend said Arthur, is there no other passage to this castle but by this perilous waye? yes sir said the Squier, for this great waie that you se on the left hand, goeth to Inde the more, and when you come thether, there is another waie which will bring you straight to the castle of Blaunch towre, and from thence you shall haue a redie passage to the Citie of Argence, and then when you bee there, euerie man can shewe you the next waie to the Castle of the Port Noire, but which waie soeuer a

man

man goe thether, he neuer commeth againe. Well sayde Arthur, all must be as God will haue it, and therewith hee called Gouernar and said: Friend, it is conuenient now, that we depart asunder, for you shall goe the waie through Inde the more, and so repaire the next waie that you can to the port Noire, and I will goe by the waie that lieth on the right hande alone, sauing I will haue with mee Bawdewin, and you shall haue with you Jaket, then Gouernar sayd: Sir & God will you shall not goe to your deathward, but and you die I will in like case suffer death with you. O sir said the Squire, for gods sake goe you not that way, nor thinke it not, for it is a greate follye, for I assure you shall die or you can obtaine to passe through that passage, for there is as it is said, a fel griffon greatly to be doubted, that keepeth short an Eagle of golde, and when Arthur hearde speaking of the Eagle of golde, and of the griffon, hee remembred his vision that he had ere he went out of his own countrie, wherefore there was none that could tourne his purpose, yet Gouernar didde as much as hee coulde for to chaunge his minde, but finallie he said: friend Gouernar, if you loue me speake no more of the mutter, for as I haue deuised, so shall it be without faile. And when Gouernar heard that, he was in his minde right sore displeased, & said: Sir I haue nourished and serued you sith the beginning of your tender youth, and wil you then dissever me now from your companie, also I haue for your sake lost mine owne countrie, and all my friends, in trouth you deale with mee right hardly, if you doe as you saie. Shall I returne againe to my Lord your Father, if you die in this aduenture, certainely nay, for I wil neuer returne home againe for al the gold of the world, but slaie my selfe if I maye knowe anie otherwise of you then good. Well said Arthur, speake no more thereof, for I will that I shall be thus. And when Gouernar perceiued that his minde was so feruently fired, he durst moue him no more of the matter, for feare of his displeasure, and so for that night they went to their restes, and in the morning early leapt on their horses,

How Gouernar came to a strong castle called the Brosse, and vanquished the Knight that kept it. And how that afterward he was kept in that Castle against his will in great daunger of death, till at the last Arthur deliuered him as you shall heere hereafter. Chap. 42.

THus when Gouernar was departed from the wounded Knight and from the damsell, he rode for the same daie so long, till it was full none, then he issued out of the wild Forrest and found a faire medow, & saw before him a meruailour faire castle, round about the which he well perceiued how that there were pight fresh tents and goodly pauilions, and also he saw many bright helmes shining against the Sunne, also he wel beheld how that there was pight in midst of ỹ the field a great piller, wheron ther was hanging a rich and goodly shield: then Gouernar rested himself a little space to behold all these aforesaid things: and when the Knights that were within the tents and pauilions sawe him so standing in a muse, twelue of thẽ well armed mounted on their horses and went to mẽte him wheras he stood, and right curteouslie did salute him, and said: Sir it behoueth you to render your homage which is due, and accustomed to be had in this place. Why sir sayd Gouernar, what is that? Sir sayde they, there is no Knight that passeth by this place but ere he depart he must strik at this faire sheld, and also must iust against him that is owner thereof, and the manner is such of this place, that if the Knight within ouercome him without, then hee that is so ouercome shall lese his horse and harneis, and shall bee ledde on foote to the Iudge limitted for this case, who shall cause it to be openly proclaimed and saide, beholde the Knight that is vanquished, and if the Knight straunger ouercome him that is within, then it shall be done by him as wee haue deuised to you heere before, & then the Knight straunger that so hath ouercome him shall be Lord of this castle, & of the faire lady that

is

is within it, and all we shall be his seruauntes to loue and kéepe him as our chiefe Lord. In the name of God said Gouernar, this said iustes I will not refuse, but as for the segniorie of this Castle and the abiding therein, I release frélie if God send me the victorie. Then those that were in the Pauilions mounted on their horses all armed, who were wel to the number of two hundred, and all they came about Gouernar and said: Sir, you must iust at this shéld. Then Gouernar spurred his horse & gaue the shéld such a stroke, that it might well be heard a great distaunce off, and therewith the Knight within the castle issued out all armed, and when Gouernar sawe him come they ranne each at other, and the Knight gaue Gouernar a greate stroke, and brake his Speare, but Gouernar strake him so stronglie, that hee bare him to the earth ouer his horse taile, and bruised sore with the fall his left arme, so that he could not remount againe on his horse without helpe, and when all the other Knightes sawe that, they toke and vnarmed him, and lead him forth on foote to a citie there by, and there he was rendered to the Iustice, and incontinentlie it was proclaimed throughout all the strætes in the Towne, beholde héere the Knight that is vanquished, and so then they toke Gouernar and brought him with great ioye into the Castle, and then there encountered him a faire damsell, who was Ladie of the Castle, who said: Sir you be welcome to this place, and I require you be nothing dismaide, for héere shal you be serued & beloued as chiefe Lord of all this place, & one thing I assure you, you shall be in as good safetie of your bodie as euer I was of mine, but you must abide still with me héere the space of two yeares, except that another Knight ouercome you, as you haue done him which was héere in this place last. O faire Ladie sayde Gouernar, if God will I will not abide heere the space of fiue dayes. Well sir, saide the Ladie, it will bée none otherwise, therefore bee content therewith. Well madame, sayde Gouernar, my trust is better. But for all that it was not according to his will, for as soone as he was entered into the Castle, the

Bridges were drawen vp and kept with ſortie Knightes, to the intent he ſhould not eſcape, but alwaies he was ſerued richlie with many goodly Squires, who did nothing elſe but pleaſauntlie ſerue him, but for all that they coulde doe, they could in no wiſe pleaſe him; ſeeing hee might not goe ſeeke for his Lorde Arthur, howbeit hee woulde not for ſhame ſuffer anie other Knight to vanquiſh him, yet many Knightes came thether, but euer hee ouercame them all. Thus Gouernar abode ther a long ſpace, till at the laſt Arthur deliuered him. Now let vs leaue to ſpeake of Gouernar, and returne againe to Arthur.

How Arthur conquered the caſtle of the Port Noire, by his proweſſe, and ſlew all them that kept it, and how after that he entered into the halls of the pallaice, where he was aſſailed of two great and horrible Lions, and of a great Gyant, & how he ouercame them all with great paine, and atchieued all the meruailous aduentures of the Caſtle, the which are right wonderous to rehearſe. Chap. 43.

WHen Arthur was departed from Gouernar, hee tooke the waie on th right hand, & ſo rode forth three daies without finding of any aduenture, or anie manner of houſe or place, yet by ẏ counſaile of his hoaſt he tooke with him ſuſtenance for himſelfe and for his horſe for the ſpace of three or foure daies, and thus he paſſed by many valeies and mõtains, ſo that he and his horſe wer verie weary, and on ẏ fourth day he found an hideous riuer, deepe and broad, the banks were ſo high from the water, that he could not ſee it runne, the which water roared and ranne ſo ſwiftlye, that none might paſſe without drowning, and in certaine places it was full of great and mightie Rockes, the which were of ſuch height, that from the valley beneath, the toppe of them might ſcarce bee ſeene, the which rockes were ſo full of vermine, that all the Riuer thereby ſtanke abhominably.

At

At the last Arthur found a little way along by the Riuers side on the left hand, in the which he rode so long till it was high none, and then he espied a litle straight way betwéen two mountaines that were of a meruailous height, then he found a litle narrow bridge ouer this riuer, which with much paine hee passed ouer, then he entered into a straight cauſie made of stone, wherein he rode forth, and on euerie hand of him al was but great marishes and foule stinking waters, the which way brought him straight vnto the port Noyze, the which was the strongest castle in all the world, & so when he came to the bridge, he found twelue knightes all armed on horse-backe, fyre at the one ende of the bridge and fyre at the other ende, and at the gate there were xii. other knights on foote holding hatchets and maces of steele in their hands to the intent to kéepe that none should enter into the Castle, and aboue on the battlements & bulwarks there stode men of warre with crosse-bowes and other wepons to defend the place, and all this while in the mount perillous was master Steuen clarke to the faire Florence, daughter vnto the mightie King of Horolors, who had lyen there almost the space of a yeare to abide the comming of that knight that shoulde atchieue all the aduentures of that Castle, and in his companie was the Constable that kept the pallaices and halls without the Castle of the port Noyze, and then master Steuen knewe by his bookes and cunning of Astronomie, that the knight shoulde come the same day, therefore he and his companie mounted on the walls of the Pallaice, to sée how the knight should do, that was as then come to the gate of the Castle of the Porte Noyze. And when the first fyre knightes sawe Arthur, they toke their shieldes & speares. Then Arthur said to Bawdwin, friend I haue néede now to take good héede, therefore tarrie you héere without, and let me alone with them.

Then these fyre knightes ranne all at once on Arthur on the Bridge and strake him with speares and swordes, but for all that they coulde doe, he felte no hurte, but hee so furiously encountred with the first that his speare did glyde

through

through his bodie, and so he fell downe dead and the speare brake, and with the tronchon thereof he strake the seconde so, that he ouerthrew both horse and man and they fell beside the bridge into the water, and when the knight hadde thought to haue recouered himselfe againe out of the water, Bawdwin cast him downe againe into the riuer, and there he was drowned. Then Bawdwin toke his speare & brought it to Arthur, wherewith he strake another knight so fiercely, that the head of the speare pearced his heart, & he fell downe dead, and when the three other knights saw that their three fellowes were slaine, they fled backe again ouer the bridge, and went to their fellowes at the Bridge foote, and Arthur folowed them with his sword in his hand and stroke one of them that he claue him to the shoulders, then all the remnaunt ranne at once at him, but he defended himselfe valiantly, as he that nothing feared, for suche was his manner, the more he had to doe the greater grew his strength and courage, & he put himselfe betweene them and the gate, because of them that were on the walles, for they did much trouble and assailed him on all sides, & euer right nobly he defended himself, and gaue such strokes, that he made to flie into the field, heads, armes, and handes, and whosoeuer hee felled to the earth, neuer arose againe, for Bawdwin toke them by the legs, and did cast them ouer the bridge downe into the riuer, wherein they were drowned: then Arthur began to chafe and were angrie, & layde on so fast rounde about him, that finally he slewe them all saue two, who fled in at the gate, and thought so for to haue escaped, but Arthur hasted him so fast after them, that hee strake of one of their heads, & as the other stoped to haue entred in at the gate, Arthur strake him so fiercelye on the backe, that he claue him nigh asunder, then they that were on the Bulwarkes and on the walls did cast at him manie great stones and other weapons, but they could do him no hurt, because that he was so neere to the gate. Then when the other twelue knightes which were on foote within the gate, saw the discomfiture of their twelue fellowes that

were

were on horse-backe done only by one man, they wer right horowfull, and so ranne out all at once at him with great hatchets in their hands, and when Arthur saw them, hee feared greatlye Aglie his good horse, therefore hee alighted and deliuered him to Bawdwin and bad him goe tie him without the bridge saste, then Arthur encountered so with the first, that he made his head to flye into the field, and to the secõd he gaue such a stroke, that he claue his head nigh to his teeth. And when maister Steuen which was on the walls of the pallaice, sawe the noble prowesse of Arthur, and the great strokes that hee gaue, saide to his companie: verely behold yonder is the noblest knight in the world, it is he that shall atchieue the aduentures of this place, it is the same knight that we haue tarried heere for so long, and euer Arthur fought fiercely among these people, and beate them down one after another, and among them ther was so great and big as though he had bene a Giant, who ranne at Arthur and ere hee was aware toke him by the legges and pulled him so fiercely, that they fell downe both together to the earth, but Arthur fell vnderneath the great churle, and then one of the other knights when he saw Arthur lie on the earth, he lift vp his axe and thought to haue striken Arthur on the head, but in their busteling together the stroke lighted on the great diuell, so that his huge and foule heade fle we to the earth. Then Arthur lept on his feete and saide: Sir I thanke thee, for thou hast deliuered me from much paine and ieopardie and sith thou hast deliuered me from this foule churle, I will pay thee anone thy wages, and therewith he lift vp his sworde and gaue him such a stroke, that hee claue his head asunder, then Arthur abandoned himselfe among the remnaunt so fiercelye, that he made great plentie of heads and armes fly to ẏ ground, and to make short processe, he did so much, that none of the twelue were left aliue, but they were al slaine and christened in the water by Bawdwin, for hee was to them a good Godfather. Then Arthur kept in at the wicket of the gate and all those that were on the walles did shote and cast at

him,

him, and euer he bare it off vpon his shielde, as well as hee might, till at the last he came to them, and the first that he met with lost his life, and there did such meruailes that it was a wonder to thinke thereof, for some hee threwe ouer the walles, and some leapte into the water, so that finallye they were slaine and drowned, and none lefte aliue in all the Castle that he could finde or heare, and Bawdwin was right sore trauailed with casting of them into the water that were slaine. Then Arthur saide to Bawdwin, friende I will goe enter into the great pallaice of aduentures, the which he saw before him in the Castle, therfore Bawdwin I will that you abide me heere in this Court, and kepe wel my horse Affile till I come againe to you. Sir said Bawdwin, for Gods sake put your selfe no more into any place, whereas you thinke is perill. Well saide Arthur, care not for that, but I pray you do as I saye, and loke in no wise you come to me without I cal you. Then Arthur mounted vp certaine greeces to enter into the hal of the pallaice, the which was the way vnto the mount perillous, and ther he found the most faire house that euer was seene, set al about with images of fine golde, and the windowes were all of fine Amber, with manie high and cleere casements, and out of this hall he entered into a chamber the most richest that euer was seene, for sith God first made mankinde, there was no manner of historie nor battaile, but in that chamber it was portrayed with golde and azure, and other fresh colours so liuely wrought, that it was wonderfull to behold, there was showen how God did create the Sunne & the Mone, and in the rose were all the seauen Planettes wrought with fine golde and siluer, and all the scituations of the heauens, wherin were pight manie carbuncles and other precious stones, the which did cast great clearnesse, as wel by daie as by night, to say the troth it was the most richest chamber and the wonderfullst, that euer was seene in all the worlde. Proserpina Queene of the Fairie caused it thus to be made. Also there were diuers beds wonderfull rich especially one that stoode in the mids of the chamber, fur-

surmounted in beautie all other, for the vtter brasses ther-
of were of greene Jasper, with great bars of gold set full of
precious stones, and the crampons were of fine siluer im-
brodered with golde, the postes of Juorie, with pomells of
Corall, and the staues closed in Buckeram, couered with
Crimosin Satten, and sheetes of silke, with a rich couering
of Ermins, and other clothes with cloth of golde, and foure
square pillows wrought among the Sarasins, the curtains
were of greene Sandall, edged with golde and azure, and
round about this bed there laie foure carpets of silke, poin-
ted and embrodered with Images of gold, and at the fours
corners of this bed there were foure conduits mervailous-
lie wrought by subtill art, out of the which there issued so
sweete an odour and so delectable, that all other sweetnesse
of the world was as nothing in respect thereof, and at the
head of this bed there stode an Image of golde that had in
his left hand a bow of Juorie, and in his right an arowe of
fine siluer, in the middest of his brest ther were letters that
said thus: When this Image shooteth, then al this pallace
shall tourne like a wheele, and then whosoeuer lieth in this
bed shall die, without it be that knight to whom this bed is
destinied. And when Arthur saw the richnesse of this cham-
ber, and speciallie of the bed, he had great pleasure to behold
it, and said to himselfe, how that at all aduentures he wold
lie downe on the bed, and not feare for anie dread of death,
and as he was lying downe on the bed, hee espied in euerie
corner of the chamber a great Image of fine gold standing,
each of them holding in their hands a great horne of siluer,
and by their countenaunce they were readie to blow. Then
Arthur heard a great voice, which was so loude and horri-
ble, that maister Steuen who was the pallace without the
castle, might right well heare it, which voice sayde; be-
holde nowe the ende. Then maister Steuen sayde to his
companie. I am sure that knight is entered into the
pallace within the Castle. God defend him from all ill,
then all the pallace began to tremble and shake inordenatli-
lie, insomuch that at ꝑ last one of the foure Images began to

blow

blowe his horne so loude, that it might well bee heard the space of a mile, then the Pallace trembled so sore as if all should euen fallen to peeces, the dores and windowes often times did open and close againe by their owne accord, then Arthur heard about him greate noise of people, as though there had bene a thousand men together, but hee could see no creature, at the last he perceiued greate light of torches, and euer he heard still the noise of people comming and going about the bedde, and also he heard the roring of a hideous river so that it seemed to him that it had ben the violent and wilde sea, and therewith he felt such a terrible winde, that he had much paine to sustaine him on his feete. Then Arthur assaied againe to haue laine downe on the bed and the voice began to crie againe and said, behold now the end, then the second Image began to blowe, and then came there into the chamber such noise and clamour, that Arthur was nigh deafe with that terrible din, and the Pallace began sorer to tremble then it did before, so that Arthur thought surelie all the pallaice wold haue fallen, then Arthur drew him towarde the bed, and as hee would haue layne him downe, he sawe on the right hand a great Lyon, fierce and fell, comming to him ward, gaping and ramping to deuour him, and so assailed him right rudelie, and with his pawes tooke Arthur by the shoulder, so that his harneis could not keepe him, but that his sharpe clawes entered into the flesh, and as the Lion would haue taken him by the head, he cast his shield before him, & the Lyon dasht it with his pawes all to peeces, and had almost ouerthrowen him to the earth, but then Arthur tooke his strength to him, & as the Lion was ramping before him, hee thrust his sworde cleane through his bodie, and so the Lion fell downe dead to the earth, and Arthur was right sore hurt in his shoulder, and bled fast, then hee approched againe to the bedde to haue laide him downe, then the third Image fiercelie didde blowe his horne, and out of the end thereof as Arthur thought, there issued out another Lyon greater and stronger then the other was. When Arthur sawe him, hee cryed to

God

God, beseeching him to succour him from an euill death, and so the Lion drewe him toward Arthur, and strake at him with his broad pawes, and Arthur held before him the remnaunt that was left of his shæld, but the Lyon shortlie brake it all to pæces as though it had bene but Glasse, and with one of his fæte he toke Arthur by the left side, and rased from him a great part of his harneis, and his doublet & shirt, and a great pæce of his flesh, to the bare ribs, & if God had not there helped him, he had ended his mortall life, then Arthur with his sword strake off the Lyons fot that was vnder his side, and therewith the Lion fell to the earth, and ere he arose againe Arthur recouered a nother stroke, and strake off his head by the sholders, then Arthur toke a faire cloth of Sendall that laie on the bed, and therwith wrapped his wounds and staunched them from blæding, then he approched againe to the bed to lie downe to rest him, and then sodainly ỳ fourth Image began terriblie to blow his horn, therewith Arthur loked behind him, and espied a great giant comming towerd him, who was fiftæne fot of length, beating together his tæth as though they hadde bene hammers striking on an anfield, who had in his hand a greate are, whereof the blade was nigh thræ foote long, the which was so sharpe, that it would cut a sunder euerie thing ỳ it touched, and when this Gyant sawe these Lions dead, hee was so sore displeased, that he was all in a rage, and rouled his eies, and dasht together his tæth, and ranne fiercely at Arthur, thinking to haue striken off his head, but Arthur feared much the stroke and leapt aside, whereby the stroke went beside him, and dasht into the pauement so rudely, ỳ the blade of the weapon entered into the head, and then Arthur strake him with his sword, but the stroke mounted vp againe, and would in no wise enter, for hee was harneised with the skinne of a serpent, the which was so hard, that no weapon could empaire it, and when Arthur sawe that he was right sore displeased, and lift vp his sword againe and strake the gyant on the head more rudely than he did before, but all that auailed not, for it seemed to him that

he strake on an anfield of yron. Then Arthur doubted himselfe greatly, and the gyant strake many strokes at Arthur, but alwaies he watched so the strokes, that he did let them passe by him without anie hurt or damage, for he perceiued right well ẏ if the gyant did light on him with a ful stroke, there was no other waie with him but death. Thus this giant euer pursued Arthur to haue striken him, but alwayes Arthur watched the strokes and auoided them wisely, and oftentimes strake the giant againe, but he could do him no hurt, thus they fought a great space not farre from the rich bed in the middest of ẏ chamber, then the gyant with great anger lift vp his fauchon to haue striken Arthur vppon the head, and the stroke came furiously and dasht into the earth like thunder, for Arthur auoided craftelie the stroke, which entered and cut a sunder a great brase of a bench that stood before the bed of white Iuorie, and so the stroke descended downe to the earth throughout all the pauement, for the giant was so sore displeased that his weapon entered both through woode and stone, & into the earth to the hard head, and therwith the blade of his fauchon burst cleane a sunder in the middest, and when the gyant sawe that, he raged like a fiend of hell, and so toke the handle thereof and cast it at Arthur, but he wiselie auoided it, and it lighted on the wall of the chamber, wherin the stroke entered well neere a foote & a halfe: then the giant leapt to the brase of the bench that he had cut a sunder before, and would haue pulled it out of the bench, but it was so sore bound with crampons of steele to the bench, that he could not remoue it, and as he stouped to pull thereat, Arthur espied how the Serpent skinne was but short behind his backe, and so vnder the skin he thrust his sword vp into his bellie to the crosse, then the Gyant fell downe and made a terrible braying, the which might well be heard a greate waie off, then Arthur recouered on him another stroke, and so strake his sword into his heart, then hee made a greater crie then hee did before, and therewith his soule departed awaie from his diuelliſh bodie, then the noise was heard againe that saide, beholde

the

the ende, then was Arthur so wearie and so sore trauailed and his woundes bledde so fast, that he had much paine to sustaine himselfe on his feete, howbeit as well as he might hee repaired to the rich bedde, and had alwayes his sword in his hande, and therewith laide him downe on the bedde, then the Image of golde at the beddes head with his bowe and arrowe did shoote, and hit one of the windowes so sore, that it flew wide open with the stroke, out of which windowe there issued such a smoake and fume so blacke, that it made all the house so darke, that Arthur could see nothing, the which fume stunke so abhominablie, that Arthur thereby was almost dead, then there rose such a winde so greate and feruent, that it burst the glasse windowes and latesses, so that the tiles and stones flewe all about the house like haile, and it thundered so terriblie, that all the earth shoke, and the pallaice trembled as it would haue fallen all to peeces, and at the last he perceiued a burning speare all of fire, the which was comming towards him, and therewith hee leapt from the bed and fled from the stroke, and sawe where it went in at another little chamber by, and fel on a knight as he laie a bed, and burnt him cleane through, and the fire descended through bed and chamber and al, and sunke deepe into ỹ earth, then sodainly burst asunder two pillers which sustained the couering ouer the bed, and then all the whole pallaice began to turne about like a wheele, then Arthur ranne to the image of golde that stoode at the beddes head, and embraced it in his armes, for the Image remooued nothing, and this tourning of the Pallace endured a greate space. And Bawdewin Arthurs Squier who was without in the Court pittieouslie wept and made greate sorrowe for the feare that he had of his master, for he thought verilie how that he was but dead, and said: Ah my Lorde Arthur, the best Knight, the most noble and hardie, the most sage and curteous creature that euer was formed by nature, alasse why did you enter into this vnhappie Castle, for I thinke surelie you are but dead. And so then at the last the tourning about of this Pallaice begaune to ceasse, and the

darknesse began to auoide and to ware faire and clére, and ẏ aire peaceable, then Arthur sate him downe vpon the rich beds side right feble & faint, because of the great trouble ẏ he had endured, and for the fearfull & horrible things that he had seene and heard, then when it was thus wared faire and clére, the voice said again twice, it is ended, it is ended, and when master Steuen heard that voice, he said vnto his companie: verily the aduentures of the pallace in the castle of the Port Noire are atchieued, therefore I am sure it can be no otherwise, but that knight that is there, is either dead or else right sore wounded: and then he went and gathered hearbes, such as he knew were right precious for all manner of wounds, and made an ointment of them to giue vnto Arthur, if it were his fortune to finde him aliue, & Bawdewin who also heard the voice, thought verilie then that Arthur had bene dead, and said vnto himselfe, that neither for the displeasure of his Lorde, nor yet for feare of anie other thing he wold abide no longer, but that he wold mount vp into the pallaice to see if he could knowe how his Lord did, & so went vp the staires with his sword in his hand, & passed through the hall entered into the chamber whereas Arthur was sitting on the beds side, then was Bawdewin gladde when he sawe his master aliue, and demanded of him how he did, and Arthur answered and said, howe that hee was right wearie and sore wounded. Then Bawdewin was right sorrowfull at his heart, for he feared greatly least that he had some mortal wound, and said: Sir may it please you to shew me your wounds. It pleaseth mee right well saide Arthur. Then Bawdewin vnarmed him and searched all his wounds, for he was a right good Surgion, and washed and staunched his woundes, and softly did anoint them, the which did him great ease. Then Arthur armed him againe and said that he would goe search farther ouer all the palliace, to know if there were anie more aduentures, & therwith there entered into the chamber a young Page, who accustomablie before prepared the meate and the drinke that serued for those Knightes that were dead at the

gate

gate of the castle, and when he came before Arthur, he knéeled downe and said: Gentle Knight, I desire you of mercie, for Gods sake saue my life, for I am a poore Page ỳ serued for my liuing the Knightes that you haue slaine. Thou shalt haue no hurt said Arthur, on the condition that thou wilt tell mee trouth, whether there bee in this Castle anye more men or women. Sir sayd the Page, here in this place there be no more creatures but onely two prisoners, who were deliuered to my masters whom you haue slaine, to be kept héere in prison, to the intent that it shoulde neuer bee knowen where they were become, and they were sent hether by the commaundement of the Duke of Bigor. Well good friend, saide Arthur, bring me to them, then he conueied him straight to the prison whereas they were closed in, and did vnlocke all the doores, which were meruailously wrought, & at the last they came to a great cofer all of yron, which was surelie made fast to the wal with great chaines and bars of stéele, then Arthur did so much by his strength, that he burst open the cofer and toke out ỳ prisoners with much paine, for they were sore charged with bolts of yron, so that they could stirre no manner of waie, and when they were losed, one of them said: Ah déere Lord, I knowe not what you be, nor whether you haue taken vs out of prison, for our wealth or for our hurt, but for Gods sake rather thẽ you should put vs againe into this cofer, first strike off our heads: certainlie said Arthur, we haue no intent to do you anie manner of hurt, therfore tell me of whence you be, and where you were borne: Ah sir saide they, wee are so nighe ouercome for lacke of meat, & so sore bruised withal, that we can scant speake one word, therfore for Gods sake giue vs some meat. Friends said Arthur, I cannot tell whether ther be anie meate and drinke in this house or no: yes sir, sayde the Page, héere in this house is sufficient, if it were to receiue the mightie Emendus, king of Sorolois. Well saide Arthur, then goe fetch them some part thereof, then hee couered the Tables, and did set on them Bread and Wine, and other meate sufficient, and then they all did eate and

drinke as much as did satisfie them, & when they had done, the Page demaunded of the prisoners if they would be shauen, and they aunswered, with a right good will. Then he prepared all things readie, for he was a good Barber, & when they were shauen the Page brought them gownes of the Knightes that were slaine, and when they were apparailed, they seemed to be extract of a noble linage, & so they were in deede as you shall heare after.

How Arthur ended the aduentures of the pallace, and deliuered the prisoners, and atchieued the aduenture, that was in the gallerie going to the garden of the mount perillous, and by his might with a great barre beate downe two massie Images of copper, each of them holding a flaile, that was of such waight, that ten men might scant lift one of them from the earth, wherewith they were euer beating with great strokes made by inchauntment, to the intent that none should passe into the garden of the mount perillous, then failed and ended all the inchauntments of that place. Chap. 44.

AFter that Arthur had deliuered these prisoners, and atchieued the foresaid aduentures, then the Page came to me and said. Sir it is of truth that you haue ouercome all the aduẽtures of this place sauing one, & that is in the gallerie going into the garden, and if that wer done, then euerie bodie might goe and come into this Castle as surely as into any other place. Wel good friend quoth Arthur, I pray you bring me thether: With a right good wil said the page, but sir we must haue first some fire with vs, for the gallery is so darke that we can see nothing ther, & then they lighted torches & went forth so far, that at the last in a litle straight waie Arthur foũd two images of copper one on ẏ one side, & another on the other side, & they had each of thẽ a great flaile in their hands, wherewẽ they continuallie beat down right, which was made by inchantment, so that no creature could passe by them wõut death, & when Arthur saw them he toke

his

his ſwoꝛd in his hand and laid on them with all his might, in ſuch wiſe that his ſtrokes might well be heard a greate way of, but foꝛ all that he could not empaire them, then hee perceiued well that his ſwoꝛd could do him but little helpe, wheꝛefoꝛe he toke in his hand a great bar of a doꝛe that hee found there, and therewith hé laid on ſo faſt, that finally hee beat downe both theſe Images. Then all the inchantment began to faile: foꝛ he might ſée cléerely all about him, yet wᵗ ſtraining of himſelfe in this battaile, his wounds burſt out againe on bléeding, wheꝛefoꝛe he was faine to vnarme him in the ſame place, and then Bawdewin did ſtaunch all his wounds againe and dꝛeſſed them newly with ſwéete & ſoft ointments, & he would haue armed him againe but ẏ page ſaid: Sir your harneis ſhal but hurt your wounds, theꝛfoꝛe leaue it heere ſtill and arme you no moꝛe, foꝛ ſurely you be now in as good ſauegard as though you were by your fa-ther that begate you. Friend ſaid Arthur, looke that here be no treaſon: I warrant you on paine of my head, theꝛe-foꝛe boldlie now you may enter into the garden, & ther you ſhal finde a noble clarke, who is ſonne to a king, and pertai-ning to a right high and mightie Pꝛinceſſe, the noble Flo-rence, daughter and heire to the puiſſant king Emendus, who hath ben there moꝛe then this halfe yere to abide your comming: foꝛ me ſaid Arthur, thou wotteſt not what thou ſaiſt, how ſhould he haue anie knowledge of mee. Sir ſayde the Page, I cannot tell you, but ſurelie it is as I ſay, ther-foꝛe let vs go thether. So they went foꝛth & entered into the garden, wherin was al the pleaſure that could be thought, and as they went foꝛth therin, ther came to Arthur a faire young page, & gently ſaluted him, ſaying: Sir you be right heartely welcome into the land of Soꝛolois, as the moſt de-ſired knight ẏ euer was girt with ſwoꝛd. Why good friend ſaid Arthur, wher is that place that I am ſo foꝛe deſired in: ſir ſaid he, in all ẏ land of Argence: faire friend ſaid Arthur, & why am I ſo much ther deſired: ſir ſaid he, that can ẏ pꝛi-ſoner that you haue deliuered ſhewe you full well. Why quoth Arthur, howe knowe they what I am.

As God helpe me saide he, you are better knowen héere then you are ware of, for here is in this garden a noble clark, son to a king who hath tarried héere a great time, who knoweth you well, and all the loue that hath bene betwéene you & the faire Damsell Iehannet, ere you departed out of your owne countrie, and also he knoweth right well, that which you did at Vienne in the tourney, and also what you did at Brewle, and how you made your cosin Hector duke of Dzgoule. In ỳ name of God said Arthur, I haue great maruel how you can tel me all this. And as they wer thus talking there came to them a great flocke of knights, then the page said, sir yonder is my saide Lorde who is comming to you. Nay said Arthur, I will goe vnto him: at this time master Steuen was apparailed in a mantel of violet chamlet, and in a coate of gréne Satten furred with Ermins, & as soone as he sawe Arthur, he auailed his bonnet & did salute him. Then Arthur saide to him, ah gentle master it is to mee a great rebuke that so noble a man as you be should do to me so great reuerence, then the master did smile & toke him by the hand, saying: Sir we haue long trusted for the wealth and honour that is now come to you, therfore you be welcome as the chiefe & soueraign knight of all the worlde, for now I thinke to goe sée this Pallaice into the which neuer man entered before saue onlie you, for you are the first that euer entered there into, and that is by your noble valure, & I know well you be sore wounded, therefore I haue made for you a little drinke, which he sent for incontinently, and when it was come, he said, sir drink therof hardly, feare for nothing in the name of God, for I desire more your health and honour, then any other creature liuing. Then Arthur tokē it and dranke well thereof, & as soone as it was spred abroad in his vaines, he was thereby sodainely all whole, & more lustie thē euer he was before, for then he thought his strength was doubled, & truly in a manner so it was, for by the vertue of these hearbs he had the grace that from thence forth there was neuer man that could drawe out of his bodie anie blood, but onely the foule monster of the Brosse,

with

with whom he fought in great ieopardie, as you shal heare afterward.

How master Steuen went with Arthur into the pallace within the castle, to the intent to see the wonderfull aduentures that Arthur had there atchieued. Chap. 45.

When Arthur had receiued the said drinke, & recouered therby his health, master Steuen toke him by the hand & said. Sir, I haue great desire to go see this pallace, I pray you let vs go thether, and so they two went forth together before, and all the other followed them that would, and at the last they came into the same narow entrie wheras Arthur had beaten downe these two images of Copper with their great flailes, and there a great while they stood and beheld them, and euerie man assaied to remoue one of their flailes, but it would not bee they were so heauie, then euerie one greatly mernailed how ther might be so much might in one knight, as to beate downe so mightie & heauie a thing, then they entered into the pallace, which was the most fairest and richest that euer was seene with mans eie, and at the last they entered into the rich chamber whereas the goodly bed was, then master Steuen had great mernaile of the inestimable riches of that chamber and bedde. Then came to them the two prisoners, and did salute master Steuen, and when the master saw them, he knew one right well & made to him good cheere and said: What sir Marques haue you heere prisoner? yea sir said he, trulie, for the nephew of the Duke of Bigot, when he had slaine my Lord, and murthered my brother by false treason, he tooke me and this other knight, & did send vs into this place as priuely as he could, and did deliuer vs to the knights that kept this place, who be now al dead by the prowesse of this knight, who hath deliuered vs out of prison and thraldome, and thanked be god and his prowesse we be escaped all daunger. God be praised

ſaid the maſter, it was great need that he ſhould come into this countrie, & then he ſaid to Arthur: Sir it draweth toward night, wherfore it is time to go to ſupper, & I wil ſup with you heere in this chamber, I thanke you ſaid Arthur, but I cannot tell whether ther be anie thing to receiue ſuch a perſon as you be. Sir ſaide the maſter, by the faith I owe to you, I am pertaining to a noble Ladie, who hath ſufficient both for you and vs all, then the maſter commanded to make readie ſupper, & anone the tables were laide, and the maſters ſeruants ran to his tent on the mount perillous, & they brought all manner of things neceſſarie, veſſel, & plate of golde and ſiluer great plentie, then was water brought forth, & Arthur refuſed to waſh with the maſter, becauſe he was ſonne vnto a king. Well ſir ſaid the maſter, I praie you fulfill my deſire, for truly I knowe better your eſtate & honour then you thinke I do, then Arthur did as he was required, and the maſter ſate downe and Arthur by him, and the Marques before him, & all the other ſate downe at other ſide tables, whereas they were as richly ſerued, as though they had ben in the houſe of the noble Florence, but though ſhe were not ther, yet ſhe paied for all their expences. Thus Arthur ſate at ſupper, who ſeemed to all them that ſaw him to be right faire and gratious aboue al other that euer they had ſeene, and ſo they praiſed him much in their hearts, and when they had ſupped at good leaſure, and the tables taken awaie, they ſet them down on cuſhions of ſilke, and the maſter ſaid to Arthur. Sir behold heere my Lord the Marques, who is and ſhal be your knight, for you haue deliuered him out of priſon. That is true ſaid the Marques, and therfore I thanke him. Well ſir ſaid Arthur, I heard you ſaie as I remember, how that the nephew of the duke of Bigot cauſed you to be put heere in priſon, and alſo how he ſlew your brether by treaſon, wherefore if it maye pleaſe you I require you ſhew me how it did fortune. And when maſter Steuen heard him enquire in that manner, hee had greate ioye, for hee knew well that Arthur would remedie that caſe, but the Marques anſwered and ſaide.

Sir,

Sir, the matter is verie long to rehearse, therefore I feare me ỹ report thereof will annoy you: truly said Arthur, it shal be no paine to me to heare it. Then the Parques said: It is of a trouth that the Lord of Argenton was my brother, who was in his time a right good Knight, I say it not because he was my brother, but of verie troth hee was so greatlye praised, that the renowme of him was spredde abroad in all the land of Borolois, for there he was reputed to bee the most souereigne Knight in all the worlde, and so it fortuned, that the Duke of Bigor, who is a mightye Lord in his owne countrey, made on a day a tourney to be holden at his Citie of Bigor, because of a neuewe of his, who was married the same daie into a right high lignage, and this Dukes neuewe was and yet is, right fierce and proud, and is a right great redouted knight of his hands, and in euerie place he was reputed next vnto my brother to be the best Knight of the world, and at this foresaid turnay was my brother, and this Dukes neuewe had greate enuie at him, because of the great noblenesse that he heard reported of him, and so toke counsaile with some of his affinitie, and determined to iust against my Lorde my brother, to the intent to abate his renowme, and so he toke to his companie ten other knightes, & when the tourney was begun, he and his companie ranne at once at my brother, who as then was not aware of their malicious purpose, nor had any moe in his companie, but me and his Squire, wherefore we suffered much paine, but finally my brother deliuered vs all from them, and beate down the dukes neuew to the earth, but my brother by his gentlenes did that which I wold not haue done, for when he sawe him on the earth he alighted & brought him another good horse, & wēt to the turney, and there did such meruailes of armes, that all that beheld him, marnailed thereat, and generally said, that in the worlde there was none like him. When the Dukes neuew heard all this praise giuen to my brother, his heart swelled with enuie, and for despite he wold iuste no more that daye.

And

And when all was ended, the price was giuen to my brother by the consent of both parties and all the companye went to the Court to the Duke.and ther they began greatly to praise my brother. And when his neuew heard that, he was right sore displeased because he was beaten down by him the same day,therefore openly before the Duke for very mallice he appeached my brother of treason,and said how that he had beaten him downe in the tourney by craft and false treson. Then my brother could no longer endure his words but said: In faith sir you say vntruly,for I neuer thought treason in all my life,neither to you nor anye other creature,and therewith in the quarrell he didde cast downe his glone at the fote of the Duke. And when this Dukes neuew saw that hee hadcast his gloue, he was beside himselfe for anger and despite,and stept on his feet,and toke a great mace of steele from a squire that stode beside, and therewith he strake my brother on the head,so that the blood fell to the earth,and when I saw my brother so striken, I toke my sword in my hand,& thought to haue slaine him,but other Knights kept vs asunder: then my brothers companie began to draw together, and his companie likewise,whereby it was likely there would haue ben a great fray,but wisely the Duke appeased both parties,and was right sore displeased with the outrage of his neuew. Then my brother said to the Duke: Sir,your neuew hath appeched mee of treason, and therefore beholde here lyeth my gloue to defende my selfe in the quarrell, that by treason without any defiance, and or euer I was aware hee hath striken mee like a false traitour as hee is, and that will I proue my bodie against his,and therefore sir Duke let me haue right according to the law of armes. Then was this dukes neuew greatly blamed of euerie Knight,who said generally that if he had right he should bee for this deede right sore punished. Then the duke was right sorrowfull and did much labour to appease my brother,but in no wise he would be content of a great season, howbeit finally the duke required him so much, and so did all other Knightes

that

that my brother who had a gentle heart did forgiue all the matter, and the peace was made, and each of them bounde to other in two thousand pound to kéepe and obserue such directions as the Duke shoulde take in the matter, wherewith they said they were wel content. Then the duke said, sirs, first each of you shall pardon other of all euill willes that hath bene betwéene you, and thereto they answered and said, that they were well pleased so to dw, and in signe therof they imbraced each other, and kissed together. Then the duke determined further, how that his neuew shoulde deliuer to my brother two hundred pound of yearely land, to him and his heires for euermore, the which direction his neuew there confirmed, and there my brother was put in full possession thereof both by the Duke and also by his neuew, who shewed a fairer face outwardly to my brother, then he thought inwardly in his heart. Then my brother toke leaue of the Duke, and his neuew vnder the false colour of loue, conuaied my brother part of the way, but falsly and like a traitour, he had laid an ambush of three score men in harneis, and so there or we were aware they came behind vs, and shamefully slew my brother and two of his sonnes, of the age of twelue or thirtéene yeares, and about fortie knights that were in our companie, and toke me & this my fellow prisoners, out of the which you haue deliuered vs. And sir it is so, that my brother hath no mo children left aliue sauing a daughter, who is heire to all the land of Argenton, and the dukes neuew hath taken from her all the inheritance that she is borne vnto, and hath her in keeping, & is purposed to marrie her to a boy who is his barbour, who by reason ought to bee married to a greate Earle or els a Lorde, both for her nobilitie, riches and progenie: but now she is in that case that there is none that will maintaine her right, for manie of her friends be dead, and I haue bene heere in prison sith the death of my Lorde my brother and her father, and also her men and subiectes dare dw nothing for lacke of a Captaine, and this Duke is greatly feared, for he is mightie both of lands and friends,

and

and therfore my neece is likely to be vndone, for she shall be giuen at this next Pawdlaintide to a lewde boie, & is likelie to be dishonored for euer, for she hath no helpe nor counsaile, and therwith this Marques pittiouslie began to weep for the great sorrow that he had in his heart. Then master Steuen sayde, sir I assure you it is of a truth all that this Marques hath shewed you. Certainly said Arthur, if God will send me the grace ỹ I may heare of a knight of mine that should come hether to me, then will I faithfully promise you to doe mine endeauour to helpe and succour this noble damsell. Sir quoth master Steuen, I will know to morow how your knight doth, but now it is too late, and you shall lie all night in this pallace which is pertaining to my lady Florence, for it was giuen her when she was but two daies olde, howbeit shee was neuer heare, nor yet ante other but you only, therfore sir kéepe it for my Ladie till the time that you may render it to her noble grace, for you haue made it free from all manner of inchauntments, and I will go this night into my tent wheras I haue laine all this while, and to morow betimes I will come to you againe & bring all my stuffe into this place, but loke that you lie all this night in this roiall bed, & ther Arthur promised him so to do. Then the master & his companie departed from him that night.

How Proserpina Queene of the Fairies, about midnight appeared to Arthur with great light of Torches, & how she shewed him that within the mount perillous there was the white sheeld, and the good sword inchanted, called Clarence, and how that hee should haue them with much honour if his heart durst serue him. How the next daie master Steuen ledde Arthur into the garden, where the white sheeld was, the which could neuer be remoued from the tree whereon it hanged, & how Arthur toke it down easely, and Clarence the sword also, which could neuer before that time be drawē out of the sheath, neither would it helpe anie bodie but onelie Arthur, who drew it out lightlie, and after that it did him much helpe as you shall heare after.

Chap. 46.

When

When that master Steuen was departed, then Arthur laid him downe in the royall rich bed, and slept wel all his first slæp till it was about midnight: then hee awaked and sawe greate clærenesse of torch light afore him, and he perceiued standing before his bedde, a Quæne crowned with golde, who was the most faireſt creature that euer he saw, and he thought that she spake to him, and said: Arthur my friend, héere is in this place the white shield, and Clarence the good sword of the fairie, therfore thou shalt haue much honour if thy heart be good, and therewith she vanished away, wherof Arthur had great meruaile, both of her beautie, and also of her sodaine departing. Thus remained Arthur till it was clére day, then he arose, and master Steuen came to him, and they went to deuine seruice, which ended Arthur saide to the master, Sir I cannot tell what quæne it was that this night was with me in the chamber whereas I lay, but it was the goodlyest figure of a woman that euer I saw, & she said to me how that ther was in this place ỳ white shield, & the good sword Clarence. And when master Steuen heard ỳ, hee smiled & said: sir I sée wel it is you to whō the sword & shield is desstenied, diuers Knights haue assayed to take them, but they coulde neuer remoue them frō the place whereas they be, therfore now I thinke they haue found their master, sir let vs goe thether, and sée what wil fortune. Then they issued out of the pallaice and went into the gardein whereas was the rich pauilion pertaining to ỳ noble Florence, ỳ which was wrought of the richest worke of the world, of græn satten and crimsen bordered with golde and azure, and the post that bare it was of yuorie, and the cords of græne silke, and on the top thereof stood an Eagle of golde, and at the two corners two greate griffons shining against the sunne. Then Arthur remembred his vision that he had in his own country, and beheld the Eagle a great while, and at last came to the pauilion, where he saw the personage of a quæn crowned with gold,

the

the which crowne hadde fyre braunches, the which signified fyre realmes, and in euerie braunch there were written letters, and in the first was written Emendus the mightie King of Sorolois, and this braunch was chiefe and highest of all other, and in the second was written Florence Quéene of the Realme of Blaunch towre, and in the third was shewen the King of Orqueney, and in the fourth was written Piuernons king of Valefound, Father to master Steuen, and in the fift king of Morrmall, and in the first Ismaelite the great. This crowne was set full of precious stones, and this Image was faire and gentle to beholde, with her forehead plaine and white, and her haire like the coulour of golde, her browes small and proper, somewhat drawing to a browne coulour, and her visage plaine, neither too long nor too round, coulour like as roses and Lillies together had bene medled, her nose long and straight, and her ruddie mouth somewhat smiling, her chin louelie, and all her bodie and other members made without anye default in the ordinaunce of nature, who had set in her all beautye, & she was clothed with a gowne of greene, straight girt to her with a lase of golde, so that somewhat her little round and lillie white breasts might be sene, the which became her wonderfully well, and beside all this she had on a kirtle of crimosin, lined with violet Sendall, and her wide sleeues were of greene, imbrodered with flowres of golde, and with rich pearles, and this Image helde betweene her handes a chaplet of silke, wrought subtillie full of fresh flowres, and about the border therof were letters wrought of precious stones that said. He shall keepe me for his own that shall haue this chaplet, & when Arthur had read these letters, and salwe the fresh beautie of this Image, his heart opened for great loue: and with great and feruent desire he loued the person presented by that Image, and therewith stoode before it in a great study. Then master Steuen said, sir I assure you my Ladie it is that this Image representeth. Sir saide Arthur, then in her is all the beautie of the world. Yea sir said the master, there bee two persons that

resem-

resembleth this image. First the Quéene that you saw the last night appeare to you, who is called Proserpina quéene of the Fairies, who did give to my Ladie Florence this castle and this Pauilion, and destinied on her howe that shee should neuer be married but to the best Knight of the world, and to him this image should giue her chaplet that she holdeth in her hands, and sir I trust it be you. Secondlie, alls my Ladie Florence in all things resembleth to this image, and so the quéene Proserpina & my Ladie Florence & this image are in all points so like that you cannot know y one from the other, and the high braunch that is in the crowne of this image, betokeneth the mightie king Emendus, father to my Ladie Florence, and the second signifieth my ladies realme, and the other foure representeth foure other Kings, who are subiects to my Ladie Florence and to her father, therefore sir and it please you let vs enter into this pauilion and sée whether you may haue the shéld & sword that all others haue failed of, & so they entered into the pauilion, and in the middest thereof Arthur sawe where there hanged on a pin the shéld & the sword. Then Arthur went thereto boldly, and take it as easily as though it had ben his owne before, then he set his hand to the sword and drew it out of the sheath, & the blade thereof was so cléere that it did cast a meruailous great cléerenesse, and therefore it was called Clarence, & before that time it was neuer drawen out of the sheath, nor séene with mans eie, and Arthur dealt as easily therewith as he did with his owne, and when maister Steuen sawe this he had great ioy and said. Sir I sée well you are the same Knight that it was deliuered vnto, therefore now I haue great ioy, and I trust that God shal cause you to attaine to much honour & nobleneſſe. Then Arthur said, sir you haue promised to tell mee some tidinges of my Knight that should come hether, now I require you tell me if you know any thing of him. Sir said the maister, I know wel how you promised to come & séek this aduenture which you haue atchieued, but in no wise you would suffer him to come with you, and therefore you sent him by the great high

waie throughout Inde the more, to the intent he should not see your death nor die with you, and so it is that he is not as yet come, for in deed he cannot, for he is in ỹ castle called the Brosse, and by all likelyhood impossible that euer he should depart thence without death though he were made of yron and steele, for all the help of the world cannot keep him from death, therefore Arthur comfort your selfe, and of a thing that is without recouerie, neuer think theron more. Truly sir said Arthur, except I haue my Knight I shal neuer haue cõfort, therfore speak to me neuer therof, but I require you how is he so lost or in such iopardy as you speake of. With a right good wil said the master, but I feare me it will anoy you, for it is a long processe to rehearse. Well said Arthur, as for that I care not, tell on I require you.

How master Steuen shewed Arthur how that Gouernar his Knight was in the castle of Brosse, and how the custome of that Castle was first begunne. Chap. 47.

Then the master said, sir it is of a troth that the castle of the Brosse is a right strong and noble place, and it is the chiefe head of all the countrie, for there is well neere fiue hundred Gentlemen that hold their land thereby, and they are all subiects to him that is Lord of that place, and about two yeare agoe there was a Lorde of this castle, who was called sir Meuelon le Rour, a full good & gentle knight, who was reputed right wise and verie rich, & right sore feared, and wel beloued of all people. Now hard adioyning to this castle within two leagues thereof there is a forrest in the which there is a meruailous great deepe pit, and the entrie there into is foure square, and it is well neere foure speares length broad, and it is so black & stinking, ỹ no creature can abide neere it, & into this abhominable pit ther doth repaire a right meruailous & horrible monster, the foulest shaped ỹ euer was seene or heard of, for he is wel nigh xxx. foot long, & his head three times larger then the head of an ox, and his

eies

ties bigger then a mans fist, and some of his teeth standing out of his mouth more then a foote and a halfe, wher with he will breake both yron & steele, & his armes big & long without anie measure, his nailes or clawes longer then a foot, so hard and sharpe, that there is nothing but he will pearce it, and all his bodie as blacke as any coale, & as hard as steele, for there is nothing that can empaire him, and also he is of that strength that hee is able to carrie awaie at once three knights armed, & he eateth neuer anie other meat but raw flesh of mankind, and he is so light and swift, that an horse cannot run from him, & oftentimes he hath ben assaied with great hoasts of men, but all they could neuer doe him anie manner of hurt, neither with sword, speare, nor crossebow, nor anie other weapon, & thus he doth great trouble to all the whole countrie, and so it fortuned that two yere past about S. Laurence tide, this saide Lorde sir Nevelon was comming out of Inde the more from the Emperour, who loued him right wel, & as he had thought to haue gone home to his own castle of the Worse, and twentie of his seruants in his companie, he passed by this forrest wher as this great pit is, & so vnwares to him and his Squier did rest them not far from the pit, and suffered his other companie to ride on afore, & so it fortuned that this foule monster was the same morning issued out of his pit, and as soone as hee espied this Lord Nevelon he ran on him & so strangled him & bare him into this great pit, and so there he was vtterly lost, & when this was knowen there was made for him great sorrow, & this Lord hath a daughter who is named Blaunch Floure, who was then of the age of fiftéene yéere, & when she heard tidings of the death of the Lord her father, she made greate sorrow, & entered into a little chappell, abiding there fiftéene daies, making wonderfull sorrow for her father, & euer she praied to God that shee might haue some vengeance of this monster, so long thus she praied, that at last on a night shee heard a voice that said to her, that ỳ knight that ouercometh the Lord of this castle at the end of two yeares shall fight against this monster, howbeit the voice shewed not

whether he should ouercome the monster or bee ouercome himselfe, then the young Damsell reported all this that she heard the voice saie to her brethren and to her vncle, & then they ordained among them that her vncle should abide in the Castle and iuste with all knightes that passed by the waie, vntill the time that he were ouercome with a strong Knight, and so it was ordained that if the Knight of the castle ouercome the knight without, then hee should leese his horse and harneis, and also beleo to the Justice, that it shuld be cride throughout all the countrie, behold the knight that is vanquished, and if the strange knight without ouercome him of the castle, then the Knight stranger should goe to the castle, and there be receiued as chiefe Lord thereof, & be serued honourablie, and then he shoulde kæpe the castle & that vsage till he were ouercome of another knight. Sir it fortuned your knight Gouernar to passe by this castle, & ther did iust against the Lord thereof, and so ouercame him and many more since that time that he was faine to keepe the said vsage, and so sir he is in this castle, and it passeth not now to come seauen weekes of the full season of two yeare sith the vsage began, and I think verilie there shall come no knight thether betwæne this and that by whom he shuld be ouercome, and as soone as the two yeare be full compleate, then shal he be led to fight with this terrible mõster, & I am sure as soone as he commeth to him he is but dead and it were an hundred such as he is, & sir there is no more then two hundred knights continuallie lodged about this castle, to the intent that he should not scape awaie, therefore I repute him but a dead man, for there is no succour can holpe him. Wel master said Arthur, sith it is thus as you saie, as God helpe me ther is nothing shal hold me, but I wil go thether & put my bodie in ieopardie for his, for it were a greate shame for me thus to leese my knight, therfore Bawdewin trie & make thee redie al thy geare, for I wil remoue to morow betimes for certainly I wil abide no longer for all the world, & whē ỹ master heard him he knew well ỹ there was none might let him of his enterprise, howbeit he said: Sir you ought to

be reputed neither for sage nor wise, that will take on him such a thing that he cannot atchieue, and goe there as peril is without remedie, it is no hardinesse thus to do, but a full great follie, therefore sir for Gods sake abide. Master quoth Arthur, speake no more to me thereof, for surelie I will goe thether and take once on that foule monster, though hee be the diuell of hell. Well sir said the master, as God will so be it, but sith you be he to whome it is destined to atchieue all the aduentures of this countrie of Sorolois, whereof this aduenture is one of the greatest, the which I praie to God that you may subdue it, therefore take with you this white shield, for there is nothing that can empaire it, this I warne Clarence, for there was neuer yet a better, & thus sir, since you will needs goe, I trust you may goe the surer, & I praie God send you good fortune & space, and safe to come againe, and so for that night they went to their rests.

How Arthur when he was departed from the Port Noire for to go to deliuer Gouernail out of the Castle of the Brosse, & also for to fight with the monster, he found in a faire medow the nephew of the Duke of Bygor, accompanied with xiij. other Knights, who assailed him right fiercelie, but he defended himselfe so valiantly, that he slew three of them, and wounded the Dukes nephew, that he was faine to be carried awaie in a horse litter.

Chap. 48.

On the morning betimes Arthur arose and tooke leaue of the master, who said to him: Sir, for Gods sake returne againe as speedilie as you may, for I haue many things to speake with you of, & I & this Marques will keepe this palace in the meane season, and Arthur promised so to do, and he and Baudewin departed, & rode foorth two daies without finding of anye aduenture, till at the last on a priuate a-boad hee they entered into a faire forrest, and rode a long season and found no creature, at last they came into a faire pleasant lande and greene, & Arthur was in a great thought

remembring on his shield that could not bee empaired, and also of Clarence his sworde which would cut euerie thing, & he had great desire to see him proued, to the intent that hee might know whether they wer of that vertue or no: also he was mounted on his good horse Aillie, and as he rode thus thinking, hee met sodainly with fourtene knights all armed, and foure of them were on horsbacke, & the other ten were lighted on foot, and wer sitting vnder an Oke beause of the shadow thereof, for the weather was then verie hot, & when these foure knightes on horsbacke sawe Arthur, one of them disranged himselfe, and without speaking of anie word he ran at Arthur and strake him on the sheild a great stroke, and passed forth without breaking of his speare, and therwith Arthur looked about him, & at the last the knight y had striken him was redy prepared to haue returned again, then Arthur ran at him, & the knight brake his speare, but Arthur gaue him such a stroke that he rushed downe both horse and man all on a heape so rudely, that with the fall he brake one of his legs, and his horse fell on him, then Arthur said to him: Sir you be a traitor thus to strike me without defiance, but I think you haue now great need of a Carpenter to make you some stilts or crouches, for I thinke you cannot rise without a leaning stocke. Then another of these knights came on Arthur, and he wan him forthe to the earth and his heeles vpward, and when his other two fellowes sawe that, they ranne both at once on Arthur, and hit him with both their Speares at once in the middest of his shield, but they remoued him no more then if they had striken against a towre, and so they passed by, and then returned againe with their swords in their hands, and assailed fiercely Arthur on all sides, then Arthur waxed angrie and took in his hand his good sworde Clarence, and strake therwith the first so, that hee claue his head downe to his shoulders, and when his fellow sawe that he fled to his fellowes that were on foot. Then sir Allembart nephew to the Duke of Bygot, who was fierce and fell, and captaine of all the company, when he sawe one of his knights slaine, whom was his

cosin germaine, he snuffed in the nose and beat together his teeth, and bended his browes as though he had ben madde, and called for his helme and for his horse, and would suffer none of his compaine to go with him, for he said he wold alone reuenge the death of his cosin, therewith he mounted on his horse and toke a great speare & a mightie, then Arthur espied wher a great speare stod leaning against a tree, and he toke it in his hand and rode against the knight that came running at him, and they met so fiercelie that they all to shiuered their speares, and so passed forth without anie hurt in the course, and when sir Isembart sawe that he had not beaten down his contrarie, he went to Arthur & strake him on the shield with his sword, but the stroke rebounded againe, and when the knight saw that he was right sorowfull and sore displeased, and then againe with all his might he strake Arthur in the middest of his sheilde so rudely, that his sword brake a sunder in the middest. And when Arthur sawe that, he said, sir knight you haue made of one two, for you haue made a short sword of a long, now you shal see how I can worke, then Arthur strake him with Clarence his good sworde vppon his helmet so rudelie, that the stroke did glaunce downe on his arme and did cut a sunder all his harneis, & entred in to the flesh so that the stroke bare away a great peece of the brawne of his arme, ỹ which stroke was so heauie that it descended downe to the crouper of ỹ horse, and cut a sunder the arson of the saddle, and also gaue vnto his horse a great wound, and therewith both horse and man fell to the earth. Then the knights seruents ranne to help him, but he laie a great while in a traunce, and when he reuiued he said to Arthur, sir knight you haue wounded me and slaine my cosin germaine, but sir I promise you faithfully that so soone as I shall be whole againe I shall render to you this bountie, for I wil strike off your head by ỹ sholders wheresoeuer I mete you, either in Church or in anie other place, armed or vnarmed: well sir saide Arthur, then you haue giuen me respite till I be whole againe, & then by the grace of God you will not do so much hurt as you speak

of, then the other knights would haue fought with Arthur, but their master forbad them, because he said he would slaie him with his owne handes. Then Arthur departed from them, and the Knights put their Lord in a horse Litter, and carried him to a castle of his owne, where he remained till he had recouered his health, and Arthur after that hee was departed from them rode so long till he issued out of the forrest, and rode vp to a great high hill, and at the descending therof, he saw where a Knight all armed came right fiercely to him ward, and a great speare in his hand, who when he came to him saide: Sir are you of the companie of the fourteene Knights that went this waie but lately. Yaye certainlie saide Arthur, for they did their best to haue troubled me, but I thanke God they mist of their purpose, but I praie you wherefore doe you aske the question. As God helpe me said he, because if you were anie of them, I would slaie you with mine owne hands or euer you past any farther if I could: & also their master, for he is the most shamefullest Knight that liueth, and the falsest traitour that euer was, for he and his companie had nigh slaine a brother of mine this morning by this riuers side, because he wold not giue him a foulken that he bare on his hand, therefore he ran at him with his sword in his hand, and hath wounded him in fiftéene places of his bodie, being vnarmed, and the traitor and all his companie are in harneis, and therfore I am come after him to slaie him and I might, howbeit I thinke it could not lie in my power, for he is a Knight greatly redoubted, neuertheless I had rather die then my brother shuld be vnreuenged. Sir saide Arthur, take no thought for that matter, nor follow him anie farther this daie, for surely he is in no good point as now to fight w you, nor yet with anie other, for he is right sore wounded, a sir said the Knight, blessed be God who kepe and preserue him that hath done that deede. Then the Knight returned againe with Arthur, talking of that matter, and at the last Arthur demaunded of him what manner of knightes they were, and of whence. Sir as God helpe mee it was Sir Ascanbart, he-

phely to the Duke of Wygor, the most falsest traitor in all the worlde, for he hath murthered by treason the Lorde of Argenton falslie without anie cause. Sir quoth Arthur, sith it is he, then his trouble pleaseth me so much the better, & by the grace of God he shall haue more annoiaunce within short space. Then they approched to the place wheras this Knightes brother laie sore wounded. Arthur called Bawdewin to him who was a good Surgion, and commaunded that he should doe his diligence as shortlie as might bee to heale that Knight, and Arthur laie there all that night, and the Knight demaunded of him whether he was riding, and he aunswered and said, to the Castle of the Broile. Well sir said the Knight, and you will be ruled by me you shall not come there, for the going thether is verie perillous. As for that I care not said Arthur, for I will goe thether and iust with the Knight that is within. Well sir said the Knight, in the name of God so be it, and sith you will needes goe, I will bring you thether, for I am one of the Knightes of the same companie that are lodged without, to the intent that the Knight that is within the castle should not steale away. Sir quoth Arthur, know you then the Knight that is within the castle, and what is his name. Verilie sir said he, he is a Knight Straunger, & his name is Gouernar, a big Knight & a strong, & browne of colour, and there is no Knight that iusteth with him but he goeth to the ground, and therefore whosoeuer will iust with him hath need to be of great power and strength. Well said Arthur, I will assaie him, and so they went to rest, and in the morning he arose, and the said Knight, who was named Iolleran the Almaine, and they rode forth the next waie to the castle of the Broile, and Arthur leste Bawdewin behinde him at the Castle, to take heede to the wounded Knight. Thus Arthur and Iolleran the Almaine rode forth so long together, till on the Wednesdaie after about noone they entred into a verie faire wodde which was before the Castle of the Broile. And when the Knights that were without keping the tents saw Iolleran there, they fell in, and Arthur with

him, they went to their harnets and came vnto them, and made greate chere to Jolleran their companion, and they saide to Arthur, sir Knight you must strike this shield, and then iust with the Knight that you shall see issue out of this castle. Well said Arthur, in the name of God all this will I do with a right good will. And these Knights beheld him well and perceiued that he was a goodly Knight. and praised him much in their heartes. Therewith Arthur spurred forth his good horse and ran at the sheelde with his speare, and gaue it such a stroke that he claue it a sunder in the middell. Then Jolleran said to his fellowes, certainlie if he giue such strokes to his enimies, there may none endure him. Then Gouernar in the castle was soone armed, and issued out, and the damsell was mounted on the walls to behold the battaile, and when Gouernar saw Arthur, he knew him not because of his white shield, but Arthur knew him right well, and beheld the countenance of Gouernar, how he stretched himselfe in his saddle, and poised his sheld, and dressed his speare and made him readie, wherefore Arthur loued him the better: and so they ranne each at other, and met so rudelie that Gouernar brake his speare, but Arthur strake him so fiercelie, that Gouernars horse foundred and fell vnder him, and so horse and man & all went to the earth, then Arthur turned and laide his hand on his sword and was comming again to Gouernar, and all that beheld his valiauntnesse praised him much, and Gouernar did nothing but was faine to get him on his feete. When all the Knightes went to him and would haue vnarmed him and led him to the Iustice, but when Arthur sawe that, he could not suffer that he should haue so much shame, and said: Sirs it is no right nor reason that you should leade him forth to the iustice, for his horse fell vnder him, & therfore though hee fell it was the fault of the horse and not of the Knight. for hee hath done his indeuour, and also he is my man, for I am his Lord, wherefore hee is bound not to withstande his maister. And as soone as Gouernar heard his Lords speake, he knew him by his speech, and

then

than he put off his helme and ran to him, and Arthur lighted from his horse, and so they imbraced and kissed, & made great ioy each to other, and when Jaket sawe his olde master Arthur, he knéeled down and did him great reuerence: and when the other Knights saw the great honor that Gouernar and Jaket did to Arthur, & how that he was their Lord & master, they thought that he was some noble man and of great lignage, and therefore they wold not displease him, but let gouernar alone in peace, and brought both Arthur and Gouernar into the castle to the Ladie, and the damosel receiued them with great ioy. There Arthur remained till it came to three dayes space before the time prefixed that he shuld go fight with the terrible monster, and all the Knights that were without came to Arthur to speak with him, and when they were in his presence, and sawe him so faire and gentle, they loued him with all their heartes, and said among themselues, it is great pitie to send to his death so gentle and so noble a personage. And Arthur heard them well, but he made as though he had not heard them: finally these knights said to him, sir it is so, that you haue ben a little time here, and you be the last that hath ouercome the Knight of this Castle, and now the terme is come that you must go and fight with the monster, who is not frō this castle the distance of two leagues, and therefore it behoueth you to remoue this next day betimes, and wee shall bring you to another castle pertaining to the ladie of this place, the which is nigh to the den whereas the monster maketh his abode, therefore sir make you readie and all your harneis, for we feare greatly you wil finde it a ieopardous aduēture: wel said Arthur I am cōtent to remoue when you wil, and when they heard him say so, they had of him great pitie, so that diuers of them priuely wept. Sirs said Arthur I am here alone, therefore I praye you kepe companie with me this night and let vs make good chere, and to morow betimes we will remoue. And they graunted to him, and tarried there all night.

How

How Arthur fought with the monster, the most foulest and horriblest that euer was seene with mans eyen, and vanquished him by his valiant prowesse and strake off his head, and sent it to the faire Florence. Cap. 49.



Arthur arose in the morning and heard seruice, and all the other knights with him, which done the meate was inaduertable, and when they had eaten at their leasure, the Knights went to their rentes and armed them, and so did Arthur and Gouernar. Then the Ladie brought to Arthur a faire sword, the which was her fathers, and so he

tooke

toke, and girt it about him by his other swoꝛd Clarence, & they called him the Knight with the two swoꝛds. Then he toke his leaue of the ladie and she commended him to god, and when he was departed, shee weeping saide: Ah gentle Knight, it is great damage to send suh a person as you bee to your death. And when Arthur was out of the Castle, there were in his companie fiue hundꝛed to conduct him to the other Castle, and so long they rode that at last they arriued therat, and the same day the monster had taken a butcher and deuoured him in the pꝛesence of them all without the Castle gate, but when the Poꝛter of this Castle sawe all these Knights comming, he knewe well they were the Knights of the Bꝛotse that bꝛought with them the Knight that should fight with the monster, therefoꝛe he opened the gates, and then all the people of the Castle ranne to behold Arthur, who was cleane couered with his white shield, and holding his hand vpon the pomell of his swoꝛde, hauing a right good and a hardie semblant. Then euerie person that behelde him saide each vnto other, Alas, what pitie is it to send such a person to his death: ah gentle Knight God haue mercie on thy soule, foꝛ thy bodie cannot long indure, and this was the common voyce, and so they conuayed him vp the staires into the hall, and foꝛ that night there they rested them, and in the moꝛning they all arose and heard seruice, and Arthur receiued the holy sacrament of the blessed bodie of our Loꝛd Jesus Chꝛist, and after seruice they all assembled them into the hall, and there talked together of diuers matters, and as they were thus communing, they heard the monster roꝛe and bꝛay out foꝛ lacke of meat and was issued out of his den, and made greater noyse than if ten Bulls had bꝛayed altogether: then all they of ꝑ towne and castle had great feare, wherefoꝛe they closed themselues in their houses, and shut fast their doꝛes & windowes, foꝛ they knew well, that the monster rather than he would die foꝛ hunger, would come to that Castle and deuoure them all. And as soone as Arthur heard him, hee demaunded foꝛ his harneis, and Gouernar did bꝛing it to him with great griefe,

griefe and feare, and all the other knights were right sore wofull for his sake, for they doubted greatly of him least he should be slaine: and when he was armed all the people in the Castle followed him, and solempne prayers were made throughout all the towne and Castle to God, for to kepe and defend their champion. Then was Arthur mounted on his good horse, and a great speare well headed with steele in his hand, and the white shield about his necke, and Clarence his good sworde about him, and also the sworde that the Ladie of the Broile had giuen him, and so he issued out of the Castle, and they shut fast the gates after him, and mounted vp to the battlements of the wals to behold the aduenture of Arthur, and so Arthur rode forth till hee came to the entrie of the pit, & the monster the same time was sitting on the brinke thereof, and when he espied Arthur he arose vpon his feete, and beat so together his teeth, that it was heard a great way off. & came to Arthur with his armes abroad, to the intent that he would haue borne him to his pit, but Arthur wisely set his speare before him the which was great and bigge, and well headed with fine steele, and the monster who feared nothing ranne so rudely against the speares point, that the speare shiuered all to peeces, but it did no manner of hurt to the monster, and so he approched to Arthur, and thought to haue imbraced him in his armes, but Arthur put before him his white shield, and the monster dasht with his nailes thereat thinking to haue pearced it through, but in no wise he could empaire ỹ shield, for the properties thereof was such, ỹ nothing should enter nor empaire it. And when the monster sawe that he had done no hurt to the shielde he began to rage & fare lyke a fiend of hell, and then he toke Arthur by the helme with his long teeth, ỹ which wer as sharp as steele: & when Arthur sawe his mouth so wide open, he tok the sword that the Ladie of the Broile gaue him, and dasht it into his mouth. But when the monster felt the sword in his mouth, he let goe his holde of the helme, and toke the sworde betweene his

his teeth, and all to brake it as though it hadde bene but glasse. When Arthur sawe that, he knew well that if Clarence his good sword did no help him his life was but lost, & so he toke the good sword in his hand, and then the monster tooke him by the helme with one of his hands, and by the shield with ỹ other hand, and all his nailes pearced his helme as lightly as though he hadde felte nothing, and bee dasht Arthur so sore with the other hand on the shield, that he had nigh fallen with the stroke, but he could not pearce the sheelde. Then Arthur lift vp Clarence his good sword and strake the monster therewith on the head so rudelie, that the sworde entered therein more then a handfull. And when the monster felt himselfe wounded, for anger he beate his teeth together, and rolled his eyes; the whith glistered like brands of fire, and beat together his fists, and made a terrible noise.

How the King Emendus sent a Knight named Brisebar, accompanied with a thousand men of warre, to the intent that he and his companie should goe fight with the monster, and how the said knight arriued at the monsters pitte the same time that Arthur and the monster were fighting together, and there he and all his companie did see how Arthur slew the monster without helpe. Chap. 50.

ABout the time that Arthur shoulde thus fight with the monster, the mightie king Emendus held open court in the Citie of Babar, and with him ther was the Emperour of Inde the more, for this citie was neere adioyning to his Empire, & also he was glad to be w king Emendus because of his daughter Florence whom he would gladly haue had to his wife, and thereon he trusted when the yeare were once expired. And at this feast were all the other foure Kinges, and the tweine

twelue peeres of the realme of Hazolois, and manye other Earles and Barons, knightes and Squires, Queenes, Ladies and Damsells. Then there came to the king many great complaints of the hurt that the monster of the Broste had done in all the countrie, then the king toke counsaile for this matter, and he was aduised, and concluded thereon to send a thousand knightes armed to fight with the monster. Then there was chosen a right valiant knight to bee their captaine, who was called sir Randell Brisebar, who was one of the knightes pertaining to Flozence, & he toke with him such knightes and men of warre as hee would chuse, & so he tok his leaue of the faire Flozence, and she desired him if he could bring it about he should go to hir castle of the Poste Noire, and commende her to her Clarke master Steuen, and enquire of him whether he haue heard anie tidinges of that matter that hee went thether for, and commaunded him that he should shew vnto her clarke, that the Emperour would haue her to his wife by force against her will, and so sir Brisebar promised to accomplish her cõmaundement if it were possible: then he went from her and toke his leaue of the king and of the Emperour, and of the whole court and departed, and had in his companie a thousand armed knightes, and they rode forth so long, till at the last they arriued nere the place whereas this monster was, the same daie and houre that Arthur was fighting with him, then Brisebar and his companie did light downe on foote, and the monster who as then felt himselfe hurt on the head with ỳ gret stroke ỳ Arthur had giuen him as it hath ben shewed before, braied and roared so loud that he might be heard a great waie off, and when Brisebar saw a far off, a knight alone fighting with this monster in such perill, he had great pittie, and so had thought to haue set on the monster with al his whole boast for to haue holpẽ Arthur, howbeit he thought hee would see somwhat more of the dealing of the knight, then the monster came to a tree that stoode by the pit, and tooke it so rudelie in his handes, that he tare it by roote and rinde, and therewith stroke at Arthur, who

for

for feare of the stroke cast before him his white shield, and the stroke did light thereon so rudely, that it rang all the place ouer, the which stroke was so heauie, ỹ Arthur was faine to knéele downe on one of his knées, and therewith the tree brake asunder in the middes. Then the monster for anger was nigh beside himselfe, and did cast at Arthur the tronchon of the Tree so rudely, that it brake in the ayre as it went, but Arthur doubted the stroke and stept aside, and let it passe, and therwith he drew nigh to the monster, & as the monster lift vp his armes to haue imbraced him, Arthur stroke him vnder ỹ one arme with his sword Clarence, so that his arme flew cleane into the fielde, then the monster lept forth and with great yre toke Arthur by the head with his long téeth, and with his other hand tok him by the shoulder, and tare away all his harneis to the bare flesh, and thought to haue trussed him on his backe & borne him to his pit, but Arthur put his sword Clarence into his belly vp to the hard crosse: and truly it was great néed that Arthur had then that good sword, for there was no other in all the world could haue holpen him. And when Arthur had thus put his sword into his bodie, he rusht to the monster so strongly, that he fell to the earth, and in his fal he pulled off Arthurs healme from his head with his long téeth that wer so fastened in the same, that the helme could not be gotten out of his mouth, for when he felt his death, he ioyned his téeth throughout the helme fast together, then Arthur stroke at him againe with his sword, wherewith his foule and horrible heade flewe into the fielde. Then Arthur sate down for he was right sore wearied, and sir Brisebar and all his companie lept on their horses, and praised much Arthur for slaying of the monster, saying that he was the best Knight of the world: and when Brisebar came nigh to Arthur he alighted, and when Arthur saw him comming hee put his shield before him, and toke his sword in his hande to defende him if néede required, and yet hee had no helme for it was still in the mouth of the monster, which hee had slaine.

But then Brisebar put off his helme, and right curteously saluted him, and said: Sir, God that created all things, kéep and saue you gentle Knight as the chiefe floure of all chiualrie, for you alone haue atchieued that enterprise, that we thousande Knightes were sent to dw. O sir said Arthur sauing your pleasure, it is no such déede as that you & such a companie as you speake off should néede to enterprise, nor I haue done nothing that ought so greatlye to bee praised, for you or anie other Knight might as well haue done it better or shortlier than I haue done, therfore this déed néed little to be spoken of, for it is to little to bee accounted of. Well sir said Brisebar, we knowe and sée right well what is, for you haue deliuered from great perill of death ỹ best part of all this my companie, wherfore I require you that beside this bountie that you haue showed vs in slaying of this monster, it wold please you to shew to me yet another courtesie. Sir said Arthur, demaund of mee what it pleaseth you and if I can or may dw it, I will not faile you. Wel sir, then you shal heare what you haue graunted me, it is of truth that I am pertaining to the most honourable Quéene that nowe liueth, and that is the faire Florence, daughter to the mightie King Emendus, king of Sorolois, & as for me I am the most insufficient Knight that he hath of a thousand in his house daily, howbeit sir his noble grace did send me accõpanied with these other thousand knights to the intent that we should doe to this monster as you haue done alone God be thanked, for you by your prowesse haue achyeued that thinge that all other haue failed of, then this is the end of my desire that it would please you to go with vs to the court of the noble king Emendus, and so you shal bée our Companyon and Knight to the noble Florence, and I assure you I will be your true and faithfull companion, for I will neuer haue anie thing, but your part shall be therein.

And when Arthur heard his requeſt, he smiled a little and sayde: Sir I most heartely thanke you, but as now it will not bee, for that it behoueth mee to goe vnto the

Port Noire to master Steuen, for I haue promised him so to doe, therefore I praie you bee not miscontent, though I cannot at this time accomplish your will, and when Brisebar heard him speake of the Port Noire, he said: Sir haue you bene at the castle of the Port Noire. Yea truelie saide Arthur. Then quoth hee, I require you how did you enter into the Castle. Sir I did there so much that thanked bee God ther I entered: and sir were you in the pallaice, or did you lie in the rich bed: yea trulie said Arthur, there I was and laie in the rich bed, and tarried there two daies & two nights. Well sir said Brisebar, I see well that you haue atchieued all the aduentures of that place, wherefore you be the chiefe and soueraigne knight of all the worlde, & I will ride with you to the port Noire if it please you, for it behoueth me to speak with master Steuen my Ladies Clarke, for I haue to him a message from her noble grace, & I will send home all this people with a nephew of mine, who shal beare with him this monsters head with your helme in his mouth, and he shall present it from you to my Ladie Florence. A sir said Arthur, ỹ Ladie is right excellent & noble, as I haue heard saie, and I am too simple a person to send anie thing to her grace, neither did I euer see her, nor shee knoweth not who I am, and also this present is of too smal reputation, therefore me thinketh it were follie for mee to send it, wherefore sir I require you let it alone. Certainelie quoth Brisebar, that will I not doe, for the present is such, that I am sure it shall be receiued with gladder cheere then though you had wonne a great Citie. Well saide Arthur, do as it shal please you best, howbeit I had rather that you wold let it alone. Then Brisebar called to him his nephew & said: Nephew you shall returne to the Court, & humblie commend me to the kings grace, & also you shal beare with you this monsters head, & present it to my Ladie Florence from a Knight of hers, whom she neuer sawe, nor hee her, the which Knight you maye shew vnto her grace, hath acquited the Port Noire, & alone atchieued al the aduentures of that place, and also shew her how that I am gone with ỹ

said Knight to the Port Noyze, to speake with her Clarke maister Steuen, for the matter that she commaunded mee at my departing. Sir said his nevew all this shall be done, and so he toke the head and commended them all to God, & so departed, and all the other Knightes each of them went home to their owne houses. Then all the people of the Castle set open the gates and issued out and came before Arthur, both Gouernar and Josseran the Almaine and all the other, and Josseran made great chére to Brisebar, and all the people of the Countrie came thether to sée the monster and Arthur their champion, and said: Sir Knight, blessed bee the time that euer you were borne, and the mother that bare you, for you haue deliuered al this countrie frō death. Then all the Prelates of the countrie came thether, and receiued Arthur with great triumph, and brought him into the Church within the Castle, and ther Brisebar, Josseran, Gouernar and Jaket did vnarme him. Then the ladie Blaunch floure came thether from the castle of the brosse, descended downe from her Chariot, and mounted vp the staires into the pallaice, and there she found Arthur vnarmed and Brisebar with him, who did behold Arthur meruailously, for they were all abashed at the great beautie & grace that they saw in him: and when they sawe this Ladie comming, they all arose and met her, and Arthur Brisebar & shee sate downe together, & talked of diuers things till their meat was redie, & then they went thereto, & were richly serued: & the next day the ladie went againe to her castle of ỹ brosse, & in this Castle Arthur soiorned iiii. daies and then departed and Brisebar with him, & toke leaue of all ỹ Knights of that countrie, & so they came to the castle of ỹ brosse, wheras the Ladie Blaunch floure receiued thē with great honour, and she made great chére to Gouernar & the rest. There Arthur soiourned foure daies, and then he and Brisebar departed, and the Ladie conueyed them a great way, and at last taking her leaue she returned to her castle of the brosse.

Then these Knightes rode forth at the Castle where Josse-

Josserans brother lay wounded, whom Bawdwin had in cure, and as sone as Bawdwin knew that his Lorde was come, he was exceding ioyful, and ranne and encountered Arthur and imbraced him for ioye, and that night they wer there well serued. Now let vs leaue to speake of Arthur for a season, and let vs speake of sir Isembart, nephewe to the Duke of Bigor, who was borne to the Castle of the Roch sore wounded by Arthur as you haue heard before.

How sir Isembarts cosin ambushed him in a great forrest with a multitude of men of warre, to the intent to slaie Arthur by treason, and there Arthur did such deeds, that in a manner it was incredible, and how Gouernar and Brisebar were taken prisoners and led forth to a tower, and there Arthur slew of his enimies fiue hundred, and mounted into the towre, and so rescued the prisoners in the spite of all the towne, and wanne the pallace. Chap. 51.

IT is of a truth that Arthur sore wounded sir Isembart the duke of Bygors nephew vnder ẏ castle of the Roch, and thether his seruaunts brought him, and there he laie a great season at Surgerie, & so the tidings ran all ouer the Countrie, how that the Duke of Bigors nephew laie sore woũded, and how that this was done by a strange knight, & at last these words came to the hearing of a knight of gret power, who was called sir Firmount, treasurer to the Bigor, and he had one of his sholders higher then the other, & this sir Firmont was a strong knight and greatly redoubted, and he was cosin germain to sir Isembart, and brother to the knight that was slaine by Arthur, & when he heard the death of his brother, and how that his cosin was sore wounded, lying at the castle of the Roch, he was therewith sore displeased, & leapt on horseback, accompanied with ten other knights, & so went to the castle of the Roch to see his cosin, who as then could not stir out of his bed, & there they did salute each other, then sir Firmont demaunded how he

did, and he aunſwered and ſaid that he was right ſore hurt: well couſin ſaid he, I pray you who hath done this deed to you, and alſo ſlaine my brother? Sir I cannot tell you, for it is a Knight ſtranger who is gone towarde the Caſtle of the broſſe as it hath ben ſhewed me, and alſo it is ſaid that he purpoſeth to returne againe with Jolleran the Almaine the ſame way that hee came, therefore I am right ſore diſpleaſed that I am not as yet whole, for if I were, I would méete with him againe. Well ſir ſaid Firmount take you no thought, for if he come that way againe, he ſhalbe right well encountred, for ſith he hath done me one diſpleaſure, I ſhall quite him againe with two. Ah good couſin quoth ſir Iſembart for Gods ſake abide till I be whole, for verely he is a Knight of great value, it is I as yet that beareth the hurt, therefore I pray you let me be at the acquitall therof. for I feare me leaſt he will doe you more damage then he hath done to me. You ſay well ſaid ſir Firmont, I will doe as you ſay: and that he ſaid to appeaſe his coſin, but incõtinently after as ſone as he might, he priuily ſent a varlet to eſpy which way Arthur returned frõ ẏ caſtle of the broſſe, and thus Arthur and Briſebar were with Jolleran in his brothers caſtle, and there they determined that they would not remoue thence till the wedneſdaie nert after, then the varlet retourned againe to ſir Firmount, and ſhewed him where Arthur was, and how that he would depart thence the next wedneſday after, and ſaid: now you maye bee reuenged of the iniurie that hath bene done to your brother, and alſo to your couſin, for the Knight that hath done it, on wedneſday next betime will paſſe by the ſame place where your couſin was hurt and your brother ſlaine. When Sir Firmont heard that he had great ioy, and ſent meſſengers to all the men of warre that belonged to the towne ẏ Caſtle of the Roch, and all the countrey about, commaunding them to be all in harneis readie the wedneſ day next inſuing in the Forreſt, at a certaine place as couertly as they might without any noyſe, and alſo he commanded ẏ none ſhuld be ſo hardie to ſhew that matter to ſir Iſembart his couſin:

cousin: and Arthur all this time was in the Castle with Josserans brother, and there he had right great chéere, and Brisebar also, and there they were richly serued and honored, and the wounded Knight was as then through whole and was among them, and the next day betimes they hard seruice, and Arthur went to his horse, and with him Brisebar, Josseran and his brother, and Gouernar, Bawdwin and Jaket, and eight other Knightes, so that they were in all to the number of fourtéene persons, and so they roade forth till they came to the same mountain wheras Arthur met with Josseran, who then saide, Sir, in this place you made me to returne again, when I pursued after sir Isembart, that is troth said Arthur: well sir said Josseran I had thought it had bene you, but that you shewed me how you had wounded him: now I know well he hadde rather dye than be vnreuenged his heart is so fell, and I know well that there is not a verier traitour in all the world, for hee doth all his déeds by false treason, therefore I doubt greatly of him least that he haue falsly laid some wait for your retourne, and so thinke to be reuenged on you, therfore after my opinion we shall take our harneis whatsoeuer fortune. In the name of God said Arthur I agree wel thereto, then they all toke their harneis, and rode forth faire & softly, till they came to the same place wheras the ambush of their enimies were, and there was sir Firmount & fortie other Knightes with him on horsebacke, and xviiii. on foote, and when they saw Arthur and his companie, they mounted on their horses, and sounded a great horne, and therewith all they came forth into the plaine. When Arsaw them, he demanded of Josseran what people they wer & whether he knew them, or not, & he answered & said, Sir it is sir Firmont and al his power who is cousin germain vnto to the Duke of Bigors neuew, and brother to the knight that you slew, and commeth to you for some ill, therfore there is nothing to doe now, but let each of vs doe our indeuour to defend our liues. Well said Brisebar I will will doe my part.

And in faith said Gouernar, and I shall not be behinde, and therewithall the ambush brake out of the wode, and ranne all at once on Arthurs companie, and Brisebar encountered so rudelie with the first, that hee put his speare cleane through his bodie, and he fell downe dead in the place, then he drew out his sword and strake so another, that his head flew into the field. Then Gouernar strake so one with his speare, that he ouerthrew both horse and man to the earth, and then with his sword he strake so another, that he claue his head to the téeth, and so dasht into the prease and laid on with such strokes, that he slew and bare downe all that hee attained vnto, then came Iosseran, and at the first meeting he ouerthrew two downe to the earth: and when Arthur sawe his companie do so valiantlie he had great ioy, and at last he espied sir Firmont wheras he had beaten down to ẏ earth sir Brisebar, then he dasht his horse with his spurs, & couched his speare, and strake syr Firmont so rudelie, that he sent both knight and horse flat to the earth right sore astonied, and so he laie a great space, & at the last his people remounted him againe. Then Arthur thrust into ẏ prease with his good sword Clarence in his hande, and the first that he encountered he strake him with such strength that he claue him to the shoulders, and from another hee tooke the head, and laide on among his enimies on euerie syde with such force, ẏ hee confounded all ẏ euer he touched, for he cut off armes, legges, handes and heades, and did mernailous deedes, for he made as great a waie before him, as though his enimies had bene vnarmed, for their armour coulde not withstande the weight of his strokes, howbeit hee and his companie were but foureteene in number, and his enimies were welnigh to the number of three hundered, and also euer they increased in number, for syr Firmont had sent his commaundement to the Castell of the Roch, and to the marches thereabout. And it fortuned that when as syr Firmont was remounted, hee made great lamentation because of his people that he sawe so sore ouerladen, & therewith he dasht his horse and

strake

ſtrake Joſſeran ſo rudely, that hee ouerthrewe him cleane from his horſe, and tok him priſoner, which when Gouernar ſaw he lift vp his ſworde and ſtrake ſir Firmount ſo fiercely on the helme that he cut off cleane a large hande bredth therof, and the ſtroke deſcended down on his ſhield, and claue it aſunder in the middes, and from thence the ſtroke did light on the horſe necke, and ſtrake off the horſe head cleane from the bodie, and therewith ſir Firmount fell downe to the earth, and thoſe that helde Joſſeran did let him goe at large, becauſe they went to helpe their maſter, who as then was ſore handled by Gouernar, and Briſebar brought to Joſſeran another horſe ý hee had won frõ a Knight, & ſo quickly Joſſeran lept vp theron, and daſht again into ý preaſe, & then ſyr Firmont was remounted againe on his horſe, then he cauſed a great horne to be ſounded, and his people gathered them together, and fortie of them in a flocke ranne all at once on Briſebar, Gouernar, and Joſſeran, and ſo cloſed them about and ſtrake them on euerie ſyde, but when Arthur ſawe that, he ruſht into the thickeſt of that preaſe, and brake downe and ouertourned all that euer was before him, and beate downe Knightes meruailouſlie, ſo that all fledde before him as Lambes doe from the Wolfe: but then there fell on Arthur ſeuen ſcore at once, who came from the caſtle, wherefore Arthur was faine to drawe backe, and coulde not as then ſuccour his Knightes that were nære taken, and then ſyr Firmonts companie killed Gouernars horſe vnder him, but Gouernar laide on with his ſwoord on all ſydes, and maimed and ſlew many Knightes, and Briſebar and Joſſeran dyd helpe him full manfullie with all their power, and at the laſt Gouernar aduiſed well a Knight who all the daie before hadde done him much trouble, and ſtrake him ſo rudelie with his ſwoorde, that he daſht it cleane through his bodie, and then hee tooke his horſe, and mounted thereon in ſpite of all his enimies, then he ruſht againe into the preaſe, and laide on with mightie ſtrokes roande about him.

And at the last these people on foote slewe both Brisenar and Josserans horses vnderneath them, and lyke valiaunt knightes they leapt on their fæt, and by great strength defended themselues, but the prease was so thicke & so great, and they were ouercharged with the people on foot, and by cleane force taken prisoners, and then they al ranne at Gouernar and killed againe his horse vnder him, and there hee valiantlie defended himselfe with his owne handes: and when he sawe himselfe in that case, and his fellowes taken prisoners, he said: Ah gentle Arthur God be thy helpe, and keepe thee from death, for we are downe and ouercome: and when Arthur heard that and sawe how they were taken, hee laboured to rescew his knightes, and rusht into the prease, and fiercelie laide on rounde about him on euerie side, and dressed himselfe toward Gouernar, but it auailed him nothing: for Gouernar, Brisebar, and Josseran, were taken and lead forth toward the Castle, and when Arthur sawe them led forth, he was right sorrowfull, and he did so much that it was great meruaile to beholde him, for hee brake asunder the great preases, and all that euer he attained vnto went to death, so that the hardiest that was ther, was in great feare to encounter him, but the prease was so greate that did followe after him, and did cast at him euerie thing that they could get, thinking either to slaie him or else his horse, and they that lead his knightes to the castle warde, were then entered into a narow causey the which brought them to a great riuer that they must passe ouer by shippe, for there was no bridge, and so they entered into the ship, and hasted them verie fast to enter into the Castle with their prisoners, and when Arthur sawe that he had lost his three knightes, he aduentured himselfe so farre, that there was neuer knight did such an enterprise before, but hadde no manner of feare, nor doubted anie creature, then hee lyghted from his horse, and by fortune there was another shippe departing from the lande side, and therewith hee ioyned together his feete, and leapt from the shoare into the shippe among all his enimies, and his good sworde

drawen

drawen in his hande, and the first that he encountered, hee claue his head to the chinne, and alwaies the shippe sailed toward the Castle, and hee dealt such strokes among them, that for feare many of them leapt into the water and were drowned, & the rememnaunt slaine. And at the last the ship drew so neere to the Castle wall, that they that were within the Castle did cast downe great hookes of yron, and therwith drew the shippe to the shoare, and then they ranne to their harneis, and toke their crossebowes and other weapons of warre. Then Arthur leapt out of the shippe, and tooke one of the grapples of yron and did fasten it surely to a ring in the castle wal, to the intent that the shippe should not depart thence, and they of the castle did shoote and cast great stones and barres of yron at him, but alwayes hee couered himselfe with his white sheelde so that he coulde not be hurt, for such was the vertue of his sheelde, that it could neuer be empaired, and the maister of the castle caused the great bell to be sounded, wherwith all the people of the castle were moued and issued out into the field, and flocked round about Arthur, and ther was then so great noise, that it was wonderfull to heare, & Arthur held in his hand Clarence his good sword, so that there was none that approched neere him, but shortlie he yéelded his life: and all this season there was a greate sorte that kepte Arthurs knights, and shamefully dealt with them that it was great pittie to sée, for some pulled them by the haires, and some by their beards, and some beate them with greate staues, and some cried downe with them, slaie them out of hand: and if sir Fyrmount had not commaunded the contrarie they had bene all slaine if they had had a thousand lines, for they were sorer chased against them, then wild Boares be when they be hunted: and then when sir Fyrmont had taken the remnaunt of sir Brisebars knights, he returned to the Castle and all his people, the which were welnigh to the number of two hundred, and alwaies his people encreased more and more, for they repaired to him from all the townes and countries adioyning about him, and they passed ouer the ri-

uer

uer, then he commaunded that the Knightes that were taken prisoners should be led forth into the great dungeon of the castle, and there be vnarmed, and as he commaunded so it was done, and so Arthur saw how they were led into the Castle, but the preasse was so greate that he could not come at them. Then came sir Fyrmont and three score with him on horsebacke, and all they set at once vpon Arthur & dasht at him with Speares, and did shote at him great quarells, and cast many a great stone at his head, and when Arthur sawe that he was so sore handled among them, and perceiued well it was hard for him to escape the greate daunger that hee was in, hee thought inwardlye to himselfe that hee would sell his life dere ere he lost it, and therewith he aduaunced himselfe & leapt into the middest of the preasse with his good sword Clarēce in his hand, & laid round about him as fresh as though he had not fought before, & so made way before him, and did so valiauntlie that some of the Knights that wer enimies had of them great pittie, and so somwhat withdrew themselues, what for pittie and what for feare, from doing him any hurt, and said each to other. Good God what manner of Knight is this, it were great domage that he shuld thus lose his life, and when sir Fyrmont saw that these Knightes forbare Arthur, he was so sorrowfull, that he was nigh enraged out of his minde, and so his Knights desired him for Gods sake that he would haue pittie on Arthur, seeing that he did so noblie that day in deeds of armes, and also considering that there was so many against him, but he said he would in no wise spare him, but swore that he shuld die or he departed, and therewith hee dasht his horse with the spurres and thought to haue striken Arthur behinde, but Arthur sawe him comming and watched well his stroke, and let it passe by, and as hee passed by, Arthur strake at him with Clarence his good sword, and the stroke did light betweene the healme and the necke, so that his head flew cleane into the field, and then his bodie fell downe to the ground. Then his Knightes and people came and wondered all about him, which when

Arthur

Arthur sawe, how they all tooke heede to the dead bodie, as fast as he might he went vp to the Castle, the same ways that he sawe his Knightes ledde. And at last he came to a great doore of yron, the which he found open, and hee entered into the Towre, and ther he found them that were vnarming of Brisebar and his fellowes, and then he shut fast the dooze after him that none should enter or issue out, and like a wilde Lion he ranne on them, and with his sword cut them in peeces, as the Syth doth the grasse, and when Gouernar sawe Arthur his master, his heart beganne to reuiue, for hee thought verilie that he had bene slaine, and his hands were fast tied together, and with his teeth and with his cleane strength, hee burst a sunder the binding wherewith he was bound, then hee ranne to one of them that bound him and tooke out of his handes a weapon, and gaue him such a stroke that he disseuered the life and bodie a sunder, and then he ranne to the dooze and kept that none should escape that waie, for they that came to the doore went no more to their fellowes, and when they sawe how they were dealt withall, and how that their fellowes were slaine, some of them for feare leapt out of the windowes into the water, and some swamme, and some were drowned.

Thus Arthur deliuered the Towre of them all, for there was not one but abode there but hee was slaine, and when hee was thus deliuered from his enimies, hee came to his Knightes that were bound fast lyke prisoners, and vnlosed them, and when Arthur sawe Brisebar so fast bound and wrapped with cordes, he said: A deere friende you were not wont thus to be nourished, ill happe come to that Nurse that hath caused you thus to bee swathed, and without anie more staying hee vnlosed him, and Bawdewin and all such other as hadde bene taken prisoners, and then incontinently he closed fast all the doores of the towre, to the intent that none shoulde enter thereat, and this Towre was exceeding strong, and for the bignesse thereof it was able to keep & sustaine for the space of three moneths

ten

ten thousand men of war if they were well furnished with victualls, but those noble Knightes had not as then within all ỹ towre a pennie worth neither of meate nor drinke, wherefore God be their aide and comfort, and for this present time let vs leaue to speake of them, and returne to the Duke of Bygors nephew, who was sore hurt, lying at his castle of the Roch, as you haue heard before.

How Arthur and his companie were besieged in the Pallace by the Duke of Bigor, but thanked be God they escaped by the subtill arte of master Steuen, Clarke to the faire Florence of Sorolois. Chap. 52.

WHen the Mayor of the Roch had caused the great common bell of the towne to be rung, the Dukes nephew as he laie in his bedde sicke heard it, and demaunded of a seruaunt of his what it might meane, and his Page thinking to hide it from him saide, sir it is for nothing. Tell not me that tale said hee, for that bell is not rung but it is for some great cause, therefore I charge thee tell me the truth. Well sir quoth he, sith you will needs know it, I shall shew you, it is so that sir Eyrmont your cosin caused the Knight that wounded you to be watched, insomuch that as now he hath found him, and therefore hee summoned all the people of this towne and countrie about to come to him, to the intent either to take or slaie this said knight and all his companie. Why said sir Isembart, are they then fighting together, and is hee not yet taken? Sir sayde the Page, I cannot tell you: and as they were thus talking, there came to them into the Chamber a Knight sore wounded bleeding fast, and saide to the Dukes nephew: Sir it is now worse then euer it was, for sir Eyrmont is slaine, and when sir Isembart heard that, he sate vp in his bed and demaunded of the hurt Knight who had done the deede: Sir said he, the same Knight that slewe his brother, and wounded you. Well good friend and is he not slaine: No sir, saith

the

the Knight, I think verilie he be no man, but rather a fiend of hell, for he doubteth nothing, but he confounded & slaine more then can well be spoken of or numbred, with the good help of his companie, who are right valiaunt. O sir said Isembart, I am right vnhappy if they thus escape me, but I require you tell me where they bee: In good faith sir quoth the Knight, they are in yonder great towre, whereas were all the prisoners that wer taken, but when these diuells came thether, there were but few that escaped death, and so they haue vnlosed all the prisoners, and haue fast shut themselues within the towre, so that none can come at them. Well then I charge thee go make a crie and raise vp all the men of war and let them besiege the towre round about, and pitch vp my Pauilions and Tents, for surelie I will famish them ere they gette thence. Then anone the crie was made throughout all the Towne, and the Dukes Nephewes Tent was pitcht vp, and himselfe borne into it, and then hee sent all about the Countrie and commaunded euerie man that was able to beare harneis, to come to him in all hast possible. And there resorted to him the number of fiue hundred or aboue, and so lodged themselues round about the Towre, and then sir Isembart commaunded straightlie that none should bee so hardie as to assaile the Towre, till such time as he were cleane whole of his woundes, and till the Duke of Bygor his vncle were come to him, for he sware great othes he would slaie Arthur and his companie with his owne handes, and drie them in the Sunne, thus sir Isembart railed on these noble Knightes, who were looking out of the windowes of the Towre, and they sawe right well how that people came and lodged round about them in the Towre, and Bawdewin and Jaket were loking out at another windowe into the Towne-wardes, and there they espied ioyning to the same Towre a right faire manner seming as strong a house as could be deuised, closed about with strong high walls, and great gates

bound

bound with greate barres of yron, with drawe Bridges and Portcullises, and well Bulwarked, and a greate and deepe water continually beating vppon the walls, to say the truth this place was right strong, and within this house they sawe a Chimney right sore smoaking, and also they smelled the Kitchin, and felt well the sauour of roast and fried meate, and so there was in deede, for there was prepared all the meate that the Dukes nephew and his companie shoulde haue had, for it was the dungeon that belonged to the Duke of Bygor. A good Lorde quoth Bawdewin, I would I were in yonder kitchin with yonder good meate, for then I would eate before my master, for I haue great hunger, and I also quoth Jaket, and it was then past noone, and these noble Knights had eaten no meate of all the day before. Then Jolleran said, I thanke God I had a good Phisition, for I am now all whole, but I would faine eate some meate. By my faith and I also quoth Gouernar: Wel quoth Bawdwin, sir Gouernar and if you will come hether you may drinke of this smoake as I doe, whereby your hunger may bee wel all waged: and then Arthur and his companie went thether to beholde from whence the smoake came, and when Arthur beheld the faire place so strong and richlie builded, and heard beating in the morters within the Kitchin, and might heare how the Cookes called for Wine and spice, he said to Brisebar: Friend, me thinketh these Cookes in yonder kitchin haue somewhat to doe, for they be busie, in faith I will goe and helpe them: and when Gouernar heard him saie so, he said that gladlie he woulde tourne the broch: ah good Lord said Brisebar, what a lad of the Kitchin woulde you bee, in faith I thinke verilie you would sone beate downe your master, and they all began to laugh. Well quoth Arthur, there is no more to saie, but let vs doe all well our partes, for surelie if it bee possible thether will I goe and put some salt into the grewell: Yea sir, you be a verie good Cooke quoth Bawdewin: and thus they sported each with other. Then Arthur aduised well the fo ure of the Chamber wherein hee was, and

espied

espied how that there were boordes vnderneath the flore: then he said to his companie, let vs breake vp the pauement of this flore, and then we may see well what thing is vnderneath, so then they toke their haulberts and billes, and such other weapons as was brought thether by them that conuayed the prisoners into that chamber, the which were then all slaine and cast out at the windowes, and so they dasht their weapons into the pauement of square stone, and with great labour brake them vp, and ther they made so great an hole, that they might well see all thing ẏ was vnderneath the chamber, but the vaute was verie darke, and then they called to know whether anie bodie was ther or no, but there was none that answered them. At the last Arthur espied where there was a chaine of yron fast tied to the wall, and the one end came to the flore of the chamber, and the other ende was tied to a great Chest in the wall: then Arthur toke the chaine in his handes & slipped downe thereby till he came to the crest of the wall, and there was a windowe whereby there entered a little light, so that hee might well see the bottome of the vaute, and then he espied that he might breake the wall whereon he stood, and might sone come to the earth, then he caused all their harneis to bee brought downe to the said crest, and all his companie. Then they brake downe the stones of the wall, and did cast them downe, and euer raised the stones deeper and deeper vnder their feete, and went lower and lower, till at the last they came downe to ẏ earth without anie hurt or damage, then they found a litle doore of yron, which was shut without with foure great barres of yron, which doore opened against the said strong place whereas the meate was a rosting, then these Knightes thought to arme them, and after to breake open the doore, and so they didde. For when they were all armed, then they toke vp each of them great peeces of timber that were lying in the vawte, and altogether they ranne at the doore with such a furious force, that it made an exceeding great noise, and as it chaunced, at the verye same time the Dukes treasurer was gone to see the

dead corpes of sir Firmont, the which was laid on a bere to be borne to the Church to be buried, and with him were gone all the people in the towne saving those that wer lodged about the tower, so that there was not left in the said place anie creature, but onely the Cookes that were in the kitchin dressing of their meate, nor there was none that was aware how Arthur was breaking vp the doore of the Tower within, and there Arthur and his companie did so much that they brake vp the doore and entred into a gardein, then Arthur said to his companie, sirs goe quickly to the gate and draw vp the bridge, and I will go in ỳ meane season into the kitchin to the Cookes. Well said Bawdewin, I am sure my master hath felt the sauor of the smoke the which he thinketh right good, whereby he hath got him a good appetite. Well saide Arthur, doe as I haue shewed you, and then you shall do wel, and so they went altogether to the gates and did shut them fast, and drewe vp the bridges, and then they wer so sure that they doubted no man. And in the meane season Arthur entered into the kitchin, and began to crie, auaunt out of this house ye foule ribauldy knaues, for you shal all die. And when the Cookes saw Arthur, they knew well it was he that vanquished sir Firmount, wherewith they were so sore abashed that they fled away and cried out, saying: that the diuell of hell had brought him into that house, but Josseran and Brisebar were at the doore and receiued them, and gaue them suche discipline that it ought not to be controlled, and Gouernar and Bawdwin kept so the gate and turned them agayne, that ther abode not one aliue. Then Brisebar and Gouernar tooke the dead bodies and did cast them out of the windowes and battlements of the high wall, & sir Firmount was lying on a Bere and carried on mens shoulders, and passed then by the wall of the same house, whereas Arthur and his companions were, and as he passed vnder the wal, Arthur and his companie didde cast downe the dead bodies on the Bere. And when sir Ysembarts seruants saw that, they knew right wel that the Dukes fortresse was taken,

and

and so they went and shewed it to their master, wherewith all he was greatly grieued, and commaunded in all ꝯ hast to assaile the Pallaice, whereas Arthur and his companie were on the wals, and defended themselues valiantly, that their enimies did little preuaile against them, and Arthur was oftentimes in minde to haue issued out to haue fought with his enimies, but Brisebar would not suffer him, and verelye, if it had not bene more for feare of his companye than for himselfe, he woulde haue set open the gates. And when they without saw that they could not preuaile, they ceased their assault, and withdrew themselues, and Arthur and his companie went and vnarmed them, and Bawdewin and Jaket couered the tables, and serued Arthur and his fellowes right richly, for there was in that house both wine and victualls sufficient for a whole yeare: and thus right well and at their ease, they remained fifteene daies without feare of their enimies, and without anie greate hurt. Now will we leaue to speake of Arthur and his companie, and shew somwhat of Master Steuen.

Howe Master Steuen by the vertue of his Arte of Nigromancie, deliuered Arthur and his companie from perill and daunger of the Duke of Bigor and his nephew. Chap. 54.

During the time that Arthur and his companie were thus besieged in the Duke of Bygors fortresse, master Steuen Clarke to the noble Ladie Florence of Sorolois, and the Marques were at the Porte Noire, talking together of Arthur and thinking long for him, for it was more then viii. daies, sith the promise that hee made of his returne, wherefore they were in great sorrow and feare that he was slaine by the foule monster of the Broile. Wel said master Steuen, sir Marques abide me heere till I retourne to you againe, and I will shew you how the case standeth, then the master entered into his Chamber and tooke his bookes, and loked so long on them till he knew well all the

estate of Arthur and his companie. Then hee went to the Marques and recounted to him all the estate of Arthur and of his fellowes, how they were besieged in the Castle, and how that the Duke of Bigot was with fortie thousande men come to the Castle of the Roche, for to helpe his Nephew, wherefore he said, there is now nothing to do but to studie for their deliuerance, the which he said was harde to doe without his counsaile and aduice. Ah gentle master saide the Marques, when need commeth then is the friend knowen, for Gods sake make hast for their deliueraunce. Sir saide hee, you shall keepe this castle, and I will goe to them and doe my indeauour to deliuer them: and so he departed from the Marques and entered into his chamber to peruse his bookes, and did so much that at last he hadde all things that he demaunded, & by his cunning he caused him selfe to be borne into the same hall where Arthur and his companie were leaning and looking out at the windowes beholding the Dukes hoast, who was as then come and had lodged himself and all his companie about the pallaice, and by that time sir Isembart was whole, and was able to ride where he woulde all armed, and so hee came to the Duke his vncle, and recounted to him all his aduenture. Well faire nephew said the Duke, take no thought therefore, for by the faith that I owe vnto you it shall bee déere bought. And in ỹ meane season master Steuen was come into the pallaice, and stood behinde Arthur or euer he was aware, and laid his hande on his shoulder, wherewith Arthur tourned him about, and when he saw master Steuen he imbraced him in his armes, and so did Brisebar, Josseran and Gouernar and all other, and made him right great cheere, and demaunded of him howe hee was entered into that place: Well saide the master howe so euer you haue kept and defended the place, yet I haue done so much, that I am nowe entered. In deede that is true saide Gouernar.

Thus they made great good cheere and passed ioyously all that night, and on the next morning that followed they

they arose betimes and looked out at the windowes, and beheld the Dukes hoast, and then Arthur said how that he would issue out and goe fight with his enimies, but Brisebar would not suffer him: at which time they had thought master Steven had bene still a bed, for he was not as then come out of his chamber, howbeit he was about to studie for their deliuerance, for as sone as he was out of his bed, he tooke his bookes and made his conjurations, whereby he caused such a tempest of winde and raine to rise, and fall in the Dukes hoast without, that it burst downe tents and ouerthrew pauilions, and cast downe standards, and tare downe lodgings, and haled asunder ropes, and dasht down all to the earth, and with the winde there was blowen vp into the aire Streamers, Banners, and other clothes, so high, that the sight of them was cleane lost. And Arthur and his companie when they perceiued all this without in the hoast, they had great meruaile, for it was a faire and a cleere morning before, and when this storme was somewhat ceased, then ther rose out of the ground such a darke mist and so stinking, that scarce one man could see another and this mist hanged ouer all the Dukes hoast and ouer all his Castle and towne, except the fortresse whereas Arthur and his companie were in, wherefore they did close all the windowes, and did light vp candles, but this mist endured so long that all they of the Dukes Hoast, & also within his Castle and towne were filled with the sauour thereof, and at the last it ceased, and the weather beganne to ware cleere and faire, and then it fortuned that all such as hadde felt the sauour of the foule mist, their heartes began to faile them, and to be so full of cowardise and feare, as though they had beene chased with an hundred thousande men of armes, and oftentimes beheld toward the fortresse whereas Arthur and his companie were, alwaye fearing leaste they would haue issued out on them. And as they loked toward the mountaines, they thought they heard ten thousand hornes and trumpets, thinking verely that it had ben true, and to their sights they sawe so much people descend-

ing downe from the mountaines that all the earth was co-
uered with harneised men, then they were in greater feare
than they wer before, and at the last they thought they saw
descende downe from an high hill, the chiefe standerd and
banner of the mightie king Emendus, wherein was por-
trayed a flaming dragon of golde, and on another side they
perceiued wher came the king of Orquenie, and with him
a great multitude of men of warre, and so throughout all
the hoast there arose a great rumor and a saying, how the
mightie king Emendus with all his power was come vp-
pon them to rescew his knight sir Brisebar, whome they
had besieged with Arthur in the dungeon, and thereby they
were so discomfited in their fantasies and imaginations,
that both on horsebacke and on foote, they fled all awaye
as fast as they might, and he that could get his saddle did
set it on his horse, and some for hast leapt on theyr horses
without anie saddle or bridle, and fled away all dismayed,
some into the woodes, and some into the riuers and great
marishes, they wist not whether. When Arthur and his
companie saw all this, they had great meruaile. In the
name of God saide Gouernar, I thinke they will fish for
Eeles, behold how some of them baine themselues in the
marish. And at the last tidings came vnto the Duke how
that his men fled away, and anone he lept on his horse, for
his heart was as sore afraid as anie others, and hee fled a-
way also as fast as he could to saue himselfe: and his ser-
uauntes that were within his Castle, ranne all about the
house to seeke a place to hide them in, and did close thē-
selues fast within the ground in a low vaute of the Castle, and
some hid them vnder emptie pipes and other vesselles for
feare of espying. And sir Ilembarte fled into the great Ab-
bay Church, and mounted vp to the high vautes for to hide
him there. And the monks, Nunnes, Priests, Clearkes &
Chanons ranne to the Churches of the towne, and kneeled
downe and confessed themselues each to other, knocking
themselues on their breasts, with great repentance of their
misdedes, thinking verely neuer to dis other death.

Then

Then master Steuen issued out of his chamber, and went into the hall whereas Arthur was, and Iosseran said, master for Gods sake come hether and beholde how the Duke and his men do flye away, I thinke they be afraid. In the name of God said the master I thinke they be not at this time well assured of thẽselues, therefore shortly take your harneis, and let vs goe meete the mightie King Emendus, who is comming to rescew his Knight here sir Brisebar. And when Arthur heard that, he and all his companye armed them, and so opened the gates and came to the Dukes tents, whereas they found good and mightie horses, & there each of them tooke a good horse such as liked them best, and there were none to withstand them, for they were all cleane fled away, and not one lefte behinde. Then they all mounted on their horses, and issued out of the tentes, and tooke their way vp toward the mountaines, wheras Arthur and his companie thought that they saw all the worlde of men comming towardes them, hearing hornes and trumpettes sounding, & braying of horses, glistering of helmes, shining of shields, wauering of stremers & banners, & at ẏ last they espied ẏ flaming dragon of gold in the great banner of Sorolois, and also to their sight they saw all the foure Kinges with their power comming, so that to their seeming all the earth was couered with people, and Arthur greatlye merualled of the great noblenesse of the King Emendus, that brought to battaile so great a multitude of people. Sir, as God helpe me said master Steuen, yet here is not all his whole strength, for here is nothing of the power of my Ladie Florence his Daughter, nor anie of the noble countrey of Argenton. Yea verelye sir sayde Brisebar, to say the troth I beleeue that his maiestie is the most mightiest King that nowe raigneth or gouerneth in all the whole worlde.

And so they rode forth thus talking, till at the last they met with the formost companie of king Emendus hoast, the Generalls and Captaines of which made greate chere

to maister Steuen, to Brisebar & to Tolleran such as knew them. And so they rode forth till they met with the Kinges banner and flaming Dragon, the which was borne by the Seneschall of the Ladie Florence, who made great chère to Brisebar: and thus Arthur rode euer forth thinking verely that all this that he saw and hard had bene of a truth, for he dæmed litle that all this had ben wrought by maister Steuen. And thus euer Arthur rode forth the space of two leagues, and still incountered much people, and at the last they met with the noble King Emendus, who made great chère and feast to maister Steuen, and to Brisebar, and demaunded of them how they had done, and howe they came into the prison. Sir & it like your grace said Brisebar, thanked be God wee doe right well, for wee were deliuered out of daunger by the onelie prowesse of this noble Knight that you sée héere in our companie, who hath done so much in déedes of chiualrie that it cannot bee recounted, & thus as they were talking together, maister Steuen vndid his inchauntment, and then the King and all his great Hoast were cleane banished awaie, so that there was in sight no more creatures but onelie Arthur & his companie, wherewith they were all sore abashed, and eache of them beheld other, and spake neuer a word, thinking how they had dremed. In the name of god said Arthur, I haue great maruel at this. Marie sir quoth Brisebar I spake right nowe with the King my souereigne Lord, and now I know not wher he is become. Wel sir quoth maister Steuen, lette vs ride forth, for now you may sée well how that we be out of the daunger of our enimies. Then Arthur perceiued well that all this was done by the craft of maister Steuen because of their deliueraunce: thus they rode forth till it was none, euer talking of their aduentures, and at last against night they descended downe from a great mountaine, and the valley beneath the same was verye obscure and darke, so that they coulde discerne but a verye lyttle waye into it, and when they were nigh to it, they perceiued where

as

as there issued out thereof foure men on feeble horses, each of them hauing a burning Torch in their hands, & in their companie an Abbot who was a white Monke, and foure other Monkes with him, and they were verie leane & pale, and but feeblie horsed, and when Arthur sawe them hee reuerenced and saluted them, and the Abbot put off his hoode and saluted Arthur and all his companie, and because he sawe Arthur of so faire a stature, he thought verilie that he was the chiefe of his companie, and then he said to Arthur. Sir, I heard reported but late how that a Knight hath atchieued the hard aduentures of the Port Noire, if it be so, he is of great valure, and therefore I am in purpose to ride thether, and to complaine to him of the great wrongs that hath bene done to me, for sir as pore as I seeme now, yet I was wont to be the most honoured Abbot in all the Countrie of Argenton, and now I am least set by, for my couent is clean destroied, for it is now welnigh fiue yeeres sith any of gods seruice was said in my Church, nor there was no light neither of Sun nor Mone that entered into it in al that time, and all our lands and rents are cleane lost, wherefore many of my couent be dead, what with sorrow and necessitie, and all this is done vnto vs by the Duke of Bygors brother, wherefore I praie God and euer shall, that he may die a shamefull death And how that all this is fortuned, I will shew you and it please you to heare me, I haue complained me to euerie noble man that I meete, to the intent to haue some succour of them to get me my right againe, but I can meete with none that will helpe or aide me, therfore I will goe and complaine me to the gentle Knight that hath done so much prowesse at the Port Noire, if it be my fortune to finde him, and I knowe not what you bee, howbeit I complaine me to you as I haue done to many other. By the faith I owe to God, quoth Arthur, I would be right glad to helpe you to your right, and thereto I shall be glad to put to my good will, whereof the Abbot thanked him, and so did all the other Monkes.

Then master Steuen desired them to goe in companie

with them to the Port Noire, and promised if they woulde so doe, they should speake with the same Knight that they sought for: and then at the last the Abbot knew well master Steuen, and embraced and kissed him, and made right great ioye, saying: Ah gentle master, is the Knight that I seeke for in your companie or no? As God helpe me quoth the master, it is the same Knight that you haue all this while spoken vnto, and hee by his prowesse hath deliuered out of prison the noble Marques your owne brother. And then the Abbot held vp his handes to heauen, and sayde. The high and mightie King of the celestiall Paradise increase in that noble Knight honour and bountie. Then the Abbot marked Brisebar and Josseran, and knew them derie well, and made with them greate ioye. And thus they rode forth so long, till at the last they arriued at the Port Noire, and ther descended from their horses, and mounted vp into the Pallaice, and when the noble Marques saw Arthur, he made to him right great chære, and when hee sawe the Abbot who was his brother, he began to weep for pittie, when he remembred the death of the Lord of Argenton his other brother, and so each of them embraced other, weeping for ioye, and then the Abbot said: I praie God that he may die an euill death that hath slaine our brother the gentle Lord of Agenton, whereby great hurt and domage is come to my Church. And I praie the same said the Marques, for thereby is our Mære the lady of Argenton disherited wrongfully and without cause, and therewith they wept each to other right pittiouslie, whereat Arthur and his companie greatlie grieued, and then Arthur said to them: Lordes bee of good comfort, for I promise you I will be at her marryage if I may, and if the Ladie haue then anie neede of helpe I shal be readie to aide her to the best of my power. And the two brethren thanked him much, and so they vnarmed them and were there in great ioy and sport. Now let vs leaue to speake of them, and intreate of the messenger that bare the head of the monster to the court of king Emendus, and to the faire Florence.

How

How the nephew of Brisebar ariued at the court of the mightie King Emendus, with the head of the Monster, and did salute the king and also the Emperour of Inde, who was still in the Court, attending that the King should giue him in marriage his daughter, the faire Florence, & to her the head of the monster was presẽted frõ Arthur, & he shewed her how that all alone by his noble prowesse, hee had slaine the terrible Monster of the Brosse.

Chap. 54.

AND it happened that after Brisebars nephew was departed from thence where the monster was slaine, he rode so long till he ariued at a citie named Phesale whereas the king was, and the Emperour in his companie, who would in no wise depart till that the king had giuen him the fairs Florence to be his wife. And also there was in the Court at the same time the king of Orquenie, cosin germaines vnto the faire Florence. The Court was as then great and sumptuous, and the king had as then bene at seruice, and was returned into the Pallaice and the Emperour with him, & also there was Florence accompanied with many Ladies and Damsells, and the King of Orquenie was there accompanyed with many other great Lordes and Knightes, talking together of a tourney that should be made at Oroseme. And in the mene season Chrisseline nephew to Brisebar mounted vp the staires, & two great men brought after him the head of the monster in a Basket, couered ouer with towells, & so entered vp into the Pallaice, and there euerie bodie made him great cheere and feast, and therewith he came before the king, and when the king sawe him comming he had great ioy, and demaunded how Brisebar did, and whether that he had slaine the monster or not. As God helpe me quoth sir Chrisseline, mine brickle booth right well, but as for the slaying of the monster hee is nothinge guiltie,

guiltie, nor anie of his cõpanie, for onely one noble knight hath slaine the monster, the which knight by his prowesse hath atchieued all the fearefull aduentures of the Porte Noyre, he is the most faire knight and the most gracious, that euer I saw with mine eyes. And whē he saw the faire Florence sitting by the King her Father, he kneeled downe to the earth and said, Right dere Ladie, this same noble knight sendeth to your royall grace for a present the head of the said monster, as to the most high and puissant Ladie of the world now liuing, and to you he offereth himself to doe all that he may for so noble a Ladie as you be, and truly madame it shall be a great treasure to haue and to retaine so noble and so valiant a knight as he, for hee is the floure of all chiualrie, & in bountie surmounting all other. Then the head was discouered and shewed to the King & to the Emperour, and thether ranne euery bodie that was in the Court to behold it, then they toke knines & swordes and strake at it, but none could impaire it, it was so exceeding hard. Then euery man praised much the knight that had slaine the monster, and said how that in all the worlde there was not his pere, and some said also, that this knight is hee that hath atchieued the aduentures of the Porte Noire, and the King did much praise him, and determined to sende to seeke for him. Sende to seeke for him quoth the King of Orquenie, it were little inough to send a king for him, for it were not meete for a simple knight to goe seeke for such a knight of so high prowesse as hee is of. Well sir sayd Christeline Brisebar abideth with him, and they are gone together to the Porte Noyre, and if he can hee will bring him from thence in his companye hether vnto your Court.

Then all the Kinges and Princes that were there present counsayled the King Emendus that hee shoulde not sende anie bodie for him, but abide vntill the comming of Brisebar, and Florence arose and sayde vnto the King her Father, Sir, I praye you, if so bee it like your grace, giue me leaue to departe into my chamber, for this foule

head

head troubleth me very sore to behold it, so she toke her leaue of the King and of the Emperour, and as soone as she was in her secret chamber, shee called vnto her the King of Orquenie, in whom she faithfullie trusted, and then they sate them downe together, and she sayde vnto him: Sir, of greate valure is the knight that hath slaine this terrible monster, and done so manie valiaunt deedes, therefore I praie you can you tell me what he is. By the faith that I owe vnto you madame sayde hee, I cannot tell, but let vs send hether for Chrisseline, to knowe if he can tell vs anie thing of his estate. Then incontinentlie he was sent for in all hast, and forthwith Florence caused the Chamber to be auoided of all those that were in it, sauing of the King of Orquenie and of the Queene his wife. And when Chrisseline was come before them, then Florence demanded of him what manner of knight hee was that offered his seruice in such wise vnto her: madame said he, as God helpe me I cannot shew your grace, but a more fairer, gratious, or gentler hearted knight, cannot be found in all the world, nor a goodlier or stouter man of armes, nor of higher prowesse. Well friend, sayd the Ladie Florence, tell me what message he hath sent vnto me by you. Madame quoth he, he shewed me how that he is your knight, and readie to doe you seruice at all times: mine said Florence, and therewith she sighed, and forthwith there entered into her heart a great and feruent loue, insomuch that all other wer quite and cleane put out of her minde, and therewith shee stode as one in a studie without speaking of anie worde. And then the Queene of Orquenie demaunded of him what armes the knight did beare: madame saide he, a checkered armes and a white sheeld. Well saide Florence, is this of truth. Yea trulie madame said the knight, and also he hath a sword that can helpe no man but himselfe, and hee doth therewith what him list: madame I saie vnto you, that aboue all other knights he is the best that is in the world, & so he is reputed in euerie place. Then was Florence ouercome with loue more then she was before, & thought it was

he that master Steuenber Clarke abode so long for at the port Noire. Then she gaue Christaline two hundred pound of land for the tidings that he brought her from the saide Knight.

How Arthur and master Steuen went to the garden pertaining to the pallaice of the Port Noire, and entered to the rich paulion whereas the Image was holding a chaplet, the which she did set on Arthurs head, in signification how that he should haue the faire Florence, whom the Image resembled, for ther was none that should haue Florence in marriage, without hee should die an euill death, except it were he that the Image did giue the said Chaplet vnto. Cap. 55.

IN the meane time that Christaline Brisebars nephewe was at the court with the King Emendus, as you haue heard before, Arthur and his companie were at the Port Noire in great ioy and mirth. and when the Abbot had read seruice, they were all together in the Pallaice, and entered into the garden, & so went talking together, till at last master Steuen toke Arthur by the hand and said how that hée would speake with him in counsaile, then they departed together from the other companie, and went talking till they came to the rich paulion, and entered into it, and stode before the image that held the chaplet in her hands. Then the master said, sir this image is right faire, howbeit ỹ figure ỹ it doth represent is ten times fairer, the which is the fayre Florence, daughter to the mightie King Emendus, and when she was first borne, she was brought vp into ỹ mount of aduentures, and there was giuen her this rich paulion, by the Quæne of the Fairies, and they destinied on her that no creature should haue her in marriage but onely he that this image shuld giue the chaplet vnto, that he holdeth in her handes as you maye see, and I hope verilie it shall bee you, because of the greate prowesse that is in you, and I pray to God with all my heart it may be so, now here

is

is none but you and I, therefore I praie you goe to the Image, and then we shall knowe the troth. Ah master sayde Arthur for gods sake I desire you to pardon me, for so high as is the loue of the noble Ladie Florence, appertaineth not to so simple a person as I am, therefore it were folly to me to goe to the Image, presuming to attaine to so high felicitie. By my faith said the master you shal go, and therfore I pray you so to do, for my heart giueth me good comfort that you shall spéede. Well saide Arthur sith you will néedes haue me goe, I am content, but first you shall goe before me: with a good will saide the master, so that you will promise to follow me if so be I misse, as God help me said Arthur so will I doe. Then the master went and kneeled downe before the Image, but though hee hadde knéeled there ten yeare together, he should not haue sped, yet he was right faire, and a good Clarke and gracious, and also sonne to a King: but for all that the Image did nothing to him: and when the master saw that he arose, and caused Arthur to doe as he did, the which he was right loath to doe: but at the last with much paine he knéeled down before the Image, and incontinently the Image turned toward him, & to his séeming blushed as red as scarlet, and faire & softlye did set the chaplet on his head. And the same time that this Image did set the chaplet on his head, the noble ladie Florence was in her chamber talking with Christeline, who told her how the knight that slew the monster had a white shield and a sword that could not bee empaired. At which time she felt in her hart, the vertue of the propertie of the same Image in the rich pauilion, which represented her similitude, whereby there entred into her heart such a loue, that she lost all her countenaunce, & blushed twice as much as the Image did before Arthur, and thereby in a manner she fell in a traunce, and lost the vse of her speach. When the Quéene of Orquenie saw her in that plight she cried & said, O Jesus saue my Ladie Florence from death or ieopardie: and then Christeline tooke her in his armes, and other Ladies came into the chamber, and when they sawe

her

her at that point, they take and laide her on her bed, and anone it was noised all about the Court how that the noble Florence was sicke, wherewith the Court was sore troubled, and the King & the Emperour were right sorrie when they heard thereof. But when Florence was come againe to her selfe, the queene of Orquenie demaunded of her what she ailed to be in that case so sodainlie, and she answered and said, that it was because that she remembred the foule horriblenesse of the head of the dead monster, whereby her heart failed her. Then incontinentlie the King commaunded that the head should be burnt, to the intent that it should no more be seene, and so it was done in all hast: and as for Arthur, he was all this season before the Image with the Chaplet on his head, and hee was then so taken with loue, that there was none in all the world that pleased him, but onely the figure of her that owed the chaplet, and therewith he arose on his feete and the Chaplet on his head, and when the master sawe that, he had neuer so great ioye afore, and said: Sir, God increase in you bountie and nobleneſſe, for as for honour, you are therewith nowe greatlie endowed, now I see and knowe well, that you shall be my Lord, therfore I owe to you faith and truth, and from hence foorth I will to you doe homage, and holde my land of you. O saide Arthur, suffer not your selfe so to say, for the sonne of a king ought not to holde his land of so simple a Knight as I am, howbeit the master did so much, that at the last Arthur receiued him for his man, and when hee had so receiued him, the master said: My Lord I owe vnto you faith and truth, and truelie that will I keepe, and from hence forth hardlie doe somewhat after my counsaile, for I shall helpe you to accomplish this enterprise more then anie other man liuing. Master said Arthur, and I will beleeue your counsell, and put my selfe onelie into your hands, and as God helpe me the loue that is in my heart grieueth me sore, and yet I knowe not who it is that I loue. Sir saide the master, take the Chaplet from your head & giue it againe to the Image to keepe, till you aske it another time. Maister said Arthur,

with a good will, and so he toke the chaplet and deliuered it againe to the Image, and then the Image stood stil as she did before. Then the master saide, sir Bruslebar will desire you to goe to the Court with him, but you must denye him for this time, for after my minde you shall first goe to atchieue the aduentures of the tenebrous or darke tower, & take with you no companie, but onelye Bawdewin your squire, and you shall depart to morrow betimes, and I will goe vnto the Court with Bruslebar and prouide for everye thing that is auailable for the contentation of your minde. In the name of God said Arthur, so let it bee. And as they were thus talking together, there came to them the Abbot and the Marques his brother, Gouernar, and Josseran: & Bawdwin and Jaket prepared for their dinner in the pallaice. And the Abbot said to Arthur, sir I haue bene heere a great while, whereof I thanke you, & also I am euer bound vnto you because you haue deliuered out of prison my brother the Marques, now it is time that I returne again vnto my dolorous Abbey, which was wont to be the floure of beautie of all that Countrey, and now it is the prison of al vnhappinesse and misfortune, and hee that hath caused all this, I pray God he may die an euil death, who is sir Isembarte the false Nephewe to the Duke of Bigor, for by his meanes a wicked inchaunter hath taken away cleane the light of heauen from our Abbey, so that wee liue euer in darknesse, and also he hath taken awaye all our rentes and landes, wherwith we are thereby almost famished for hunger, and also he hath by treason slaine my brother the noble Lord of Argenton, and hath disherited my neece his daughter, and hath promised her to a lewd boye who is his Barber, and at this next Mawdeleintide he purposeth that they shall be married together, which will be great pittie, that euer so good and beautifull a Ladie as she is, should be caste away vpon so vile a person, for if she were not my neece, I I would saye she were worthie to haue a right good prince, wherefore I complaine mee to God and to all courteous Knightes, and specially sir I humbly require you to helpe

me to take vengeaunce of him, and such as take his parte. By the faith that I owe vnto the Duke of Britaine saide Arthur, I will be there at this next Pawdlintide, and then I shall helpe to aide the Damsell to the best of my power. Sir saide Maister Steuen, then shall you doe well, for you speake as a Gentleman should saye. Then saide Brisebar, Sweete sir let vs two goe together to the Courte, and there you shall see the noble King of Sorolois and all his Baronie, the which is right great and noble: and also you shall see my Ladie Florence, who will retaine you for one of hir knights, and you shal haue them in your companie an hundred knightes of great valure, whereof I am the simplest and most insufficient of all, and so by you shall the companie be honored, and the renowm of them doubled throughout the world: and I promise you aboue all other, to keepe you true and faithfull companie. And when Arthur heard him say all this, he smiled a little and said: Deere friende Brisebar I thanke you heartely for your noble proffer, and certainly my poore bodie is, and shal be readie to do my Ladie Florence seruice, for wher so euer I become hir knight will I be: but at this time to the Court may I not goe, for first I must finish an enterprise that I haue taken on me if God will giue me ỹ grace to accomplish it: and then Josseran demaunded of him what enterprise it was, verely said Arthur it is to atchieue the aduentures of the tower tenebrous. When Brisebar heard that, he said: for Gods sake let that enterprise alone, for certainly all the power of my Lord the King of Sorolois hath, is not sufficient to attain to that aduenture, therefore in my minde it were a great folly for you to take such a thing in hande, as no man can atchieue.

Then maister Steuen said, Sir Brisebar, let him alone for he hath a good heart, though it bee a great enterprise, yet I trust God shall helpe him, for sith he hath taken it in hand, I am sure ther is none that can let him of his mind, well saide Brisebar, since he will not be turned, I will goe with him, and so will I also said Josseran.

Well sirs said Arthur I thanke you, but surely I will haue none with me, but onely Bawdwin my squire. In ỹ name of God said the master to let it be, and sir Brisebar and I will goe together to the Court, and you sir Marques, Jolleran, Gouernar and Jaket shall abide heere still, and keepe this Castle, till you haue other newes. You sayt well sayde Arthur, and therewith they went altogether to the Pallaice to dinner, and were richlye serued, and all that daye they made great ioy, and at night went to their restes, and the nexte morning betimes they arose and heard seruice, which ended, Arthur mounted on his horse, and so did the Abbot and master Steuen and Brisebar, and so toke their leaue of Gouernar and the rest, and issued out of the castle, riding together the space of foure leagues, and at last they came to an entring into a forrest, where was a forked waye, and there the master and Brisebar toke their leaue, & rode forth on the right hande, which was the nexte waye to the Citie of Cornite, where King Emendus was the same season, and the Abbot went the next way to his dolorous Abbey.

Then Arthur tooke his waye on the lefte hande, and rode forth all the day, till it was neere night, and so arriued at a gentle Squires place, called the manno^r of the plashes, which Squire doubted himselfe greatly, for he had such enimies that had mortally defied him, therefore he sayde to Arthur, sir you be hether right heartely welcome, but I beseech you to departe hence speedely for the sauing of your selfe, for I canne not warraunt you in my house for mine enimies are right mightie, and I looke each houre when they will assaile me. Then said Arthur, care you not for that, but and it may please you, I praye you let me haue lodging heere with you this night, and I assure yeu if they come while I am heere, I trust I shall make a good peace betweene you and them, either with faire meanes or otherwise. Sir saide the Squire, I am content, and god giue you grace to doe that you haue sayd.

How Arthur slew and discomfited xv. Knights, right mightie and puissant, who were come to assaile his hoast, which was called the Squire of the Plashes. Chapter. 56.

THus was Arthur received of the Squire, who made him right good cheere to his power: and the same time the Squires enimies had there a spie, who returned and shewed to them howe that there was come to the Squires house a straunge Knight, by seeming right mightie & puissaunt, and how that he had promised the Squire to helpe him, if he had anie neede that night. Then they all answered and sayde, that they woulde not let their enterprise for one Knight, for they were to the number of fiftæne, and when it was night, they all leapt on horsebacke and came to the Squires house armed, and right rudely assalted the same, and the Squire and such seruaunts as he had, defended themselues as well as they could, with crosse-bowes, and such other weapons as they hadde within. And when Arthur knew this, he armed him and took his white shield which did cast a great clearenesse by night, and tooke his good sword Clarence in his hand, and when hee was thus armed, he looked out at a window, and demanded of them without what they sought there, and what they woulde, and they answered how that they sought his head. My head sayd Arthur loe take it here, for heere you may sæ it, but I will bring it out shortly vnto you. Then he desired them within to leaue their shooting and set open the gate, and to let downe the bridge, and according to his desire it was done, and Arthur issued out alone, and ranne at them, and they all at once ranne at him, and Arthur drewe out Clarence his good sword, which for the goodnesse was also called Traunchfer, that is to saye, cutter of yron, and strake the first so therewith, that hee clave his heade to the eyen, and hee made the heade flye from the seconde, and from the

third

third he strake the arme and sholder cleane from his bodie, and then the remnaunt layd all at once on him, but all they did nothing hurt him, Then Arthur dasht forth with his horse, and encountred one of them so, that hee ouerthrewe both horse and man into a great dith, the which was about the place, and there he was drowned, And when a mightie knight who was master of them all and he that first began this warre, saw his people so hardly dealt withal with one knight, hee was right sorrowfull, and therewith dasht at Arthur, and gaue him a great stroke on the shielde with a mace of yron full of great prickes of steele, which he layd on with both his hands, the which stroke rebounded again vpwarde, for it coulde not empaire his shield anye thing, and Arthur lifte vp his sword and strake him on the head, and the stroake was hearde a greate waye off, but the stroake didde glide downe to his lefte arme, so that the arme and shoulder and all flewe cleane into the fielde, and the swoorde dashte into the arson of his saddle, and claue it cleane asunder, and did rut asunder the crupper of his horse, and therewith horse and knight and all fel down to the ground, then Arthur laide on among the other both on the left side and on ẏ right side, and made heades, armes, hands, legs, and feete flie clean into the fielde, then the remnaunt began to flye, but it was to late, for there was none but either, he had lost an arme or a leg, and when the squire vnderstood that his guest was thus issued out all alone and fighting with his enimies, hee armed himselfe and ranne out into the field, but there he found nothing to doe, for by that time Arthur as then had made an ende of them all, & was returning homewarde. When the Squire sawe that Arthur had ouercome all his enimies, hee thought verelye that hee was of high and noble prowesse, and thanked him much, saying.

Sir you tolde mee troth, when as you sayde that you woulde make peace betweene mine aduersaries and mee, for nowe I am among them, and yet they say nothing to mee, and so Arthur and the Squire his hoast entered into

the place, and closed the gates fast after them, and drewe vp the bridge, & went to their rests, and in the morning the Squire went out to see which of his enimies were slaine, & among ỹ other he found his chiefe enimie slaine, wherof he had great ioy, and offered himselfe to become Arthurs man and would haue gone with him, yet Arthur would not suffer him, but departed from the squire, and anone ỹ wordes were spread abroad in all the countrey, how that a Knight with a white shield had slaine and ouercome xv. Knightes, the which words came to the hearing of master Steuen & Brisebar. Verely said master Steuen, that same is Arthur who hath right great valour in him. Truly saide Brisebar it is he, I see well that he is a right valiant Knight, for hee is the best knight in all the world. Thus Arthur rode forth till it was three of the clocke, and there he found betweene two mountaines a great villayne huge and mightie, blacke and hairie out of all measure, and he bare on his shoulder a crooked leauer. And when he saw Arthur he ranne to him, and toke his horse by the bridle rayne, and demaunded of him, saying thus: Faire sir, what manner of man be you? Friend said Arthur, I am a Knight straunger. Yea sir sayd the villaine bee you a Knight, and what seeke you heere in these pastures that I haue in my keeping? God fellow said Arthur, I goe vppon mine aduentures, whether God will bring me. Why sir said the villaine, goe you then to seeke aduentures, if you be so well hearted that you dare follow after me, I shall bring you vnto a straunge aduenture, but I thinke you dare not follow me, for I beleeue you are one of those Knightes, that will menace and threaten when you stand by the chimney warming of you after supper, & in the morning all is forgotten. When that Bawdewin heard the villaine say so to his master, hee began to laugh at him, and said, well good fellow, lead him whether soeuer thou wilt, and I warrant him he will followe thee. Sir said the villaine, I speake not to you, as for you I see well inough you be not of that force and might, that you canne drawe

draw the wine and drinke it, and pay not for your shot or you goe, I speake to your master, therefore lette him answere me if he dare. Friend saide Arthur, as for Bawdewin my Squire he is but a fole, take no hede whatsoeuer he saith, but hardly bring me whether you will, and I shall followe you as long as my life will last. Yea but sir sayde the villain, if you folow me, when it commeth to the pinch then I feare me least you will leaue me and runne awaye like a coward. Nay said Arthur I will not forsake you as long as I may. Well laide the villaine, then come on your waye, and I promise you if there were ten such as you be, I shall bring you thether whereas none of you all shall escape from death, likewise as I haue caused manie a one to dw. Then the villaine went forth & Arthur followed him, and at the last they entered into a great valleye betweene two mountaines, where they found a little lodge whereas meate and drinke was solde to trauailing men. Then the villaine said to Arthur, sir knight, it is now good time that you giue your horse some repast, for after this, you shall finde no moe houses till it bee night, at which time I shall bring you vnto such a lodging as shall not be good for you, for there you shall lose your life. Then Arthur alighted & gaue his horse meate, and did eate and drink himselfe, and the villaine sayd, eate and drinke now with ioye, for I assure you this shall be the last that euer you shall take. When Bawdwin hearde that this villaine alwayes menaced his master with such words, hee was greatlye grieued, and said,

Thou foule chorle, holde thy tongue from threatening thus of my master, what thinkest thou to make him abashed with thy wordes, naye I warraunt thee, hee taketh little heede thereto, for doe the worst thou canst, he defieth thy mallice. Then the villaine beganne to rowle his eyen, and to bende his browes, and tooke his leauer in both his handes, and would haue striken Bawdewin, but Arthur helde him and said.

Friend, take no hæde what my ſquire ſaith, for I tell you hee is but a fole, therefore ſpeake to mee whatſoeuer you will and let him alone. And when the good wife of ỹ lodge heard him ſpeak ſo gently to the villaine, and was ſo loath to diſpleaſe him, and ſaw that he was ſo goodly a creature, ſhe loued him in her heart and prayſed him much, and demaunded of him whether he went, Arthur aunſwered and ſaid I follow this good fellow: certainely ſir ſaide the good wife he is no good fellowe, but the moſt fouleſt and falſeſt traitour liuing, therefore gentle ſir Knight, I haue greate pitie of you, and you are vtterly loſt if you goe with him anie further, for this foule villain doth nothing but watch ſuch Knights as paſſe through this countrie, to the intent to bring them where he is in purpoſe to bring you, for frō thence there was neuer any that returned againe without death, therefore gentle Knight returne againe, for it were great loſſe that ſuch a Knight as you be ſhould bee thus deſtroyed. Then Bawdwin ſaid, ſir how fæle you your hart, will you returne backe againe, or els will you go forth. Friend ſaid Arthur, how ſhould euer any Ladie or damſell employ their loue on me, if it ſhould bee ſayde that I haue fled away for the menacing of a foule churliſh villaine, as God helpe me, I had rather ſuffer death. Sir ſayd Bawdwin, then you thinke on loue I ſæ well, but and it touched me as it doth you, I woulde thinke on nō Ladie nor loue in this point, for I woulde loue my owne life better then to truſt on their praiſe or reward. And with theſe words the villaine came to them and ſaid, What noyſe is this of cowardiſe that I heare, ſir knight, I ſæ well your heart fayleth you, for you are about to make couenant to retourne againe, therefore I thinke well you will leaue mee when nœde is. Friend ſaid Arthur truly I will not forſake you, ſæing I haue promiſed you the contrarie. Well ſayde the villaine then arme you ſhortly, and let vs goe from heuce for your laſt dayes of lyfe drawe to an ende.

How

Now the great vilaine brought Arthur where he fought with a great and terrible Lion, but finallie Arthur slew him, and how after he fought with a greate Gyanteſſe and an horrible Gyant, & by his prowesse conquered them both, and after that fought with a great Griffon, and this was the beginning of the aduentures of the Towre Tenebrous, wherin you ſhall heare many terrible and meruailous things, the which were atchieued by the onelie prowesse of the valiaunt Arthur. Chap. 57.

When Arthur had well refreſhed himſelfe, he armed him and mounted on his horſe, & followed the ſaid villaine, till at the laſt they came into a great valley darke and deepe. Then ſaide the villaine to Arthur, ſir Knight, now ride on before and you dare, & I will follow you. So then Arthur rode before, and as they rode on their right hand there was hewers of wode, and as ſoone as they ſaw Arthur and the villaine, they knew well that he was brought thether by the foule churle, then they cried aloude & ſaid: A gentle Knight for Gods ſake returne againe, for and you goe anie farther you are but dead. A thou foule villain, we praie to God that thou maiſt die an euill death, for many a noble man haſt thou cauſed to die. And when Bawdwin heard theſe words he ſaid to his maſter: Lo ſir you may remember your loue, you may heare what theſe people ſaith, certainlie I would not thinke on the faireſt creature of all the worlde in this point, and when Arthur hearde Bawdewin ſaie ſo, hee laughed at him, ſaying: Friend, by the faith that I owe vnto my Lorde and Father, I cannot tell whether I goe, nor what perill there is therein, but what perill ſo euer I ſhall finde, I would it were double as much, on the condition that I were in certaintie that ſhee that I ſawe neuer loued me ſo well as I loue her.

And when the foule villaine heard him sate so, in his heart he praised him much, and knew well thereby that he had a valiant hart, & thus they rode forth so long, till at ỳ last the foule churle cried out and said: Sir Knight, now it will appeare what you can doe, for now you shall haue nèd to defend your selfe. And with that worde Arthur loked on his left hande, and sawe where there was comming to himward a great and mightie Lyon. Then Arthur feared his horse least that the Lyon should haue slain him, therfore he lighted downe to the ground and deliuered his horse vnto Bawdewin, and dressed him towarde the Lion, and when the lyon perceiued him, he leapt and strake at him with his paws, thinking to confound him, but Arthur put his shèld before him and the Lyons stroke dasht thereon so sore, that Arthur was astonied with the stroke. Then Arthur strake at him with Clarence his good sword as passed by him and stroke off his taile, and when the Lion felt himselfe so hurt, he raised with all his power his bodie against Arthur, and with his sharpe tèth he toke Arthur by the helme and they entered into the buckles of his harneis, but as God would they touched not his flesh, and with his foote hee strake Arthur such a stroke vpon the shèld, that and it had not bène the better it had bene clouen to peces, and with his other foote he tooke Arthur by the right shoulder, but Arthur got frō him, or else he had ben torne asunder, for in the stepping awaie he lost a quarter of his harneis, and therewith Arthur lift vp his sword and dasht it to the crosse in at the throate of the Lyon, and therewith the Lyon did cast out a great crie and hideous, and so fell downe to the grounde dead, and therewith incontinentlie he espied whereas there was comming towardes him a great and mightie Gyauntesse, with a greate fauchon in her hand, which was so well stèeled, that there was nothing that it was stroken against but it would cutte a sunder, and therewith shee came vnto Arthur, and strake at him right eagerlie, and when Arthur sawe the stroke comming on him, he quicklie cast his shèld

before

before him, and this Gyaunteſſe was terriblie angrie for the death of her Lyon, wherefore ſhee gaue Arthur ſuch a ſtroke vpon the ſhoulder, that hee was ſore aſtonied therewith, but as God woulde the Faulchon brake a ſunder in two peeces, and his ſhælde was therewith nothing empayred: and when the Gyaunteſſe ſawe that her Faulchon was broken, ſhee liſt a great Speare that was ſtanding by her, and thought to haue ſtriken Arthur therewith vppon the head, but Arthur ſtept vnder the ſtroke and cloſad with her, and then ſhee tooke Arthur by the head, and pulled off his healme ſo rudely, that ſhee burſt a ſunder all the buckles where with all it was tyed, and with the pull that ſhæ made ſhe ſtept backward with the healme, and then Arthur with his ſworde ſtrake her throughout the belly, and therewith ſhee fell backwardes, for ſhe was ſo haſtie to reuenge her Lion, that ſhee came to Arthur all vnarmed, wherein ſhe was but a foole, for a man may ſoone bæ too haſtie to come to his enimie, and when ſhee fell ſhee gaue ſuch a crie, that all the valley rang of the noiſe, ſo that a great gyaunt who was her make heard it well, and then he ranne to a great Leauer and tooke it in his hand and came running ſo rudelie as though a great multitude of men had come together, he made ſo great a noiſe, and by that time Arthur had ſtriken off the head of the Gyaunteſſe, and rouled it in the middeſt of the waie, and did put againe his healme vpon his head, and when the Gyaunt ſawe that his wife was dead and his Lion alſo, he fared like a fiend of hel and tooke his leauer and daſht at Arthur, thinking to haue ſtriken him downe to the grounde, but Arthur ſtept a ſide lightlie, and the ſtroke light on a greate rocke ſo rudelie, that his hands tingled ſo ſore therewith, that he could not otherwiſe chooſe, but let the Leauer fall from him to the grounde, and then hæ ſtouped downe for to haue taken it vp againe, and while that he was ſtouping downe Arthur tooke Clarence his good ſwoorde and gaue vnto him ſuch a ſtroke, that one of his boiſtrous armes flew cleane into the fielde. Then the Gyaunt leapt foorth and tooke

Arthur

Arthur in his other arme, and if that his white shield hadde not bene, he had bene crushed a sunder, for hee gaue Arthur a great stroke with the stub of his hurt arme: and then Arthur aduised him well, and vnder his arme he dasht Clarence his good sword vp to the crosse, and so hee fell downe dead. Then ther came a great Griffon and clasped Arthurs horse all about the bodie, and thought to haue borne him awaie, and when Arthur sawe his horse hurt, in his heart he was right sorrowfull, and strake at the Griffon with his sword, and strake a sunder both his legges, and therewith the Griffon flew awaie with great paine, and both his legs remained still vpon the horse, and the horse bled so fast, that he fell downe dead in the place, wherwith Arthur was sore displeased. Then the villaine came to him, and said in this manner of wise: Sir Knight, in a thing the which cannot be remedied, must needes be suffered in the best wise that a man may, your horse is slaine, take you no care for him, for there be horses inough, you haue slaine the Gyant and the Gyantesse, and also their Lion, and the Griffon, but for all that I promise you, that your end draweth fast onward, & as for this night let vs goe take our rest in the Gyauntes house heere by, the which is a strong place, and there wee shall finde great plentie of wines and meats, and there you shall see many faire and bright harneises, and also there you shall see heads, armes, legges, and feete of much people, the which the Gyant hath taken and brought to that place aliue, for the Gyauntesse would neuer by her will eate anie other meate but mans flesh, and so they entered into the place, and the same daie the Gyant had taken a Knight and brought him dead into the place vpon his owne horse, and as then the horse was yet aliue, & when the villaine sawe the horse, he tooke him by the bridle and brought him to Arthur and said: Sir Knight, your owne horse is dead, therefore I giue you this horse: I thanke you heartelie good fellowe said Arthur. Then Bawdewin did shut fast the gate, and there they did rest them all that night, and on the next morning betimes Arthur rose and armed him, and mounted

ted on his horse that the villaine had giuen him. Then the villaine came forth and said, sir knight follow me for now I will goe forth. Goe on before said Arthur, and so he rode after him all the daie till it was nere night, and then at the last they came to a mightie strong tower which pertained to a knight named sir Roger the Scot. Then the villaine said to Arthur, sir knight it is nowe good time to lodge vs here in this castle all this night, therefore let vs enter into this place, but one thing I assure you, the knight that oweth this place is the most shamefull traitour that nowe is living, for there is none that entereth into this place, but shamefullie he murthereth thē while they be in their beds, he is also cosin germaine to the duke of Bygor, and nephew to sir Firmont, who was of late slaine at the Castle of the Roch by a knight straunger, therefore now let me see what you will doe, whether you will go lodge in this place or no. Well saide Arthur, I see well if I lie without, I shall bee shrewdlie lodged, and sith this knight is of that linage that you speake of, he is my mortall enimie, howbeit as yet I cannot complain of him, for he did me neuer anie trespasse, therefore I will goe thether to take my lodging: and when the villain heard him saie so, he knew wel how that he was of great courage, and loued him therefore much in his hart, howbeit he said vnto him, sir in Gods name so bee it, let vs goe thether, and if anie ill come to you thereby, I am not to blame, for I haue giuen you warning thereof. Then they entered into the Court of that place, and as soone as sir Roger sawe Arthur he knew him right well, and was certaine how that it was he that had done so much prowesse at the Castle of the Roch, and had slaine sir Firmont, and wounded sir Isembart his cosin, and then his heart began to rise for anger, notwithstanding he made to them greate cheere outwardly, and kissed Arthur, saying: Sir you be heartely welcome into my house, as God helpe me I haue more ioy of your comming then of anie other mannes liuing, but to himselfe inwardlie he saide, yet ere it bee midnight I will will haue that head of yours cleane from your shoulders.

Then

Then the villain came vnto them and cried as loude as he could, God kepe the Lord of this place, according to his heartes desire, and these words he saide thrise times. When Arthur said, if his heart be good well haue hee, and if it bee otherwise then good God amend it: Then Arthur was brought vp into his chamber and ther he did vnarme him, and in the meane time sir Roger came to his Squier, and demaunded how and in what manner hee might best slaye Arthur, for said he, if we make anie assault on him he will slaie vs both, for ther is none like him in all ỹ world, for he did mervailous dedes of armes at the Castle of the Roch. Sir said his Squier, I know certainely that we cannot endure against him: but I shall tell you what we will do, we shall make his bedde this night aboue in your Towre, and set it ouer the trappe doore of the dungeon, and we will take awaie all the boordes in the bottome of the bed, and in stede of the boordes set smal staues to sustaine vp the clothes, and so when he shal lie downe in the bed, he and the clothes and all shall tumble downe into the dungeon, and then we shall soone cast downe his Squier after him, and slaie this foule villaine, and when they be in the pit we will takes speares and so slaie them, or else let vs heat three or foure caudrons with hotte scalding water, and cast it downe vppon theyr heads, and so shall we slaie them. When sir Roger heard his Squier saie so, he was well content with him, and said this matter is right well deuised, for as you haue sayde it shall be done, therewith the villaine issued out of the chamber from Arthur with his greate Leauer on his necke, and as soone as hee saw Sir Roger counsailing with his Squier, and other standing together whispering in corners, hee begaune to mistrust them, and sayd, what manner of people bee you, for what matter bee yee thus counsailing together, is it for some marriage, beware that there bee no treason among you, for if there be I shall driue you downe with my Leauer,

Then Arthur issued out of the chamber, and when sir Roger sawe him hee tooke him by the hande and sayde:

Sir it is time that wee wash our handes, for our Supper is readie: As it pleaseth you sayde Arthur, then they washed and sate them downe at the Table, and were right well serued, and the villaine was sette downe at another Table behinde Arthur, and they gaue him part of all their meates and drinkes that they had, and hee did eate and drinke exceeding much, for they coulde not satisfie his appetite. And after Supper Bawdewin Arthurs Squier tooke heede to his horses, and Arthurs bedde was made in the same place where it was deuised before, and the villaine laide him downe on foure Cushions by the fire in the hall, as hee that had well eate and dronke, and so fell fast on sleepe, and snorted right sore, wherefore Sir Roger that was Knight of that place would not so suffer him, but caused him to be couered with a greene Couerlet, and then let him lie: and when it was time for him to goe to bedde, the Torches were lighted vp, and the Knight conueyed Arthur to his chamber, and at his taking leaue of Arthur, he offered with his mouth himselfe and all his householde to bee at his commaundement, but in his heart inwardlie hee thought to be redie to cause him to lose his life. And when he was departed Arthur went to his bedde, and as he laid him downe, he and the bedde and all fell into the great pit, and the Knight and his seruauntes were readie watching at the doore, and when they heard the noise, they entered into the Chamber, and tooke Bawdewin and cast him downe to his master, and Arthur receiued him in his armes, because he should not be hurt in the falling downe. Then there arose a greate crie and noise throughout all the place, and some bare Speares and Barres of yron with all speed possible to cast downe at Arthur, to the intent to slaie him in the pit, and euer as they stroke Arthur watched, and did auoide them as diligentlye as hee might, and thus they continued so long, till at the last by reason of the great noise the villaine awaked and rose out of his sleepe.

And

And when hee heard this rumor hee wist well that Arthur was betraied. Then he mounted vp into the chamber with his great leauer in his hand, and he sawe that they were about to enforce themselues to slaie Arthur. Then he toke his leauer and strake to the knight sir Roger in the necke, that he caused his tongue to hang out of his mouth nigh halfe a foote, and therewith he fell downe into the pit to Arthur, and the villaine said to Arthur, sir knight, gnawe well on that morsell you shall haue more anone. Then he lift vp his leauer againe, & strake sir Rogers Squier such a stroke on the head, that his head was driuen in peeces to his sholders, and he fell downe also into the pit after his maister. Then the villaine said to Bawdewin, good Squier cut his throate and make him sure; In the name of God said Arthur it shall not neede, for hee hath inough alreadie. Then the vilaine dressed him at the remnaunt that lighted Torches in their hands to giue light, and dasht them down one after another, and some fled awaie and he followed after, and slew them all. Then he entered into the kitchin, & there he found the Cooke boiling of a great caudron full of water, the which should haue bene cast downe to Arthur, and he tooke the Cooke in his armes, and cast him into the caudron all boiling, and held him downe with his leauer, saying, thou shalt seeth without Salt till thou be inough, and if they flesh be hard sodden, I will broile thee on the coales, then he ran to a ladder and bare it to Arthur into the pit, and Arthur and Bawdewin issued out, and as soone as Arthur was without, he ranne to his sword and demaunded if there were anie more to doe in that place: As God helpe me sir said the villaine I thinke not. Then they lighted vp Torches and descended downe, and founde an olde house full of dead mens bones, such as the traitours of that place had slaine. In the name of God said Arthur to the villaine, you haue holpen me now like a friend, for all your vncurteous words before: Well said the villaine, I will that if you can scape to morrow from the aduenture whether as I shall bring you, which I thinke you cannot doe, then you

shall

then you shall perfo3me a gift fo3 me, which I will requeſt of you. Verely ſaid Arthur, if a knight may do it without rep3oach, I ſhall be glad to accompliſh it: well ſaide the villaine, and thereto I acco3d. Then ſeeking all about the Caſtle, they could finde none of might to hurt them, and ſo fo3 that night they departed to their reſts vntill the next mo3ning.

How Arthur atchieued the perillous aduentures of the Tower tenebrous, whereby all the inchauntments, which was cauſe of all that great darkenes ceaſed. Cap. 58.

THe next mo3ning betimes Arthur aroſe and armed himſelfe, and mounted on his ho3ſe, and toke his way euer following of the villaine, and he rode fo3th till it was about thr3e of the clocke, and then entred into a great Valley, and euer they rode lower and lower: It was then a a faire day and the Sunne ſhined cleere, but by that time they had ridden two leagues and a halfe, they wer in much darkneſſe, ſo that they had cleane loſt the ſight both of the Sunne and alſo of the day, fo3 it was there as darke, as if it had bene about midnight. Then the villaine ſaid to Arthur, ſir knight can you tell from whence all this darkeneſſe commeth, if you can vndo3e it and make it cl3re, then ſhall you get thereby perpetuall honour: and knowe you fo3 a certaintie, that as yet there was neuer anie that entered anie farther, that returned againe, therefo3e if your heart faile you enter no farther, fo3 if you do, you ſhall die as other haue done befo3e you. Friend ſaid Arthur, how is it that all this darkneſſe is here in this place? I will tell you no mo3e ſaid the villaine, but I warne you to be wiſe, fo3 it ſtandeth you in hand.

And therewith Arthur departed from them and entered into the darkneſſe, and the villaine and Bawdwin abode ſtill at the beginning of ỹ darkeneſſe, and ſo they loſt the ſight of Arthur, but they might ſ3e the ſhining of his

shield as farre off as one might shote an arrowe. Thus he rode forth the space of halfe a league, and at the laste hee found a riuer great and deepe and as black as pitch, and the bankes were so high, that the water might scarce be seene running vnderneath, and it was so full of Serpents, that none could enter among them without he were slaine, and aboue his head flewe monstrous birdes and diuers Grifons, who were able to beare away an armed knight horse and all, and were in as great a multitude as though they had ben starlings. And Arthur did couer his head with his his shield, and the Griffons dasht thereat with their Tallents, and annoyed both Arthur and his horse right sore, & euer Arthur florished about him with his good sword Clarence, and whatsoeuer he touched did him no more hurt. Also there were flyes that were as great as nuts, and as blacke as pitch, and they stang both him and his horse full sore, so that the blood issued out after: but and it had not bene for the clearenesse of his shield, he had bene slaine ther and he had a thousand liues, but by ỹ bright shining of the same he might well see round about him, and perceiue wel when any of these things came to him, whereby hee made as good defence as was for him possible, and thus hee rode a long time by the riuer side, and at the last he founde a little straight waye which hee must needes passe without hee would haue retourned againe, and at the last Arthur went into the streight waye, and anone the vermine that was there ranne to his horse, so that shortly hee was as full of them as though they had bene flies, & they sucked so much blood from the horse, that he began to ware very feble, & when Arthur saw that his horse would faile him, he hasted him as fast as he might to get out of that straight waye, & with much paine he gate his horse out thereof but incontinently the horse fel down dead. Then Arthur set his feete to the earth as well as hee might, and then there came a knight to him or he was aware, and hit him on his shielde the which he held not fast in his hande, therefore the stroke did

did glent, and the speare held & brake not, and as the knight passed forth, Arthur toke him by the raine of the bridle & caught him by the arme and pulled him so rudely that hee made him auoide his horse, and so hee fell downe into the water, and there was drowned and deuoured with the vermine that were therein, then Arthur leapt on the same knightes horse & tooke his Speare. Then another knight cried and sayde, sir Knight beware of me, then Arthur turned to him and encountered him, and the knight brake his Speare, but Arthur strake him so rudelie, that the Speare went cleane through his bodie, and hee fell downe dead: then there ranne at him ten other knightes all at once, & they strake him on all sides with great & mightie strokes, but hee tooke his good sworde and strake one of them so rudely that he claue him cleane to the shoulders, and then another hee claue from the shoulders downe to the backe bone, and dealt among them such strokes, that he confounded all that he attained vnto, and by that time he had great mede of such hearbes as maister gaue him, & also his white shield and good sworde did him there good seruice, for such knightes as he had slaine were chosen men and right puissant, but Arthurs chiualrie surmounted all other, for there he did so much with his hands, that hee slew all that euer were against him. Then hee spurred forth with his horse he knew not whether, till at the last hee heard the grinding together of two millstones one vpon another as they doe in a mill, whereby all the earth about Arthur did shake, and the cause why these stones went thus about, was for that there stode by them a fatts of brasse, wherein here was an Image sitting vpon a barre of yron made by Inchauntment, who bleiwe from him so greate a winde, that those stones turned thereby so swiftlie, that no creature could passe by them without death.

Then Arthur approched to these millstones, but hee felt so terrible a Winde, that he was faine to alight downe of his horse, and went on foote as well as hee myght, but

but he saw well that he could not come nére those stones, without he should die: therefore he went round about thé, to sée what wayes he might come to them, and at laste hee found a little bridge, which was so narrow that one man could not passe by another, and vnder this bridge ther was so great a pit that the bottome thereof could not be perceiued, and there were also twelue Knights that kepte this bridge, fiue at the one ende and fiue at the other, all armed with crosse-bowes hatchets and maces of stéele in their handes. And when the first fiue Knights saw Arthur, they ranne at him all at once, and gaue him manie great strokes on his shield, but they could not empaire it, then hee toke his good sword, and strake so the first that he claue his head asunder, and from the second he stroke his arme clean from his shoulder, and from the third he bereft his head: & when the other three saw how their fellowes were slaine, & howe that nothing could endure against him they fled towarde the bridge, but Arthur ouer-toke so the hindermost, that his braine flew cleane into the field, and the second for hast leapt into the pit, and there brake his necke, and the thirde he ouer-toke on the bridge, and toke him in his armes & did cast him ouer the bridge downe into the pit, and ther he dyed miserably. Therewith he hasted him ouer the bridge, and then the other fiue ranne all at once at him, & thought to haue dasht him downe into the pit, but Arthur like a valiant Knight leapt in among them and laid on with his sword round about him, in such wise that within a shorte space he departed life and death asunder of fiue of them, & then the first knéeled downe before Arthur, and besought him of mercie, and prayed him for Gods sake that he wold not slay him: Take no feare sayde Arthur, for thy life is saued, so that thou wilt tell mee, from whence this greate winde commeth.

Sir saide he it commeth out of yonder great vessell of brasse, that you maye sée, for therein is an Image made all of leather, sitting on a great barre of yron made by the craft of inchauntment, but who so coulde ouer-tourne

this

this Image, the winde should then cease. Well said Arthur abide me here still and I will goe see what I can do.

How Arthur beate downe the great Image sitting in the vessell of brasse, and thereby the winde was ceased. Cap. 59.

Then Arthur went forth, and thought to haue gone boldly to this vessell of brasse, but the winde was so bigge, that he was faine to lye on the earth all along, and so to creepe on handes and feete till he came to the vessell, & drew after him his shield, his sword, and a long speare, and dasht therewith the Image so rudely, and with so manie strokes that at the last this foule Image fell vp side downe in the vessell, and incontinently the inchauntment ceased and the stones stode still, for then there was no manner of winde. Then Arthur stode vp on his feete, and came againe to the Knight, and demaunded of him what tower it was that he saw stand before him in the dark, for all this season he had no light but by the reason of the shining of his shield. Then the Knight aunswered and said, sir, the Duke of Bigor hath a neuew who is named sir Isembart, he is lorde of this place, and he hath such enuie to all people, that hee caused this tower to be made by a subtill inchaunter, and all this great darkenesse which you haue ben in, the which endureth fiue leagues in circuit, in the which compasse, ther was no land tilled nor sowed the space of fiue yeares past, and so all such people as were wont to dwell therein, are fled away or famished for hunger, and this inchaunter by his craft also made this riuer ý you haue passed, the which neuer man did before this time without death: for euer this darkenesse hath continually endured, sauing one daye in the yeare, and that is on New yeres day, the which day, the fiue Knights that you haue slaine, that were of the best which coulde be found in all this lande, did prouide for vs the sayde daye for all thinges as was needefull for vs to haue, and I and all my companye who were to the num-

ber of xii. persons, kept alway this passage betwéene these millstones, the which turned euer without rest, saving on Saint Martins day, and then we might passe out to the aforesaid fiue Knights, and fetch in all such thinges as was prouided for vs all the whole yeare, and so this tower was besette round about, what with knightes, and with these millstones, and with winde, and with darkenesse, so that it were in a manner impossible to enter into this Tower without death. Well saide Arthur shewe vnto me what is the cause, and from whence commeth al this darknesse, Syr said hee it commeth out of a great pit that is in this Tower, and there bee great Griffons that descendeth downe into this pit, and in the bottome thereof there is a great hideous fire, made so by craft ỳ no man can tell how, out of the which there riseth so blacke and thicke a fume & smoke by certaine dores and windowes, wherby the light of the Sunne and of the bright skie is so quenched, that it is euer darke, which darknesse containeth the circuit of .v. leagues compasse as I haue shewed you before, wherefore all this countrey is clean wasted and destroyed, and all the people fledde out thereof.

And why said Arthur did he all this cruelties? Certainly said the knight, I shall shewe you: It is of a troth that hereby there is an Abbey of white Monkes, who were wont to be reputed right noble and of great possessions, & most commonly Kings and princes when they past by that place, woulde there rest and harbour them, and there they should be well serued, and it was named the Abbey of the Grace dieu, and the Abbot is a right wise man and a noble, for he is brother vnto ỳ noble Lord of Argenton, who was falsly slaine by the treason of this Dukes neuew, who fortuned to come to the said Abbey vpon an Easter day in the forenoone, at the same season when the Abbot and all his whole Couent were in solempne procession, and because that the Couent did not at his first comming leaue the seruice of God that they wer in, to haue layed the tables, and

to

to haue brought him meate and drinke to haue filled his paunch, therefore he was so displeased, that incontinently he leapt on his horse, and was departing and his false Inchaunter with him. And when ỹ Abbot knew that, as soone as hee might, he came to him and desired him to tarrie, but in no wise he could make him to chaunge his purpose: but in the most shamefull wise that he could he rebuked them, and called them churles, promising to doe them as greate displeasure as shoulde lye in his power to doe; and so hee hath done as you maye see, for hee hath caused them euer since to liue in greate darkenesse, and also hee hath taken from them all their rents and possessions which they held vnder him or in his rule in al the whole land of Argenton, for in all that circuite of fiue leagues compasse, the labourers could not labour for their liuing for ỹ lacke they had of light, wherefore manie of them be famished for hunger, and to saie the truth, in this said Abbey the seruice of God hath not bene ministred this fiue yeares. Well sayde Arthur, that is great damage, but I praie you tel me how this darknesse may be vndone: Sir said the Knight, the inchanter when he had made this fire was right sore displeased, because that there sprang out of the earth euen by this terrible Fire a faire Fountaine, whereby he right well knew that this fire should be quenched, if anie Knight might attaine to come thereto, and to cast the water therof into the Fire, and then all the darknesse shoulde cease for euer after.

How Arthur entered into the tower Tenebrous, and how hee there quenched the fire, whereby all the terrible Inchauntments ceased.

Chapter. 60.

AFter this Arthur saide, friende bring mee to this foresaide Tower, and hee presently went on before, and Arthur followed after him,

and so went fast by the great windowes & doores of the tower, the which were of xvi. speares length and square, out of the which there issued so greate abounduance of fume, that his bright sheld lost cleane his shining, wherefore hee was sore troubled, for then he could see nothing: howbeit they did so much by fayling, that at the last they came iustes to the tower, and there they found the walles pight full of sharpe barres of yron, set as thicke as the pricks of an hedgehons skinne of the length of halfe a speare, to the intent that no creature should approach nere to the walls, so ther was no entrie but at a little wicket, and with much paine the knight did open it, and when that it was opened, there issued out so great abundaunce of smoake, that the darkenesse thereby was doubled throughout all the Countrey, so that neither candle nor torch could burne in anie place, neuertheleslle Arthur entred in at the wicket, and lefte the knight without, yet the smoke and heate was right greeuous to him, for if there had not bene more valure in him than in anie other, he had bene there cleane ouercome, and alwayes he went downwards on the staires and sawe nothing, but he felt so many great strokes, that oftentimes he was therby constrained to kneele on his knees, but he could not tell from whence they came, or who did giue them vnto him, and euer he flourished about with his sword, but it auailed him nothing, for he strake he knew not whereat, & finally, he was faine to couer his head with his shielde, for els he had bene broken to peeces, though hee hadde bene of yron, and alwaies thus hee went euer downwarde on the staires, till at last hee came to the bottome, and there hee founde a faire great vawte, where he felte so great a heate that he sweat exceedingly, and thereby hee was nigh ouercome: and as he felt about him, he perceiued that hee was nere the Fire, and as hee went farther hee found out the Fountayne, by reason of the colde aire that he felt, whereof he was right gladde: and so then hee tooke his shielde, and plunged it into the water, and bare as much water therein as hee coulde, and did cast it into the Fire,

and

and euer he fecht moze water, and continuallie did caſt it into the fire, and euer as the fire quenched, the darkneſſe began to diminiſh, and the moze water he did caſt into the fire, the cléerer the light beganne to ware, and in concluſion he did caſt ſo much water that the fire was cleane quenched, then might hee ſée all about him, then hee perceiued on both the ſides of the ſtaires how ther ſtod great images of Braſſe, holding in their hands maſes of ſteele, the which had done him much trouble as he went downeward, but then their power was ended, for when the fire was quenched the inchauntment was finiſhed, then Arthur when he ſawe that all was done he returned vp againe the ſtaires, & was right wearie of his trauaile, what with heat and ſweating and the great ſtrokes that he had receiued, and ſo came againe to the little wicket whereas the knight was ſtil abiding, and when hee ſawe Arthur whole and ſound and aline, he kneeled downe before him and ſaid: Sir you be welcome as he that is chiefe floure of al chiualrie of the world. Then Arthur ſate him downe vppon the græne graſſe to take his breath, and did off his healme and ſhéld. Thus all the Countrie was cleane deliuered from darkneſſe, ſo that euerie bodie might ſée cléerelie about them, wherof the Abbot and all his couent had great ioy, and ſo they went al and rendered thankes to almightie God in their Church. And then the Abbot ſaid to all his bretheren, ſirs let vs goe ſée him that hath thus deliuered vs from thraldome, if God will giue vs the grace to find him, for verilie I thinke it be the gentle knight that was at the Port Noire. Then the Abbot and all his couent iſſued out of the Abbey with Proceſſion, and came to this tower which was not farre from thence, and there they found Arthur ſitting on the grounde and the knight by him, and when Arthur ſawe them, hee tooke to him his ſhélde and healme, and his ſpeare in his hand, and whē the couent with the Proceſſion came before him he kneeled downe and praiſed God, and all the couent kneeled downe before him and would not ariſe till he was vppon his feete, and then there came to them Bawdewin

and with him the villaine who had brought Arthur to all these forsaid aduentures, and when Bawdewin sawe the Procession and all those Monkes, hee thought verilie that Arthur had ben dead, then he beganne to lament and make all the sorrowe of the world, and said: Alasse vnhappie creature as I am, that thus haue lost my Lorde and master, the flowre of all chiualrie, alasse death why doest thou not take me, and thus as he made this great sorrow, he espyed Arthur where he stode, then his heart came to him againe, and the Abbot came to Arthur and said: Right noble and vertuous Knight, you be right heartelie welcome, as hee that hath delinered vs and all this Country out of such torment and imprisoment as we were in a long space, and by the pleasure of God by your meanes the seruice of God from hence forth shall be ministred in our Church, sir I and all my whole conuent heartelie desire you to come & take your rest within our Abbey now after your greate trauaile, and Arthur with a right good wil did graunt it them, for he was verie wearie. Then Bawdewin toke his sheelde, and the great villaine toke his Speare and healme, and oftentimes saide vnto him, gentle Knight, God giue thee ioye & increase thine honour and bountie, for thou hast atchiued that which neuer man could doe before this time, therefore now by the helpe of God and by thy high prowesse, the faire Damsell of Argenton shall be delinered out of trouble and care, & out of the hands of the Duke of Bygors nephew, for thou hast promised me to goe whereseuer I shall bring thee, therfore now I desire thee for to keep thy promise. Well said Arthur I assure you faithfully that I will not break my promise, sir saide the Abbot, God giue you the grace to bring this Lady out of thraldome, for I knowe well you haue prowesse sufficient to atchiue that enterprise, though it were a greater matter. That is of truth said the villaine, for it hath beene right well proued, for I haue brought him by all the places whereas anie hard aduenture hath beene, to proue thereby his chiualrie and noble vertue, howbeit the Dukes Nephew is greatlie to be redoubted, but for all that, I doubte

not

not but that hée shall bée well chastised, and therewith they went all to the Abbey, whereas the Abbot made them right great honour and chére, and therefore all the Bells in the Church wer rung continuallie thrée daies and thrée nights for great ioy, and so for a little space Arthur and Baiwdewin and the greate bilaine sported them there with greate ioy. Now for a time let vs leaue Arthur in this Abbey, and let vs speake of the mightie king Emendus and the fayre Florence his daughter.

How after that Brisebar and master Steuen were departed from Arthur from the Port Noire, they arriued at Cornite whereas king Emendus was, and in his companie the Emperour of Inde, and his other foure Knightes, holding at that time a greate and sumptuous open Court, and there master Steuen and Brisebar recounted to them in open audience the noble chiualrie of Arthur, & in the meane season there came into the Court a knight all armed, and brought tidinges to the king how the aduentures of the towre Tenebrous were atchiued by the prowesse of one onelie knight.

Chapter. 61.

When that the mightie king Emendus had holden a great solempne Court at a feast of Easter in a great Citie called Sabarie, the fifténe daie of Easter the Emperour would haue departed, but the king woulde not suffer him, but intreated him so faire, that he was content to abide, and so they were determined to kéepe their Whitsontide at Cornite, which they did, at which time the king kept the most sumptuous and open Court that hee kepte sith hee was king. Thus the Emperour abode still with the king till it was Whitsontide, against the which time the king hadde sent for all the nobles of his Realme

to

to be at the said feast at his Citie of Cornite, and when the daie approched, the King and al his noble companie rode to Cornite, and there met with him his noble Daughter the gentle Florence, accompanied with the Archbishop of Cornite her vnckle, and brother vnto the King her father, and so this Citie was then rotally replenished with Kings and Knights, and when the King was entered he alighted, and mounted vp into the Pallaice, and the next daie the Emperour came thether, and the King and Florence his daughter, and all his whole Baronie did encounter and conuey him to his lodging, the which was in the Abbey of Saint Quintaine, and then the King and Florence retourned againe vnto their Pallaice, and the third daie before the feast there came to the Court the King of Orquenie, and the noble King of Normall, and the king of Valefound, and the king of Sabarie, also thether came the Lord Reuellon, Seneshal vnto the faire Florence, and sir Ancean his nephew, and the Lord Pole, sir Steuen, and sir Giles of Valefound, Lord of Damas, and sir Artaus Lord of Arsate, & sir Poraunt Lord of Feniſſe, and sir Oliuer Lord of Sabarie, and also there was sir Vicier Lorde of Amason, and sir Poſlin the Scot, and sir Hanrton of Oſtelin: and all these were of the retinue of the noble Florence, and there were so manie other, that a great part of thē were faine to be lodged without the Citie. Then the Court was so full and plentious, that there was neuer such a Court before. Then the King caused to bee cried, that whosoeuer woulde take on him the noble order of knighthood, he shold be dubbed knight with his owne hands. The next daie the which was the first day of the feast, there began in the Court so much triumph, that there was neuer seene the like in all the Countrie before, and on Whitsundaie after seruice the king made in his Pallace fiftie new knights, vnto whom he did giue armes, horse, and barneis, and Florence did giue them gownes of Skarlet, and mantells of greene furred with ermines, and to all these newe knightes were standing before the king, who did gird about them their swoords, and right sweetly

smiling

smiling did giue him the order of knighthood, and Florence did lase their mantles about their neckes, and the Emperour did make in his lodging xi. knightes, & the other foure kings each of them made thirtie knights, and then the Emperour and the other kings did mount on horsebacke, and then began hornes and trumpets to sound, and tabers and Rebeckes and other instruments to make the sweetest melody of the world, and there assembled together all the Jugglers and tumblers, and resorted to the Pallaice, and when they were assembled together at the Court, there were to the number of two hundred and ten new knights, and the king and the Emperour sate downe and the faire Florence betweene them, & all the other kings were set each of them after their degree, and the iuglers and minstrells began to make ioy and feast, Ladies and Damsels began to daunce, Lords and knights did iust and tourney, trumpets & clarions and other instruments of musicke began to sound, and all the Citie was hanged with cloth of golde and rich Arras, and as they were in this great ioy, there alighted at the staires sir Brisebar, and master Steuen was remaining at the castle of Reinarte, but two leagues thence, and there he made the peace betweene the Burgeses of the Towne and the meane people, for they had bene before long at discord, and when sir Brisebar was mounted into the Pallaice, all the Barons and knights ranne and welcommed him, and made for his comming great ioy and feast, and specially sir Neuelon the Seneschall, and sir Ancell, & sir Miles of Valefound, and all other made him such cheere, that for the preasse he had great paine to come to the king, and as sone as the king saw him he made great ioy, and toke him by the hand and caused him to sit downe before him. Then was all the Court right ioyfull of his comming, for before there were none lacking of all Florence knights but he and Arthur. Then the king said, sir Brisebar you sent hether to mee the head of the foule great monster the which is slaine thanked be God, but I praie you tell me how he was conquered. Sir said Brisebar, your grace sent mee thether with a greate

compa-

companie, howbeit we did nothing there, for we found ther fighting with the monſter the moſt gentle knight that now liueth, and freſh of heart, and the moſt valiant and redoubted knight that euer was girt with ſworde, for he alone ſtrake off the monſters head in my ſight, and did there ſuch prowelle of armes that no man canne doe like him. In the name of God quoth the king, it is great valure in one man to bring to death ſuch a foule beaſt: Sir ſaid Briſebar, you cannot knowe the valure and highe prowelle which is in this knight, for it is he onely that hath atchiued the ſtrange aduentures of the Port Noire, and it is he that with his bodie did meruailes at the Roch, whereas ſir Fyrmont with fiue hundred more did lie in waite for him, & there he leapt into a ſhippe full of his enimies, when he perceiued that I and other of my companie were taken priſoners and ſo led forth to the caſtle, and there he ſuſtained alone the battaile among all his enimies, the which was all the communalty of the towne of Roch, and all the countrie there about, and there he ſlew ſir Firmont and more then three hundred of his companie, and reſcewed vs out of priſon, and alſo he reſcewed the knight of the Plaſches from all his enimies, what will you that I ſhall ſaie, hee is the flowre of all chiepalrie, and there is not his peere in the world, and hee had ſcant vttered theſe words but that ther came into the pallace a knight all armed and dreſſed him to the king and ſaid Right high and mightie puiſſant king, I haue brought vnto you good and true tidings, which is how that the ſtrange aduentures of the Tenebrous tower are atchiued, and all the inchauntments cleane vndone, and the great darkneſſe is now turned to light and brightneſſe, and all the knights that kept the towre are all ſlaine, and the great Lyon and Gyaunt and Gyaunteſſe are ſlaine, and the Countrie deliuered from all the hard aduentures that they had long endured. Faire friend ſaide the King, and who hath done all this deede: Sir that hath one knight alone done, who weareth a white ſheild, and for a certaine I ſawe him vnarmed in the Abbey of Grace dieu, and neuer ſith God was

borne

borne hath there bene seene so faire a creature, so gentle, or so gracious, & when Florence heard speaking of the white sheeld, she thought then verilie that it was her sheelde the which was in her pauilion at the Port Noire, and thought verilie that it was her friend and louer Arthur that bare it of whom shee harde so much good reported, and thus with her owne thought her heart trembled, and sodainely thereby she blushed, howbeit shee made shew thereof, but to her selfe she said: A sweete friend, when shall I see you, so that I may speak with you at good leasure. Then the king said, in the name of God this knight is right valiaunt, what is the cause sir Brisebar that you brought him not to ỹ court with you, to the intent that we might be acquainted with him, so that he might be our friend and he is. As God helpe me said ỹ king of Orquenie, it were a great riches to haue such a sheeld as he is neere vs, and verilie for my part I had rather haue the companie of him then of the richest person now liuing, and sir Brisebar you did right ill your indeauour when you did not so much as bring him to this court. Sir said Brisebar, by the faith that I owe vnto my Lorde the King, I did the best of my power to haue brought him hether, but he answered me that he must needes goe first to the Towre Tenebrous, and saide if God did giue him the grace there to escape that aduenture, hee woulde bee at this Pawdelaintide at Argence to make battaile against sir Ilembart the duke of Bygors nephew for the faire Ladie of Argentons sake, for he shewed me how that hee had promised to her vncle the Marques and to master Stenen, that he would doe the best of his power to get againe the faire Ladies heritage, and how that he wold shew vnto the Dukes nephew that falsely and vntruly hee had disherited her, and by treason slaine the Lord of Argenton her father. It is of truth said the knight, that brought thether the tidings from the Tenebrous tower, I warrant him he shall right well helpe that Ladie in her right: But by the faith that I owe vnto God saide the King of Orquenie, if such a battaile shall bee there, if God will it shall not bee

without

without me, for veriſe I will be there at the ſame time. Sir ſaid Philip of Orqueney, vnkle ſuffer me I praie you to go with you, for trulie ſo I will doe, and I alſo quoth ſir Pe-uelon, and I will not be behinde ſaide Brileban, if God bee pleaſed, for there we ſhall ſee meruailes of this knight, and then in the court there beganne to be a great talke among the knights, and a faithfull promiſe to goe to the ſaid tourney, and they were of one accord welnigh to the number of fiue hundred knights, and they promiſed faithfully in open audience to be at the battaile to aide the ſaid damſell. Then Florence ſaid to the king of Orqueney, faire coſin you ſhall doe right well to goe thether to helpe this Ladie, and alſo to acquaint you with this gentle knight, and for Gods ſake bring him bether, and I promiſe you to loue him dearelie, and to giue him ſuch giftes and land that he ſhall bee right rich and puiſſant. Well faire Ladie ſaid the king, I ſhal do the beſt of my power.

How the Emperour was afeard leaſt Florence ſhuld caſt her loue on Arthur, wherefore he demaunded of the King her father to haue her in marriage without a longer delaie, wherewith the king was content, but Florence would not agree thereto, wherewith the King hir father was with her right ſore diſpleaſed as you ſhall heare after. Ca. 62.

When the Emperour had heard the great praiſe and laud that generallie was giuen to Arthur, and perceiued well how that he had the loue of all the Court, and heard well the good words that Florence ſpake of him, wherby ther ſtrake into his heart a iealouſie and a feare leaſt ſhee ſhould caſt her loue on him, therefore he toke king Emendus by the hand and ſaid: Sir, I would faine ſpeak with you in counſaile, but I praie you let your Daughter bee preſent, then they both aroſe and Florence with them; and ſoftlie ſhee ſmiled vnto the king of Orqueneie and ſaid to him in counſaile,

saile: God giue grace that of this counsaile good may come, but I feare me the contrarie. So then they three entered into a chamber, and leaned them downe in a faire windowe, then the Emperour began to speake to the king and saide: Sir it is of a truth, that it is a great season past sith you gaue to mee your good will, that I should haue in marriage the faire Ladie Florence your daughter here present, but shee hath euer excused her selfe because of the late departing out of this world of the Queene her mother, for shee thought it was not pertaining to her to haue bene married so soone after her decease, it is now so great a season sith, that ther can no blame be reputed to her now to be married, therefore sir now I require you that you will incontinently deliuer her to mee according to your promise made to mee before this time. In the name of God saide the king, it is but reason & right that I should so doe, & so I will doe, wherefore I weete daughter Florence, you wer borne in a good houre, when so noble and so high a person as the Emperour is, will haue you in marriage, whereby greate honour and weale shall come to vs all, and to al our countries, let vs incontinently send for my brother the Archbishop, to the intent to ensure you together. Right deere father said Florence, it is yet ouer soone to marrie me, for certainly I am not as yet purposed to be married to him nor to anie other, I thinke first to see two yeares more passed at the least. How so said the king, Damsell will you doe then against my will in the refusing of the Emperour to be your Lord in the waie of marriage: Sir said she, I haue care for no Lord but onelie for God & you, for surelie I will not consent to marriage. You shall said the king, or else you shall right sore displease mee. Sir quoth she, your displeasure should grieue me aboue al other things, but by the faith that I owe to you, I wil not as yet be married. Ho said the king, then I see well that you will do nothing as I commaund you, therefore you shall do it whether you will or not, & so take her by the hand to the intent to haue deliuered her to the emperour, & when she saw that she was not content, but pulled her hand to her againe, to

the intent that the Emperour should not touch it, and when the king sawe that, he was sore displeased and said: Damsell you have set you against mine accord and assent, & therfore I promise you that from hence forth of my helpe and counsaile you shall faile, wherefore from hence forth doe as well as you can, and I straightlie charge you auoide, and come no more in my sight and presence, nor whersoeuer I be, and when Florence sawe her father so sore displeased, she said: Dere father if you be thus displeased with mee, you doe not well therein, but sith it is your pleasure that I should take the Emperour, or else to lose your counsaile and helpe, and also not to come in your sight, the which is a sore saying of the father to his childe, but sith it is so, I humblie require your grace of respite the space of a moneth, till such time that I may speake with my counsaile in that behalfe. Ladie said the Emperour, it is too long a respite, for I will depart hence right shortlie, for I thinke it bee high time, for I haue bene here a long season, and all that hath your loue caused, wherefore I would faine ere I depart knowe how or in what wise my loue shall be rewarded, I saie not nay, but it is good for you to take aduisement, and I am content that you so do a daie or two. Well said the King, I am content that she shall haue respite till to morrow at this same houre and no longer. Well said Florence, this counsaile is against my heart and will, that I should take a man against my heart, seeing that I am a Queene, and daughter to the most puisant king of the world, certainlie this grieueth me right sore, therewith she began right piteouslie to weep and to make right great sorrow, and when the King sawe her weepe, he said to her: Auoide out of my sight, and let me not see you till to morow againe at this present houre, and then and were me whether you will take him & my good will therewith, or els leaue him & lese my good will & fauour for euermore. Then Florence issued out of the Chamber weeping. Then the foure kings stept to her when they saw her weeping, and left all their sport, and the king of Orquenie took her by the hand, and demanded of her why she wept so sore.

Dere

Wherefore said she, my Lord my father is right sore displeased at me, and hath commaunded that I should auoid out of his presence. Then she saw her vncle the Archbishop and said to him, faire vncle let me go with you to your lodging. With a right good will said he, and shame haue he that thus causeth you to weepe. Thus all the kings conueied her to her vncles lodging, and so did the most part of all the Barons of the Court, and also all the new knightes, and they all abode still at Florences courte, & when she was thus in her lodging, the kings returned againe to the king Emendus court, but the king of Orquenie & Philip his nephewe abode still with Florence, and the king of Orquenie demanded of her why she wept? Cosin said she, my Lorde & father would marrie me and giue me to the Emperour, and wold haue assured vs together without anie counsaile taking either of you, or of anie other of my friends, and as God helpe me I had rather die then to haue the Emperour, for I hate nothing so much in all the world as I doe him, for as long as I liue I will not haue him, therfore it is but a great folie to enforce me therevnto: Faire Ladie and cosin said the King, as God helpe me ere he haue you against your will, there shall be pearced a thousand healmes. Yea said Philip the duke of Sabarie, ere that day come there shall be burnt an hundreth townes therof be you sure, therefore faire ladie be in peace, & set your heart at rest. Well said the Archbishop let vs goe to the Court and speake with this Emperour, so thus they rose and went forth and left Florence, and thus they mounted vp into the Pallace, and found the king Emendus and the Emperour together, who were as then issued out of the chamber. Then the Archbishop said to the King: Faire brother, I meruaile greatlye what counsaile you haue had to cause thus to come to your court so manie noble men and other from so far countries, to the intent to trouble and displease them by the onely words of this man the Emperour here present, who wold haue my Lady Florence your daughter in marriage against her wil, but sir I assure you while I liue he shal not haue hir against her wil.

As God helpe me saide Philip the Duke of Sabaris, he had nede to haue brought more men hether then he hath done, if he thinketh to haue her awaie to her displeasure. Why said the Emperour, and who is he that will say me nay? Is it you, I would there were none to depart the matter, but you and I to see who should lead her awaie: verilie said the King of Orquenie, it is no equall match a Duke against an Emperour, howbeit as God helpe me if you had her against her will, and none other to meddle in the matter but onelie you, I thinke you should not reioyce her so easilie as you thinke of, and bee you certaine that in that quarell he will and shall defend against you, and therein doe the best you can with all your power, and begin when you will, for hee doubteth you nothing, nor shall doe, and when the King Emendus heard them say these words, he was right sore displeased, and said: What is this sirs, are wee taken prisoners? laie you thus in a wait to manace thus in my presence my Lord and friend the Emperour, truly if you continue in this purpose you shall knowe that I am right sore displeased with you all. Then the Archbishop aunswered him againe right sharply, and so there began much burlie burlie in the Court, and much a doe was there liklie to haue ben, but as fortune was, in the meane season maister Steuen was arriued at the pallaice, and entered into the hall, and a leauen Knightes with him, and when hee heard this noise and stirre, hee spake aloude, and cried peace for Gods sake, and did so much that he appeased somwhat the noise, and as sone as the king of Walefound sawe maister Steuen his sonne, he ranne and embraced and kissed him, & demaunded how he did, and he aunswered and said, sir right well thanked be God, and then all the other kings did welcome him, and so did king Emendus, and also the Emperour, and demaunded of him how he had done sith his departing out of the court, & he answered and saide right well, then he perceiued right well how that the King & the Archbishop were sore displeased together, wherfore he said to the king, what cheere is with you, this daie is a solempne day, why is your

Barons and Court thus troubled, this daie should be a day of sporte and plaie: Master Steuen saide the king, I cannot be merrie, for your Ladie my daughter Florence hath displeased me, for she will not doe that thing that I would haue her doe, wherewith I am nothing content, wherefore I praie you assaie and you can reduce her to my minde. Sir said master Steuen, I trust I shall doe so much, that with reason you shall be content, so of this matter they talked a great space.

How Florence when shee knew that master Steuen was come to the Court was right glad, and how that he with his pollicie gate her longer respite, that was till Bartlemew tide next after. Chap. 63.

ALL this season was the noble Ladie Florence in her chamber, making great sorrowe, and saying to her selfe: Ah noble Arthur, I wot friend, I neuer saw you and yet I loue you with al my heart, I had thought to haue bene vnmarried till the time of your comming to this Court, but now I see well that I must needs take him that I hate most, I loue you but I cannot haue you: O fortune how art thou turned against me, I hate him that I must haue, I loue him that I must lose, certainly deere loue Arthur, if you loose mee thus you shall haue great damage, for you shall lose her that loueth you truelie. Ah master Steuen why haue I not you here now in my great neede, for if you knew of my sorrow I am sure nothing could let you but that you would turne vp so downe this marriage. And as she thus complained pittouslie, tidings came to her lodging that master Steuen was come to the Court, and as sone as she heard that, her heart began to come again to her, for then she thought verily that she needed to care for nothing, & right hastely sent for him, & as sone as the master knew thereof he said to the king: Sir my lady hath sent for me to come to her grace. Go your way said the king. Thus the maister departed & the Archbishop

with him, and the king of Orquenie, & his nephew ſir Phi-
lip Duke of Sobary, & they all arriued together where Flo-
rence was, and the other kings abode with the king and the
Emperour, and the Barons of the Court and all the newe
knights were at Florence lodging, right ſore diſpleaſed be-
cauſe of her diſpleaſure, but they were all gladde when the
king of Orqueny and maſter Stenen were come. Then the
maſter entered into Florence chamber, and ſaluted her, but
ſhe could not ſpeake one word, but toke him by the hand, &
cauſed him to ſit down by her ſide, and when her hart came
to her, ſhe ſaid how that he was right welcome, as he whom
ſhe deſired to haue at that time aboue all the creatures of
the world. Then the maſter ſaid to her, is this a faire thing
that you make thus for your eſtate, to bring your ſelfe in ſo-
row and all your people, and theſe gentle Knightes in ſuch
trouble for your ſorrow, who are thus come to your Court
to doe you honour, for they haue left the king your father to
come to your lodging in this ſolemone daie, therefore leaue
you this ſorrow, and make ſuch cheere as appertaineth to a
Princeſſe, reioyce your Court and your people. Then Flo-
rence anſwered and ſaide: A maſter, my ſweete friend, I
cannot be merrie, for I am greatly greeued at the heart, for
my Lord my father hath forbidden me to come in his pre-
ſence, for a ſtrauiger whom he would that I ſhould take in
marriage, but God rather giue me death then I will take
him, for I hate him with all my heart, and it behoueth mée
to anſwere whether I will haue him or no, betweene this
and to morrow this time, and I haue greate deſpite that I
ſhould thus be dealt withall for a ſtraunger: Madame ſaide
the maſter, now be in reſt, for ſith you haue a daies reſpit, I
ſhall get you nigh a whole yeares longer delaie, and I truſt
ſuch fortune may fall, that ere the yeare be runne, you ſhall
not haue him. Ah déere maſter ſaid ſhe, I hartely thank you,
and promiſe you that though this Emperour bee neuer ſo
rich or puiſſaunt, or full of power, yet I haue no care for
all his riches, for I thanke God I am now one of the pui-
ſauntest Ladies that is liuing, therefore I care not for him

nor

nor all his power: Madame said the master, then I see well that your hart is not set on couetousnes, & I deeme you loue anie but the Emperour whom I knowe you hate, but madame heere be two things contrarie to be in one heart, loue and hate, to be meeke and fell I cannot see how this may be. Ah master said she, haue no meruaile at this, though I saie that my heart is both meeke and fell, certainly my heart is fell whereas it hateth: Why madame quoth the master, doo you then hate. Trulie quoth she yea, & that right sore, this Emperour would haue me against my will, for he shall not haue me by my good will, and if he take me by force, I trust he shall well know that he did neuer so great a follie. Madame saide the master, marriage that is made by force is greatly to be doubted, but when it is made meekely and by the agreement of both parties, then lightly loue continueth euer after betweene them, and when it is contrarie, oftententimes both parties endure many sorrowes, but madam now I know against whom your heart is hatefull, I pray you let me know to whome your heart is meeke and amiable, then she beheld the master and sighed right sore, when the master heard her sigh, he a little smiled, and when shee sawe him laugh she was a little ashamed and blushed therwith, and all smiling said: O master you know well inough all this as well as I doe my selfe, for I neuer sawe him as yet that hath shewed me loue, I see right well dailie my hearts enimie, but mine owne deere loue I neuer saw, but I see dailie him that I hate, but I cannot see him that I loue: Master you know what he is better then I doe, therfore I praie you shew me what you knowe of him, for you haue giuen awaie my white shield and good swoorde Clarence, and I knowe not to what Knight, nor whether they be well employed or no. Madame quoth the master, I shall shew you, I will that you knowe that I haue giuen them to the most fayrest and gratious Knight that now liueth and freest of heart in all gentlenesse that can bee found in the worlde, for he is the chiefe and principall flowre of bountie in all manner of chiualrie, also hee is the best

knight that euer was girte with swoorde, sith the time of Gawaine and Launcelot, and the best approoued knight that euer hath bene heard of, who hath set his faithful hart without either fraud or falsehood on your loue, and to him in my presence your Image hath giuen and set on his head your Chaplet. Then Florence heart began to tremble, and said, Gentle master I doubt me greatly that you giue him a greater praise then he is worthy of, for you haue praised him greatly. Truly madame said he, all that I haue saide in troth, for he is worthie to haue more praise then I haue giuen him, Well master said she, is all this of a troth? Yea truly Madame said he. By the faith that I owe vnto God saide Florence, then I see well hee is worthie to haue much honour, and I promise you hee shall not faile thereof if God send me life, and he shall not lose his loue, for seeing he loueth me, as God helpe me I will loue him againe, for reason requireth to loue him that loueth me. Then said the master, I see well next the king your Father you loue the Emperour because he loueth you. Then Florence smiled & with her hand strake him on the shoulder and saide, master wher I am pleased ther I loue, but I care not for him that is against my heart: one of these two pleaseth mee, and the other I hate, I praye God that hee maye come speedely which I loue, and I would hee were gone that so much annoyeth mee: hee that hath my Chaplet, my shielde and Swoorde, hath my loue more then anie other that now liueth in the worlde, and the Emperour hath my hatred more then anie other mortall creature, I loue him right deerely whome I neuer sawe, and hate him most crusllie whom I see dailie.

Herewith shee made a pause, and blushing somewhat with shamefastnesse she began againe and saide, Master Steuen, now I haue shewed you all my counsell, as to him in whom I trust most, you be my Clarke and my seruant, you knowe now as much of my counsaile as maye bee, therefore I require you keepe it secret, and put your paine

that

that I may haue him on whom my heart and loue is laide, for now you know on whom it is set. The the master said, madame as God help me you haue right wel set your hart on the best and faireſt Knight of all the worlde, that is the gentle Knight Arthur: and as they thus talked, there came to them the King of Orquenie and Philip his Nephew, and the Archbishop, and sir Brisebar, her Seneschall, and sir Aunsell. Then Florence arose against them, and also the master, and they had all great ioy of Florence when they sawe her make better chére then she did before. At the last the master said, Lordes I sée well howe that the noble Court of the mightie King Emendus is all in a traunce in a manner halfe a sleepe, for there is neither playe nor ioy among them that I can sée, whereof the King is greatly to bee blamed, for it is greate shame because so manie noble men be hére at this feast: therefore in my minde it were good to take some counsaile to sée howe the Court may bee delighted againe, lette vs send word to the King how that my ladie Florence is readie to giue her aunswere now the which she should giue to morrow, and I promise you that I wil so aunswere for her, that she shal haue longer respite an whole yeare, and I trust so to appease the King and the Emperour, that with reason they shall be well content. Then the King of Orquenie said, master I sée well howe that you haue not as yet forgotten all your olde cunning I thinke you will bring them a sleepe with wagging your hand. Then the Archbishop did laugh, and so they were all of one accord, then they sent to the King Duke Philip and sir Brisebar, and the King had right greate ioye when hee heard their message, and said: truly master Steven I see right well, hath giuen her good counsaile, hee is a noble Clearke, I pray God send him good aduenture. And so these messengers returned againe and said, howe that the King was verie well content and ioyfull to heare her answere. Then Florence prepared her selfe to goe to the Court, and the King of Orqueney did accompanie her, and the King of Portmall did meete them by the waye, & the Archbishop

and maister Steuen went before, then all the Knightes assembled together being to the number of fiue hundred, and followed after Florence with great triumph. Thus Florence entered into the Pallaice, and the Emperour did salute her, and so did all the rest except the King her Father: then the Emperour sate downe and Florence by him, and the King Emendus and the King of Orqueny before him; and euerie other man in his rowme: and after silence made maister Steuen sayd to the King: Sir, if it like your grace, behold heere your daughter that loueth you. Certainly said the King, my daughter I beleeue well shee is, but for any loue that she beareth me, I can neither knowe nor see, for behold heere my Lord and deere friend the Emperour, who is come personally to desire her in marriage, yet is shee so daintie that she demaundeth counsaile in this case which toucheth her honour and profite, and will not beleeue mee that am her father, wherewith I am not a little displeased. Then the maister arose on his feete, and saide: Right excellent and mightie Prince, my Ladie Florence, is greatlye greeued, for the vnkindnesse you haue shewed hir to daye, and now she is come as one sorrowful for your displesure, intending to doo nothing contrarie to your will. And sith it is so that my Lord the Emperour will doe so much honour as to take her in marriage, she humbly thanketh him: yet it is the custome according to the estate of euery person to deale discreetely in such a case. Therefore sir, it is not conuenient, the Emperour and you being the greatest and puissantest persons now liuing, and my Ladie Florence the most noble princesse of all the world, that this solempnitie ought not to be done priuely in a chamber, but in the open presence of all the Barons of both Realmes, to the intent that if God send any issue betweene them, their marriage may be knowen openly to all the people of both Realmes, whereby shal be eschewed all grudge and murmuring, neither is it necessarie this solemne feast of Pentecost, & that royall marriage should be solemnized at one time: for this daye is so principall a feast, that euerye Christian man

ought

ought to dwe nothing els but laude and serue God, and at the day of that noble marriage, let there be here Kings, Dukes, Barons, and other noble Knights, Ladies and damosells, and let the young and lustie Knights runne together with their speares and swordes: then shall wee see what Knight is of valure and praise, at the which time shall be brought hether the rich Pauilion of my ladie Florence, wherein is the Image of the fairie, holding the rich Chaplet: so that when the Tourney shall be done, then my Lorde the Emperour shall goe to the Image, to haue the Chaplet as he that is right rich both of behaviour and friends, and the most noble person that shall bee there assembled, and to him the Image will giue the chaplet, as to him that is most worthie, and when he hath it, then hee shall be sure and certaine, that he shall haue my ladye with great good will and entire loue: and thus maye it bee concluded with ioy and triumph.

When the Emperour had well heard the master, and sawe how that he spake no more, he reioiced greatly in his heart and sayd: By the faith that I owe vnto God, the master hath right wisely spoken, and verily with a willing heart I dw accord to his aduice, let this ioyfull day be appointed, and let there be cried a great Justes and Tourney against that time, and let there bee ordained rounde Tables to make feastes, and sir King, the same daye I will tourney against you in loue and fauour. Trulie sayde the King, I am well agreed, and my aduice is to let all this bee done in the Citie of Cornite, but what daye shall this bee on. Sir sayde the master, and if it may please you, my opinion is that at Bartilmewtide next it is most conuenient, for then shall all corne be auoided quite out of the fieldes, and by that time all things necessarie may be prouided for. I am content saide the king, but how saie you my Lord the Emperour. Sir said he, I am verie wel pleased. Then anon this appointment ranne ouer all the pallace in euery mans mouth, and euerie man prayed that God might send the master

maſter a right good aduenture for his faire and goodly ſpeaking. Then began againe great feaſt and ioy, & there came forth Iuglers with their falſe caſtes, and Tumblers with their bautings, and damſells with their ſportes, and made greater ſport and triumph then was before. Then the king and the Emperour laughed and made greate ioye together till it was time to ſet the Tables, then water was brought forth, and Florence tooke liſence of the king her father, and ſaid: Sir I beſeech your grace bee not diſpleaſed though theſe new Knightes goe with me to my lodging, and retaine them with me all this daie. Well ſaid the king, I am right well content, goe your waie, and make them as good cheere as you can, then Florence departed and went to her chamber, and the king abode ſtill in the Pallace, and the king of Orquenie, Philip of Sabarie, and the Archbiſhop, and Briſebar, and welnigh to the number of fiue hundred Barons and Knightes went with Florence to her lodging, and then the maſter ſaid to her: madame how ſaie ye now, we haue reſpite long inough, for many things may fall betweene this and that. Maſter ſaid ſhe, you ſaie right well, but I praie you tell me will not our Knight bee heere betweene this and that: madame ſaid he, I ſee well you haue not as yet forgotte him, it ſeemeth he is yet in your remembraunce. Of a truth ſaide Florence, I would right gladlie ſee him, and if God be pleaſed, if he come to this ſaid turney, I ſhall doe him honour, and that I praie you let him know. Madame quoth the maſter, I ſhal goe to him and ſhew him all this matter, and how that you deſire him to bee there at that time, and that for your loue there to ſhewe part of his chinalrie. Well maſter ſaid ſhe, you ſaie right well, and I praie you commend me heartelie vnto him. Thus they deuiſed that the maſter ſhould goe to the Port Noire til the time of this turney, and then he ſhuld bring with him Florence Pauilion with the Eagle of gold, and the image with the chaplet, and that it ſhould be pight in the faire medowe vnder the walls of the Citie of Cornite. Then there was water brought forth, and ſo they were ſerued full richlye

with

with great sport and triumph. Thus the king kepte open Court xv. daies, and euerie daie once Florence went to hir fathers court. At the end of xv. daies the king did giue manie rich gifts to these knights, and Florence also, insomuch as they all said, that there was neuer a more noble hearted Ladie. Then all these kings toke their leaue and departed to prouide god knights against the said day. Then master Steuen saide to Florence, madame now it is time that I depart, for I will go straight to Argence, where I am sure to finde Arthur. Ah said Florence I haue great doubt of him, for ỹ dukes nephew is full sterte. Madame qd he feare not, for if ther wer foure such they could not indure against Arthur: & then he toke his leaue and with him went Brisebar & sir Peuelon Florences marshall, and toke their ways to Argence. Now let vs leaue them, and returne we againe to Arthur.



How

How Arthur was receiued of the faire Ladie Margaret into the Citie of Argence. Chapter. 64.

THus as you haue heard before Arthur soiourned at the Abbey of the grace of God, and Whitsuntide began fast to approach, and so on a day the foule villaine came to him and said. We be but swine, for we do nothing but eat and drinke, and I thinke you be wedded to this Abbey, or els I thinke you will become a Monke, you haue promised me to fulfill my request, if you will doe so, get thee thine armes you, and let vs goe to Argence to helpe there the faire Ladie Margaret of Argenton, and to get againe her right, for it is now time. When Arthur heard him say so, he smiled & said, with a right good will, and so he armed him and tooke leaue of the Abbot and of the Conent, and mounted vpon his horse and followed the villaine, and so Arthur did ryde forth day by day, till at the last he descended from a great mountaine, and entered into the fairest meddow that euer he saw in his life, and by the side of this aforesaid medowe there ranne a faire riuer, wherein were many ships, some vnder saile, and some readie trossed, and some lying at the anker, the which riuer ranne throughout parte of the faire Citie of Argence. And then he met a Page who came then from the Citie, whom Arthur saluted, and demanded from whence he came, and he answered how that he came from the Citie of Argence, the wofullest Citie of the worlde at this time, and is in most sorrow, for I am sure there was neuer towne so sore troubled as it is at this houre. And wherefore good friend said Arthur? Sir said hee, there is no good cause why, for the Duke of Bigot and his neueu be comming to the Citie, and they haue made a crie throughout the Citie and all about the Countrey that all the noble men and others, such as hold their lands of the heire of Argenton, should be at Whitsuntide next following at the

Citie

citie of Argence, to doe their homage to sir Ascanbart the Dukes nephew, wherefore I pray God that he may die an euill death, and it is but fiftene dayes to the sayd daye, at which time hee is purposed to wedde the faire Ladie Margaret to a leawde Barber of his, and so shall she be disherited from her inheritance, and all the noblemen and burgesses of the citie and countrey thereabout are right sore displeased, for they knowe not what counsell to take in this case for lacke of a captaine, and the Ladie hath no friende but an vncle of hers, who is put in prisondy the Dukes nephew, and there is none can tell where he is become. And also this sir Ascanbart hath slaine and falsly murthered by treason her father: this sir is the sorrow that is in the noble citie of Argence. Well good friende said Arthur, God thanke you, who is yet puissaunt inough to sende helpe to this Ladie, but friend I pray you is this Duke and his nephew come as yet to the citie. Yea truly sir he is come already, and with him much people, for his people are numbred to a thousand persons at the least. That is a great rõpanie said Arthur, and so they departed and Arthur roade forth. Then the villaine beganne to crie, hee is come that shall giue light: and euer as he rode hee beheld on euerie side about him great companies of Knights comming and going toward the Citie of Argence, and Arthur saw well howe that the lande of Argenton was the most goodlyest Countrie that euer he saw, for he perceiued well how that it was full of worldly welth, he saw manie noble townes and towers, right high and mightie castles, and many faire woods and medowes, and pleasaunt riuers, and about the townes faire vines, and goodly pastures and fieldes, and there he saw manie Ladies and Damosells sporting them by the riuers side with Faulchons & Gerfaulchons on their handes, and so hee perceiued well that because of the good commodities of the countrey the Dukes nephew would disherite the faire Ladie Margaret, and at last hee saw the faire citie of Argence shining against the Sunne, inuironed with deepe ditches, the walls strongly builded,

and

and moze then fiue hundred towers made of lime & stone, and also he saw many faire Churches couered with lead, hauing toppes and pommells of golde shining against the Sunne, and also he saw y Burgesses lodgings closed with high and strong walles, barred with great chaines of yron reaching from one house to another: then Arthur in his heart praised much the noblenesse and riches both of the Citie and also of the Countery, and said to himselfe that it might well be called Argente, for it semed to be of Argent, that is to say siluer. Thus Arthur entered into the Citie, and the villaine went euer before him, with his leauer on his necke, bare legged, and his hat hanging at his backe, & euer he went forth a great pace looking downwarde to the earth, and spake to no bodie that he met, but alwaies cried out alowd, he is come that shall giue light, & the Burgesses beheld him well, and said how that hee was a fole, women and children ran to the windowes to beholde him, and when any bodie spake to him, he would answere nothing, but alwaies said, he is come that shall giue light.

Thus Arthur rode forth into the Citie and saw there nothing to doe, nor no manner of craft or occupation there vsed, no more then if it had bene vppon an high feastiuall daie, for all the shops were shut and closed, whereof Arthur had great meruaile and he beheld in euerie streete greate companies of knights walking all soberly together, with their hats hanging ouer their eyes, as though they had not bene wel pleased, and some sitting before their owne doores croslegged, leaning on their elbowes, making no manner of countenance, but soberly musing and some of them beheld the villaine, who neuer ceased crying: hee is come that shall giue light. And in this manner Arthur rode euer still forth tyll he came into the midst of the Citie, and there he saw a great companie of knights and Burgesses, about the number of .xv. tho talking together in counsaile, but it semed by their cheere they had no great ioy in their harts: then the villaine inforced himselfe to crie lowder than he did before, saying: he is come that shall giue light.

Then

Then these knights beheld the vilaine well, and sawe how Arthur followed him, wherof they had great meruaile, and at the last a knight of that companie called sir Emerie, came to Arthur, and curteouslie saluted him, saying: Sir, it is mine office in this citie to receiue and lodge all Gentlemen straungers that resorte hether, and here is mine house, therefore I desire you to alight from your horse and enter in: Sir I thanke you saide Arthur, howbeit I must needes goe farther to seeke my lodging: Sir said the knight, by your patience you shall not passe by my house to seeke anie other lodging, therefore by the faith that I owe vnto God you shall abide with me: yea, but saide the vilaine, I thinke he will not abide, for he hath promised to follow me whether so euer I goe, therefore come on your waie, for I will go before, & in his going forth, he euer cried, he is come that shall giue light. Then Arthur desired the vilain to tarrie, and at the last he agreed thereunto, & Arthur rode forth to sir Emeries dore and alighted, then the other knightes left their counsaile and did salute Arthur, & he them againe right curteouslie, and they beheld Arthur well, and praised him much in their hearts, for hee was both faire and gracious. Then sir Emerie toke Arthur by the hand and led him into a faire chamber to vnarme him, and in the meane season that he was vnarming, master Steuen, sir Brisebar, and sir Neuelon the Seneschall, were come to sir Emeries house to take their lodging, and so take their Chamber, and when the master had chaunged his apparell he went down into the hall, and the other two knightes with him, and the vilaine knew them right well, and saluted them by their names, and therwithall Bawdewin came out of the chamber from Arthur, and as soone as he sawe the master and Brisebar, he ranne and curteouslie did salute them with a ioyfull heart.

Then the master demaunded of him whereas Arthur his master was: Sir saide hee, in this Chamber here by, and then they all foorthwith entered into the Chamber, and as soone as Arthur sawe them, he ranne and embra-

ted the maister, and after Wisebar, and saide. Mine owne good companions of the rock you be right hartelie welcome bether. Also he did salute sir Neuelon the seneschall, who in his hart praised him greatlie. And when sir Emery saw how the maister made so great chere to Arthur, than he thought verelie that he should be some great knight, for hee knew wel that the maister was a kings sonne. Than they sate them downe on a beddes side, and the maister recounted all that had ben in king Emendus court, and how that themperour desired to haue had Florence in mariage at the same time, and shewed him how by his meanes he did let it at that time, and gate lenger respite till Bartilmewtide, at which time there is cited a great Iuste and Tournie, and there he shewed him in his eare the salutation that Florence did send him, and how that she desired him to be there at that time and to shew there part of his prowesse, for hir sake. Than Arthur smiled and embraced the maister manie times.

And when they hadde thus talked a good space together, than the maister called to him sir Emerie their hoast, and caused him to sit downe by them, and when they were sate downe, Arthur demaunded of him wherefore the knightes and Citizens of that citie were so sad, and hee answered and saide, sir we haue all good cause so to bee, and than he began to shew him how that in the same house there was a damosel who was daughter to the Lord of that same citie, and of all the land of Argenton, and how that she was the right heire of all that countrey, and how that the Duke of Bigores neuew did falsely murder by treason the Lord hir father, and so shewed him all the whole matter as ye haue heard before, and also he shewed him how that the Dukes neuew would marrie hir to his Barbour, and how that hee had disherited hir of fortie thousand pound of land by yearelie rent, and now hee hath sommoned all the gentilmen of the countrie round about, and will that they shall doe homage vnto him, and so it beehoueth them to haue a false murtherer to their Lorde, and to deny their rightful heire,

and

and therefore all the noble men of this Countrie and Citie haue bene in counsaile for this matter: but the conclusion of their counsaile was thus, howe that they woulde make no manner of resystaunce against the Dukes Nephew, but rather suffer their Ladie to be disherited and banished from her owne lande, howbeit right gladlie they woulde moue warre against him, but they lacked a Captaine, for they thinke verilie that a woman to bee chiefe head in warre shoulde cause it at length to be of little effect. Then Arthur saide, I haue heard somewhat of this matter before, but I praie you curteous hoast is this said Ladie heere in your house: Yea truelie saide hee, heere beneath in a faire Parlour, for shee hath beene euer in my house since the death of her father, for I haue promised neuer to faile her. Then master Steuen saide, good hoast I require you knowe this Ladies pleasure whether shee will be content that we might speake with her: Sir saide hee, with a right good will, then hee went into the Parlour whereas she was the same time going to euening Prayer, and therewith she espyed syr Emerie and said: syr you bee welcome, and he saluted her and said: madame, heere is aboue in one of my chambers a Knight the most fairest that is in the worlde, and master Steuen the King of Sorolois, Clarke and sonne vnto the noble King of Valefound, doth honour this Knight, the which Knight would faine speake with you, and surelie as farre as I perceiue by him, hee is minded to helpe and succour you in your need, shall I cause him to come speake with you. To come to me friend quoth the Ladie, naie God forbidde, for they that haue neede ought to seeke for helpe, and not to tarrie till it be brought to them, for and they doe, it may fortune to come too late, and as for mee I haue greate neede of him if hee woulde helpe mee, and hee none of mee, therefore it is great reason that I go vnto him.

Then she apparailed her and went forth and entred into the chamber whereas they wer, and as sone as they saw her, they arose & did salute her, requesting her to syt downe,

and she semed to them right fayre, gentle and gracious, & dyd salute them one after an other right sweetely.

Then Arthur sayd, faire lady, why haue ye put your selfe to so much payne to come hether to vs, for we would gladly haue come to you. She answered and saide, sir it is reason that I should so doe, for I am a poore disherited ladie, & therefore it is requisite that I goe seke for helpe and succour. Than maister Steuen demaunded of hir hir estate, and she recounted to him euery thinge as ye haue heard here before, and weping saide. Alas I poore desolate creature that I am, that was wont to be kept in great honour with my Lord and Father, who falsely was slaine by this Dukes neuew and hath put myne vncle in prison, and I cannot tell whether he be a liue or dead. Faire lady sayde maister Steuen, for Gods sake be ye of good chere, your vncle is in good helth and out of prison, by the same token that he is called the markes, and also he hath an old hurt on his browe. And as sone as she heard that, her hart began to reioyce, and she requested of him to know who had deliuered him out of prison. Certainly faire Lady said he, the same knight that sitteth here by you, who hath conquered the strange Castell of the porte Noyre. When she heard that, she fell down on hir knees before Arthur and humbly thanked him. Than Arthur toke hir vp and saide, alas faire lady why do you thus, for gods sake set your hart at rest, for truely I offer my seruice to you and the best of my power to help & defend your right, if it be to morrow nexte I shall be readie to sustaine the battaile as long as my life wil last. Than the lady would haue kneeled down & humbly thanked him saying: sir I giue to you all my right and enheritance, whē ye haue won it, & mine vncle shal be your seruant. Alas gentle knight I can say no more, I haue loste my father, wherefore it is great domage that I liue, for I am wery of my lyfe, than she began to weepe and saide. Sir I had rather that you had my right than my mortall enemie.

God ladie said Arthur, if god be pleased I shal deliuer it to

your

your owne profite, for truly I will not haue therof the value of a pennie. When sir Emerie heard that this knight had deliuered out of prison the Marques, and how that he had atchieued the aduentures of the Port Noyre, than he thought verely in his heart that it was he, that had atchieued the aduentures of the tenebrous tower, wherwith he stept forth, and kneeled downe before Arthur saying: Gentle and noble knight in whom all bountie flourisheth, for Gods sake bring vs out of the tribulation that we bee in, and make light all the hearts of the whole Baronie of Argenton, take this enterprise on you, and all we shall willingly helpe and aide you, I vndertake you shall haue .xl. thousand persons in harneis to giue attendaunce on you, the which are all subiects to my Ladie here present. And sir know you for a certaintie that I haue all these readie, & will prouide for horses and harneis, golde and siluer, sufficient to sustaine your hoast longer space than a yeare, the which I will put into your hands for the helping of my ladie, and I am here readie the first that will put my bodie & life in iopardie. Madame said Arthur, if all your other knights be such, you haue much good people and kinde.

Then he said to sir Emerie, sir I promise you faithfully to helpe this Ladie to the best of my power. Then sir Emery departed from them, and went and assembled together all the other knights of the Citie that were pertaining to the Ladie and said. Lords and masters, I thinke verely that God hath visited vs, for ther is a knight in my house, who hath deliuered out of prison the noble Marques vnckle to my Ladie, also he hath atchieued all the aduentures of the Port Noyre, as Master Steuen hath shewed vnto my Ladie, and according to the troth I thinke it be hee that dide such great prowesse in the valley of Walefound, and at the tower tenebrous, and also he hath promised himselfe to be readie at my Ladies commaundement, and to defende her right against the Dukes newe though he be newer so fel. Certainly said all those knights, we beleeue verely that al his trauaile is in wast, for this Dukes newe is sterke, and

doubteth no creature, for there is not such a Knight in all the world, without it be the knight that hath atchieued the aduentures that you speake of. Verely said sir Emerie, I beleeue the same knight is he, and at the least I am sure it is hee, that hath conquered the Porte Noire. When anone these tidings were spred abroad throughout all the Citie, and there came Knights & Burgesses by great companies into sir Emeries house to see this straunge knight, and so they entred into a great hall, and when they were gathered together they were to the number of fiue hundred persons, & they desired sir Emerie to goe and shew this knight Straunger, that many of the knights of Argence were come thether to speake with him. When Arthur heard this hee was very ioyfull and arose, and hee and the maister went forth into the hall and brought with them the faire Ladie Margaret, and when Arthur was among them, hee was bigge and mightie and high to behold, with strong armes and well proportioned in euery member, and he had on a robe of scarlet, and the colour of his face was of a rose all hisly, and he was of a higher stature by the head then any man that was there: and when these Knightes and Barrons saw him they had great ioy, and thanked God that he had sent him thether at that houre, and they all saide vnto him. Sir you be right heartely welcome into this Citie of Argence, and Arthur rendred salutations againe to them right courteously. Then a knight called sir Robert Arbur who was most puissaunt of riches and landes of all those knights that were pertaining to the Ladie, stept forth and said: Sir, it is giuen vs to vnderstande howe that you are in minde to aide and helpe my Ladie that is here present, therefore sir we would faine know in this case what you are purposed to do. Sir quoth Arthur, verely I am in full purpose to iespard my bodie and life against this Dukes nephew, and to proue how that traiterously, he hath slaine this Ladies father, and falsly diherited her.

Then sir Robert saide, God giue you grace and power thus to doe, for this Dukes Nephewe is right fierce and

fell, howbeit he is in the wrong and we in the right, therefore if God be pleased, he may be confounded and thus we say unto you, we behall Gentlemen and Burgesses pertaining heere to my Ladie, and we faithfully promise you both our aide and persons, and also our goods though wee loose our heads in the quarrell, and sir of this minde both wee & all our men be, and we lacke nothing but a Captaine, therefore doubt nothing, for if the Dukes nephew moove anye strife, you shall haue more than thirtie thousande fighting men. Faire Ladie saide the maister, you haue much noble people. Truly sir said she that is of a trouth, for they loued right well their Lord that is dead. As they thus talked, there passed by them a great route of horsemen, and they went to the windowes, and beheld knights and others in the streete on horsebacke, to the number of fiue hundred persons, and in the first front there was the Duke of Bigot and sir Isembart his nephew, who were riding to meet the king of Orqueney, who as then was comming to the Citie, but his comming was for Arthurs sake, and not for the Dukes, which the Duke knew not, and therefore pursuayed the kings lodging in the Bishops Pallaice, and had pursuaied for Philip Duke of Sabarie in the Abbey of S. Germaines. And so when he had met the King he welcommed him into the Citie, and so they rode forth together, & passed by sir Emeries house. Then Brisebar as hee stode looking out of a windowe, espied where there rode by the King of Orquenie, sir Artaude, sir Morant, sir Oliuer, and sir Vicear: and Brisebar as lowde as he coulde, cried Arthur, Arthur, wherewith the king and all that rode by, looked vp toward the windowe, and there they sawe sir Brisebar and sir Meuelon the Seneschall, and maister Steuen and Arthur, who seemed to them to be a man of great stature, and anone the king did thinke within his heart how that it shoulde bee Arthur. Thereupon hee called to him the Duke of Bigot and sayde, Sir I pray you goe to your lodging, for I meane to lye at this house.

Still. Then

Then the Duke would haue descended with him, but the King in no wise would suffer him, and so the Duke and his newew departed, as they that knew full little why ỹ King and all those Knights were come to that Citie. Then the King toke with him Philip his Nephewe, and the Archbishop, and sir Ancean, and entered into sir Emeries house, and caused the gates to be closed after them, and sent all his household to the Bishops place, and sir Philip sent his to the Abbey of Saint Germaines. Then sir Baisebar & the master and other of theyr companie ranne to the King & imbraced him and all his Traine, and Arthur came before the King and saluted him, whom the king toke by ỹ hand, and Baisebar tolde him in his eare howe that it was Arthur. Then the King said, my deere friend Arthur, you bee right well met heere in the land of Argenton, as ỹ Knight that I haue most desired to see and know, for certainlye I had not come hether at this time, but onely to speake with you. Sir said Arthur you haue done your pleasure, to trauaile your selfe right sore to come hether to see so simple a person as I am. Then the King entred into a little chamber and did shifte him, and when hee was readie he came againe into the hall, and there founde all the Barrons and Knights together, and Philip Duke of Sabarie was talking with Arthur. Then ỹ King laide his hand on Arthurs shoulder and laide, good friend I pray you that from hence forth you will be of my household and that you will take of my gifte, robes, horse, and harneis, and I promise you faithfully that I will be to you a good friende, and so you & I shall be good companions and friends. Sir said Arthur I thanke you, for truely I am yours in all places and at your commaundement where so euer I am, but and if it please you I haue offered alreadie to my Ladie Florence my seruice, Daughter to the mightie king Emendus of Norroloys, at the request of sir Baisebar, and as hee hath reported to mee, her Grace hath courteouslye accepted of my seruice: seeing then I haue alreadie so noble a mistres, I am very loath to displease her Grace. In ỹ name of God

said

said the king, you saie right well, for I repute her companie and mine as all one thing, and good friend beholde heere sir Philip my nephew duke of Sabarie, verilie I loue him entirelie, therefore I require you let him and you be companions and friends, and each of you to loue other: Sir said Philip, as God helpe me I promise him from hence forth faithfull loue and amitie, nor I haue nothing but hee shall be Lord thereof in all places, and against al persons, except you mine vncle, I shall be readie to aide and succour him. Right deere friend quoth Arthur, God reward you, & I am and shall be your knight against all the worlde except my Ladies grace who hath retained me. All this is but right said the king, and this pleaseth me verie wel, then the king toke Philip by the hand and said to Arthur: Decre friend heere I put into your hand and keeping Duke Philip my nephew, loe heere take him to you, and also nephewe I put into your hand this knight in likewise take him to you, thē these two knightes embraced together, and promised each other faithfull companie, and sir Emerie was glad because that he had lodged in his house such a companie of noble men, that he reioyced in his heart, and all the other Barons of ỳ citie beheld meruailouslie Arthur, & praised him much in their hearts, and then the vilaine who was in the companie with the Ladie, cried as loude as he could, he is come that shal giue light, and the king and all the other did laugh at him right heartlie. Then the tables were set vp, and water was brought forth, and the king sate down and Arthur by him, and then the Bishop and Duke Philip, and so they were serued verie richlie, for sir Emerie made them cheere with all his heart, and when dinner was done they entered into a faire Garden, and there were together the king and Arthur, the Ladie Margaret and the Archbishop, and other to the number of fiue persons, and all the other companie were without with sir Emerie, and they talked all of Arthur and said how that he had of God many great gifts, for he was both faire and of noble manners, and had atchieued such aduentures as were greatlie to bee doubted, howbeit

they said he had enterprised a great thing to make warre against the Duke of Bygor and his nephew: Sirs said Brisebar doubt nothing of him, for I know wel he hath atchieued oftentimes a greater enterprise then this is, & as then the King held the Ladie by the hand and said: faire Ladie, beholde here your Knight, whome I suppose will doe you good seruice to morrowe. Sir saide the Ladie, I praie God send him good fortune, so they were thus long talking together till it was time to goe to their restes, then euerie man departed, and the King, Arthur, Philip and master Steuen, lodged all together in one chamber, and the Ladie departed into her chamber right ioyfull of her good aduenture that God had sent her, and all that night she slept but little for ioy, but alwaies in her praiers thanking God & beseeching him to aide and succour her champion, and likewise sir Emerie and all the rest of the citie.

How the next daie the master aunswered for the Ladie, and Arthur tooke her quarrell in her hand, against the Dukes Nephewe sir Ilembart. Chapter. 65.

IN the morning the King and Arthur arose, and all other Barons and Knightes of the Citie, and went and heard diuine Seruice, and after Seruice they rung the common Bell of the Towne, and thereby assembled all the communaltie of the Citie together before sir Emeries house, to the intent to keep this Knight Arthur, that the Duke nor none of his should doe him hurt or treason, and the same daye there came to sir Emeries house all the Kings power, and all sir Philips strength, and all other knightes pertaining to King Emendus, who were come thether to see the battell betweene Arthur and the Dukes nephewe. Then the king entred into the hall, and ther was Arthur and master Steuen, sir Philip of Sabarie, sir Brisebar, sir Artaude, sir Oliuer, and sir Uicer, & also the Ladie Margaret, and there they deuised how they shuld be ordered in y iourney. Then

the Duke of Bigot sent to sir Emeries house commanding him that he should incontinently bring the Ladye Margaret with him to his court, and also the Duke caused to be cried throughout all the citie, that on paine of death all the nobles of the citie shuld come to the court to do homage to his nephew sir Ilembart, and when the Dukes messengers had shewed the Ladie how she should come to the Court, to the intent to be married: then the master aunswered & said: Sirs, shew vnto the Duke your Lord how that shortly she shall come to the Court, and ther do euerie thing she ought. Then departed the messengers and went to the duke & his nephew, and shewed them how that the Lady was not vnprouided of good counsaile, for all the knightes of the Citie were in her companie, and more then fiue hundred other, & the most part of all the commons of the Citie, and also they shewed how there was a knight with her who wold maintaine her quarrell, and when the dukes nephew heard that, being ouercome with pride, he said: What knight is that, certainly if he meddle anie thing with the matter, I shall hang him by the necke, and therfore he doth but ill to come to be of her counsaile, howbeit there is an olde Prouerbe y saith, Oftentimes he wanteth of his wil that folishly thinketh: and so it fared by this dukes nephewe, for ere it was night he was in greater ieopardie thē this knight was, for he left his life to pledge. Then the king & Philip went into the pallace, and the duke and his nephew did meet them, and so brought them into his Court, and there in the open hall they sate them downe. Then anone after came the Ladie, & Arthur on her one side, and all the other Nobles and Burgeses, and commons of the citie did follow them, and thus they were a great companie that entered into the pallace, and when the King sawe her he arose, and so did the duke, but his nephew of proude heart sate still, and would not rise, wherof he was much blamed of euerie person that saw him, and when the people wer all silent, master Steuen said to the duke: Sir you haue commaunded here this Ladie that shee should come to your Court, beholde heere shee

is to know what is your pleasure and wil. Then the dukes nephew as he that was ful of pride arose on his feet, & sayd: sir Clarke we haue nothing to doe with you, therefore bee you in peace and let vs alone: Sir saide the master, for as pore Clarke I am reputed with them y knowe me, & as for that which I haue said, it is for this Lady, and I thinke she will auouch my saying, how saie you madame, be you pleased that I shall speake for you or no? Certainely saide the Ladie, I will keepe firmely all that euer you haue sayde or shall saie, and as to you sir Duke, I require you to doe mee right this day, and if you will not, I put both me and al my goods and lands into the handes of the king of Orquenie & of sir Philip his nephew Duke of Sabarie, who are both heere present: Certainlie faire damsell said the Duke Philip, doubt you not that anie bodie shall do you wrong where I am present. Well madame said the King, I receiue you with a right good will into my handes sith it is your pleasure so to put your selfe. Then the Duke of Bygor sayde: Damsell I will doe you right, therefore master speake you on and shew what you will in this ladies behalfe: Sir said the master, I say how that you and your nephew haue sent for my Ladie Margaret who is now heere present, therfore if it please you shew vs what is the cause. Then the Dukes nephew sir Ilembart said, sir Clarke I will shewe you the cause, it is so that I am fullie purposed to giue her in marriage to a Barbour of mine, & also heere openlie I straightlie commaund all the noble men and Burgeses of this Citie, & of the land of Argenton, on pain of losing their lands, that incontinentlie this daie they come and doe homage to me as to their chiefe Lord and gouernour, & they that will not doe thus, I forbid them their heritages that they hold, & not to be so hardie as to enter into them anie more. Then the master said, sir wee perceiue well what good right you would doe to this Lady if there were no knight that would auntswere you, howbeit I will not spare to speake according to right: Noble Duke it is of truth that all the people of the land of Argenton, as wel the noble men and Burgeses,

ses, as the common people, haue heard and seene, & are well assured, that sir Miseer sometime Lord of the land of Argenton, was right heire, and this noble Ladie Margaret here present was lawfullie descended from him, and is heire of all the heritage and goods pertaining to her foresaid father, and therefore sir as well all the high Barons of this Citie and land of Argenton, and Knights and Burgeses, as other meane people as well such as be here present, as they that be absent, reputeth, taketh, and holdeth her for their naturall Ladie, being lawfull heire of all the land of Argenton: furthermore sir I saie that sir Isembart your nephew here present, mindeth wrongfullie and without cause to disherit this Ladie of her heritage, and hath alreadie put out al her Officers, and hath set in their steede Officers of his owne, therefore we desire you that this Ladies lands may be deliuered againe to her, and that she may be recompenced for such wrongs as she hath had, or else let him shew a lawfull cause why she should lose her lands. Master Clarke said sir Isembart, I will shew you no cause why, but I will keepe it whether she wil or no: then said the master, here lacketh right, but sir Duke as you bee a righteous Judge, lette vs haue iustice: then the Duke said, nephew you must tell the cause why you will with-holde her heritage. Well sir said he, sith it pleaseth you I will shew the cause: Sir Clarke it is so, that the father of this Ladie for the great loue that he had to me, after that we were once accorded together before the duke here mine vncle, at ỹ last it fortuned that a grieuous maladie toke him the which cost him his life, and ere he died, because of the good companie that I kept him, and for the entire loue that he had to me, he gaue me generallie all his lands, without reseruing of any thing to himselfe or anie of his, and so gaue me his gloue in record of full possession thereof, and this Ladie is his daughter, whom her owne father did disherit, and not I, yet her father desired me that I would make her a Nunne, and giue her thirtie pound of yeerelie rent to finde her withall, but because that her Father loued me so well, and that it is a hard thing to make a

young

young lustie Damsell a Nunne, for oftentimes such are afterwarp troubled, considering it is harde to resist against nature, therefore in eschuing of such inconueniences, I suppose to marrie her, and assigne to her two hundred pound of yeerelie rent, and I will that she shall do her homage to me, as to her chiefe Lord: then the master saide vnto the Duke, sir I shall make sufficient ans were in this case, but first we will haue assuraunce of him, whatsoeuer be saide, hee shall moue at this time no strife therefore, and my Ladie heere for her part in likewise shall make you assuraunce. Why said sir Ysembart, who is it that will bee pledge or meddle for the Ladie. Then sir Philip Duke of Sabarie stept forth and saide: I am heere present who will bee pledge for this daie, & likewise said more then fiue hundred other Barons. Well said the Duke of Bygor, I will be pledge for my nephew. That is sufficient inough said the master, then truly I shall ans were you, and wheras your nephew saith, this Ladies father had a great sickneſſe, I say that your nephew sir Ysembart did murther him and al his, falsly by treason, lying in a waite for him by the way vpon a prepensed malice, without anie occasion giuen on his parte, and furthermore, whereas he saith that it is his possession, all the lands of Argenton, not by right, but it is by fraude, for hee keepeth it falsely without right, and yet sir if he will acknowledge himselfe of the murther of this Ladies father, & how that wrongfullie he holdeth her land, in this Ladies name I require you and so doe wee all, that wee maye haue right iudgement on him, & that it may be done to him as it ought to be done to a traitour, murtherer, common theefe, or robber, and sir if he denie all this, suffer this Ladie to proue all this to bee of truth by her knight, who is heere present by her, and readie to maintaine her quarrell bodie to bodie against your nephew sir Ysembart. And when the residue of the Ladies and Barons heard the master speake so boldly, each of them did point at other, and saide, this master doubteth little the pride of sir Ysembart, who when he heard himselfe called to his owne face murtherer, theefe,

and

and robber, he was so full of anger ỹ he blushed for despite, and closed his fist, and stept forth, and thought to haue striken the master with a knife that hee had in his hande, but the people separated them, and when Arthur sawe that, hee laid his hand on his sword, saying: sir faire and easilie I would counsaile you, for bee you certaine that if you laie anie hand on him, all the world shall not saue your life. Then the great vilaine began to crie three times, hœ is come that shall giue light: wherewithall the king of Orquenie laughed at the vilaine. And when Philip of Sabarie sawe Arthur moued, he stept forth, & more then fiue hundred with him of knightes, and inuironed the Ladie and Arthur, readie to aide & defend them if need were. Then tidings went abroade in the Citie, how that Arthur was likelye to bee slaine in the pallace, wherfore thether came running all the whole communaltie of the Citie, and burst open the Pallace gates, and thought to haue slaine both the Duke and his nephew, but the king of Orquenie with much pain appeased the people, till at the last a seruaunt of the Dukes came to him and said, sir doe you right to these people, or els you are but dead and all yours, for all the commens of this Citie are heere without in your Pallace, and hath broken open your gates, therefore deale wisely I would with you, and when the Duke heard that, he doubted himselfe greatlie, and would faine that he had ben in his owne Countrie. Then Arthur saide to him, sir it is of truth all that the master hath said of your nephew, how that he is a murtherer, traitour, thefe, and robber, heere is my gage to prone it true my bodie against his in mortall battaile, for this Ladies sake. Then the vilaine began to crie as he did before, and Arthur cast downe before the Duke his glone, wher w̄ he answered & said: sir knight you speake largely, I knowe not what moueth you so to do, but I praie you restrain your words, if my nephew hath done anie trespasse against this ladie, I am puisant inough to make her such amends, ỹ she shall hold her self content, & I pray you faire damsell put all this matter into my handes, and I promise you I shall so

doe,

doe that you shall be well content therewith: Sir saide the master, you are a right wise and a sage Prince, and are wel worthie to giue counsaile in great matters, if it please you to doe as I shall shew you, your nephewe did strike off by treason this Ladies Fathers head, and if you will therfore strike off your nephewes head, and giue it to this Damsell in recompence of her fathers head, then she shal be content, or else she shall be defended by her Knight, and when sir Iscembart heard all that, he was so sore chafed with ire, that he said, there should neuer be made anie accord in that matter, but onelie by the swoorde, and when that I haue vanquished this Knight, I shall hang him by the necke, and shal burne this Clarke and Damsell in a fire, and her did cast downe his gage, being counsailed by his Knightes, for they beleeued verilie that there was not in all the world so good a Knight as he. Then the vilaine cried out, he is come that shall giue light. But the master said to the Duke, sir do as right requireth, receiue these gages, and so with great pain at the last the Duke tooke them vp, and then the battayle was concluded to be incontinentlie the same daie. Then sir Iscembart went to arme him, and the Ladie lead Arthur to sir Emeries house, and there his Knightes did arme him, & the master saide to him, syr Arthur, beare this daie in this mortall battaile your white shæld, and he answered and said: if God be pleased I will not beare it for feare of one Knight, nor yet for two such as he is. Thus it was knowen throughout all the Citie howe their Ladie was arming of her champion at sir Emeries house, and how that the battaile was agreed to be the same daie, then all the Belles in euerie Church began to ring, and all the people of the Citie and the countrie besought God to helpe and succour Arthur, & the Chanons, Priests, and Clarks, in Copes of gold and silke, all bare footed prayed to God for their Ladies champion, and all these processions came and met Arthur in the stræte, who as then was mounted on his horse, and Philip Duke of Sabarie with him, & more then fiue hundred other knights in his companie, and when Arthur saw

thes

these processions, and the Bishop mytred, and all bare footed, his heart yearned and he wept for pitie, and hee did alight from his horse and kneeled downe, and praied with them. Then Arthur and all his companie mounted againe on their horses, and thus he was brought into the field, the whole Cleargie of all the Citie were on their knees making their praiers to God, that he would that daie be helpe and succour to their Ladie and her champion. Then the King of Orquenie came into the field and commaunded his Nephew sir Philip Duke of Sabarie to keepe the field, so that there should no wrong nor treason bee wrought there that daie.

Then sir Philip armed himselfe and tooke in his company Brisebar, sir Nevelon, sir Ancean, sir Antaude, & welnigh to the number of fiue hundred Knightes of the Court of Emendus. Then ỳ Ladie came to ỳ field with more then a thousand of her men with her. Then sir Isembart was armed, and as he passed by the people euerie man said, goe thy waie, we praie God that thou maist die an euill death, and when he was in the field where Arthur abode for him, the master said to the Duke, sir a mortall battaile ought not to be done without an oath. Then the Duke caused to bee brought forth a booke, and Arthur tooke his oath and said, by the contents of this holie booke sir Isembart the Duke of Bygors nephew who is heere present, murthered or caused to be murthered falselie and without cause the Lorde of Argenton father to the Ladie Margaret heere present, and wrongfullie he would disherit her, and therewith hee kissed the booke, and leapt vppon his horse as lightlie as though he hadde beene but in a Jacket, and so set himselfe apart, and stretched him on his horse, and all that viewed him saide, beholde the countenaunce of yonder Knight, see how hee dresseth himselfe on his horse and plungeth downe his sheelde, and the King and all the other also did well behold him, and praised him in their hearts aboue al other knights that euer they sawe.

Then sir Isembart tooke his oath and saide, that as

God should help him, he never slew the lorde of Argenton, nor never so much as thought it, and than bee would have killed the booke, but he might not, for in his rising vp bee had such a paine in his head that almost therby he lost his sight, which caused all the people that saw him to say that he had but an euill countenance, that semed he was in the wrong, than he lept vp vpon his horse very beauely, & Arthur was readie prepared for him on the other part of the feeld.

When the Duke of Bigor praied sir Ascembarte his neuew that he would leue the battaile and said, how that he would make the peace and accord of both sides, but in no wise hee would so doe, but sware that hee would neuer make peace till that he had the head of his enemie from his bodie, & the ladie brent: but diuers think to doo many things, the hurt whereof lighteth on their own neckes, and so it fared with him. And when the duke saw that he could make no peace, he commaunded that they should doe their best: than both the Knights set spurres to their horses and made them run with great fury, and strake ech other with great mightie speares, for both Knights were of great force and they encountered so rudely that both their speres all to sheuered to their sides, and they russhed so togither with their bodies and helmes, that they fel downe both to the earth. But Arthur who was the more iustier Knight quickly leapt vpon his feete and drewe out traunchser his good sword, and all that season sir Ascembarte lay still on the earth his feete vpward and his head downeward. And when Arthur sawe that he lay so vneasely, he kept to him and lift him vp, and layde his shielde vnder his head, and withdrew him selfe a little from him, wherefore hee was greatly praised of the King and of all the other people. And the King saide to his neuew, sir Philip it seemeth well this Knight hath a right noble and a gentle heart. Verely saide the duke Philip it can be none otherwise but that he must needes discend of a noble blood, for there is in him no whit of vilanie.

And when sir Ascembarte was reuiued out of his traunce, he start vpon his feete and toke his shield vnto him, and drew

drew his swoorde, and running to Arthur hee gaue him a greate stroke on the shielde, and strake awaie a peece of his hawberke, and the stroke did slide doown to the earth. Then he said to Arthur, you made me right now to fall in a sleepe, but ere it bee night I will make you sleepe so that you shall neuer wake.

Then Arthur answered him and said, sir you promise verie much, but I cannot tell whether you bee able to performe it, and therewith Arthur strake him on the healme with such force, that hee bare awaie a great peece thereof, so that one of his eares might well be seene, then he cast his sheeld before him, and Arthur gaue him such another stroke that hee clave his sheelde a sunder in the middest, and the stroke did passe by his arme, so that the bloud followed, and with the same stroke the swoorde entered into the earth nigh a foote, and all the people that sawe that stroke sayde: God God what Knight is yonder, who maye sustaine his strokes, there is no Knight like him, and truelie so he was as then the best Knight of the woorld, for he was of that courage, that the more he had to doe the more hardinesse was in him, and when sir Isembart felt himselfe wounded, hee strake Arthur on the healme, so that it entered till it came to the coife of steele, and then the stroke did glaunce downe toward to the lefte side, and strake awaie as much of the Hawberke as it touched, but it came not neere his flesh, for certainelie if sir Isembart had beene a true and faithfull man, hee hadde beene a right good Knight, for hee neuer found his match before that time, but then hee hadde to doe with him that abated his great pride, and presentlie Arthur strake him on the healme and clave asunder both healme and coife, and as the swoord tourned, it cutte awaie one of his eares cleane from his head, and a greate peece of the brawne of his shoulder, and a parte of his harneis, till it came vnto the bare ribbes, and all those that sawe it saide, Iesus howe maye any such strokes bee giuen by anie Knight now liuing.

Then And

And when sir Ysembarte felt him selfe so wounded, he was enraged with furie and saide: Sir me thinketh you haue founde mee, but by all the saintes in heauen I will reuenge it, than he lift vp his swoord and strake Arthur on the shield so that he bare awaye a great peece of his harneys. And when Arthur felt the stroke so heuy and puissant, he stepte a side as he that was bothe stronge and light, and well and warely put the stroke by, the which was needeful, for if the stroke had light vpon him, by all reason he had bene righte sore wounded. And than Arthur began to wax angrie, and toke his swoorde in his hand with great wrath, and addressed him toward syr Ysembart and strake him so rudely that he cut away arme and shoulder, and all the flesh of his side vnto the bare ribbes, and did cut his legge almost clean asonder in the thick of the thigh, & yet for all that the swoorde entered into the earth halfe a foote, than sir Ysembart fell downe to the earth, and Arthur kept ouer him and thrust his swoord toward his visage and said, false recreant knight without thou wilt make open knowledge of thy default, I wil thrust my swoord into thy head. Than he cryed Arthur mercie and saide, grentle knight slay mee not, but send for myne vncle and the Lady Margaret, and for all the other Barons, and than I will shew you all the cause. And when they were all come, he sayde. Damosell certainely I sleive falsely by treason your father, and wrongfully without a cause haue disherited you, wherefore I render againe to you your lande, and crye you mercie in that I haue trespassed to you. Than answered the damosel & said, sir god do iudgement to you for his part, for as for mee now haue I but right, that you bee in this plight that ye are in. And when the Duke heard that, bee desyred the Damosell for gods sake to pardon him and to saue his life, for he hath lost an arme and a legge, and I require you lette that suffise at this time. Faire lady said Arthur how say you haue I don enough at this time, or elles shal I do any more, and euer sir Ysembart lay stil & cried for mercie, saying, I yelde mee as recreant & vanquished like a traitour & murtherer.

Than

Than the Duke kneeled down before the Ladie and held vp his hands and required hir that he might haue his neuewe in the same plight as he was in. And whan the common people of the countrie saw the duke desire the ladie to pardon his neuew, they were in great feare least that she would haue graunted his requeſt, wherfore a great companie of them ruſht into the preaſe till they came where ſir Iſembart lay ſtill, and they all at ones laide on him in ſuch wyſe, that they left no ioynt together with other. And whan the duke of Bygot ſaw that, he was a fraide of him ſelfe, and ſo toke his horſe and fled his way homeward into his own countrie as faſt as he might. Than ỳ King of Orqueny ſaide. Madame, God and this knight hath this daie done you great honour. And than ſir Philip demaunded of Arthur how he did, he anſwered, right well I thank God. Than all the Lords and knights mounted on their horſes, but the Ladie and manie other people went vnto the great cathedrall church of the Citie, and there ſhe and they gaue thankes vnto our Lorde Ieſus Chriſt, and within a little while after Arthur and ſir Philip and all the other Lordes and knights came thether, and the Biſhop & all the whole Clergie receiued Arthur with ſolempne Procеſſion, and ſo for great ioye all the Belles of the Citie were ronge three daies to gether, & all the Burgeſes throughout euerie wher as Arthur ſhould paſſe, did hange out of their windowes and on their walles, cloth of Golde and of Silke, and riche carpets and cuſhions and couerings of greene, and riche apparaile of Ermines lay abroade in euerie windowe, and faire Ladies and damoſells beholding Arthur their champion. And whan the ladie had done hir praiers, ſhe iſſued out of the minſter. Then began Iuglers and tomblers, & minſtrells to make great ioye and ſport. And the King led this Ladie on the one ſide, & duke Philip on the other ſyde, and ſo led hir forth to the pallace, and all the other barons brought forthe Arthur, and as he paſſed throughout euerie ſtrete, the Burgeſs, Ladies and damoſils for ioye dyd caſt at him floures of pleaſure, and ſayd, God encreace in you

bountie and honour. And the great vilains ran euer daun-
cing before for Ioye, and cried euer, now darkenes is tour
ned to light. And whan the King had brought the Ladie
to the pallace he saide, now faire ladie ye be welcom home
to your owne rightfull heritage. Sir said she, God grant
you the hie ioye of Heauen, and kepe and preserue my good
Knight that hath deliuered me from mine enemies and sa-
ued my land.

Than anon after Arthur entred into the Pallace and
the maister and all other Lordes and Knightes with him:
and the Ladie saide to Arthur, gentil Knight ye haue deli-
uered to me my land, the which was vtterly loste, by your
noble prowesse: wherefore I hold the land I haue of God
and you. Therefore I will to you make faithfull homage,
and take you for my lord, the which acknowledging, I will
make here openlie before all the nobles present.

Madame saide Arthur, for Gods sake saye ye neuer so to
mee, for that shall ye not doe. Sir saide shee, ye haue giuen
it to mee, and of you I hold it, I am but a woman alone,
and am in purpose neuer to be maried, seing that my lorde
and father is dead, the which I thanke mine enemies, but
now they haue such rewardes as they haue deserued, and
I know well as sone as ye depart out of this countrie, the
duke of Bigor will assaile me againe in the reuenging of
his neuewes death, and if he can take away from me that
he hath giuen me. Faire Ladie said Arthur I promise you
I shall help you to keepe your right to the best of my pow-
er, and whan so euer and as often as ye send to me, I shall
leue all things and come to you wher so euer I shal be. Sir
saide the lady, God giue you a C. M. thanks, but sir I swore
to you by the faith that I haue borne to my lord and father,
that I will kepe no foote of land of that ye haue giuen mee,
without I make to you homage therefore. And whan the
King heard that he said to Arthur, sir take hir homage sith
she will needes doe it, and in likewise counsailed him duke
Philip and master Steuen, & many other: at the last with
much intreatie Arthur toke homage of the lady, & of diuers

other

other Barons of the land. Then begame there to be made great feasts and ioy, and sir Emerie, Brisebar, and Artaud, were gouernours of the feast and triumph, and when the meat was readie, then Arthur was brought forth, & so there washed the King and the Bishop, and the Ladie Margaret together, and then Arthur and Duke Philip, & master Steuen, and other, and euerie man after his degree, and so they were all in as great mirth and ioy as could be deuised, the which ioy indured but a little season, for all their ioy was soone tourned into greate trouble, for all the Court was in great displeasure, as you shall heare heereafter.

How the same season while the king of Orquenie & all these other noble people wer at dinner in great ioy and mirth, there came in a messenger from the woũded Knight to Arthur, desiring him to come & helpe him, or else hee would threaten him of his death, wherewith all the Court was sore troubled, and ceased all their ioy for the loue of Arthur, for incontinently he departed from the Court & went with the messenger, and how all the court feared him greatly for that enterprise, for ther was not a-nie that euer returned from that aduenture. cap. 66

AS this noble Court was in this foresaide ioye, and while that they were at dinner, there entered into the pallace on horsebacke a Squier, and his sword girt about him, with his hat in his hand, and when he approched neere to the table wheras the King sate, he began to cry as loude as he could, where is the Knight that is called Arthur of Britaine, if hee be in this Court let him auns were me, and with those words all the Court was in peace, so that euerie man might well heare him. And when Arthur heard how that hee demaunded for him, he answered and said: Friend if you demaund for Arthur of Britaine, there bee many folkes which reputeth me to be the same, therefore beholde I am heere readie, for I am the same man that you demaund for, say what you will. Sir saide the Squier I am sent to you, therefore you shall

heare what I will saie, sir it is of truth how that my maister sir Othebon of Hurtebise hath heard tidinges of you & of your aduentures, and so hath he done of many other that could doe him no good, sir this Knight is verie sicke in his bodie, for I thinke verilie he is nere his death, therefore hee sendeth to you by mee that incontinently without anie longer delaie you come to him and minister to him health, accompanied onelye with your squier, and if you doe not thus, incontinently through your default he shall die, of the which death I here in his name appeale you before the king and all his noble Court, and then Arthur answered him and saide, friend how is it so that I should giue him health, I am but an euill Phisition to helpe him that is so sicke as you speak of. Sir come to him and he shall shew you all the manner of his sickneſſe. Well said Arthur, thinketh he then that I can giue him any good counsaile. Yea sir said the Squier, if you be of that hardyneſſe & valure as it is of you reported. Friend said Arthur, suffer me till to morrow, & I shall this daie take my leaue of all these Barons and so followe you: Sir said the Squier, are we now in Britaine, if you will goe, come on your waie straight for I will departe, howbeit I will that you knowe that my saide maister appealeth you of his death. In the name of God said the king of Orquenie, of an ill death I praie to God that he may die, for he hath caused the death of many a noble knight, and so he will doe nowe of this knight, and so shall we leese his companie. Truely quoth Brisebar, would to God I had his head here. Then the Squier answered the king and said, sir if I might answere a king, I woulde saie that you shoulde not curse my maister before me, and as to you sir knight that would haue my masters head, you would not goe and seeke to haue it for your weight of fine gold, you wold faine haue it so it might cost you nothing, but you were neuer so hardie to goe seeke for it, the cause is you durſt not, and as to you sir knight Arthur, you cause me to tarrie here ouer long, either come on your waie or elle abide here still, and so the squier was

going

going his waie. When Arthur stept from the table and demaunded for his harneis, and said that all the world should not cause him to tarrie anie longer, thus Arthur went and armed him and came againe into the hall, and saide, I will depart, and so toke his leaue of ỹ king and of all the whole Baronie, who were right sorrowfull for his departing. Then sir Philip and more then fiue hundred other knights would haue gone with him, but the messenger would not suffer any creature to depart with him, but only Bawdwin his squier. Then master Steuen came to Arthur and said, sir you goe on a great aduenture, for your returne is right perillous, but if God giue you that grace to returne, leaue you for nothing but that you come to ỹ turney before Cornite at Barthelmewtide next comming, for there shall I be and my Ladies Pauilion with me, I will now returne to the Port Noire, and I shall send Gouernar after you. Certainly master saide Arthur, if God will that I shall escape this aduenture, I shall be at the saide turney, wherefore as now I commit you to God, and so mounted on his horse, & toke with him his white shælde, and Clarence his good sword, the which were verie nædfull for him in that iourney, and so he rode forth and Bawdewin his Squier with him. Then was all the Court sore troubled for his departing, and the king commaunded to take vp the tables, and to trusse all his stuffe, for he said hee would depart incontinently. Then the Ladie Margaret hadde thought to haue caused him to tarrie, but she could not in anie wise, and so in the same houre he departed, and all the other Lords and Knights, so that there abode no more with the Ladie Margaret but her owne Knightes. The master also said that he would goe to the Port Noire, and when all the Court was departed, the master came to the Ladie and said: Madame will you command me any seruice vnto the Marques your vnkle who is at the Port Noire. And the Ladie desired him to tarrie two or thræ daies till such time as she had set all her land in some good order, and then shee promised to goe with him to the Port Noire to sée her vnckle, the which re-

vnesse the maister did graunt her with all his heart, for he loued her entirelie, and had set his whole heart and loue on her, howbeit she knew it not as then, then the Ladie ordeined her Bailiues and Prouostes, and other Officers and Keepers of her land, by the good aduise and counsaile of the maister, and receiued homage of all her people, and there she made sir Emerie principall gouernour aboue all other, and when she had ordained all this, then she take her horse and twelue of her Knightes with her, and so rode forth with the maister to see her vnckle, & as they rode together the maister discouered to her al his affection, how that he loued her with perfect and faithfull loue, with the which words her heart was so fired, that from that time forward she loued him entirelie, and did nothing but after his counsaile, and promised to owe him good will and fauour, and so at the last they ariued on a Saturdaie at the Port Noire. And when they were come thether, there met them Gouernar and Jaket, and so the maister & Gouernar take downe the Ladie, then Gouernar and Jaket demaunded how Arthur did, and the maister answered and said, how that he was in good health, and that as then hee was newlye departed to the Castell of Hurtebise in the Countrie of the lost Ile, and shewed him how that he desired that he should come after him, whereof Gouernar was verie glad, and departed the next daie, and when the Ladie sawe Gouernar so bigge and so goodly a knight, she demaunded of the maister what Knight he was, and he certified her how that he pertained to Arthur. In the name of God said she, I thinke it right well, for he semeth to be of high prowesse: verilie madame saide hee, so he is. Then Gouernar take the Ladie and lead her into the Pallace, and the Marques came forth the same time and met them, who knew nothing before of their comming, and as soone as she sawe her vnckle her heart trembled, when she remembred the death of her father, and so she ranne & embraced him, weeping for ioy & sorrow; for ioy that she sawe her vnckle, & for sorrow of the remembrance of her father, & when the Marques sawe her and knew well that she was

his neece, incontinently he remembred the death of her Father his brother, with the which remembraunce his heart closed, in such wise, that of a great space he could speake no word, and so sate them downe on a bench, and when the Ladie could speake, she said, deere vncle & friend I neuer saw my good father since he departed with you, I praie you tell me whether you haue sene him or no, I desire you answere me being but a poore Orphane. And when her vncle heard her saie so, he thought his heart did breake for sorrow, and said: Ah my neece and deere loue, both you and I haue lost him, and you are disherited, wee ought therefore greatlie to complain of our hurt, and Sir Ilembart I praie to God that thou maist die an euill death, that hast thus brought vs into this dolorous misfortune. Sir saide the Ladie, an euill death, he is dead, and so began to tell him al the matter, but she could not her sorrow was so great. Then master Steuen came to them & shewed the Marques how that Arthur had conquered sir Ilembart in plaine battaile, and had rendered againe to the Ladie her landes, and how that she had made homage vnto Arthur. Then the Marques saide, certainelie faire neece you haue done right well to make him homage, for he hath deliuered vs out of pouertie, and hath made vs rich, and he hath well auenged you on your mortall enimie, and he hath deliuered mee out of the cruell prison that I was in, wherfore if euer I may see him againe I will become his man. Thus they talked together so long, that at the last the master made them to forget their sorow, and to be merrie, and then they went to dinner and were serued right richly, and so all that daye they were together, & thus this Ladie abode a great space at the Port Noire, & euerie daie sported with her, & thus they made great ioy together.

How Gonernar in searching for Arthur had the honour of a turney that was made by the Earle of the Ile of Perdu, & there Gonernar was amorous of the Countesse, & how the Earle charged the Countesse that she should not speake to him, whereof euill came to him,

for

for the next daie Gouernar did beate him well in the tourney, and laie all night after with the Countesse his wife. Chap. 67.



AS soone as the morning was come, Gouernar toke his leaue of the Ladie and of the master, & of the noble Marques, and rode foorth on his waie and Jaket his Squier with him, and hee was right richlie beséene, and mounted on a good and puissaunt horse, and so rode forth eight daies, and neuer could heare anie tidings of that hee sought for, till at the last he arriued in the land of Inde ꝟ more, betweene ꝟ realme of Sorolois and the Empire, and there he sawe a great riuer, and at a crosse waie he encountered a messenger, who bare a Scutchin on his breast, and also a bore full of letters, & rode a great pace, and this was about Saint Laurence tide. Then Gouernar did salute the seruaunt, and demaunded of him what tidings and of whence he was, and he answered and said, sir I am pertaining to the Earle of the Ile Perdu, and am riding to the strong Castle to a Knight named Sir Jaques, to the intent that he should come to him to go with him

him to a tourney, for the Emperour of Inde hath summoned my master the Earle to wait on him to Cornite at this Barthelmewtide next comming, because of a tourney that is taken there betweene him & the mightie Emendus, king of Sorolois, and because my Lorde thinketh not to bee unprouided of good Knightes, he hath made to be cried a tourney on mundaie nert comming, to the intent to chose of the best Knightes that commeth thether to haue them with him to the said great tourney at Cornite, therefore I must goe to the said sir Jaques to cause him to be with my saide Lord on munday next comming. Well good friend said Gouernar, goe on your waie, God send you good aduenture. So then the seruaunt departed, then Gouernar said to Jaket, I am purposed to goe this said turney, for it may happen right well that we may there heare some tidings of my Lord Arthur, and so they rode so long till at the last they arriued at the Ile Perdu, whereas they found many knights that were alreadie come, so that all the lodginges were taken vp, wherefore he had much a doe to get him a lodging, but at the last he met with a good burges, whs receiued him friendly into his house. And when Gouernar was changed he called to him his host & demanded of him all the manner of the Earle, and what manner of man he was, who answered and said: sir he is a right valiant man and a hardye knight, for there are but few that may compare with him in deedes of armes, and he hath to his wife the most fairest Ladie that is in all the world, except the King of Sorroloys daughter, and for her beautie heere resorteth many strange knights, both Dukes, Earles, & many other good knights, and because he doth tourney to morrowe, he knoweth well that many knightes will be at his house for to see his wife, therefore he hath caused the gates of his Castle to bee fast shut and defended, that whatsoeuer he be shal not enter: the gates were not open since none yesterdaie. Now sayde Gouernar, in the name of God I shall assaie to enter, and if I can, to see the faire Ladie, then he called to him Jaket, and commaunded him to bring forth his horse, for hee saide hee would

would goe and assaie his horse against the next daie that he should turney, & so Jaket brought him his horse & mounted thereon, and so rode forth through the streates of the towne, till he came to the castle gate, the which he found fast shut, & then he bade th Porter open the gate, for he said he would enter into the castle, and then the Porter demanded of him what he had to doe there: Friend said Gouernar, I would speake with the good ladie of this place. Verily sir saide the Porter, you may not enter in at this place, for my Lorde hath defended the contrarie: for he hath commaunded that whatsoeuer he be that commeth hetther, none should enter, wherefore I dare not let you in. Yes I pray you said Gouernar, and I will giue you whatsoeuer you wil demaund of me. Then the Porter opened a little window, and there hee sawe that Gouernar was a right goodlie Knight and browne of visage, and sawe how that he rode on a meruailous faire horse, then thought he well that he was some noble man, and said vnto him, sir, if you will giue me the horse you ride on I will open you the gate: Open the gate then at once, and I will giue him to you: Sir saide the Porter, will you promise me as you bee a true Knight that I shall haue him: Verilie I promise you that you shall haue him as I am a true Knight: Sir saide the Porter, I praie you tarrie a little while and I will goe in and speake with my Lord: Well said Gouernar, I praie you high you againe as fast as you may. Then the porter went to the Earle and saide, sir there is at your gate a meruailous faire Knight, who hath so great desire to see my Ladie, that he will giue me his horse that he rideth on, the which is well worth by likelyhode an hundered pound, on condition that I would open the gate and let him in, therefore sir pleaseth it you to shew me your minde in this case. Howbeit saide the Earle, my mind was that none should enter in at this place, & yet I will not that thou shouldest leese the gift that he would giue thee, therfore go thy waie and open the gate, & take thy horse, & then he said to the countesse his wife: Madame yonder is a knight that hath giuen a rich gift to speake w̄ you,

there-

therefore I charge you as dere as you holde my loue, that when he is come you make to him no maner of semblance, nor speake ante word to him whatsoeuer he say to you, if ye dos otherwise you shall displease me: A sir said the Lady, for Gods sake I aske mercie, sir we know not what knight he is, nor of what valure, & if he haue giuen a rich gift to speak with mée, he shal haue but a small reward for his curtesie if I shall keepe my speech from him, against loue no man can be, and I am a Gentlewoman of a great power, therfore I should greatly trespasse and I should not speake to him if he speake to me. By the faith that I owe vnto God sayde the Earle, if you trespasse against my commaundement I will displease you at the hart. Well said the Ladie, for your loue I am content, but if ante hurt grow therby I pray to God it may fal on you. Then the Porter opened the gate to Gouernar, and there the Porter toke his horse, and Gouernar went forth into the pallace a foot, and the Earle & such other Knights as were with him, met Gouernar, and did salute him, and beheld him meruailously, and so he passed forth til he came where as the countesse was, & went to her and said: Madame, God ý formed all things giue you this day health, ioy, and peace, and blessed be the renowme that runneth of your valure, bountie, and fresh beautie, for now I sée wel it is of truth, and more then is or can be reported. And when the Countesse heard him she answered no maner of word, the which grieued her right sore in her heart, and therwith she cast downe her loke toward the ground, and Gouernar made countenance to salute the other Ladies, & so sate down among them, and at the last he said to the Countesse: Faire Ladie I am a knight that passeth throughout this country, and it was shewed mee howe that you were in this castle, wherefore I thought I would not passe by without séeing of you, therefore I am come to offer my selfe to bée your knight, and to doe all that I may doe for your sake, wherefore madame I require you to shewe mee what is your pleasure, for I am verie desirous to knowe it, and the Countesse spake no worde to him againe, but cast downe

her

her lothe downe, wherewith she was right sore grieued at heart, and when Gouernar sawe that she spake no worde, he was right sorrowfull and saide: Madame will you not speake to me, I haue heard renowme of you that you were free and gentle of heart, and of such curtesie, that you coulde beare none hatred or malice in your heat, nor doo anie iniurie to anie manner of person, wherefore faire Ladie auntsi were me some manner of worde, howbeit for all that shee spake no word againe, and therewith water was brought forth, and all they washed and sate downe to dinner, and the Earle caused Gouerner to sit nexte to the Ladie, to the intent to doe him the more anoiaunce and shame, and there Gouernar carued to the Ladie right goodlie with his knife, & oftentimes spake to her, but she wold neuer giue him answere again, wherwith Gouernar was so sore displeased, þ he neither did eate nor drinke but a little, for hee sawe well how the Ladie spake to all other, but in no wise shee would speake to him, and also the Countesse was right sore displeased in her heart because she durst not speake to him, & thus they were in this case till they were taken vp from dinner, and then Gouernar tooke her boldly by the hand and saide, madame I would faine speake a little with you, and so hee led her vnto a faire window, then hee said: I wœte Ladie it is for none ill or despite, or for anie trespasse that I haue made to you or to anie of yours that you doe to me such discurtesie that you will not speake to mee, you haue the name to be the most frée and gentlest of heart of anie Ladie now liuing, for all bountie and curtesie is said to be in you, therfore I wœte Ladie shewe somewhat of your curtesie to mée as in speaking but one word, and faire and gentle Lady doo so much honour as now to speake to me, for as God helpe me I am ashamed for euer if you doe not, for it will be sayd to morrow of me how that I am but a foolish Knight and outragious, for by mine outrage it shall be said that I haue lost the hearing of the spœch of the most fairest Ladie of the world, madame I require you put from mee this reproch, open to me a little your I wœte mouth, wherein is all courtesie,

telle, and speak to me some word, for madame as God help me my hart bleth in my bodie, for I am in feare least that ye be displeased with me for some trespas that I haue don, but for all that she spake no word again to him, and yet she was as sore grieued in hir hart as he. Gouernar rode and talked so long to this ladie till at the last two of hir gentilwomen came for hir that she should go into hir chamber & take hir rest. Than Gouernar at hir departing laide his arme about hir and saide, madame I see well I must nedes depart from you at this time, I will go to my lodging right sorowfull, and ye shall go and rest you and sleepe and take little care for my great griefe, how be it madame I say vnto you that I will neuer depart from this town till ye haue spoken to mee. And so thus talking he brought hir to hir chamber doore, and he saw well where there was a waye out of the chamber into a faire orchard. Than he said, madame ye will not speake to mee, but I promise you I will come this same night in yonder orchard & so to your chamber to speake with you, though I die therefore, sith I haue taken that enterprise in my mynde, either I will die or elles ye shall speake to mee. And therewith the countesse entred into hir chamber without speaking of any word to him. And than Gouernar returned to his lodging into y town right sore displeased in his hart. And whan Jacket sawe him come on foote, hee demaunded of him where was his horse. And he answered and saide, in faith friende it goeth not well with me. Ha ha saide Jaket I thinke ye haue plated awaye your horse bicause ye would not tourney to morrow with the Knights of this countrey, well shameful Knight to morrow whan I see other gentil Knights tournay, I shall shew them how that ye lye a sleepe in your chamber. Than Gouernar layde him downe on a bedde al replete with yre, till it was night. And than the said Erle commaunded all his Knightes that they should depart and go to their restes, bicause they should be trauailed on the next days, and also he saide to the countesse his wife, madame go this night into your chamber and take your rest,

kerchéfe and his mantell and knéeled downe and ſaid: Madame, I pray God giue you good life and good night. And ſhe anſwered and ſaid: Sir Knight, in an ill night and time you be entered into my chamber without my liſence, wherefore you be not welcome vnto mee, but for your labour I will cauſe you to be hanged by the necke, and theſe words ſhe ſpake faire and eaſilie becauſe ſhe would be not be heard, and furthermore ſhe ſaid, ſir Knight, how durſt you bee ſo bolde to breake my walles and enter into my chamber, by the mother of God you ſhall die therefore. Then Gouernar anſwered and ſaid, right déere and ſweete Lady, blame me nothing therefore, for as God help me my heart died in my bodie when ſo high a Ladie as you be would not ſpeake to me, for as it is ſaid all goodneſſe and gentleneſſe is compriſed in your perſon, wherefore faire Ladie now doe with me what it ſhal pleaſe you, ſith you haue ſpoken to me ſtrike off my head and you will, loe héere it is ready, ſo he laid forth his head to the Counteſſe to haue had her ſtriken it off if ſhe liſt, and when the Counteſſe ſawe him humble himſelfe ſo méeklie, her heart began to melt, and ſo tooke of him ſome pitie. A madame ſaid Powcet, this Knight hath euill employed his courteſie that he hath done to your Porter, as to giue him his good horſe for you loue, and now you to ſpeake ſo rudelie, he hath done more bountie and curteſie ſince hee came hether, then euer did anie that euer came vnto this place to ſée you, though they were neuer ſo noble or greate, it is reaſon that he maye ſée that he hath not ill employed his gift that hee hath giuen him for your ſake, and alſo hee hath hazarded his life in this behalfe, it came of great gentleneſſe of heart to giue awaie his horſe, and of a great valure of courage to put this his life in aduenture for your ſake, full little durſt any knight of this countrie haue done thus, who be afraid of euerie folly, they lacke in their hearts ſuch courage, I ſaie not all this onely for his ſake, for I neuer ſawe him afore this day, but by reaſon I ſée y loue hath cauſed him to doe thus, for if he had not loued you he would not haue done this, therfore madame make him amends of y

cruel-

crueltie that ye did to him this daye? spake to him more courteslie. Polycet saide the ladye I cannot, I am so full of yre, for he hath displeased me with his comming hither, for it is no thank to him though I were shamed for this dede. Madame saide polycet if ye put him out of your chambre at this time of night he shall be espied of the watchmen, & so taken and slaine, & you shamed, for euery man that shall know thereof will say that ye caused him to come, and the more that knowyth therof the worse it is, for when a thing is done it is conuenient to let it passe as easely as may be, and to keepe it secret, for all is little enough. Sir knight kneele ye downe & crye my ladie mercie in that ye be come hither without hir licence. Than gouernar kneled down and sayde, madame for gods sake forgiue me this trespasse. And she beheld him mervailously, for he was faire and gracious, and he was bare headed, and Polycet strake downe his haire with hir hand, for it was somewhat ruffled with the winde, and said. A madame behold and se what maner of knight this is, and who is so hard harted that will not forgiue him that putteth him selfe in such aduenture al onely to see a faire noble Ladie, certainly I pardon him in your name, for I am sure madame ye will be content therwith. Than the countesse did smile and saide, alwaies ye will play the foole, but so she tooke Gouernar by the hande and caused him to arise vpon his feete, than Polycet bad him sit down by hir lady, but for courtesie he would not at the first bidding: then Polycet said, sir knight now ye needs not to take any care for any of ỹ knights of this Castel, for your cõming hether, & without ye haue feare of a woman, sit downe by my Lady and make your owne peace, therewith Gouernar sate downe and enbraced and desyred the ladie that she would pardon him, & so she did, and than Gouernar al smiling cast forth many pretie and goodly words and euer he found the lady gentle & sweet of hir answers. Than Polycet said, sister Eglentine my ladie me thinketh is wery now, I trow she careth not for vs, let vs watch in the next chamber, for I think she would faine be a bed, & so

they were thus spoken the ladie called them again, but that was verye softly, for to loude such words voice. And than anone powcet drewe the curteine, and shoke the bed, and she knewe well that there was no creature but the ladie and the knight together. Than Gouernar began a lyttle to speake faire, as these louers do when they wold haue their desire, and at the last perceyued so much that they were agreed to lye together, and so to bed they went, and there they take such pastaunce together as these louers are wont to do. Whan they had this done Gouernar demaunded of the ladie why she had done him so much vylany as in that she would not speake to him in her pallace. In the name of God saide the ladie I did it for my lord commaunded me so to do, and gouernes displeased him, how be it that greeued me right sore so to do. Well madame it is often seene that to much restraynting is not good, but as in this case he that hath the aduauntage let him wepe hardly, and so he rubbed and kissed the ladie, and thus they were together till it was neere hand daye. Than the ladie saide sir knight I require you rendre vnto my Lorde the vilanie that he hath done to vs, in such wise that ye iust to nothing against him, and let him feele and know how that ye be all pleased. By the mother of God sayd Gouernar so shall I doe, I warant ye shall see him lye to the earth. Than the ladie began to laugh. Than powcet came to the beds side and saide: madame to all the ill will any thing mistched, is all this warre now failed, I beleue that the peace be made, I trow ye haue made amends this night to the knight. By the good lady saide the ladie powcet ye play alway the fole. Vp sir knight saide powcet, for it is time for you to rise. Than Gouernar rose and apparelled him. Whan the damoiselle saide sir gentilman ye shall giue away your horse for my sake, wherefore I will giue you againe as good a gift, powcet seeing me bother wonder litell cast it out at the window, my pretie, and when she had it she said, dame knight I giue this gift to you and all that is therin. Madame sayd Gouernar by the leue of God I will not take it, for I thinke

God I am rich enough, and I have so beautifull and so valiaunt a master, that he will give me good sufficient. By the faith that I owe to God said the Ladie, though you were a king, yet I give it unto you and except that you take it I assure you I will never speake to you more while I live. I will not have it for a remembrance for the love that I have in you and to buy you therewith a new house, and I require you to marrow deale with my Lord as you have promised us. Madame by the faith that I owe unto you said he I assure you I will not turne reverse from his house. Then the Ladie and Damoyset did smile, and so they departed Governar from them, and tooke the casket with him, the which was full of coined golde, and as then all the watch gave over a stone for then it was at the point of daie.

How Governar did beate downe at the turney the Earle of Perdus. Chap. 48.

When Governar was thus departed from the Countesse, he came to his owne lodging, there he found Jaket his squier sleeping on a forme before the fire, and he awaked him. And when Jaket saw him, his heart trembled because of his sodaine waking, and saide: This is a faire tarying I think for a wise man to come now to his lodging and then he did light upon a Torch and after in the chamber Governar did open the casket, wherein there was of golde and jewels above two thousand pound. And when Jaket saw it his heart was afraide and saide: Sir, I thinke you have robbed some Abbey, beware you be not hanged for me now. A friend Jaket said Governar, holde thy peace, take there two hundred pound, and looke that I have to morrow a good horse, & give all the remnant of the money to poore people: Pea said Jaket, you be very liberall of other mens goods for I think all this cost you nothing, for you be a large giver of almes, it were better that you caused the Abbey to be covered with lead from whence you took this money, as soone as it was

vaie Jaket went into the market place, and there he found his owne maisters horse to be solde and there he bought him for an hundred pound, & so brought him to Gouernar who was right glad of him, and after that none of that day was past, but alwes did crie in euerie streete, Knightes leape vpon your horses, & get you thither to the field. Then hornes, Trumpets, and Clarions began to sounde meruailloulie. When the knightes did arme them quicklie, and the gates of the castle were set open, and the Earle did issue out with a great compasse of knightes with him, and came into the place whereas the tourney should be, and by that time Gouernar was armed and mounted vpon his horse, and he was greatlie beholden that tourney of euery person, for he was a right faire knight in armes. When ye Countesse and other Ladies and damsells were mounted on vpon the castle walls to behold the turney, the which was in a faire græne right vnder the Castle wall, then Powcet & Eglentine sawe whereas Gouernar came riding towarde the tourney in a narow lane. Madame quoth Powcet, beholde yonder knight, by seeming he should be some noble man. Truelie said the Ladie, he is the most semeliest knight in all the rout. Madame said Powcet, I thinke you would his honour and profit: By the good Lord saide the Ladie, I would he were a king. Then anone in the field the partes wer disseuered, and Gouernar was against the Earle, then the Heraldes cried, Knightes doe your best. Then began the turney right hard and sharpe, and Gouernar marked well the Earle, and ranne at him right fiercelie, and the Earle strake him so sore, that he made him somwhat bowe on his horse, but Gouernar strake him and met him with his body so rudely, that he made him auoide his horse and his legges vpward: Then Jaket took the Earles horse and brought him to the Countesse for a present, and when the Ladyes saw where the Earle did fall, then Eglentine said, I ponder in one w his fete vpward. That is true said Powcet, it is my Lord the Earle, beholde how he shaketh his legs. Well said the Countesse, this vnknowen yonder Knight holdeth my

Lord verie short: Mawame saide Powcet, he acquiteth him of his promise. Then Gouernar held the earle so short, that he was faine to yeld him whether he would or not: Then all the Earles companie came al at once on Gouernar, but he was strong and light, & gaue so greate strokes and heauie, that he confounded all that euer he attained vnto, and at the hunt he vnhorsed more then eight Knightes. & when Jaket had presented his present vnto the Countesse, who thanked him much, then he retourned againe vnto his master, and so he had inough to doe, euer to carrie the horses of them that his master had ouerthrowen, to the Burges who was his masters host. Then Gouernar marked wel wher there was together a great flocke of Knights, then Gouernar thrust amongest them so rudelie, that at his first coming he ouerthrew two Knightes together, and so within a short space he departed these Knightes asunder, and gaue such blowes all about him, that euerie man fled before him, and all the Ladies saw him doe mervailes with his hands, and they mervailed how that euer hee coulde endure such paine with his bodie, and then as hee retourned from that companie, he met againe the Earle, who as then was remounted, then Gouernar dasht into the prease till that hee came straight wheras the Earle was, who as then handled right sharplie a Knight of the part that Gouernar was off, then Gouernar drewe him to the Earle, and embraced him by the shoulders, and dasht his horse with the spurs, & ouerthrew both the Earle to the grounde, and also the Knight that the Earle fought withall, and there he made the Earle to yeld him againe: and when the Countesse sawe that, she smiled right swetlie and said: Powcet my friend, yonder Knight hath beaten downe two at once, blessed be his vertue, hee is nowe well reuenged of the Earle my husbande, who would not suffer me to speake with him. Then the Earles companie set on Gouernar, but hee defended himselfe verie valiauntlie, but they oppressed him so sore, that his horse enfoundered vnder him, and then Gouernar hastelie leapt on his feete, and there he aduised the Earles be-

neshall, who hoyst that time right sore annoyed him, and he was well mounted vppon a good blacke mozell horse, then Gouernar leapt vp to him, and tooke him about the necke with his hands, and pulled him so sore, that he made him to auoide the saddle whether he would or not, and so fell to the ground, then Gouernar tooke his horse and quickly leapt vp into the saddle, & with great anger dasht into the preasse and gaue so mightie strokes, that he made all to flie before him, and by that time the Earle was remounted againe, & the third time he came behinde Gouernar, and embraced him with both his armes, to the intent to haue lifted him out of his saddle, but hee could no more remoue him then though he had lifted at a great tower. Then Gouernar turned him to the Earle and tooke him by the head and pulled him downe to his horse mane, & gaue him so many strokes that hee all to bruised him, wherewith hee fell downe to the earth in such plight, that hee could not remoue for all the gods of the world, then ther fell on him all the Earles companie, and by that time the earles Seneshall was remounted and so he came to Gouernar, and when he saiwe him do such deeds of high prowesse, he praised him much in his hart and thought to tourney no more that daie against him, but said, sir knight be you certaine that as many horses as faile you this daie, I shall purvey you euer of another. Then Gouernar dasht into the preasse, round about him he laide on their heads and visages, that he made them bleede lyke beasts, and at the last his horse failed him, & then the earles Seneshall brought him another, & albeit hee was remounted, he strake as freshly among them as though he had done nothing of all that daie before, and then he did so much by his prowesse, that every man gaue him place and departed, & left him in the field all alone. Then the Earle was borne into the castle in a horse Litter, for he was sore bruised, and his Seneshall came to Gouernar and desired him to goe to the Castle, but Gouernar would not, but said what should I doe there, I know not what manner of people you be, for among you you disdaine to speak to anie straunge knight,

Then

When the Seneschall wist well that he said that by the counsell, wherefore he blamed much the Earle in his heart, in that he had commaunded her so to doo. So then Gouernar couried to the Burges his hall, who made him right great cheere and feast, and the Knights and Burgeses of ȳ towne came thether to se him, and said one to another, behold here the valiant knight Gouernar had wonne that daie fifteene good horses, and he that met him, for he was somwhat weerie of that trauaile. And when the Earle was in the castle, he commaunded that the gates should be set open, and that gentleman should come in whosoeuer wold, & then he was disarmed, and the Countesse his wife came to him & demanded how he did. And he answered and said how that he was sore bruised: Sir said shee, and who hath done that, I am right sorie therefore. Truelie said he, thus araied met the same knight that yesterdaie gaue his horse to my Porter, to the intent to se you: Sir said she, I beleeue it well, for I thinke he was displeased with you, because that you forbad me that I should not speake to him, I thinke he remembred that to daie. wherfore it is good to beware to whome a man doth displeasure. Then the Earle came into the hall where as all the other Knights were, and there they were talking and enquiring each of other what knight had done best that daie, and so they all did giue the praise to Gouernar. In the name of God said the Earle, he hath beaten me downe three times this same daie, therfore I require you get him hether to me, for I shall acquaint me with him, for I will giue him the one halfe of my landes, on the condition that hee will abide and dwell with me: Certainlie sir said his Seneschall, and on that condition I will giue yerlie a thousand pound, for according to the truth he is a right good Knight. Then the Earle commaunded his Seneschall to go for him, and so he did, & found him at his lodge house, who made him right great cheere and honour. And then the Seneschal said, sir the Earle heartelie desireth you to come and speake with him in the Castle, and sir for Gods sake abide and dwell with him, and he will giue you the one halfe of his landes,

and

and I ſhall giue you a thouſand pound yerelie, and keepe you true and faithfull companie, e thus talking they went forth together toward the caſtle, and as ſoone as the Earle ſawe him, he roſe vp on his feete, and did him much honour, and the Earle cauſed Gouernar to ſit downe by him. Then theſe tidinges ran anone into the Counteſſe chamber, how that the good Knight was come, and the Ladies had greate delight to ſee him: Then Bowcet ſaide, madame I thinke this knight pleaſeth you right well, therefore let vs go ſee him. Certainelie ſaid the Counteſſe, with a right good will, ſo then they went into the hall, and the Earle and Gouernar did riſe and verie curteouſlie ſaluted the Ladie: Then the Counteſſe ſaid to Gouernar, ſir you ſhould not ſalute me, for I haue done you more diſcurteſie then euer did Ladie to anie knight without treſpaſſe: Madame ſaide he, it is no treſpaſſe for ſo high a Ladie as you are to take her pleſure of ſo ſimple a knight as I am. Then the Earle ſaid, ſir you haue this date beaten me from my horſe, the which neuer as yet knight did before, wherefore I owe vnto you a great raunſome. Sir ſaide Gouernar, ſauing you grace, I am not of ſuch vertue nor of ſuch valure as to doe ſo high chiualrie as you ſpeak of: Well ſir ſaid the Earle, I know well how it is, but ſir I require you be of my houſe and you ſhall be chiefe Controller thereof, for I will that whatſoeuer you commaund ſhall be done. Sir ſaide Gouernar, I humblie thank you, howbeit I cannot accomplish your deſire, and the more the Earle deſired him, the more he ſaid nay. Then the Earle ſaid to the Counteſſe, madame I pray you deſire him, and ſo ſhe did, howbeit ſhe was not greatlie bound to doe ſo much at her huſbands deſire, but Gouernar wiſely excuſed him and ſaid.

Faire Ladie it cannot bee, for I haue a Lorde alreadie, who muſt needes be ſerued of mee and of other farre better knightes then I am. Certainlie ſir ſaide the Seneſhall, if there be more proweſſe in him then is in you, he ſurmounteth then all the knightes of the world. Certainlie ſir ſaid Gouernar, he is able to caſt fire ſuch as I am into the Ri-

uer.

uer. Truly said the Earle, then doe you well to serue him faithfullie, wherfore I will require you no father, howbeit that forethinketh me: Then the Countesse was right sore displeased because hee would not abide, and supper being made readie water was brought forth, and they washed, & after sate downe, and were well serued, and after Supper Gouernar toke lisence of the Earle and the Countesse, and of all other Knightes, and then Torches were lighted vp, and the Seneschall conuaied him to his hosts house, and the Earle commaunded that his host should take nothing of him for his dispence, then Gouernar toke his leaue, and the next morning betimes departed, and commended his host to God, and gaue him all the horses that he had wonne in the turney, and the Burgeses thanked him heartelie and said: In all places wheras Alexander the great conquered you may goe without ieopardy, and doe as much as euer he did. And so Gouernar entered into his waie, and roade to seek his Lord Arthur. Now let vs leaue speking of Gouernar and let vs returne to Arthur and to the King of Orquenie.

How after Arthur was departed from Argenton to the castle of Hurtbise to the wounded Knight, who had sent for him, in his waie at the last hee found at the entering of a faire forrest three ladies of right excellent beautie, of whom the chiefe was called Proserpina, Queene of the Fairies, who greatly desired Arthur of his loue, but in no wise he would agree thereto, and there he lost his varlet that was his guide, wherefore it behoued him to tarry there all that night, for it was dark, & he knew not whether to go. Chap. 69.

IT happened that whē the king of Orquenie was departed from Argenton, he rode straight into his own countrie, for to make readie his people to goe at Bartholmewtide to the turney at Cornile, and Duke Philip went to

Sabaris

Mabaris to appareil his people, and sir Brueson, sir Ancenis, sir Artaude, and all the other knightes of king Emiendus returned to the kings Court, and there recounted the high prowesse of Arthur, and how he had sped at Argenton with the Duke of Bygors nephew, & how that the wounded knight of the castle of Hurtbise had sent for him, & how how that he was gone thether. Then the king was sorie in his heart, for he had great feare of him least that he should neuer retourne againe, for hee knewe well that many good knights were perished ther, and in especiall Florence was right sorrowfull, for there was none that coulde reconfort her. And Arthur euer rode forth after the Squier, and so rode three daies together without finding of anie aduenture, and the fourth daie he rode till it was none, and then they arriued at a knights place who was vnckle to the squier that was Arthurs guide, and there they were wel receiued, and so sate downe to dinner and were well serued, and when Arthur had dined, then they mounted on their horses againe, and rode forth till it was night, and then they entered into a little narowe waie betweene a faire forrest and a greene medow, and rode welnigh the space of halfe a mile, and the Mone began to shine faire & bright, and at the last they came to a waie that they must needes enter into the thicke of the forrest, and at last Arthur espied a faire Lake a delectable place, whereas he sawe three faire Ladies mervailouslie white and of great beautie, but shee that was in the middest was most faire, for she onelie had more beautie then both the other two, and yet they wer as faire as could be deuised. And when Arthur had espied them, he set his fæt to the earth and lighted from his horse, and shee that was in the middest rose when the other two were vp, and there Arthur saluted them right curteouslie, and they him again, and the Squier that brought Arthur thether toke one of ỳ Ladies in counsaile, & whē they had talked together a good space they went into the thick of ỳ wood, they two together alone, & were not sæne againe all ỳ night, & the other ỳ was in the middest had to name Proserpina, & she toke Arthur &

set

set him downe by her & held him by the hand, & beheld him stedfastly in the face, & said, Sir you be hartelie welcome, and he answered and said: Madame I praie God kep you from all ill. Sir said Proserpina, I haue great desire to speak wt you, if you bee her that hath conquered as I haue heard the duke of Bygots nephew. Madame said Arthur, I wold full faine that ther were such valure in me as that I might atchine such a deede: Well said Proserpina, I know right well how it is, and also of other of your deedes, and sir you bee enclaine that right great greefe encombreth on you, how that you be fre, sweet, faire, & gratious, & to bee a good knight above all other, and as for braintie I see well how it is. Well madame said Arthur, I praie God amend in me ỳ lacketh of that you speake of. That is wel said quoth ỳ Lady, then she laid her hand on his head, and demanded of him what was his name: madam quoth he, I am called Arthur, Arthur said she, now by the faith that you owe to her that you loue best, & to S. George, haue you any louer yet, I am sure my demand is but follie, for so faire a knight, so young, & so valiaunt in armes as you, cannot bee without a louer, wherfore I am certain you haue one, but I praie you shew me what she is, by the faith that you owe vnto her, and I promise you neuer to accuse you, and therewith she beheld him, and smiled a little and said: I pray you speake and shew me the plainesse by the truth that you ow to father and mother, if you haue anie aliue. Madam said Arthur, you charge me right fore, therefore verilie I will shew you the truth: Madame so it is that I cannot tell whether that I haue a louer or not, but of one thing be you sure, I am a louer, for I loue entirelie with all my heart: And what is she quoth the Ladie, I praie you by the faith that you owe vnto her. As God helpe me said he, I cannot tell you, for I neuer saw the person that I loue. What said the Ladie, then you loue and know not who, who hath set you on this follie, wherefore loue you thus? Madame quoth he, I loue because of the great vertue that is in her, for she is a sweet, gratious, and a gentle lady of hart. Why sir knight, how know you that?

Madame

Madame it hath beene ſhewed me that ſhee is of ſuch condi-
tions. Well quoth the Ladie, what and there haue beene
ſhewed you more then truth in that behalfe. Who then ſhall
doe you right, I demaund of you, think you that all that is
ſaid of me and others to be of truth. Certainly madam nay,
ſome lieſ peraduenture to ſpeake ſometime more then they
knowe. Well friend Arthur quoth ſhee, then you be but a
foole, by my counſaile leaue ſuch follie, and loſe no longer
your time without reaſon, you bee now in your youth, and
in your beautie, wherefore you ſhould haue dailie your loue
in your armes, and leade a louers life in mirth and ſolace,
and when it is time to ſtrike for her ſake both with ſpeare
and ſwords, and caſt downe theſe knights to the earth by
two at once, and leaue ſeruing thus of the muſe, or elſe you
ſhall be called no more Arthur, but you ſhall be called the
knight that muſeth, therefore leaue this loue, but beholde
heere in your companie if there bee anie thing that pleaſeth
you, chooſe which you wil, the Squier that brought you hi-
ther muſeth not, for hee is with his loue, and hath her all
night in his armes, beholde heere the companie of me who
am right faire and young, gentle and puiſant, holding in
my hand great heritage, and I am daughter to a king, and
both my father and mother dead, and now I am entered in-
to my land to keepe my realme which is great and noble, I
am alſo right young, about the age of fiftéene yeares, and
would loue herie well ſome gentle knight that would help
me to keepe my land and Realme, and to counſaile mee for
my weals in all my buſineſſe, ſuch a one would I loue and
keepe entirelie. Arthur you neede not to be deceiued by your
loue, loving of the muſe, and take me heere inſtede. And
when Arthur heard her, he beheld her wel, and with a deepe
ſigh ſaid: A deere Ladie as God helpe me my heart is ſet on
her that I ſhewed you of, with all my faithfull loue and
thought, in ſuch wiſe that I am not maſter of my ſelfe, nor
mine heart is not mine owne, for it hath forſaken mee for
this ſaid Ladie, ſo that I am nothing Lorde of mine owne
heart, nor with all the power that I haue I cannot with-

drawe it from hir, for I thinke verely that she hath put my hart into hir hart, therfore I haue good hope that they shal be good companions and faithful together seing that it wil not come againe to me, and loue his sweet companion, therfore faire ladie blame me not though ye loue me that I doe not accomplish your desire, for as god help me I cannot, for my hart is not mine owne, therfore madame blame me not sith my hart hath forsaken me for an other, but as I be saued ye be full gentill and noble, and right happy shall he be that shall attain to your grace, for your beautie is such that euery person that seeth you will put to their paine to seeke the waies to attaine to your high loue, for by the faith that I owe to my Lord and father, I had rather haue your loue if it might be, than to be king of al France, but by my soule madame, ye may behold here my body without hart, wyne without sauor, a faire bodie without loue auaileth nothing. Well friend Arthur qd Proserpin many there be that findeth faultes and wil seke for no remedie, you lay the blame on your hart, such folks as wil not doe as they be required, can finde fables ynough to finde occasion of excuses ye haue long mused, and yet ye purpose to muse longer, hardly louse ynough, and loue ther that your dreame and fantasie sheweth you, and thereby ye shall haue very much Joy by likely hoode, for your musing will doe you much honour, by the faith that I owe to you, I loue my louer faithfully, and I say it by you beholde here Arthur who dreameth & museth, behold here the shadow without the Sunne light, beholde here the bodie without hart, this is he that loueth and wotteth not whom, therfore he is feeted of none, therfore frend Arthur take to you the best counsaile that ye can, and God be with you. Than she rose from him and departed into the Wood and hir company with hir. Than Arthur abode ther alone with Bawdwine his squier, for ỳ squire that brought him thether was departed, therfore he will not whether to goe. Than Bawdwin said, sir as God help me, ye ought to be blamed, and why so good frend saide Arthur. Sir bicause this gētle noble quēne that was right now with you who

is so faire, so swéete, and so gratious, that thee would faine haue had your company & loue, and thus you let her depart and would not embrace & kisse swétly her pleasaunt little mouth, wherefore in my minde you are greatlie to be blamed, for as God helpe me I would not haue done so though I had lost my head in ỹ paine: Oh good friend said Arthur, and what chére then should the swéete Florence haue, and what would she set by me if I shoulde doe as much to another as I would do to her if it pleased her, what would you haue me to make of my mouth a traine for euerie bodie, if she keepe her mouth close for the loue of me, and I then to abandon me to all the world, what honour then were it to me to be common to all the world, what should it then bee said of me, he is a ribade. Well sir said Bawdewin, for all that I coulde neuer haue done so. Thus they mounted on their horses and entered into the wode, and rode they wist not whether so long, till at the last they lost their waie, that they rode they wist not whether, and at the last they came againe to the same Dake from whence they went before, and there they tarried all that night, and laie on the colde earth in the thicke bushes, and tied their horses to a trée.

How Arthur conquered the castle of Hurtbise, the most strong place of the world, next to the Port Noire, wher was the damsell by whom the wounded knight was hurt, and there Arthur did so much prowesse that the said Knight recouered health. Chap. 70.

IN the morning betimes Arthur and Bawdewin arose and shooke their eares to put awaie the feathers from their heire, and so mounted on their horses, and found a little way which brought thẽ out of the forrest. Then Arthur was angrie in his minde because he had lost the squier that was his guide in that manner, for he knew not where to finde the hurt knight, and they rode forth so long till they entered into a faire medow, & thẽ they saw on a high mountain standing a goodly castle which was closed with double

walles

walles and gates, and at the first gate there was one that watched the passage for all commers, & as soone as he saw Arthur he toke a horne and blew therein so fiersely that all the valey rong therewith, and with that there issued out of the castel a knight all armed and well mounted, & he made a token to Arthur that he should beware of him. Than Arthur toke his shield and foyned with his speare and met so rudely to gether that the knight brak his speare, and Arthur strake him so that his speare went throughout his bodie more than a foote, and so pulled out his speare againe and dressed him selfe againste an other knight that came rudely at him, and he strake Arthur in such wise that his speare broke in the midst, but Arthur strak him so fierrely ỳ he ouerthrew both hors and man to the earth stark dead. Than there issued out of the castell v. knights, and they all ran on Arthur at once, and Arthur than toke his sword and strake so the first that he claue his head clene asonder, & the other did kill his horse vnder him, but than he set his hande on the hors of him that he had slaine before, and so lept into the sadel, and the first that he encountred lost his heade: and whan the other saw that they fled away as fast as they might, and Arthur followed them, & in his pursute he slew two of them, and as the fift would haue entred in at the castell gate, Arthur strake of his head cleane from the shoulders. Than he entred into the castel, and ther he saw before him an other stronge wall, and it was so high that it was meruaile, & it was enuironed all about with a great deepe water that issued out of sondry fountaines, and as he beheld how that he might entre into the place, there came to him ỳ same squier that caused him to come from Argence, and he did salute him. And whan Arthur saw him he knew him right well and demaunded of him the cause why that he left him in the forrest. As God help me sir, my lady led me forth and I durst not displease hir. Well saide Arthur, and where is the knight that ye saye hath sent for mee. Sir quoth the squier he is in a chamber in this Castell, where as I thinke hee shall neuer see to morrowe this tyme,

for sir you tarrie from him ouer long, which is great sinne: Friend said Arthur, I praie you bring mee whereas he is that I might speake with him. Then the Squier brought him to the Knight, and Arthur did salute him, & the knight right pittiouslie and with a soft voice saide, sir you be hartelie welcome: Sir said Arthur, you haue sent for mee, beholde now here I am, therefore declare vnto me your will. Then the Knight enforced himselfe to speake, and saide, sir for gods sake be you not displeased though you be come hether for my sake, for sir the sicke creature seeketh euer for health, and to the intent that you may bee certaine of my sickneslle, if you be not displeased I will declare vnto you all my griefe. Then the Knight vnarmed himselfe, and layde his bodie all naked, and Arthur saw in his backe fiue great wounds, made with a knife that was poisoned, & ther began at his shoulders, and endured downe to his thighs, and the wounds were sore rankled, and of such largenesse, that hee might well haue laid in euery wound all his arme, & when Arthur sawe that his heart trembled with pittie, & demanded who had giuen him the wounds: certainlie sir said the Knight, I wil shew you, it is of truth I loued hartly a faire damsell, who is right noble and gentle, and shee me in lyke case, & when I might I did resort vnto her, and shee is in a chamber aboue in this Castle, & at the last this loue ý was betweene vs was knowen by her friends, wherewith they were sore displeased, and so laie in a wait on me at a season that I was with her, and as I woulde haue departed, they take me & haue araied me as you see with poisoned knives, that I can haue no health, and the Damsell is kept fast in prison in a chamber here aboue, to the intent that she shuld not come to me to help me, for she can doe me more good thē all the creatures of ý world, & if I might haue any creature that could finde the meanes to speake with her, she woulde send me such ointments that wold make me whole & sound, & sir the seuen knights ý you haue deliuered me of, did kepe the gates, to the intent ý no Surgion might come hether to help me, sir I haue ben foure yere in this torment that ye see,

and ther is non in all this place that would bring me such things as my ladie and loue would serue me, and they will suffer none to speak with hir from me, and therfore I must needs dye. Well sir said Arthur and how should any body entre into the castell sith the gates be shut. Sir saide the knight there is none that can entre at the gates for they be ouer strong, but sir in the castell dich there is a litte ship by the which the knights that ye haue slaine were wont to enter into the castel, & by the ship there is a little false gate, whereby ye may entre into the castill if it please you, and so ye may bring from my ladie the oyntment that shal help me. Sir said Arthur I shal do my power, and than he said to the squier, Friend bring me to the ship and I wil entre into the castell. Whan the squier brought him to the ship, and Arthur entred into it, and than the ship went forthe without any maner of touching and Arthur was not gone farre from the banke but ther came flying about him more than three thousand quarels of shot out of crosebowes, and Arthur sate in the ship & couered him with his white shield and the quarells did light as thick thereon as though it had rained, in such wise that all the ship was rased with quarells, and in this maner he approched to the posterne, and whan he came to the entre he found sticking rounde about the gate great long sharp speares with heads of fine steele, than he toke his good sword in his hand and layde on these speares as fast as he could, & so did cut them cleane asonder in the middest, and there he did so much that by clean force he entered in at the posterne, and whan he was within, ther rose such a wynde, that Arthur had much paine to hold him on his feete, and than ther fel so great aboundance of raine that he stode to the myd leg in water, the which water ran so fast that he was faine to staie him by his speare, for what for the wynde & swiftnesse of the water, he had much paine to stande vpright, and at the last and with great anayle he did so much that he issued out of the straytnesse of the posterne, and than he heard a thing make a great noyse in the castel, and therwith there came on him at once more than

fiue hundred persons redie to fight againste him, & so they assailed him rudely on all partes, and they did caste at him flint-stones, dartes and staues right greate plentie, and he gaue againe right greate strokes and ouerthrewe all that euer he attained vnto, how be it the prease was so great that they caused him to kneele downe on his knees, and there quickly he stept vp againe and dasht in among them, and was right sore chafed, and his strength than began to encrease, and the more he badde to doe, the more grewe his strength, and so he cut asonder all that euer he attained vnto, and so by cleane force he drew his back to a wall & there rested him. Than his enemies ran to crosebowes and to speares, and so charged him with many great strokes. And whan he felt himselfe so sore oppressed, he was sore chafed there with, and so he abandoned him selfe among them, and gaue great strokes, for whom so euer he touched, he claue him to the shoulders, & than they began to flye before him, and he followed them, but he was right sore wery, for they behinde him did him much paine and trauaile, in this case thus fighting, he was from three of the cloche till it was noone, and three times he was driuen down on his knees, and yet for all that, euer he rose againe in the spyte of them all. And as he was thus fighting, at the last he heard the sownde of a great horne aboue in the castel, and as sone as all those that fought against Arthur heard the blast of the horne, they all sodainly departed without any word speaking, and so there remained but all onely Arthur, whereof he had great maruaile, than Arthur dressed him towarde the castell, and entred into it, and so at the last he entred in to the faire halles, & there found neither man nor woman, and than he serched all about the place, but he could finde no creature. At the last he entred into a faire rich chamber, and there he sawe the moste faire and richest bed that euer was seene, and it was all redie made to lie downe therein, than he approched thereto and sate downe on the side therof, and his sword in his hand, and than he heard well much people comming and going in the same chamber, and heard

dores and windowes open & shut, but he could see nothing, whereof hee had greate mervaile, and when hee had sitten a good space on the bedde and well rested him, at the last hee sawe where there came into the Chamber a greate compasse of Ladies and Damsells, and Knights and Squiers, and in the middest among them they sawe where ther was a faire young Quéene crowned with golde, in a surcote of Ermines, and a mantel of violet silke, and she was of right great beautie, and foure Knights lead her, and she was enuironed all about with other faire Ladies. And as sone as he sawe her, hee knewe well that shee was Proserpina the Quéene, whom he found in the forrest the night before, and then he rose vpon his fet, and the Quéene came running to him and embraced him about the necke, & said: Sir you are right heartelie welcome into my house. Faire Ladie quoth Arthur, I praie to God giue you both health and much ioy. Arthur said the Quéene, now are you past all ieparde, for now that you be in my companie you be in a suretie, therfore put of your harneis, for you shall be in as great safetie as mine own proper bodie. Madame quoth Arthur, I thank you, howbeit I haue not as yet atchieued that thing as I came hether for, for heere is beneath in this Castle a sicke Knight who hath sent me hether to a Damsell that should giue him health, and I haue promised to giue to him that she would deliuer me for his health, therfore madame I require you, if she be heere in your companie, cause me to speake with her if it please you, and thereby I shall accomplish my conenaunt to the Knight. Friend quoth the Ladie, be you no more dismaid of the Knight, for I promise you he shall haue health for your sake, and that right shortlie. Then the quéene called to her a Ladie, who was called Argence, & then she said to Arthur, sir behold héere ỹ same Ladie that the knight was hurt for, & it is she that can giue him health, therefore Argence I will that you goe to your Knight, & think on his helth as one louer ought to do of another. Madam qd Argence, with a good will, & I thank you an hundred times, sith that I haue leaue to go to my louer.

and sir you haue wonne thereby of him to be a true & faithfull knight, and of me you shall haue a true seruant, therwith she departed, and Proserpina commaunded that Arthur shoulde bee vnarmed, then there ranne about Arthur knightes and Ladies, and one take awaie his sheld, another his sword, another his helme, and so each of them laid to their handes to helpe him, and when he was vnarmed, he stode in his doublet, then the Ladies brought him warme water to wash his necke and his face and handes, and then the Ladies did wipe him with faire white kerchiefs. Then Bawdewin came and brought his gowne to put on, but the Quæne would not suffer that, for she made him to put on a greene kirtell, and a sircote of scarlet, then the Quæne toke her owne mantell from her necke, the which was of purple silke, and put it on Arthur, then hee was so faire and gentle, that one coulde not bee satisfied with beholding of him, for all the ladies then said, how that the knight was a gratious person, great ioye shoulde that Ladie haue that might haue such a louer as hee was. Then the Quæne toke him by the hand, the which was a verie goodlie sight to beholde, for they were both faire and young, and thus hand in hand they went throughout ỳ chamber, talking of many things, and when they had thus talked together a great space, the Quæne commaunded euerie person to depart, and to leaue them alone together, and so they did. And then the Quæne taking him by the hand said: Arthur, let vs go sit downe on yonder beds side, and so they did, and by that time the chamber was cleane auoided, sauing onelie of Bawdewin, who said vnto his master: sir I thinke it best that I goe and see your harneis, and amend it, for it is greatlie brused, and it can hardlie be tolde whether you shall haue anie nede thereof shortlie or no. And when Arthur heard him he knew wel what he meant, and therefore he smiled, and so Bawdewin departed. Then the Quæne saide to Arthur: mine owne sweete and true loue, I am now well pacified in my heart, now that I haue you in my house, as of him that in all the world I most desire to speake withall, and therewith shee

laide one of hir armes about his necke, and with the other hand she did strike downe his haire and said: Arthur you be come to the place whereas you be much loued with a faithfull heart, wherefore you shall be Lord and gouernour ouer all the land that I haue in gouernaunce, wherefore I will make you my Knight and soueraigne loner by the waie of marriage, and first I present my selfe to you and all ỳ power that I am Ladie ouer, & I assure you that there was neuer man as yet there as you be nowe, therefore refuse not the honour and profit that I offer you. then she take a ring from her finger and said, by this gift I put you in full possession of me and all mine, therfore gentle Knight I require you receiue it. And when Arthur heard her speake thus and sawe the ring, then he beheld well the Ladie, and sawe the gentlenesse and fairenesse that was in her, & felt her swete breath, and sawe her smiling countenaunce, at the last his heart came to him, and remembred Florence, then he could not kepe himselfe from weping, and cast out many a depe sigh, and beheld well Proserpina and saide: Ah gentle and noble ladie, your amorous words pearceth my hart, so that I fele my selfe in the greatest perpleritie that euer was anie creature, for if I were the most high and noblest King that euer was since Alexander the great, and if I had learned in loue all the daies of my life, and in the end attained to that case that I am nowe in, I shoulde well thinke my paine and labour right well imploied, and highly rewarded, for if all the Kings of the world were all in one person, and all their goods and honours, and all the partes thereof were gathered together in one person, and if it pleased you to take him to your seruice, he should well thinke himselfe right highlie and dearelie gouerned, but madame I am but a simple person to be compared to your high estate, therfore you shoulo abate greatlie your renowme if you should take such a straunge Knight as I am, wherefore you should be blamed much of your people, therefore madame for Gods sake aduise your selfe better, and let this passe ouer, & take such a noble personage is male for your estate and honour.

Sir quoth the Ladie, I arquite all the worlde for you, for I will no other but onelie you, therfore receiue me, for I will it shall be so, and no other wise, and if you will defend your opinion by her that you told me of this last night in the forrest, you cannot doe so by reason, for you neuer sawe her, nor she you, nor neuer spake with her, therefore there is no conenaunt made betweene you and her, but that lawfullie you may leaue her and you list, therefore you cannot excuse you to fulfil this my desire, without it be for cowardise that you haue to enterprise the gouernaunce of a Realme. And when Arthur had well vnderstode her, hee answered and said, madame in verie deede I haue tolde you the truth as it is, and I would be glad to doe that thing that should please you, howbeit of one thing bee you certaine, that I haue set my heart there as I haue shewed you, so that I can neuer call it againe, you maye beholde heere my bodie, take it and it please you, but my hart remaineth in another place with her who hath it in keeping. Then there was a Ladie came to the Queene and shewed her that her dinner was readie: and then she said, sir Knight, thinke well on this matter, I giue you respite till to morrow, and so shee tooke Arthur by the hand and lead him into the hall, and there he saw so many lordes couered, and so great plentie of Ladies, Damsels, Knights, and Squiers, that he meruailed greatly to behold the noblenesse that he sawe there. Then the Queene said alowde that euerie bodie might heare her, Lordes & Ladies, beholde this Knight who shall bee Lord and captaine of all my seigniorie. And when they heard that, they cried all with one voice, hee is welcome, God kepe him, blessed be the houre that euer hee came hether, and they all beheld him meruailously, and praised much his freshe beautie and goodly demeanour. Then there began great feast and ioy, with much honourable triumph, so they were set to dinner and serued right honourablie. And after dinner they sported the a long season, and at the last the Queene called to her two of her Ladies, the fairest of all the companie, and commanded them that they shuld lead Arthur a playing, & that they

should shew to him much chere to raise him to loue one of them if they could bring it about, & they answered that they would do the best ỹ laie in their power, so they two lead forth Arthur into faire chambers and Gardens of pleasure, and they did as much to drawe him to loue one of them, as euer did woman to draw any man to loue, for their dealing with him was such, that it would haue bene hard for anie other creature to haue withstood their occasions, for if a woman be minded to cast forth her hookes & lines to take any man, therewith, it is verie hard to scape out of their daunger for in such a case a woman is more subtil then the diuell, for he causeth a woman of such disposition to doe that thing that he cannot do himselfe, in like manner this Quéene cõmanded these Ladies to do that which she could not do her selfe, but Arthur for all their pleasaunt occasions would neuer bend, for all that they did or said was verie noisome to him, for alwaies he had in his heart the remembrance of ỹ faire Florence, & in so this case he was betwéene them till it was time to goe to rest. Then he was conuaied to his chamber with more then fortie Knights, & a great multitude of torches against his comming, the Quéene also was readie in his chamber, and then within a little while after the spices and wines were eaten and dronken, then the Quéene and all other toke their leaue of Arthur, and departed out of his chamber and went to his bed, & ther was burning all night before his beds sete foure mortes of waxe, and when euery bodie was a bed there came to Arthurs beddes side a faire Damsell sent to him from the Quéene, and was in a kirtle of ermines, and ouer that a rich mantel of silke, & so she leaned downe on the bedde to Arthur, and with her hand she stroked downe his head verie swetlie, and there she made him such lowlie countenance, that he might perceiue well how she would haue hadde him to haue taken her into his bed, and at last Arthur said, faire Ladie I am in feare least you will take colde with your tarrying so long heere, therefore either come to bed or goe hence. Sir quoth she, I will gladly lie wt you, but first you shal assure me to loue me, & no other,

A faire Ladie quoth he, that can I not doe, for I loue another; and so then should I be false of my promise. Well sir, said she: then I will goe my waie: You saie well quoth Arthur, I praie God send you a good aduenture, and so therewith she departed, and Arthur slept as long as it pleased him, till it was faire daie in the morning. Then Bawdewin opened the windowes, for Arthur would arise. Then the Queene entered into the chamber, and Arthur sate in his bed putting on of his doublet, and as soone as Bawdewin sawe the Queene he incontinentlie spake vnto Arthur, Sir beholde who commeth hether to you, by mine aduise let not her escape at this time. Then the Queene sate downe by Arthur on the beds side, and she badde Bawdewin go plaie him for a season: Madame quoth he, with a right good will, I will not long anoie you heere: Then the Queene demaunded of Arthur how hee had taken his rest that night, and bad him as then good morrow; and Arthur answered and said, madame, God the author of all goodnesse send you his loue. Friend said she, I gaue you yesterdaie respite till this daie, therefore as you be now aduised either to take or refuse that I haue offered you, shew me now your mind in that behalfe shortlie: Madame saide he, I can shew you no more, nor giue you anie more then I haue done, you may take my bodie the which is heere present, but as for my heart I cannot take it awaie from whence it is, I haue enforced my selfe to haue it mine, but the more I thinke on her that hath it, the faster she holdeth it, therefore madame I can doe no more, for trulie you haue heere the body without the heart.

Then the Queene beholde Arthur well, and embraced him about the necke, and smiling saide: Well good friende Arthur, from hence forth be in peace, for trulie I haue right well assaied your truth, but nowe I see well your stedfast faithfulnesse, for you be true in your loue, for I sée by it you loue her faithfullie, and certainlie you haue good cause so to doe, for in like maner she loueth you, for shee hath refused the Emperour of Inde[illegible] loue for your sake, for her hart

is on no creature of the world but onelie on you, and I am she that anone after her nativitie didde destinie her to you, when she was brought vp to vs into the mount Perillous, and as for the other two Ladies that wer with you yesterdaie, the which so sore did tempt you, to haue wonne your loue, the which they did but onely to assaie you, one of them destinied that the Image in the Pauillion who holdeth the chaplet should neuer giue it but to you, & so you to haue both the Ladie and the Chaplet, and the other Ladie destinyed that you should haue the white sheld, and the good inchanted sword, the which you be in possession of, & the third that came to your bed, last she destinied that if anie other person would presume to take the faire Florence, that he shoulde die an euill death, and I haue caused you to come into this Countrie, for I made you to haue the vision of the Eagle of golde that you thought you sawe in your sleepe, and there you sawe a Dragon the which would haue taken her from you, the Dragon is signified by the Emperour of Inde, for as much as he may he wil hinder you frō hauing her, howbeit shee shall bee yours at length, but first you shall suffer much paine & trouble, but I will shew you what you shall doe, keepe well the loue of the King of Orquenie, and of the Archbishop of Cornite, for they shal be to you both true and stedfast, & speciallie aboue all other loue well master Steuen, for by his meanes you shall haue her after your warre is done, and in your war I wil helpe you with fortie thousand halberts, it is I that sent for you in the name of the hurt Knight, that you should come to me, to the intent that I might assaie you, and to know of what faithfulnesse you were of, but now Florence may be in assurance that she is beloued of the best knight of the world, and of the most faire & stedfast knight that now liueth, therefore now sir knight arise, for it is high time. Then the quæne departed, and Arthur appareiled himselfe and went into the hall whereas he found the said quæne noblie accompanied, and all they rose against Arthur, and he verie curteouslie saluted them, then the quæne caused him to sit downe by her, and he said: Madame

vanne & if like your grace it is now high time that I take forth my iourney, and goe thether as I am in minde to doe. Certainlie sir said the queene, I am verie well content that you doe so, but first you shall dine. So then Arthur dined there with the Queene, and after dinner hee toke his leaue of the queene, and of all the Court, and there was much sorrow when he departed, for all the Court hoped that he shuld haue ben their Lord. Then Arthur mounted on his horse, & departed out of the castle, and came to the hurt Knight and demaunded of him how he did, and whether he had well acquited his couenaunts or not. Verilie sir quoth the knight, I doe right well, and you haue trulie and noblie acquited you towne, therefore the Lord I hope will reward you, and I am & will rest yours. And thus Arthur commended him to God, and the Ladie also that was his loue, and so rode forth towards Cornite.

How Arthur when he was departed from the Queene Proserpina, it fortuned him to take his lodging with the nephew of sir Isembart, who tooke Arthur and locked him fast in a Towre, to the intent to haue slaine him by night, but there Arthur did so valiantlie that he brake out of the tower, and slew the Knight and all his people. Chap. 71.

SO it was that when Arthur was departed from Proserpina, he rode so long till at the last he entered into the land of the Duke of Bygors nephew, and so by aduenture he toke his lodging with a Knight who was nephew to sir Isembart, and he receiued Arthur with greate ioy, when he was readie he went into the hall where this Knight was. Then ỹ knight demanded of Arthur what was his name, & he as one that doubted nothing, answered, sir I am called Arthur, & my squier is named Bawdwin: then the Knight knew ỹ it was he that had slaine his vncle sir Isembart, which made him angrie, but he made no shewe thereof, for he knew that Arthur was a Knight greatlie to be doubted,

for he knew well that he was not able to resist against him, therefore he thought to slaie him in his bed a sleepe, & in the meane time to close him fast in a Towre, and then to send for the Duke of Bygor and all his companis, and there to slaie him in the night time. But hee made a faire countenance to Arthur, and said: sir I am bound to loue you well because you sewe sir Isembart, for of all men liuing I hated him most, for he did me many displeasures, & thus with faire wordes he drawe of the time with Arthur till it was supper time, and then he was right well serued, and after supper they went and sported them till it was time to go to their rests. Then the knight caused Arthurs bedde to bee made in a strog tower, but it was so well hanged with clothes of silke and Arras, that Arthur coulde not perceiue the walls nor strength thereof: and when Arthur and Bawdwin were entered into the towre, incontinently the knight shut fast the dowre, which was all of yron, and did bar it fast with foure great bars of yron, and cried on Arthur & said: sir make you as merry as you can, for ere you depart out of your chamber you shal lose your head, for you may say you be vnhappie to come hether to your mortall enimie, & when Arthur heard that he was verie angrie, and ranne to the dowre, thinking to haue opened it, but hee coulde not, for it was barred without with foure great bars of steele. Then the knight armed him & all his companie, so that they wer welnigh to the number of eighteen persons, and the Mone did shine faire and bright in a little windowe behinde one of the Carpets. Then Bawdwin tare downe the hangings, and then they might see clerlie all about them, for the light of the Mone came in at the windowes whereas the prisoners wer wont to be serued. Then Arthur armed him and toke his sword in his hand, and beheld well the windowe the which was very strongly barred with yron, and by aduenture he found in the chamber a great leuer of yron, and so he tooke it in both his hands, as hee that was right sore displeased, and did lift vp the leauer as lightlie as though it had ben but a sticke, and laid at the bars of yron with such

strength,

strength that he all to burst the bars and stones, and made such an hole, that an Ore might wel issue out therat. Then the Knight and his companie without when they saw that, they did cast at him verie rudelie darts, and quarrells shot out of the crossebowes. Then Arthur toke his white shæld and went to the window, and there receiued all their shot, but they could in no wise hurt him: then Arthur leapt out a windowe, and so descended downe and couered him with his shæld, when he was downe they ranne all at once vpon him, but Arthur gaue such strokes that he smote downe all that euer he attained vnto, and Bawdewin tooke a barre of yron and did help his master to the best of his power, and at the last Arthur encountered the Knight of the place, and gaue him such a stroke, that he claue him to the shoulders and so fell downe dead to the earth, and then anone after he discomfited all the remnaunt, for he dealt such discipline among them, that he cut off armes, handes, legges, & heads, and all that euer he attained vnto. Then Bawdewin ranne and did lift up the drawe bridge, and did close fast the gates, to the intent that none should escap, and so they searched all about, but they could finde neither man nor man nor woman, and then they went to their rests till the nert daie, and so rode forth on their iourney towards Cornite.

How Gouernar in searching for Arthur, by aduenture he passed by the same Castle whereas Arthur had slaine the Lord therof, and there he was assailed by the friends of the said Knight, and there he did so valiantly that he slew the most part of them. Chap. 72.

AND when Arthur had wel ridden foure leagues, then was it knowen how that the Knight was slaine, and all that euer were in the place, & thether came all the Knightes friendes, and found him dead, wherefor they were verie sorrowful, and as they made

made this sorrow, it fortuned that Gouernar passed by the same Castle, and as sone as they that were within saw him, they thought it had bene he that had slaine their Lord and friend. Then they began to crie all at once, let vs issue out, for yonder is he that hath slain our Knight, and so they ranne all at once at him with great axes & mases of Steele, and did put him to much anoyaunce. Then Gouernar deliuered his Speare to Jahot his Squier, and set hand to his sword, and gaue many greate strokes rounde about him, and cut off hands and legges, and made armes and heades to flie into the field, and at the last he did so much that he deliuered himselfe from them all sauing of three Knights, and they came with a great run to him, and the first that Gouernar encountered, he strake him so rudelie that he fell to the earth, and in his falling burst his neck. Then he dressed him to the second, and gaue him such a stroke with his sword, that he made both helme and head to flie to ꝑ earth: Then the third stode still without anie mouing, and demaunded of Gouernar of whence he was, and he answered how that he was a straunge Knight. And I praie you sir said the other Knight, where laie you this night passed: I laie said Gouernar, seauen leagues hence with the Ladie of Quarfolde: Well sir said the Knight, then you be not he that laie all night in this castle: Truelie said Gouernar, it was not I, for I neuer sawe this Castle before this time: Well sir saide the Knight, then I require you to come with me a little waie, and I promise you I will bring you again into this same place without anie manner hurt or damage to you or anie of yours, and all this he did because he wold bring him before the dead bodies for to see whether anie of them wold bleed again freshly or not, for therby he thought surely that he should know whether it were he or not that had slaine al those people: and Gouernar accorded to his desire, and so they entered into the castle, & there they saw the dead bodies without anie more bleeding. And when the Knight sawe that he said, sir these people did runne against you wrongfullie, and so it appeareth by them, for they that

had thought most for to haue won, I think hath now most lost, wherefore sir ye may depart whan ye will, for ye shall not be let for me, and I pray to god to send you right good aduenture. Than Gouernar departed and so followed after Arthur.

How that Arthur founde xl. knights who hod taken a damosell the which they found in a forrest, and they would haue rauished hir, and there Arthur resceued hir and slew al the xl. knightes who would haue pilled and robbed the ladies castell, and haue slaine all that had bene within. Cap. 73.

ARthur rode forthe so long till at the last hee came to a great Forest, and as he would haue entred into it, there encountred him a faire young damosell right sore weping, and hir faire yelow haire hanging about hir shoulders, and she was right sore hurt in the visage, and bled fast, and as soone as she saw Arthur armed, hir feare began to be dowble, and than she kneeled downe and held vp hir handes, and cried him mercie and saide, gentil knight saue my life, and the honour of my bodie, and take all that euer I haue, and she was but in hir smock and a thin surcote. And whan Arthur sawe hir, he knew well that she was a fraide, and said: faire loue haue no drede, for I will do nothing to you but good. And when she heard that, she was in a suretie she sate hir downe on the ground, for she was in that case for feare, that hir legges would not beare hir, nor could not speake of a great season. Than Arthur alighted from his horse, and right swetely toke hir in his armes and sayd my owne swete damosell be ye now well assured and of good hart, and shew me what case ye stande in, and I shall ayde you with all my power, than he sawe how the maydens haire was all ruffled by reason of the wynde and thicke bushes that shee had runne through, and Arthur lyke a gentil knight did strike downe hir haire, for they were right faire and goodly. And whan she might speak she said,

sir your great sweetnesse and gentle heart hath taken from me part of my feare, howbeit all that season she wept right pittifully and said, sir I will shew you all the case how it standeth with me sith it pleaseth you to know it, sir it is of truth I haue dwelled heere in this Forrest with an aunt of mine a widowe, a good olde Ladie, in a faire greate manor of hers, and now there is come into this Forrest fortie knightes who are banished out of their Countrie, & they doe nothing but robbe and pill, and they haue in their companie thirtie horse men and ten foote men, and so they robbe ouer all the countrie, so that they leaue no house vnrobbed, and this other daie they sent to mine aunt that shee should send them two hundred pound of money: but mine aunt would not, for she wist not why she should so doe, and so now they be come and haue laid siege round about mine aunts place, and there haue continued these fifteene daies, and haue made their vowe that they will neuer goe thence till they haue wonne the place and burnt it downe to the earth, and slaine mine aunt, & so I issued out at a little gate to go to a brother of mine, to desire him to get together our linage, to come to helpe and deliuer vs from these theeues & robbers, and as I was going heere by, there met me tenne foote men of their companie, who lieth in a waite to keepe the high waies, and thus they haue arayed mee as you see, and haue dispoiled me and taken awaie my palfraie, and so would haue rauished me, but as God would they fell at variaunce among themselues who should haue bene the first that should haue defouled me, and so they fell together and gaue each other greate strokes, and in the meane time I fledde awaie in greate feare of my life. Then Arthur sayde, faire Damsell, goe wee two together whereas these ribaudes bee, and I shall doe so much to them either by faireneese or foulenesse, that they shall render to you againe your gowne and your Palfraie. A sir saide the Ladie, they are verie euill people, and a greate companie. Faire Ladie, care not therfore saide Arthur, God will helpe you in your neede.

Than the damosell mounted vpon Arthurs horse behinde him, and so rode forth till at the last they arriued where as these theues were who wer seking for the damosel among the bushes. And they saw hir on horsebacke riding behinde Arthur, they ran all about him to haue slain him, but than Arthur toke his sword and layd so on these rybaudes, that within a short space he had slaine them all. Than the damosel had right great Ioye and so toke again hir horse and hir clothing and apparayled hir and saide to Arthur, sir I pray God keepe you from all euill encombraunce. And Arthur sayde, my loue now let vs go to your aunt, and let vs helpe hir as much as we can. A sir said she, ye can neuer haue victory ouer them, for they be at least xxx. on horsebacke well armed and there be of them many good knights, therfore anone they will slay you, the which should be a great domage, therefore let vs go to my brother and gather together my friendes, the which shall be in nombre at the least of xl. persons on horseback, and so than shall ye slay them. Than Arthur saide, faire damosel take ye no thought therfore, for I warrant you or I depart, I shal make them to be to vs such friends, that from hence forth to you nor to none other they shall doe no great hurt. Well sir saide the ladie God giue you grace thus to doe, for they be right ill people. So thus they rode forth together into the forrest, and the same time Gouernar & Iacket were entred into the same forrest to seeke Arthur, for they had heard tidinges that he was rydden into that forrest before them, and they rode so long till at the last they found where as these theeues lay dead, and than they thought wel how that Arthur had done that deede. Than gouernar sayd to Iacket, friend I know well my lord Arthur hath bene here, I se well he is a good carpenter, for he hath made here alaire sight of chips. Sir truely said Iacket, there is in him great dispence, for hee giueth more than is of him demaunded, for he hath giuen more to this company than they would haue had, & all this season Arthur rode forth till w the damosel, & at the last they. arriued at y damosels aunts place, and the sayde theeues as

than had left their siege and were gone after a great company of marchants to thentent to rob and sleye them, and in the meane season Arthur and the damosell came to the gate, and she called the Porter. And as soone as he saw hir he knew hir right well, and so set open the gate, and than Arthur & the damosell entred into the place. Than Arthur sayde to the porter, friend let the gate stande still open, for your enemies are all gone, for they all that were here wer my cosins therfore I warrant you be not a feard of them, therefore let downe the bridge and so the porter did, for he beleued him. Than the ladie led hir knight into the hall. Than hir aunt came to them and made them right great feast, and so vnarmed Arthur and made redy the meate, and than they sate downe to supper, and as they sate, there entred into the hall one of the knights of the said theues, and so he came straight to the table whereas they did eate, with a great staffe in his hand, & without speaking of any word he lift vp his staffe and strake the ladie betwene the shoulders, so that he made hir to leane downe flat on the table, & therewith she made a great crye, and straight way the thef toke a great cup of Siluer full of wyne and did cast all the wine at Arthur where as he sate, and toke the cup with him, and therwithal returned backe again without speaking of any word, & as he issued out of the hall he met Baldewin and strake him so rudely that he wist not wel wher he was. Than Arthur saide to the ladie, madame thus to be beaten and to lese your goodes is a right great outrage. Than the knight answered Arthur & said. sir if thou wilt amend it come to the crosse way beside vnder wood & ther shall ye finde me. Than Arthur stept vpon his feete, and called for his harnesse, and anone Baldwin armed him. Than the ladie saide, gentle knight in the honour of the high God of heauen goe not thether, for they are rrr. on horseback well armed, wherfore ye can not endure against them all. Madame sayde Arthur speake to mee no more, for I will go looke on them, and so mounted on his horse and followed the knight to the crosse way, wheras he was

redie abyding for Arthur, and as sone as he sawe Arthur comming he cast downe the cup and toke his speare, and they met together so rudely that the knight brak his spere, but Arthur strake him so that his spear ranne through out his bodie more than a foote, and so fell downe dead. Than Bawdwin said, right now thou strakest me, and now thou art striken againe, for thy great pride thou hast now an ill reward, but of such deserte, such payement, and so Bawdwine drew out the knights owne sword and strake of ther with the knights hand wherewith he had striken the ladie at the table, and so did put the hand into the cup. And the remenaunt of the theeues as they were departing of their pray that they had wonne of the marchaunts, they espyed how one of their felowes was slaine, and therefore incontinent they toke their harneis and ranne at Arthur on all sides, and so gaue him many great stroks, but euer Arthur caste his shelde beefore him, and thereon receiued all their strokes, so that they could in no wise payre his shield in any maner of point, whereof they had right great maruaile.

Than Arthur strake one of them so rudely that his head flew clean into the feeld, and he claue another to the shoulders, and the third he claue from the shoulder downe to the waist, and so gaue among them many wonderous strokes: but they were very many, and so some of them ran to crosbowes, and to dartes, and therewith did him much anoyaunce, but alwaies right valiantly he defended him selfe, and so at the first bront he slew vpon a rit of them. Than as they were thus fighting together, it fortuned Gouernar to ariue on them by the reason of the brute and noyse that he had heard, and there he saw well how all that company were on one knight whom he sawe defende him selfe right valiantly, and so long he beheld him till at the last he knew well it was his master Arthur, by the reason of his white shield, than he dasht to his horse and came in among them as the Wolfe doth among Sheepe, and strake so the first that he encountred, that he ranne him cleane throughout the bodie, and he set his hande on his swoorde, and strake

so

so another that his heade fell on Arthurs horse necke. And when Arthur sawe that, he stode and beheld him, and he knew well it was his olde Knight Gouernar, whereof he had great ioy, and so rested himselfe to beholde Gouernar how valiauntlie he fought with his sworde, and ther he sawe how Gouernar did cleaue one downe to the girdle. Then did Arthur smile heartely & said, this master chasteneth right sore his Schollers, for hee teacheth them a harde lesson, by the faith that I owe vnto God I will helpe him.

Sir saide Bawdewin, when neede is then a friende is proued, God giue him good grace and well to doe, and so Arthur rusht into the prease and confounded all that euer he attained vnto. Then one of these theeues that was on foote, for he had lost his horse before, ranne at Arthurs horse with his Speare, and thrust him cleane throughout the bellie, and so the horse fell downe dead. Then Arthur leapt on his feete and his sworde in his hand, and dressed him to the theefe that had slaine his horse, and gaue him such a stroke that hee claue him to his shoulders. And when Gouernar sawe Arthur on his feete hee was right sorrowfull, and so dasht into the prease, and encountered a Knight so rudelie, that neither his healme nor coise of stele coulde saue him, but hee was cloven to the hard teeth and so fell downe dead. Then Bawdewin toke his horse and brought him to Arthur, and quicklie he leapt vp thereon, and bestirred himselfe among his enimies, and so betweene him and Gouernar, of thirtie they lefte but foure aliue, and they were taken, and in their taking two of them were slaine, and the other two were bound fast, and Bawdewin and Jaket did keepe them.

Then there came to them the Ladie and her neece, and when they sawe their enimies lie dead on the ground, and sawe the noble valure that was in those two knights, these ladies praised thē much in their hearts, & ther they saw how Arthur & Gouernar were together making good cheere each

to other, and putting of their helmes. Then the Ladie said to Arthur, Sir from whence commeth this knight, is he pertaining to you. Yea truelie madame saide Arthur, hee is a friend who hath verie well holpen mee this daie, wee were not together this greate while. And the Ladie sawe well how that he was faire and bigge of stature, and said: Sir, we were happie to come hether at this point, and to you sir knight, you haue atchiued this enterprise of the theeues, I require you let these other two be slaine or else hanged, for of an euill rote springth an euill tree, for they will neuer do good if they escape. And when the theeues hearde that, they were in great feare: saide to Arthur: Gentle knight saue our liues and wee will shewe you where is in the Forrest verie great treasure. Where is that said Arthur? Sir sayd they, we will bring you thether so that we die not: and Arthur aunswered and said, Sirs, as for your life and death lyeth in these Ladies hands to doe what it pleaseth them, but shortlie bring vs to this treasure. Then these two theeues went on before, and Bawdewin toke the cuppe with the knightes hand therein, and did present it to the Lady from Arthur, who thanked him much, and so woulde haue giuen the cup to Bawdewin, but he would not take it, for he saide he had inough to doe with the carriage of his horse and harneis. So Arthur rode so long after these theeues in the forrest, till at the last they came into a wilde sauage place in a great valley, and there they found bowes and crossebowes, halberts, healmes, and gownes, couerings, and other cloth the which these theeues had robbed all about the Countrie, and also there they found hidden in the ground golde and siluer great plentie, and cups and chalices, and other vessels of siluer, the which mounted to great value. Then Arthur said to the Ladie, madame cause all this riches to be borne to your place, and render you againe such thinges as hath bene stolne from Churches and other people of the Countrie, as for me none of my companie shall take the worth of a pennie thereof: and the Ladie did as Arthur commaunded her, but she desired Arthur that the two theeues might

be slaine, and so they were incontinently, then they returned to the Ladies place and went to supper, and they were richlie serued. Then Arthur demaunded of Gouernar how maister Steuen and the Marques did: and hee aunswered and saide, howe that they did right well, and were in good health, and how that they did commend them vnto him, and in like manner doth the faire Ladie Margaret of Argenton, for shee is come to the Port Noire to see her vncle the Marques, whereof Arthur had great ioy. And when the Ladie of that place heard that, she knew then well that Arthur was the same Knight that had deliuered the Marques out of prison, and also had rescewed the Ladie Margaret from the hands of the Duke of Bygors nephew. Then she knéeled downe before Arthur and said: sir I humbly thanke you for the aide and succour that you haue done for the Ladie of Argenton, for I am her cosin germaine: and when he sawe her knéele downe, he toke her vp, and so made greate ioy together till it was time to goe to their rests, and in the morning Arthur arose and toke his leaue of the Ladie, and rode forth on his waie towards Cornite, for it was as then but fiftéene daies to Barthelmewtide, when as the greate turney should be betwéene the King of Sorolois & the Emperour of Inde. Now will we leaue to speake of Arthur & Gouernar, and speake of maister Steuen.

How maister Steuen departed from the Port Noire, to goe to the turney at Cornite, and tooke with him the noble Florence rich paulion, wherein was the chaplet, who resembled in all thinges the Ladie Florence, the most fairest creature that was then in the world. Chap. 74.

AS Arthur rode forth on his waie towards Cornite, maister Steuen was at the Port Noyre with the Marques, and with the gentle Ladie Margaret of Argenton, and there did sport and plaie her as a gentle Damsell ought for to doe, and euerie

daie she made chaplets of roses & other flowers, the which she gaue to master Steuen, and she made him also with the nædell worke a girdle and a purse of golde and silke, she loued him exceeding well in her heart. Then master Steuen knew verie well that the great tourney at Cornite approched, therfore he thought it was time for him to depart thetherward, then he said to the Marques: Sir I desire you to kæpe well this Castle of the Port Noire, and to you faire Ladie, I require you kæpe you still companie hære with the Marques your vnckle till you heare from Arthur, for and I can he shall be hære betwæne this & Saint Remiges daie: and verie willinglie they did graunt him ther to abide. Then he toke his leaue of them and toke all his bookes, & the Eagle of gold and the pauilion with the image holding the Chaplet, and so departed, and rode so long till he arriued at Cornite. Then he mounted vp the staires into the Pallaice, at the which time the faire Florence was entered into her owne chamber, and the king at that time was not in the Pallace, but Florence Knightes were playing at the Tables, and other disports, and the master came in among them sodainelie, and as sone as they sawe him, they ranne to him on all sides, and made to him great feast and chære: and at the last it came to the knowledge of Florence, howe that he was come, and incontinentlie shee came to him, and as sone as he saw her, he pulled of his bonnet & saluted her, and she said, sir you be right heartelie welcome nowe, for I was in feare least that you wold not haue come to this turney, therefore it is now time that my Pauilion were pight vp, and forthwith shee lead the master into her chamber and toke him a part, and then she demaunded of him how he had done since hee departed from her, and how that Arthur did.

Madame said he, I sawe not Arthur since hee made the battaile at Argence, for as sone as the battaile was ended, and that the King of Orqueny and Duke Philip and al the whole companie were in great ioy and mirth, there came a messenger to Arthur from the wounded Knight, to the in-

tent

tent that hée shoulde goe to him for to giue him health, and so bee departed the verie same houre, whereof euerie man was so sore troubled that they all departed the same daie. A master said Florence, then I feare me greatlie of his death. Madame said the master, be you in no doubt, neither take anie care for him, for hee feareth not all the world, for there is not such another Knight in all the worlde againe: Madame I shewed him how that you did commend you vnto him, and how that you desired him as derelie as he loueth you, that he shoulde not faile for anie thing but bee at this next great turney at Cornite, & he did promise me certainlie that he would not faile thereof. Ah master saide shee, did you not require him faithfullie so to bee: Trulie madame said he, I warraunt you he will not faile. Well master said she, I require you cause me to sée and speake with him as shortlie as may be.

Madam said he, with a right good will: Well master, then I praie you sée that my Pauilion be pight vp in the field incontinentlie, for peraduenture if he come now anie thing before the daie, and sée no signe nor token in the field that anie tourney should be there, then it might fortune he wold depart againe. Madame (quoth the master) you saie right well, for indéede it is high time. Then shee sent for sir Meuelon her marshall, and commaunded him that her chiefe Pauilion should be pight vp in the fielde, and from thence forth that all her Knightes should lodge euerie night about her Pauilion, and as she commaunded so it was done. And also the master caused the Pauilion with the image to bée pight vp, and many other tents & Pauilions, but the image that held the chaplet in the Pauilion was so goodly and delectable to behold, that no man could be satisfied with loking on her, howbeit the freth beautie of Florence was comparable then to, & so ther were pight vp ten tents & foure score pauilions, al pertaining to ỳ noble Florence, beside al other ỳ were pertaining to her noble lords & knights, for she had there at that time out of her realme to the number of xb. C. Knights. Also sir Meuelō caused his tent to be pight vp, who

was Seneschall to the gentle Florence, and chiefe of her counsaile next maister Steuen, & she trusted much in him, for he was a wise man and a good knight, and no euill speaker, and his Pauilion was set next to the forrest, and farthest from the Ladies pauilion, and next to the Ladies tent was sir Ansells pauilion, nephew to ỳ Senechall, who was a verie hardie and a valiannt knight, the third Pauilion was pertaining to the Archbishoppe of Cornite, who was vnckle to Florence, and brother to the King of Sorroloys, father to Florence, the fourth was sir miles of Valefound, the fift was sir Peter Brisebar, a redoubted knight. Then also thether was come sir Rowland of Bigor, who was one of Florence knightes, but hee was verie enuious, and hee was cosin germaines to the Duke of Bygor, and he caused his Pauilion also to be pight vp, the which was right goodlie and fresh to behold, he was not in the Countrie when the battaile was betweene Arthur and the Duke of Bygors nephew, and when hee knew the discomfiture of his cosin, he was so sorrowfull, that hee did neither eate nor drinke but little the space of three daies after that he knew therof, and when he had somwhat passed his sorrow, then he made a vowe and promise that if he might see or know the knight that had slaine his cosin sir Isembart, that he would be reuenged of him if euer it laie in his power, & he might well be descended of the linage of the duke of Bygor, for he was fell and spitefull & proude, and the chiefe cause why he came to the tourney was to the intent to encounter with Arthur if he came thether. So these fiue pight vp their tents round about Florence Pauilion. Then vpon a daie Florence issued out of Cornite, and al her chiualrie with her, & so went into her owne Pauilion, and all other Lords and knights, Ladies and Damsells went each of them into their owne tents and Pauilions, the which were to the number of two thousand, and Florence commaunded that euerie person should make as great feast and ioy as they could do, so then there began great feasts and triumph. Then knights began to iust and turney to allate themselues, and the Ladies

and

and Damsells did send them chaplets and streamers to set on their healmes and speares, & some companie of knights spoxted them in the Foxrest, and some went to the faire riuer with Sparhaukes and Gerfaulkons on their heades, and some beheld the high tourneis and turnings of the Hakers and Gerfaulkons, Squiers and seruauntes were furbushing and scouring of their masters harneis, and buckeling of shields and helmes, and knocking on heads & burres on mightie speares, Ladies and Damsells did sing & dance with lustie knightes, and clarkes sung ballads, & knights and Ladies talked of loue, some embraced, and some kissed, and shewed signes of loue, and such as were sicke or hurt, were shortlie made whole. Then Florence beheld these lustie Damsels playing and laughing with these fresh young lustie knightes, clapping them on the backes with theyr white hands, and shewing them great signes of loue, & giuing each to other laces, girdles, gloues, kerchiefes, rings, chaplets, and garlandes of fresh flowers. Then Florence cast out a great sigh and saide to master Steuen, sir see you not how these Ladies and Damselles laugh and plaie each of their louer. Ah master and what haue I deserued that I cannot haue my louer to spoxt me with him as well as they doe with theirs, for I loue with al my whole heart, and yet I know not what he is, for my heart lieth on that I neuer sawe, so thus I am in the Sunne without hauing of anie light, I am in loue without ioy. Ah dere master, what haue I deserued more then anie other. Then the master sayde, dere Ladie bee you of good comfort, for the time will come that shall giue you light, the cloud that as yet couereth the light, in good time shall be made bright: A master did you not heartelie commende mee vnto him when you went to Argence. By the faith that I owe to God said the master, I did it madame, in the best wise that I could imagine. Thus the faire Florence and the master, euery day from wednesdaie to saterdaie talked together of the comming of Arthur, the which Saterday the Archbishop said seruice before Florence, and he & all the whole Baronie that daie dined with

the whole Barony that day dined with the noble Florence, for she had desired them so to do.

How sir Rowland of Bygor appeached Arthur of treason because he had slaine his cosin at Argence, and so defied him at the vtteraunce, but Arthur at the first stroke draue him downe horse and all to the earth, and brake one of his armes and two ribbes, whereof Florence was right ioyous, and specially when she sawe her louer Arthur whom shee neuer sawe before. And how after sir Rowlands seruants assailed Arthur to haue slaine him, but he valiauntlie defended himselfe and slewe many of them. Chap. 75.



After dinner the Archbishoppe and master Steuen, and Sir Rowland, and the other Barons, went talking and playing together out of the medowe, and entered into the Forest, and at the last they came to a faire grene Oake, the which didde cast a faire shadowe and a greate circuite about it, and the grasse was faire and softe, and thicke vnderneath, so there they sate them downe and talked together of many things,

till

till at the last the master demaunded of sir Rowland how that he lyked by that Countrie about Cornite, and whether it were fayrer then the Countrte of Bygor. Then sir Rowland aunswered that it was not to him, that he wold not giue anie answere in that case. Why said the master, and as for me I am as little bound to you as you to mee: Well said sir Rowland that maketh no matter, for though you be sonne to a king, yet will I not answere you in that matter nor in anie other, take it as you list: Why sir saide the master, haue I trespassed anie thing against you. Yea that you haue said sir Rowland, and that most grieuously, for you were at Argence when my cosin sir Isembart was slaine, and you kept companie and were chiefe counsailour with the Knight that slew him, therefore I beare a grudge in mine heart against you, and I promise to God that if I may encounter him that did that deed, I will do as much to him as he hath done to my cosin: Sir said the master, when you meete you may do as you will, but oftentimes it fortuneth that a man cannot attain to do so much as he wold do, nor peraduenture hee cannot nor dare not, but as for that deede you ought not to be displesed though right was done, for God lightly will suffer no wrong, but alwaies hee furthereth and aideth the right cause howsoeuer it falleth, Well saide sir Rowland, then you saie howe that my cosin was in the wrong, but there is none that saith so, but hee saith otherwise then truth is, and that will I proue before euerie man against you and you will mount on your horse, for I saie the matter was not truelie nor equallye dealt withall. Sir sayde the master, you laye vnto mee greate outrage and villanie, whereas you saie that I did in that matter otherwise then well and truelie, whereof I saie plainelie you lye falselie in your heade, and certainlie I will neuer be in rest till that I haue set a Knight against you to proue it, and if I can it shall bee the same Knight which made the battaile against your cosin, who will cause you to call againe these wordes that you haue spoken.

Then

Then the master arose great displeased and wold haue departed and left that companie, but the Archbishop held him againe, and prayed him that he wold suffer all that for that time, and at his request he said he wouldo so doe. Then sir Reuelon the Seneschall said to sir Rowland, sir be content with the wordes of the master, for hee is a man of greater dignitie then you be of, for though hee had striken off your head, you haue not so high a friend that durst reuenge your cause, the noble King of Orquenie was at that battaile, and where you saie that the matter was not trulie dealt withall, you speake then vilanie against the King and against Philip Duke of Sabarie his nephew, and against all such as were there, the which saying needeth not there to be rehearsed, for it is a shame to you to suffer such wordes to passe out of your mouth. Then forth displeased Brisebar stept forth and saide, sir Rowland you saie that the master did not truelie in the matter when your cosin was slaine, wherein I saie that you saie not trulie, & if you will maintaine the contrarie take your harneis, & I will take mine, and let it be seene who is in the truth, and therwith sir Brisebar was rising to haue departed, but the Bishop held him againe and said, looke whosoeuer speaketh anie word more of the matter for that time, for the Bishoppe brought them in another talke, and as they were deuising and talking of one matter and other, Arthur and Gouernar issued out of the forrest, and so entered into the medowe. And then Arthur beheld the goodlie tents and pauilions that were pight all about the field, and also he sawe the shields and healmes and harneis shining against the Sunne, and heard the great coursers braie and crie & stampe with their feete, the which sight and noise quickened his hart and courage. At the last Gouernar espied Florence, wherein was the image with the chaplet and shewed it to Arthur. And when he sawe it his heart inwardlie reioyced, for he knew well it was his Ladies pauilion. And by that time the master and all other were entered againe into the faire medow, and Arthur sate on his horse in a great studie and mused of his aduenture.

And

And at the last sir Piles of Valesound espied him & knewe well how that it was Arthur, for he had seene him before at Argence: Then he said to the other knightes that were about him, Lordes behold yonder is a knight all armed, who is right faire to beholde, is there anie here that knoweth him, for hee woulde not name him because of sir Rowland. And when maister Steuen sawe him, he saide, I knowe him right well, wherefore I trust that the greate winde that was lately blowen, will now sone be laide, and of his comming he had great ioy in his heart, insomuch that hee forgate in a manner all his displeasure: Certainlie sir said the Seneschall, he is right faire and gratious to beholde, wherefore I beleeue he is is of a great blood, but me thinketh by his semblaunce he is a great studie, wherefore so euer it be. By my bode quoth Brisebar, I knowe full well wherefore he studieth. Then the maister, and the Seneschall, & Brisebar arose, and faire and easilie went to him ward, & saide each to other, howe that they woulde not name him at that time because of sir Rowland, and so they came before Arthur, who was still in his studie: And Gouernar as sone as he sawe the maister he alighted from his horse and embraced him, and all the other Barons each after other. And therewithall Arthur left his musing, and as sone as euer he sawe maister Steuen and the other knights, he did alight from his horse, and did salute them all one after another, and so among them there was made right great feast and ioy, & then sir Rowland meruailed much what knight he might be, because he sawe so much cheere and ioy made to him, and that they knew him and he not. Then the Seneschall said to Arthur, sir I will you take my tent and pauilion as your own, & so you & I to keepe company together in this turney: Sir I am wel content qd Arthur, & so incontinentlie he was vnarmed, & all his harneis & horse was sent to the Seneschalls tent, and when Arthur was apparailed, then the maister said to him, sir let vs go, and salute you the Archbishop, who is brother to king Emendus, & vncle to the faire lady Florence, for why Arthur heard speak of Florence.

his hart trembled for ioy, & so he went towarde the bishop. And whan the bishop saw him he rose and did salute him, & so did sir Miles and also sir Rowland of Bygor. how be it they knew him not, & so the bishop beheld him affectuously, for he semed to him to be the most faire knight of ye world. Than Arthur did of his bonet and dyd salute the bishop & all other, and in likewise they him again. Than the bishop demaunded of him what he was. Sir saide Arthur I am a knight straunger. And as sone as sir Rowland heard him say so, it ran into his hart that it was ye same knight that slewe his cosin, & than he demaunded of him what was his name. Sir said he, my right name is Arthur. And how cal ye your seigne qd sir Rowland. Sir said Arthur he is named Balwin. Than sir Rowland knew wel that it was he that slew his cosin, and so demaunded of him from whens he came. Sir qd Arthur I come streight from Argence. Well sir qd Rowland saw you the battail that was done ther between a strange knight, & the duke of Bygors neuew. And whan the maister heard the demaunds, he was right ioyous, for than he wist well that the wordes that had ben spoken before, should be well reuenged. Than Arthur answered sir Rowland and said, sir whan the battaile was done I passed forby. I think said sir Rowland that it was your self that did that battaile with syr Isembart. Sir quod Arthur I would bee right glad to be of such valure as to conquere in battaile such a knight as he was. Certainly quod Rowland I know wel it was you, and therfore I say that falsely and vntruely ye did it, and that I will make good incontinent my body againste yours. And whan the arcl bishop heard that, he blamed much syr Rowland for his wordes, & desired him that all the matter might be in rest and peas. But he proudly answered and said, how that he would not, but that he would arme him incontinent. Than the master said to the bishop, nay syr let him alone for he is in the right, therefore he hathe good cause to be reuenged if he can, for whan he hath his enimie present before him, what shall he nede to go seke for him any farther, and all that he saide he

cause he thought long till they were together, for her will was well know that Arthur wold reuenge right well such wordes as he had said to him before. Then Gouernar right sore displeased with Kay said, sir Rowland you are to much outragious to appeale thus this Knight of Falsenesse whome you and I wot not, neuer saw him before, nor will not what he is, therefore I saie plainly you lie falsely in your head, he is not false nor neuer was to you nor yet to anie other, and for that quarrell here is my gage to fight with you my bodie against yours. Then Arthur blamed Gouernar for his wordes, and commaunded him to be in peace, and to her did followe his pleasure. Then Arthur saide, sir Rowlande if you laie anie thing against me, I am here readie to defend me against you: Well sir said Rowland, of Falsenesse I appeale you in that quarell, vnonne thortly on your horse, and defend it and you dare. Well sir said Arthur, you saie well, god your waies and I will not be long from you. Sir, saide the master to sir Rowlande, you haue the heart of a noble Baron, therefore you doe right well to defend your right, for your right and truth shall surelie helpe you, all this be saide but in a mockerie. Then sir Rowland went to arme him, and the Seneschall and the Archbishop, and maister Steuen kept still companie with Arthur, who incontinentlie was armed. Then the master went straight to the noble Florence, and found her in her Tent standing on a cushion of silke, and as sone as she sawe the master, she began to smile and called him to her. Then he said, madame vnder like your grace Arthur is come, and at his first remming sir Rowland of Bryo hath appealed him of falsenesse for slaying of his cosyn of Argence, and so they be both about to arme them, for the battaile betweene them shall be incontinent. And when the Ladie heard him speake of Arthur, her bloud trembled and therewith she blushed as rudie as a rose, and was in her heart right ioyous of his comming, and right sore displeased that sir Rowlande should fight with him so sone at his first romming, then shee sayde: master I doubte nice least anye vilanie

should come to Arthur by fighting with sir Rowland. Madame saide the maister, ye know not as yet the noble valure of Arthur, for I aunsi were you hee setteth nothinge though he had to do al at ones with such pi as sir Rowland is, therefore madame issue out of your pauilion and looke on your lover & behold whether he be faire or not, the archbishop your vnckle is with him, and your seneschall, and sir Ancean, and also sir Miles of valefound, and syr Brisybar, all these are right sore displeased of the felony that sir Rowland hath done to Arthur your knight. A maister said Florence, would to God he were mine, let vs go & I praye you shew him vnto me, for I desire much to see him. Than Florence issued out, nobly accompanied with ladies and damosells, to the number of C. C. and by that time the tidinges was spred al about the field in euery manns tent, how that syr Rowland was arming of him to fight with a straunge knight. And whan the archbishop & the other barons saw Florence, they went and encountred hir, and Arthur was in their company, and there they saw eche other, wherwith they were bothe so sore striken with the dart of loue, that they lost their countenance, how be it Florence as goodly as she might, maintained hir countenaunce, and than she laide hir hand on the bishops shoulder, and demaunded of him what knight Arthur was, who aboue all other seemed to be the most gracious and gentill, and he had his helme of his head, and beheld euer Florence, and also hir faire eyen went neuer from him for she could not kepe hir selfe from beholding of him. Than Brysebar said, madame this same is the knight that brought in my sight the foule mōster of the Brosse to his ende, and euer since he hath offered his seruice to be your knight, if it please you so to except him. In the name of God sayde Florence, he is right hartely welcome, and with a righte good will I retaine him as my knight. Right deere lady sayde Arthur, I humbly thanke you of the high honour that ye doe to mee, as to retaine me to be of the company and number of so many and noble wyse men as your knights bee.

And

And with these wordes ther came a messenger to Florence, and shewed hir how that the kinge of Orqueny and duke Philip were cõming with v.C. knights in their company, and how that he was within a myle and a halfe. They are right hartely welcome said Florence. And by that time sir Rowland was armed and also Arthur. Than the Harawd began to cry, go to gether, bayle, bayle. Than Gouernar set on Arthurs helm on his head, and Bawdwin brought him his horse, and he mounted thereon as lightly as though he had bene vnarmed, than he toke his white sheld and did cast it about his neck. And as soone as Florence saw the sheld she knew it right well, and saide in hir hart. A dere louer that sheld becõmeth you right wel. I pray to God it may be well employed vpon you. Than he toke a great and a mightie speare, and whan he was redy at all points, than he turned his eyen towarde Florence, & hir eyen went neuer from him, but beheld him with feruent loue & desire, wherwith Arthur toke such hardinesse that he feared not all the world at that houre. So than he turned & dashed his horse towarde sir Rowland, and he in likewise to him, and they went together as though thunder had fallen from heauen, and all that beheld them saide one to an other, a good lorde what a goodly knight is yonder strange knight. And sir Rowland hit Arthur so rudely, that he brake his speare all to sheuers, but Arthur strake him with his spear the which was so long & big so vnmeasurably that he sent both knight and hors and all to the earth in a hepe, wherwith sir Rowlands armes brake asonder in the middest, and the hors and saddle fell so sore on him, that it brak two ribbes in his side, and so he lay a great space in a traunce. Wherof Florence had more ioy than euer she had of any thing, and specially when she saw hir loue do so high dedes of prowes. Than sir Rowland had brought thither xiiii. knights, and whan they saw their maister sir Rowlande at that mischife they all toke their harnesse and all at once ran and assailed Arthur.

Than Arthur drew his good sworde and strake so the

first that he encountred with, that he clane him to the chin, and from the second he made his head to flie into the fielde, and the third he made to flye ouer his horse crope and legs vpward. Than euery man beheld the high prowesse of Arthur and saide eche to other, the strokes of this knight are greatly to be doubted. Than Gouernar toke a great peece of a broken chariot and dasht into the preese & drane downe knights both horse and man to the earth. Than euery man said vnto other, this knight is not without company, their almes is right hard to indure, I would haue none of their pitance, they are great dispenders, for they giue more than is of them demaunded. And whan Florence saw the outrage of those knightes, she was right sorowfull, for she had great feare of Arthur. Than she commaunded hir seneschal that he should go and departe the battaile, and that those knights should be all taken, and their handes bound fast together in a punishment of their deedes, than hir senel shall incontinent mounted on a great courser, and in a riche cote sent of greene gyrt with a white silken lace, and his hat at his back, with a white warder in his hand. Than he spored forth his hors and caused knights to come out of euery Tent, and so they toke the knightes that were fighting with Arthur and Gouernar, but first of the xiiii. ther was vi. slaine, and diuers other sore hurt. Than Florence and the archbishop came to sir Rowland where as he laye still at that time in a traunce halfe a sleepe, and whan he was reuiued and saw the bishop and Florence standing before him, hee desired that the knight that had iusted with him might come and speake with him, and so Brisebar went for him, and whan Arthur was come, sir Roulande saide to him: Sir ye be welcome, and for Gods sake pardon mee of ỹ outrage ỹ I haue done against you, as to enterprise to iust against you, wherof now I sore repent me, & frō hens forth I will be your Knight and good friend. Sir sayd Arthur, if ye haue any thing trespalled against me, I pardon you w̄ a good hart. Then ther wer brought forth the knightes of sir Rowland, who wer fast bound because they fought against

Arthur wout anie deffiance before. Then said Florence, in the name of God they shal make a large amends: Certainlie madame said sir Rowland, I am content that they make amendes to the Knight as hee will himselfe. So be it, saide Florence: Madame said Arthur, I thanke your grace sith that they shall make me amends at mine own laying, therfore then they shall goe quit and frée, for I pardon them, for they did but like Knightes to helpe and aide their Lord and maister. And when the Bishop and all other heard him saie so, they saide, this is a frée hearted and gentle Knight. And then the gentle Florence saide to her heart, ah mine owne loue you haue a gentle heart and a frée, and mine heart is with yours, and euer shall be, and then she said to Arthur: Sir Knight you shall goe and vnarme you with my Seneshall, who shall holde you companie: Madame said Arthur, as it shall please you I am content. Then Florence went into her Tent and toke her maister by the hand and saide: Maister you told me truth of Arthur, for he is faire and gratious, and the best knight of his hands in all the world. Certainlie madame all that is trouth, for all nobleneſſe is in him. Well maister said Florence, I loue you entirelie, and also my Lord my father loueth you right well, and you and I haue bene nourished vp together, so you be my man and clarke I woyne of my straight counsaile, therfore you ought to owe me your faith & truth without anie treason or falseneſſe, and you ought to helpe and to aide me in all my busineſſe. Certainly madame quoth the maister, all that you say is of truth, and so shall I doe as long as I liue, for I shall kéepe secret your counsaile as long as I liue. Certainly maister said she, I haue great affiance in you, therefore it is so, I wil that you shal know the secrets of my hart, therfore I require you kéepe it close. It is so I loue Arthur with al my heart, & I will loue him aboue al other creatures of ỳ world, for here I swere faithfully to you ỳ as long as I liue I wil neuer haue Lord nor spouse but only him. And when ỳ maister heard her say so, he had great ioy & said. Madame, surely you haue good cause thus to do, hée is ỳ floure of all ỳ world,

and I shall helpe you to haue him more then anie other person of the world. But master quoth Florence, there is one thing that I would faine knowe, of what linage he is. Certainly madame he is sonne vnto a mightie duke, for Bawdewin his Squier hath shewed me so. That is sufficient, said Florence, and so they left their communication at that time and departed. Then was sir Rowland borne into his Tent and vnarmed, and the Seneschall and sir Brisebar, sir Ancell and sir Piles, lead Arthur to the Seneschalls Tent, and there was he vnarmed, and when he hadde washed his handes and visage, then brought Bawdewin him a sircote of skarlet furred with Ermines, the which became him right well, he was bigge and high aboue all other, and couloured like the red rose had bene set on the white Lillie. Then he said he would goe and see sir Rowland, wherefore euerie man praised him much, & all the Barons went thether with him, and there he was till it was past none, then hee toke his leaue of sir Rowland and issued out into the field, and then ther was assembled all the nobles of the field to beholde him, and they all said how that he was the most fairest creature of ye world, we thinke he be sonne to a king, would to God the faire Florence were his lady and spouse. And therewith he entered into the Seneschalls tent, and he & sir Piles plaied together at the chesse, and by that time the King of Orgenie and Duke Philip his nephewe were com, and wer alighted in the middest of the medow neere to Florence Tent, And so he and Philip and welnigh xviiii. other knightes went straight to Florence Tent, and there they found her playing with master Steuen, & when Florence saiwe the King her cosin and Duke Philip, she did salute them, and embraced and kissed them, and said how they were welcome, and so they made each other great feast and ioy, and sate downe on faire new greene rushes, and talked together of many things. And at the last the king demaunded of the master tidings of Arthur: Sir saide the master, he is not farre hence, he is in the Seneschalles Tent. A madame said the king did you not see him nor speake with him

as yet. Yes sir said Florence, I sawe him when he did iust against sir Rowland, who hath appealed him of falsenesse because of his cosin the Duke of Bygors nephew. And I pray you madame said Philip, how went the iusts betwæn them? Sir, there is two ribbes broken in sir Rowlandes side, and one of his armes broken a sunder, for his horse fell on him: In the name of God said the King, he knew not as then Arthur, but nowe I thinke hee knoweth some of his strokes, therefore madame spæde for the Knight and be acquainted with him, for there is no Prince in all the world but that he would be right glad to haue the noble companie of him, and as I vnderstand he hath offered himselfe to bee your Knight, therefore receiue him and retaine him in such wise ỳ he escape not from you, for you cannot tell what næd peraduenture you shall haue of him hæreafter. Cosin saide Florence, you saie right well, the master shall goe for him, and so he did. Then the King said to Duke Philip his Nephew, a sir where is become the good and faithfull company that you promised to this Knight now that you bee hære, & know that he is so nære and yet you make none other semblaunce, therefore sir Philip step foorth after the master for to goe to Arthur, and as they issued out of their Tent there entered the Archbishop. Then the king and Florence rose and did set downe the Bishop betwæne them.

How that Duke Philip and the master went to fetch Arthur to the King of Orquenie, and to the faire Florence. Chap. 76.

DUke Philip and the master entered into the Seneschalls Tent, and there they found Arthur playing with Sir Miles. And when Arthur sawe Duke Philip he went and embraced him and said: sir you be right heartely welcome. Sir quoth Duke Philip, and you be hære also well found. Sir said Arthur, where is the king of Orquenie: Certainlie sir he is with my Lady Florence in her Tent, and he desireth you to come to him. In the name of God saide Arthur,

thur, I praie to God send him right good aduenture, goe thether, and so duke Philip and he went hand in hand talking together, and the master, the Seneschall, sir Miles, sir Ancean and Brisebar, went after thē till they came to Florence Tent. And when Florence sawe Arthur, her heart began to tremble, and sodainlie blushed, but there was none that toke hēde thereto, for euerie man toke regard to Arthur. And then the king and the Archbishoppe rose and went and embraced him, and made him right great ioye, and set him downe by them, and then the King demaunded of him how he had done sith the time that he sawe him last: and he answered and said, right well I thanke God and you. Then ỳ King said to Florence, madame beholde hēre this Knight, for as God helpe me I would it had cost mee euerie yeare twelue thousand pound, on the condition that he were pertaining to my house, and to bee my companion, and of this I did heartelie require him at Argence, but he then answered me, that he hadde offered his seruice to be your Knight, therefore I saie there is nothing that can bee, but Ladyes winneth all, madame you haue him whereof I am right ioyous, and it pleaseth mee right well, for if I hadde him he should be yours at your commandement, you be a high and puisant Ladie, therefore do him some good, and it shall be to your honour: I promise him saide Florence, I shall make him a great Lord and a puisant, and she thought in her hart that she would make him as great a Lord as she was a Ladie. Madame quoth Arthur, I thanke your grace, and therwith he stode vpon his fēte, and he had a gentle body, both faire and bigge, and so well proportioned in all his members, that the more that Florence beheld him, the more hē pleased her, there was no Ladie there but that they wished that he had bene pertaining to their Lords and husbandes, and as they were talking thus together, there came to Florence a messenger from her father the king Emendus, and he shewed her how that he did heartelie commend him to her, and desired her to go hastilie to dinner, for he was coming, and will lodge the same night nēere to your Tent.

Then

Then Florence made semblaunce as though shee had bene glad of his comming, howbeit shee was not content in her heart with his hastie comming, for she had thought to haue spoken with Arthur after dinner, and then she repented her that she had not spoken with him at good leasure since hee came. Then went she to dinner, and the King of Orquenie and the Bishop sate downe together, and Florence in the middest of the table, and duke Philip and Arthur sat downe together, & so al the other Barons, and they wer right richlie serued, and by that time the Tents & Pauilions of king Emendus were come and pight vp not far from Florence Tent, then ther came Squiers and Officers by great companies, and euerie man in his owne office did their paine to make all things readie against the kinges comming, for the King was comming right neere. And when the King of Orquenie had dined, he mounted on his horse, & Duke Philip, and the Bishop, and Arthur, and all other Barons and Knightes, and all they did as much honor to Arthur as they could doe. And thus they rode forth till at the last they encountered King Emendus, who had in his companie two thousand horses. Then the king of Orquenie and the Archbishop did salute the king, and so rode nere him, & the king betweene them both. Then Philip and Arthur came together, and Philip did salute the kung right sweetly, & so then Philip and Arthur rode forth before the king, & duke Philip held his hand on Arthurs shoulder, and Florence Seneshall, and sir Miles, and sir Brisebar, & sir Ancell, rode euer about him, and made to him right great ioy, and at the last King Emendus perceiued Arthur, and sawe howe all that ioy was made because of him, and hee sawe well how that he was a right goodly Knight. Then the king demanded of the Archbishop his brother, & of the king of Orquenie what Knight he might be that Duke Philip held so much companie withall. By my faith sir said the Bishop, he is a right gratious Knight and a chiualrous of his dedes, and there shewed the King howe that hee had iusted with Sir Rowlande, and howe that hee ouerthrewe him horse

and

and all the earth. Then the king of Orquenie said: Sir, it is the same Knight that you haue heard so much honour & high prowesse reputed of. Saint marie said the King, I am ashamed that I haue made him no better semblaunce then I haue done, therefore for Gods sake make him to come to me. Then sir Morgaus who was Seneshall vnto the King went for him. Then Arthur returned and went to the king and did of his bonnet, and then the king of Orquenie put Arthur betwéne him and King Emendus. Then the king said to him, syr you be right heartelie welcome into this my country, and syr for Gods sake be not miscontent though I haue made none other semblance to you ere this time. Sir & it like your grace said Arthur, there is no such cause, but that I am alwaies at your commaundement to the vttermost of my small power. Well Arthur, saide the King, I thinke that is your name, I require you be of our companie, and be on our partie at this turney against the Emperour of Inde. Sir said the King of Orquenie, he is alreadie on your side, syth he is retained wt my Ladie Florence your daughter, who hath promised to doe much for him. Well said the King, that she accomplisheth not, that shall I fulfill. Thus they were talking together till they came to ỹ kings Tent, and there he alighted from his horse and entered into his Pauilion, the King of Orquenie, the Bishop, Philip, and Arthur followed after the King. Then the King commaunded that ther should be a rich Pauilion pight vp ioyning to his, for Arthur to lodge in, for hee would haue him néere to his person as long as the tourney endured. And therewith came Florence to sée the King her Father. Then the king rose and embraced her, and set her downe betwéen him and the King of Orquenie, and her Father demaunded of her how she did, and she answered and said, syr right wel I thanke your grace, then she sawe whereas the Bishoppe held Arthur by the hand, whereof she was right ioyous in her heart. And by that time the King of Morgmall, and the King of Valefound, and the King of Ismaelite, and syr Oliuer, and all the other twelue péeres were come into the

field,

field, for they were all pertaining to the King Emendus, and so they came whereas he was, then there was greate ioy and feast made, for then the Court was noble and great. When the master made great ioy of the King of Walefound, for he was his father, and he in like case was glad to see his sonne: And all these Kings hadde in their companie at the least a thousand knightes, and they were all lodged about the medowe, the which lodging endured well the space of two leagues: Thus the king and Florence and all other, made together right great ioy and mirth in the Kings pauilion, the king of Orquenie beide Florence in his armes and said: Faire Ladie, my neece here shall be seene noble chiualrie done within these three daies for your sake. Truelie cosin said Florence, here shall be some that I had rather were hence: Certainlie madame said the king so goeth the world, some to pleasure and some anoiaunce. Then he said to the king Emendus, Sir beholde in mine armes a rich treasure, he that shall haue her ought to kepe and cherish her right deerelie. As God helpe me saide the king, a rich man and a noble man, and a puisaunt, shal haue her, who is the Emperour of Inde the more: And when Arthur heard that he was so sore displeased in his heart, that hee couldo speake no worde of a greate season for all the golde of the world, nor though his life had laine in iopardie thereof: Sir said Florence, peraduenture the Emperour loueth another better than me, then hee will let me goe. Then master Steuen rose vp among them all, and said to the King, sir noble and puisant King aboue all other, I require your grace of a little audience here before your grace, and all the twelue peeres of Sorolois, and before all other that are heere present, for I trust that my saying shal turn you both to profit and to greate honour. Then saide the King, I am content that you speake. Sir said the master, it is of truth that there is no creature that ought to loue anie thing so well as his owne proper flesh and blood, the which euerie man should loue and holde right deerelie according to the profit of the saule and sauegard of the bodie, and honour of

the

the person. For he that can by no meanes be induced to
the, for whose sake I vow the destruction of my Realme, should never
beare patient, to go to dinner with him, and to lie with your
wife? Will you do so, my Lord? Is any thing vile enough for
a Gentleman to undertake for the honour of a Princesse, and
is the honour and profit of all your Nobles and Realme, to be ruin
you do right noble, right like a King? I say not against
it, but well right stout in your choice, in doing this you
ought to regard and consider these three things that I have
shewed your grace here before, that is to say, to the profit
of the soule, to the safegard of the bodie, and to the honour
of her and of you, and of all your Realme. First, as to the
profit of the soule, you ought to regard to whome that you
will give her in marriage, and to see that it be not against
her heart, so that she shall have no occasion for hate him
that she shall have, for that it be both to the displeasure of her
heart and discontentation of her minde, for if it be against her
heart, then shall she hate him, and shall there be never rest
nor peace, nor good love betweene them, which shall turne
to deadly sinne because of the hate and great rumour that
shall be betweene them, and so this shall be ill for the soule.
Secondly sir you ought to regard the safegard of her bodie,
for you know well how that my Lady your Daughter is
both young and tender and hath been worthie brought up,
wherefore it is no reason to send her into a straunge savage
Countrie, whereas the aire and religion is contrarie to her
nature and safegard of her bodie, for it is a high and mightie
Lady in her owne Countrie, what needs it then to send
her ame farther, and if you give her such a husband as will
lead her into a far & straunge Countrie, & peradventure she
loueth him not, but inwardly hateth him, what is a worse
maladie to the bodie then hate and displeasure, and cannot
remedie it, so is it then if the Countrie be against her nature,
and also that she hate him that she must abide, I repute the
my Lady in a manner halfe dead, & thirdlie you ought to
regard the honour of her & also of your selfe, & of all your Coun-
trie, in considering how marriage stands against hate & envy

accord

seeyng these times hath no ill ende for if my lady your daughter who is right noble and puisant and rich of behaviours of lands and also she hath frendes right high & doubtable, if she should be accompanied in marriage to anie person that should be against her heart and will, her hart that is so gentle, the which can suffer nothing against her wil, I feare me that she will do some thing against him and against his, the which will not sound for her honour nor yet yours, therefore sir it is conuenient that you regarde and consider all this, and sir I say because you haue said that both noble & rich shall haue her, who is Emperour of Inde the more, sir I know well that my Ladie doth hate him so much, that by her will she would neuer see him more, nor neuer heare speaking of him, howbeit you will medes that she shal haue him, thee dare not displease your, your grace, wherefore I feare me that if she haue him, that all these said things will fortune, and peraduenture worse, the which would be great pittie, & also sir you know well that it is a long time agone that there was writing made and sealed by you, and by al the twelue peeres of your realme, that she should neuer haue any other creature in marriage but al only him that the image should giue vnto the chaplet, and as yet ther was neuer anie assayed it, and now sir here is come all your chiualrie, therfore hold on forth your turney, & let see to whom the price shall be giuen, and then sir let the Emperour and all other kings & noble knights come to the pauilion where as the image is, and to who so euer that she giue the chaplet, let him enioy it with much honour. Then the King of Norwall rose, who was right auncient and a wise Prince, and most priuiest of the kinges counsaile, and said, sir it is truth, I am your man and hold all my realme of you, therefore I owe vnto you faith and truth, and also vnto my Ladie your daughter, and sir for truth I will beare witnesse, and the master hath said to you all well and truelie, for sir if it be so that you haue put to your seale and were of that accord, and also all these other kings that be here present, & also all the twelue peeres of your Realme, sir I saie that

you

you and also all they ought to aduise truely by your leaue,
and accord as good Kings vsurers vse. And when the king
Emendus had well vnderstood all these sayings, he knewe
well how that they said truth, and to the knight he sayd:
Sirs I know well how that you haue said right well and
noblie, but it is so that I haue promised so faithfully to this
Emperour, that I doubt mee if that I breake my promise
with him, that he will appeale me of falsenesse, and so make
mee all warre against mee. Then the king of Orquenie
said, sir, if that the Emperour will moue anie war against
you, by my head he shall be auntred right sharplie and
soone, for sir commaund you your men of warre to be ready
on your part, & we shall do our diligence in your behalues,
and so I trust we shall shew him such a sight, that he shall be
sore encumbred with telling or numbering of them, & if hee
will haue battaile one knight against another, in that quar-
rell I am heere readie and will be, to recomplith that battel
for my Ladie your daughters sake: Then Arthur rose vp
and said aloude so that euerie man might heare him: No-
ble and gentle king, it is no reason that you should aduen-
ture your bodie against a knight, and you a king, but if my
Ladie should haue neede, you should not lacke of a knight,
for beheld me heere, who is and euer shall be readie to do a-
nie thing that she shall commaund me. And so euerie man
there beheld him, for he was meruailous faire, and hee had
on a surcote of skarlet, the which became him wonderfullie
well, the which pleased much king Emendus and all other.
Then king Emendus saide, sir I see well you bee worth a
knight, and therefore sir if anie battaile bee in case, I giue
you graunt that you shall accomplith it. Therewith Ar-
thur kneeled downe and right humblie thanked him. Then
the king of Orquenie toke Arthur by the hand and caused
him to sit downe betweene him and Florence, wherewith
somewhat she was abashed, & as then the two louers durst
make no great semblance together one to another.

How

How a great and puissant knight defied Arthur because he late by Florence, and did pull downe a corner of her kerchiefe the which the winde had blowen vp, and so Arthur did iust with him, & did cast him to the earth so rudelie that he was not able to leap on horsebacke fiue moneths after. Cap. 77.

SO it was that as the King of Orquenie and Florence, and Arthur sate together as you haue heard before, there entered into the Pauilion a great knight, blacke of visage, and he was girt with a great sword and a long, and bare a great fawchon in his hand, and so he came before the King, and saluted him and al other, as he that was come from the Emperour, who as then had pight vp his Tents at the one end of the medowe, who said: Sir King Emendus, I tell you ỹ Emperour of Jude will be here to morrow betimes, for gladlie he would speake with you, as with him that he loueth entirelie. Then the king said, sir he that be welcome, and to morrowe I will goe to him, but sir quoth the king, I praie you what people hath he. Sir saide the knight, he hath welnigh to the number of fiue thousand knights and Squiers right hardie and valiant. In the name of God said the King, that is a faire compa.ne. Ehe this knight beheld the King of Orquenie and Arthur, who were talking with Florence, and he saw how Arthur drewe downe one of the corners of her kerchiefe about her necke, the which had ben blowen vp a little with the winde; wherewith the knight was sore displeased, and said: Sir knight, faire Ladies are much bound to you, for you can apparell and araie Ladies right well, they haue of you a good varlet to bee in their chambers, for you can brush their gownes and beate their furres right well. Well sir said Arthur you may saie your pleasure, it pleaseth me right well, & not only for your sake, but because I haue great ioy if I might doe anie thing that might be to their pleasures: What sir qd the knight, I beleue your father was a priest, for you can right wel preach,

certainly it is for no good that ye draw so nye to the lady. Why frende sir Arthur, and ye thinke any ill in the matter speake it and remedy it & ye can. Sir quod the knight I think that ye haue forfeite with your neighbour. Than maister Steuen said sir knight ye be not wise thus here to report vi lanie of my ladie, for ye say that she hath forfeite with this knight, for he can not forfeite with hir but that she must be accorded with him, therfore herein ye report vilanie of the both. Than Arthur stept vp in great displeasure and said to the knight, sir if ye grudge w any thing in your hart shew it shortly. Sir said the knight with a right good will, with a spear or two with you here without in this faire medow. Dasard might he haue that refused quod sir said Arthur. Than the knight desired of the king to haue armure, & saide sir I will strike of the head of this knight or it be night. Marye saide the king of Orqueney than shall ye be ill welcome hether. So these two knights armed them & went forth into the field. Than the king Emendus went out of his tent, & so did all other to see the Iustes betwene them, & the Archbishop held Florence by ẏ hand. Than one deliuered a gret speare to Arthur, but it pleased him not, & demanded a bigger, and so than ther was brought to him such a speare that should haue greatly encõbred an other knight to haue born it all onely, & that Arthur did bicause he was displesed with the knight, & also bicause he wist wel that all the whole noble companie of kings & knights should se whether he had honor or shame, & specially bicause the noble Florence shold behold him, & so therwith these knights ran to gether rudely and the knight strake Arthur so fiersly that his spere shevered all to peces, & Arthur strake him so rudely in the middell of his shelo, ẏ he claue it a sonder in two peces, wherewith he made him to turne his heeles vpward, & brast asonder the arson of his sadell & paitrels & girthes went cleane asonder, & knight & all went to the earth in such wise, that with the fal the knight was brused, so that he was not able to leape on horseback of vi. monthes after, & so lay a great season in a swone, ẏ euery man had wend he had ben dead.

and when Florence saw that she was neuer so ioyfull bes fore, and said to her selfe, this knight ought right well to be in the loue of a right high & puisant damsell. Then the king Emendus had greate meruaile from whence such strokes should come, and said, sir knight, whatsoeuer you be God increase your honour, for as for hountie & valiantnesse you haue sufficient alredie. Then all ye other kings praised him much and each of them wished that he were pertaining to their householde.

Then the king of Orquenie ran straight to Arthur and embraced him and saide: Sir sere friend you haue rendered to this knight of such seruice such guerdon, & so take and lead him into his tent, and ther he was vnarmed. The king Emendus caused the knight when he was reuiued to be borne to sir Rowlands tent to beare him companie. And when sir Rowland knew all this how that he had iusted w Arthur, and how he had sped, he had so great ioy, that neare hand he was ther by all whole of his hurts, and said to the knight, sir you be hertily welcome, for you haue found my Phisition, sir the lectuarie that he hath giuen you to drink is full strong, I trow there be therein more bitternesse then swætnesse, therefore freind come on to me and keepe well your clothes as I do mine. Then the knight said, sir how is it with me, for as for me I assure you I am sore displeased, at which wordes all there did laugh, the which saying was told to king Emendus, wherat hee had great sport. So Arthur went to the Pauilion that the King had made to bee ordeined for him, and Florence and the Bishop and maister Steuen went to her Tent, then she toke the master a part, and said, master how take you by Arthur, is he not a vertuous knight and a valiant aboue all other, thinke you that hee hath anie laue towarde mee. Yea truelie madame, I knowe well more then anie creature liuing. Then gentle master quoth Florence, finde some meanes that hee and I might speake together, for I would faine knowe somewhat of his heart by his owne report.

Madame quoth the master, I will doe what I can, and

that shalbe to morow after supper, and to as for that night they departed, & euery bodie went to rest till the next morning that the king and all other were vp.

How Florence & Arthur spake together at good leasure at the ende of the forest, and ther promised eche to loue other, and there the queene Proserpine appeared to them, & shewed to Florence how that Arthur loued hir truely, and how that they should have eche other by the way of marriage, but first they should endure great paine and trouble. Cap. 78.

IN the next morning the king arose and apparailed him selfe to go and mete the Emperor, but Florence would not go, nor suffer any of hir company to go, saving all onely maister Steuen, and that was to the intent to speake with Arthur. So thus rode forth king Emendus and al his company, and Arthur rode talking with the king of Orque ney, and so than the maister came and did salute them, and they him, than the maister said to Arthur in counsel, sir my lady Florence doth salute you by mee, as she that would to you both honour and profit. A maister said Arthur, I pray to God send hir as much honour and welth as I would to myne owne proper person, for truely she is a lady of great honour, and I am greatly displeased in my heart, y the king hath made me to ryde with him, for now I may not se hir grace the which greeueth me right sore. Why said the maister, would ye than gladly see hir, yea sir qd Arthur, gladlier than either father or mother, & yet I am sore they would be glad to see me. Than I beleue said y maister that whan ye see hir yet would ye be gladder to speake with hir. Sir truely maister I had neuer so great Joy as I should have, if I might come to speake with hir grace, but I see well that will not be. Wel Arthur friend said the maister, loue ye wel coun to speake with hir. A maister ye haue made couenant with me, for this that I should speake with hir, but I see well ye haue forgotten it, but and ye would doe it I

but and ye would do it I would be your knight. Well sir and I cause you to speak with hir in priuate or it be night, will ye than giue me a gift that I shall demaund of you. Giue you maister said Arthur, yea truely, and what so euer ye demand of me and it be the head of this Emperour that is here comming, for and ye will I shall go strike it of incontinent. Certainly sir said the maister it shal not cost you so muche, for my demaund is no more than if I finde the meanes that ye shall haue in mariage the noble Florence, will ye than againe finde the waies that I may haue the faire lady Margaret of Argenton by the way of mariage, who is at the port noyze, for I loue hir with all myne entier heart. And whan Arthur heard that, he was neuer so toyfull before, and enbraced him with all his heart, and demaunded of him whether he had any comfort of hir or not. And he answered that he trusted right well to spede, and the rather by his meanes: well maister said Arthur, if she be ones agreed to your fear, no man liuing that should take hir from you as long as I am able to ryde or go, but that he shall leese his head in the quarell. Sir saide the maister I heartely thanke you, and sir I shall tell you what ye shall do this night after supper, kepe your selfe in your tent close and go not to the court, & than I shall come to you & bringe with me the lady Florence, and there ye shall speake with hir at good leysure, but than be ye nothing abasshed, but humbly desire hir loue and fauour in all goodly maner, and habandon your self in al points to be hir knight, but though that she make it strange and deny you at the first, yet be not ashamed therwith and she shall loue you the better, wherby ye shall the rather deserue hir grace, for than she shall know that of great hardines and valure of heart it is come on you to take in hand so high an enterprise. Gentil master said Arthur, think on this and I shalbe your knight: wel sir saide the maister, I will depart from you as now, because none should mistrust our talking. Than the maister rode forth into the company of the king of Valefound his father and Arthur rode into the company of duke Phylip. And

king Emendus rode forth forth so long till at the last he encountred themperour and there they made great chere eche to other, and so rode together cheke by cheke till they came to their tentes. And than the Priestes were redy to go to service, and so they heard service together. Than after service themperour being in his tent with king Emendus & all other nobles that were ther assembled at ỳ time. Than king Emendus said to him, sir it hath ben of this time agreed and accorded with all these foure kings, and all these. xii peeres of my realme, as well by othe and assurance, as by sealing of certaine charters made and affirmed of the same couenants, that no creature should haue my daughter Florence in mariage but all onely that person that the Image who is in Florence pauilion should giue vnto the Chaplet that she holdeth in hir handes, for so it is deuenied, wherefore and it please you whan the tourney is done ye shall go to the Image, and I beleue she wil giue it you, and yet our othes and assurance kept and vpholden. Verely said themperour I am well content, thinking surely to haue had the chaplet. Wel sir said the king, ye haue brought hither much people, and also we haue a great company with vs, wherefore I feare that if we should tournay togither all at once that there should be done much hurte, whereby here after should ensue great hatred and enuy, wherfore me thinketh best that one of your barons take in hand the tourney as to morow with a thousand knights in his company, and I shall set one of my knightes against him with as many in his company, and so let vs doe all foure daies one after another, and I think this is a better waye than all to fight at once. Certainly sir said themperour ye say right well, and all this pleaseth me. Than stept forth the Erle of the ple perdue, whereas Gouernar had bene with the countesse all night and he desyred of themperour that he might haue the tournay the firste daye, the which themperour did graunt him with a good heart. Than came forth the King of Orqueney and he desired of king Emendus to aunswere the Erle the same daye, and he had graunt of his request.

And

And the King of Orquenie toke Arthur and Couernur by their hands, and said, sirs I retaine you against to morrow to be on my partie, and when the Earle of the Ile of Perdoe sawe Gouernar, hee made to him right greate cheere. Then King Emendus toke leaue of the Emperour, and so euerie man departed into their owne tents. Then the king of Orquenie went about and did chose out such Knightes as he would haue, till it was time to goe to dinner. Then was water brought forth, and so euerie man went to the Court who that would. Then the King Emendus and the other foure kings were set at the great table, & Duke Philip and Arthur were set nert them, and ther they were richlie serued and made great feast and ioie. And when all the clothes were taken vp, then King Emendus and the other four kings sate them downe together on a cloth of silke, & the king of Orquenie tooke Arthur by the hand, to whome he made right great ioie, and bare to him much honour, and as they thus talked together, there came to them the Archbishop. Then maister Steuen stode before the King & said, sir, my Ladie Florence your Daughter hath sent me vnto you, for she hath heard saie howe that the king of Orquenie hath taken on him the tourney as to morrowe against the Earle of the Ile of Perdue, & sir because she knoweth well how that the Emperour hath manie good Knightes, therefore sir if it please you she wold leape on her palfraie as to morrowe, and come and see the tourney and plate of these good Knightes. In the name of God said the King of Valefound, my Ladie shall do right well in her so doing, & I am sure the King will giue her licence. Sir verilie with a right good will, said the King, sith it pleath you, but I doubt mee much that the great heate will anoie her, and also the great prease of horses and Knightes will trouble her. Well sir said the maister, of that she shall be taken good heede of, and sir my Ladie desireth also that Arthur her newe retained Knight might tourney against them to morrowe without, for she will see him tourney, and shee will send to bee of his route her Seneschall, Sir Wyllebar, Sir Anselt, and

sir Piles of Valefound, and so she will knowe to morrowe what all these Knightes will doe. It pleaseth me right well saide the King: And when Arthur heard that he had great ioy and said, I am all at the commaundement of my Lady, and I thanke her grace that it hath pleased her to retaine me for one of her Knightes, for in dæde so I am and will be euermore. Well said ỳ master, sith it is so that Arthur shal be to morrowe in my Ladies rout, it will bee good that hee goe and sport him with them to be acquainted with them, and to talke and commune together, for by kæping of companie together much loue is attained. In the name of God said the king of Orquenie, all this is but well said, go your waie with him and acquaint him with these other noble Knightes, and he thought in himselfe that Florence would gladlie sæ him, and that he perceiued wel sith the time that shee caused him to sit downe by her, for then hee perceiued somewhat her lowlie countenaunce to him ward, and also King Emendus was content that he shoulde goe, howbeit the master made no great hast because that none should mistrust him. Then the King of Orquenie said to Arthur, Sir take your leaue of the King & other, and so he did. Then the master went straight to the Seneschalles Tent, who made him right great chære, & when all the other Knights knew that he was there, they made to him great signes of loue, & desired him that he woulde not depart out of their companie, and so he promised them to doe. Then the master went to the faire Florence and saide, madame, Arthur is come to your Seneschalls Tent, the King hath sent him thether to sport him, and her heart leapt for ioy and said: Ah master, & when shall I then sæ him? Madame said the master, hee is as now in the companie of your noble Barons, who dooth greatlie feast him, and as yet to cause him to come from thẽ in my minde it were not well done, but madame go to your supper to night somwhat betimes, & then send for your Barons, and command them to make them readie against the morning to turney in the companie of Arthur, & then when they be departed from you, in the meane season that they be

about

about theyr businesse, you shall goe playe you in the entrie of this Forrest among the faire greene Oakes, and thether shall I bring him to you. You say right well said Florence, so be it, then she commaunded to hasten her supper, and so went thereto betimes: And Arthur all that season was with the Seneshall, and all the other Knightes, who for the loue of him made great ioy and feast till Supper was past. Then master Steuen said to Florence, madame I wil goe to your knightes to cause them to come to you, & then shortlie loke that you deliuer them, and then goe you thether as I haue shewed you, and in the meane time I shal kepe companie with Arthur. Goe your waie dere friend saide Florence, and cause them to come to me, for I thinke verie long till I haue deliuered them. Then the master departed from her and went to the Seneshalls Tent, and there found as then all the Barons washing of their handes, & talking of wiues, and laughing at Sir Brisebar because hee saide hee loued better to be striken then to strike another, for he saide it greatlie anoied him the dishonor or mischiefe of another, for he was of the opinion that he could not be striken without his wife were ill, for hee saide that if ilnesse were once mounted vp into the hart of a woman, it wer hard to withdrawe her from her enterprise, and if his wife did ill, the shame thereof is to her and to her linage, and not to him, for he should be angrie and displeased with her ill dedes or vilanie. And when they sawe the master they ranne to him on all parties, and plaied with him right swetly. Then the Seneshall demaunded of him what tidings. And hee answered and said, Lordes, my Ladie Florence wonlde faine speake with you incontinentlie, therefore goe your waies shortlie to her but for Gods sake tarrie not long with her, for she is a little displeased in her head, goe your waies and I will kepe companie with Arthur in the meane season, he and I will goe walke together. Then all these Lordes and knightes apparailed them and went to Florence. And then she commaunded them that they shoulde make all thinges readie against the next daie for the tourney, and that they

should keepe companie with Arthur as their chiefe captaine that daie. Then the Seneschal said, madame then it is needfull for vs to returne to our lodginges to make all things readie. In Gods name said Florence, goe on your wayes, and so they departed, and in the meane season master Steden lead Arthur to the woode: And when Florence had deliuered all her Knights, she called to her the Queene of Orquenie, in whom she trusted aboue all other, and two other Damsells, and said to them: Faire Ladies, let vs goe a little into yonder woode to sporte vs, for I haue a little paine in my head. Madame saide the Queene of Orquenie, let vs goe, and so they two went towards the Castle taking together, and the other two Damselles came after, and at the last they came vnder the shadow of the faire greene oakes, and there they sate them downe, and the master and Arthur were in the forrest not far from them, and at the last Florence and the Queene perceiued them. Then the Queene said, madame I see yonder the master and another Knight with him, but I wot not who he is: And Florence answered and said, madame that is truth, I am gladde that I see them, for I haue a little to speake with the maker, therfore madame rest you here a little while and I will goe and speake with him: Madame said the Queene, by your lisence I must also depart, and go speake with the Countesse of the Ile Perdue, who is come to this tourney, therefore I will goe to her, and then the master maye come to you: In Gods name said Florence, so be it. Then the Queene departed, and the master and Arthur came to Florence, and so sate them downe together. Then the master saide, madame beholde here your Knight and true louer: Master saide Florence, he is right heartelie welcome, for his comming pleaseth me right well: Madame said Arthur, God giue you as much honour and ioy as I would to the person that I loue best of all the worlde. Madame quoth the master, as God helpe me I am certaine that he would you more honour then anie person liuing, for you haue his heart and faithfull loue, more then anie creature of the worlde, and madam to proue

that

that this is true, enquire of him the truth, and he is so gentle and meke that he cannot hide his minde from you, and madame I praie you be not displeased, for I must nedes go speake with my Ladie the quene of Orquenie, and so he arose and went his waie and left Florence and Arthur together. Then Florence demaunded of Arthur of whence he was: and he answered and said, madame and it like your grace, I am of the Realme of Fraunce: and of what linage be you come said Florence, I require you tell me the truth. Madame said he, as God helpe mee you bee so high a person ẏ I ought not to hide anie thing from your grace, madame know you for truth that I am the onelie sonne of the Duke of Britaine. That is noble inough said Florence, but by ẏ faith that you owe to me, who is the person of the worlde that you loue best, & wold haue her loue and acquaintance, is she in your Countrie or else where, shew me the truth & hide nothing from me I require you, and what shee is that you wold be most ioyous to haue her loue, name her to me by the faith that you owe to al the Sacraments of ẏ church. Madame said Arthur, I require your grace to pardon mee, for she may be such a person that if I should name her, you would peraduenture thinke in me great follie, for she may be such a one that shee will not set her heart in so lowe a place, nor yet I thinke scant will heare mee, therefore it is better to me to be stall than to speak follie. Truelie said Florence, that is had in the heart is had in the mouth & spech, therefore shew me whether you loue anie Ladie or Damsell in all the world or not; Madame, truelie I loue one as faithfullie as heart of man can thinke. Yea said Florence, but doth she knowe that you loue her: as God helpe mee nate. Why, spake you never to her of the matter. No truelie madam said Arthur: and how is it that you loue her & never shewed her thereof, in that it shuld seeme to me that you loued her not, for it is much paine for the mouth to keep close ẏ feruent wil of ẏ hart, for lightlie ẏ desire of ẏ hart putteth forth ẏ word of the mouth, as ẏ wind putteth away smoke, & how shuld she know you loue her, & it be not shewed her,

and

and if she love you without speaking each of you to other, what joy shall there be betweene you, if your hearts know not the wills each of other, as much availeth two Swanells in a ditch and no man to worke with them, as to persons to loue together, and none of them to speake together, therfore Arthur shew me surely if she that you loue would giue you audience, should it anie thing touch you on the quicke or not. Madame I shall tell you the truth as God helpe, speaking with her that I loue should greatlie recomfort me, for the salutation that you sent me this last day by the maister was more joyfull vnto me then to haue had all the worlds treasure. Why doe you set so much by this message or why doe you loue it so much. Madame for the loue of you that did send it to me. Arthur, then mes thinketh you haue loue to me. Madame, as God helpe me that is truth, more then to anie other person of the worlde. Well Arthur by the faith that you owe vnto your Baptisme, is there no loue in you that surmounteth this loue that you haue to me, shew me the verie truth. No madame, by the faith that I owe vnto God neither to father nor mother nor to anie other person of the world. And would you saide Florence, be glad and I loued you againe. Ah deare Ladie, I haue neuer had nor cannot haue so great joy. Well said Florence, it is but follie that you haue set your heart on me, for if I loued again you shuld be shortlie slaine if it were knowen, for you may see heere this Emperour who doth greatlie inforce him to haue me, and he is a greate man both of behaulour and of friendes, and also my Lorde and father and all these other foure kings, will all runne on you to slaie you, therfore Arthur aduise you well, for when one beginneth a matter, it is great wisedome to regarde and beholde what ende it will come vnto, and the ende of this enterprise is but your death.

Madame said Arthur, for all that if I knewe it would please your grace I would care for nothing else, for I wold neither doubt Emperour nor King if I had this noble accord, for if there were anie that would make anie business

in that case, I woulde shewe him ere this yeare went out, more then an hundred thousand bright sheeldes out of Fraunce, nor they should not haue so strong a castle or Citie but that I wold bring it downe to the hard earth: Why said Florence, for to haue me would you or durst you then begin warre against so many noble and high, rich & mighty persons as be here, haue you so good a heart or hardynesse: Madame, yea truelie, by the faith that I owe vnto you, and it were against all the world. Friend Arthur said Florence, I cannot see the manner how you might haue mee, but your thought in this matter may be to your damage, or peraduenture death maye happelie come to you shortlie, therfore good friend withdrawe your loue and do you wisely, and because such a man as you be hath thought to loue so high a person as I am, I wil make to you amends for your good will, therefore I will giue to you the Port Noire, the which you haue atchiued, with twentie thousand pound of yærelie land, and leaue you this follie as in louing of mee, for you shall finde inough beside: Why madame will you then giue me land and goods, to the intent that I shoulde leaue louing of your grace, certainlie madame I will none of your lands, I loue you with all my heart, and will neuer take it from you, I care not for your riches, whereas I should leese your loue, for I thanke God I am rich inough. for as God helpe it I might haue your loue, I would desire no more wealth in all the worlde. Well Arthur saide Florence, is this then surelie your minde: Yea madame truly without anie fayning: Well good friend Arthur sayd Florence, then be of good heart, for by the faith that I owe vnto you, you be in the waie to haue that you desire for, if you be of a good and faithfull heart to me ward, I promise you to be in like case with you, whatsoeuer fall thereof, therefore be you hardie and couragious, and shew you selfe so to morow in this tourney, that euerie man maye haue cause to doubt you. Madame said Arthur, the Lorde that formed all the world send your abundaunt grace both bountie and bassure, for now that I haue your loue I am rich inough, for

I

I desire no more of God, and I shall bee true to you while my life endureth. Well mine owne true louer saide Florence, I will tell you what you shall do, I will that you shal be to morrowe in the tourney, in the companie of the King of Denenie, who is my cosin germane, and I will that from hence forth be be your companion, and that you loue him, and that I shal desire him euer to increase your honor, in as much as he may, and I shal send vnto you to giue you attendance my Seneschall and other of my Knightes, and they shall be of your route, and there I desire you dos such deedes of armes, that it may sound to your honour, and to the rest and peace of my hart, for my heart shall be repasted and nourished with the good renowme of your high prowesse, I may not long talke with you at this time, nor so often as my heart would, but alwaies send me your will and minde by master Steuen, and I shall send mine againe vnto you, keepe secret this matter howsoeuer you dos, for else much harme or euill might peraduenture happen to fall to vs by false enuie, be you alwaies true and I shall doe my endeuour to bring you to honor. And as they were thus talking together, there issued out of the Forrest Proserpina, Queene of the Fairies, and of the Castle of Hurtbise, where as Arthur had bene with the wounded Knight, & she did sit downe by Arthur, and both the louers knew nothing thereof till she was set, and as soone as Arthur sawe her he knew her right well, and did salute her, and she him againe, and Florence also, & she said to Arthur: Friend, now haue you that your heart so long desired for, therfore now be in peace and ioy, and loue your louer with true and faithfull heart. Faire daughter Florence, I sawe not you till I was in your bed, and there I made knowledge to you of this man, beholde here Arthur your true louer, who faithfullie and with good heart loueth you, therefor faire Daughter loue him againe, for I did destinie him to you in your natiuitie in the mount of aduentures, and at the same time I destinied also that you shoulde in all thinges resemble me. Then Arthur beheld them both one after another, and so

perceiu-

perceiued wel that they wer like in all things, for ther was no creature though he were neuer so craftie, that if he beheld well at length them both, coulde not discerne the one from the other, they resembled so neere together. Then she saide to Florence, behold heere your louer, and I wil beare witnesse that he is at this time the most truest louer that liueth, for I haue right wel proued him, and then she recounted to Florence how that she had desired his loue in the forrest, and also caused him to come vnto the Castle of Yurtbise, and there did as much as she could to entice his minde to cause him to loue her, & also how she made other to tempt him, and how all that would not auaile, for alwaies he was in one firme point, whereat Florence right swetlye did smile. Then Proserpina saide to Arthur, friend you shall haue her in marriage, but first you must suffer great pain, and faire Florence, because that the Emperour and the king your Father be great together, therefore your father will be right sore displeased with you, in such wise that if he might haue you at that time, hee would put you both to death, but for all that be not abashed, for I shall make the peace betweene you right well, ther is so great loue betweene him and the Emperour, but I promise you ere all be done, I shal cause as great hate to be betweene them, insomuch y each of them shall defie other to the death, wherfore liue you in rest and peace, and loue each other faithfullie, and I shal thinke right well on euerie thing that shall bee behouable for you in this matter, and so thus I bequeath you both to God for this time. So then the Queene Proserpina arose and went her waie so sodainlie, that none of them wist not wher that she was become, wherof they greatly merualled. Then Florence made a token to master Steuen that hee shoulde come to them, and when hee was come, shee saide.

Master beholde Arthur heere, I deliuer him to you, and loke you take good heede to him, and shewe to my cosin the King of Orquenie that I send him to him, and saie that I desire him to procure to doe him as much honour to

morrow as he can doe for my sake, and good sweete louer Arthur, thinke you to morrow how that you are a louer to a faire gentle Damsell, and to a right noble Ladie and a rich, giue you giftes largelie to this noble Knight both harneis and horse, the which shall make you to be beloued of euerie bodie, for I beleue the time will come that we shall haue need of friends, ther is no sweeter thing then largelie to giue, for thereby oftentimes all ill wil is appeased, & maister I charge you to deliuer to him whatsoeuer he wil haue, Arthur now goe on your waie and lodge in the Tent that the king my father hath ordained for you, and loke you be free and large and giue with good hart, and so as for this time adiue mine owne deere louer, & so for a remembrance kissed him, and then she departed and went to the Queene of Orquenie. And Arthur and the maister went to the Seneschalls Tent, and there they encountered Gouernar and Bawdewin. Then within a while Arthur toke leaue of the Seneschall, and of all the other that were there, & so departed and went to the kings Tent, and by the waie he met with the king of Orquenie, who issued out of the king of Walefounds tent, who was father vnto maister Steuen, & when he sawe Arthur and maister Steuen together, hee did salute them and made to them right great cheere and ioye, and so they went talking together til they came to his tent. Then the maister toke him a parte and saide, sir my Ladye Florence trusteth much in you, and loueth you entirelie: Wherefore sir shee hath sent you heere Arthur her owne Knight, and putteth him into your handes, and she desireth you that all the honour and aide that you can doe, that you will shew it to him to morrowe in the turney for her sake, And when the king heard that he had right great ioye, and said to Arthur, sir by the faith that I owe vnto the king, I promise you that I will beare to him faithful companie and true loue, for the loue of my Ladie and of you, so thus they were so long together till it was time to goe to their rests, and so then euerie man returned into their owne Tentes and lodgings. And the maister deliuered to Gouernar rich horses

horses for Arthur, to the intent that he should giue them away the next daie.

How that Arthur had the honour of the tourney the first daie, the which was made for the faire Florence, betweene the King Emendus and the Emperour, who would haue had Florence to his wife, on the which daie Arthur got himselfe great praise among all the Baronie, insomuch that euery Knight was glad to be in his companie, whereof the fayre Florence was right ioyous, for she loued him aboue all other. Chap. 79.

ON the next morning all the Kinges and other arose, and heard Seruice, and such as would tooke a sop in Wine, and then euerie man armed him. Then Gouernar and Baldewin by the commaundement of Arthur did giue and departe many horses and much harneis to sundrie Knightes whereas they saw want and neede, the which Knightes thanked Arthur heartelie, and promised to giue him their helpe and succour at all times and against euerie man, whereby it appeareth that there is nothing but by large giftes it is made soft and meete. Then the tidings of Arthurs curtesye was spread abroade in euerie Tent, and there it was said how that there was not in all the worlde so free a Knight as Arthur was. And these wordes came to the audience of the faire Florence, whereat her heart didde laugh and therewithall she mounted on a palfraie, and the Queene of Orquenie, and the Archbishop in her companie, who shewed her how that Arthur had a great renowm, and counsailed her to loue him well. And thus was King Emendus mounted on his horse, and all his Baronie to beholde the tourney, and Arthur was readie armed in the place whereas the turney should be, & so then there came to him the king of Orquency with his banner displaied, & moe then two hondred in his companie, & when he came to Arthur, he said in open audience, sir your noble valure & high

ye wolde is right well knowne, and I beleeue verily that in all this tournay there shall be no knight like vnto you, therefore sir I offre to you my body and all my companie, to be this day vnder your gouernance. And whan Florence heard that, she smiled for ioy, and than ther came to him all such knights as he had giuen to before both horse and harneis, and they all thanked him right swetly and said, sir we will be of your rout this daie, for we make of you our captaine in this tournay, and as they loked down into the valey they saw where ther came Florence senet shal with his banner displaied, and with him sir Brisebar, sir Ansel, & sir Piles of Malesound, & with them iii. C. knights, who were all pertaining to the faire Florence, & they all came to Arthur, and toke him for their chiefe captaine. And whan Arthur saw the great honour that was done to him, he had so great ioye, that his hardinesse encreased thereby more than the one halfe, & so dashe to his horse and rode forth and did salute the king Emendus who bild his one hand in the lap of his daughter Florence, than the king did salute him againe and saide, sir I require you help to aide this daye our knights, if ye may. Yea good Arthur saide Florence, and shew so forth your selfe, that it may be knowen how ye be a knight pertaining to a gentil damosel. Madame doubt ye not but I will do my deuoire, for my will therto is good. Than Arthur retourned & went againe to the king of Orquemy, and he was so faire and goodly to behold in harneis, that euery man had their eyen vpon him and saide. This knight is the soueraine of bounte & beautie of all the chiualrie of the world. Than there came to the field the Erle of the Ile Perdue, & with him a M. & v. C. knights all with banners & streamers displaied, wauering in the winde with great noise of trompets, tabours and busines, & than there was mounted on their horses to behold the tournay, themperour and kinge Jonas, and the duke of Bigor, who as than was late come out of his owne countrie.

Than harodes began to crye, knights do your best, go together, baile, baile, than began the tourney, and knightes

went

went together in great route, and laid on each vpon others and Arthur rusht forth his horse so rudelie as though the earth had trembled, and strake so the first that he encountered withall in the middest of the breast so rudelie, that hee ouerthrew knight and horse all together of a heape.

Then Florence said to the king her Father, of yonder knight that is fallen I hope we shall haue peace of him all this daie, certainelie faire daughter saide the king, that is true, for that stroke came from the hands of a good knight. Then Arthur encountered an other and tooke him by the shoulders & drew him so rudelie to him ward, y he cast him downe in the middest of the place, then he tooke his sword the which Florence had sent him, for hee would not drawe out Clarence his good sword, to the intent that he would not maime or slaie anie knight by his will that daie, but he gaue with that sword such strokes, that he brought a slæp whosoeuer he touched, so that they were faine to tumble to the earth whether they would or not, and there he didde so much at that brunt, that he beate downe fiftæne knightes, then euerie man that saw him said, this knight is no earthlie man, but we think rather he be a fænd of hell, who thinketh he be nothing pertaining to God, for hee confoundeth all that euer he attaineth vnto, so euerie man was abashed of his prowesse and vertue. Then the king of Orquenie alwaies followed Arthur with his eien, and by the reason of the noble prowesse that he saw in him, hee tooke in him greater hardinesse then euer hee did before, and therewith he rusht into a great flocke of knights that were of the emperours partie, and laide on round about him, for hee was a right noble knight, then all those knightes and diuerse other ranne rounde about him, for they knewe well if they might take him prisoner it woulde bee greate honour vnto them, and also they thought they should haue a great raunsome for him, but alwaies he defended himselfe right noblie, but at length it auailed him not, for the preasse was so greate, and some tooke him by the necke, and some by the shoulders, and so would haue vnhorsed him.

And whan sir Kevelon the seneschal, sir Bellebar, sir Anfet, and sir Pyles saw the king of Orqueny in that case, they vaught all together into the prese to helpe him, and ther they did right nobly, how be it the seneschal was braten downe, for his horse foundred vnder him, and so there they would have taken him prisoner. Than Gouernar saw that, and he dressed him to that part wheras the seneschal was taken, and Gouernar held in both his hands a great lever, wherewith he layde on among those knightes, with so mightie & heauy strokes, that he astonyed whome so euer he touched, and there he did so much that by verie force he caused the seneschal to remount againe on his horse, and in the meane season ỳ king of Orqueney was holden right short, so that his horse foundred and fell vnder him, how be it after that he defended him selfe right valiantly. And whan Arthur who as than had discomfited a great company of knightes, saw the king in that distresse, he rusht forth into the prese and encountred with the sonne of the Erle of the Ile perdue, and toke him with both his hands about his shoulders and did cast him downe on other two knights that were on foote, so that one of them fell flatte to the earth, and than he rose againe & beheld the knight that was fallen on him, and saide, mary sir ill have he that did cast you vpon me. And whan Arthur had overthrowen this knight, he toke his horse by the raine and brought him to the king and vpon right of his owne horse to help the king to mount theron in the spite of al his enimies, and than by great force and hardines, did leape vp againe on his owne horse. And all this saw well Florence and the Archbishop, and all the other kings, and praised greatly that deede. He is the best knight of the world, said the king Emendus. Sir that is true said the Bishop.

And whan Arthur had remounted the king of Orqueney againe, he saide. Sir put your selfe no more this dare into so great a prease of your enemies, but sir and it please you hardly followe me.

Than Arthur put himselfe in to the same prese that was

before

before on the king, and they were as than all reked on Gouernar and on sir Brisebar, who as than had great nede of help, & ther Arthur layde on round about him by such force that he beate downe knights and horses to the plain earth, for he strake none but that he went to the earth, and so ther Arthur did so much that he ouercame al that route, & whan he was passed them, he saw where three knights had beaten downe sir Myles of valefound. Than Arthur dressed him so to the first that he ouerthrew to the earth, and toke his horse & deliuered it to sir Myles & caused him to mount thereon. Than Arthur strake to the second knight, that his hors bare him all about in a traunce, for he wist not where he was. And Gouernar with his leuer strake so that the third he fell flat to the earth, and whan he releued he fledde away as fast as he might, for he durst no longer abyde for all the citie of Paris, and the other knight that was borne on his horse all in a traunce came before wher as the king Emendus and Florence was, whearat the king and she did laugh. And whan the knight remued he sayde all on hie. The knight is an ill carpenter, for he maketh many chips, I trow al the fiends of hel hath sent him hither, shame haue he. I wene he is a burgonion. Than the kinge laughed at the wordes and saide; there is none can abide him, for his strokes are right valiant. That is true sir said the bishop. Than Arthur saw where there was a great companie of knights wel to the nombre of two hundred in a route, and among them was the Erle of the Ile perdue, and he had taken more than xl. of Florence knights, and vnhorsed them and was leading of them forth as prisoners. And whan Arthur saw that he was right sorowful, and to by great randon he dasht in among them, & ther did such dedes of armes, that all that beheld him wondred at his valiauntnes, for it semed that he was but newly come to the tourney, he claue asonder shieldes, and vnbarred helmes, and brast asonder gyrthes, and beate downe knights together on heapes, and Gouernar with his leuer dealt strokes right rudely, wherwith he brought knights a sleepe, so that some of them

wyst not which way to tourne them. Than came to him the king of Orqueny, Wryfebar, the fenefchal, fir Pyles, and fir Anfel and many other knightes, and fo by that time there was horfed againe a rrb. of the knights that were before taken prifoners, and there they delt fo with their enimies that the Erle of the Ile perdue was fore difpleafed, and he and a rbiii. in his company ranne al at ones at Arthur, and there by force they flew his horfe vnder him, wherewith he was right fore difpleafed, and than ftept by on his feete and gaue fo many great ftroakes and beauy that he caft euery man to the earth, who fo euer he met withall, and than he repented him that he had not borne with him that daye clarence his good fworde, how be it he gaue fuch ftrokes that none durft approch to him, but euery man fled from him. And whan Gouernar faw Arthur a fote in that great preffe he aduifed wel the Erle of the Ile perdus neuew, who was right well mounted on a good horfe, and fo toke him with his one hand by the neck and pulled him down on his horfe mane and gaue him a right great ftroke with his leuer betwene his fhoulders, and as he thus held him, Arthur came and toke him by the leg and tumbled him ouer his horfe out of the fadde, and threw him to the earth, & fo toke his hors and did mount theron. And whan the Erle faw his neuew on the erth, he fpurred his horfe to come to his refcew. And than Arthur enbraced him fo at his comming, and fpurred fo his horfe, that he drew him clene befide his faddell, and in the fpite of al his enemies he toke him prifoner & caufed him to yelde to king Emendus, and fo was put into the keping of the faire Florence, and than fhe caufed him to be vnarmed, for he was right wcary and was very hote & fore chafed.

And than Arthur dafht into the preafe, and there dyd what he liff him felfe, for he beat downe knightes and wan horfes, and themperour faw wel how that he all onely difcomfited his knightes, the which greened him right fore, and alfo the duke of Bygor was right fore difpleafed in his minde, becaufe he faw Arthur doe all that day fo nobly.

bly, and at the last he knew well how that was he that had slaine his nephewe at the Citie of Argence, wherefore hee woulde faine haue runne on him to haue slaine him, but he doubted much the King of Orquenie.

Then hee sayde to the Emperour, Sir the Earle of the Ile Perdue is taken prisoner, and all your Knights cleane discomfited, except you put thereto some other manner of remedie, and all the shame that is done to vs, is done by yonder Knight with the white shelde, and by the other knight with the great leauer, and verilie it is he that slew my nephew sir Ilembart at Argence, and sore wounded my cosin sir Rowland, and also hee hath slaine my cosin sir Fyrmont my treasurer, and so he hath done me right great damage, and I know well he is a right faire knight and a young, and of his handes such as you may see, and this I saie because of your lone Florence, whome you shall haue, but his prowesse and goodnesse maye peraduenture cause her to lone him, for the heart of a woman is sone tourned and chaunged, this Knight hath done you right greate damage, and is likelie to do you more without you take right good hede, and put thereto right good counsaile. Therefore sir I require you let mee haue the tourney to morrow, and I shall so handle him that I promise you hee shall not be here againe the third daie.

Well Sir saide the Emperour, I graunt you your desire. Sir saide the Duke, I thanke you, and so they lefte their talking as at that time. And Arthur all that season layde on round about him as freshlie as though he hadde but newlie begunne the tourney, and the King of Orquenie beheldе him merualiously, and spake neuer a worde, and when hee had long beholden him, hee toke at his high prowesse such hardinesse, that hee abandoned himselfe into the preasse, and laide on freelye with his sworde.

Then the tourney was more greate and more thicker then it was of all the daie before, and so there Couermar brake his Leauer, then he laid hand on his sworde, & did

wyst not which way to tourne them. Than came to him the king of Orqueny, Bryfebar, the seneschal, sir Ryles, and sir Ansel and many other knightes, and so by that time there was horsed againe a xxv. of the knights that were before taken prisoners, and there they delt so with their enimies that the Erle of the Ile perdue was sore displeased, and he and a xviii. in his company ranne al at ones at Arthur, and there by force they slew his horse vnder him, wherewith he was right sore displeased, and than stept vp on his feete and gaue so many great stroakes and heavy that he cast euery man to the earth, who so euer he met withall, and than he repented him that he had not borne with him that daye clarence his good sworde, how be it he gaue such strokes that none durst approch to him, but euery man fled from him. And whan Gouernar saw Arthur a fote in that great preese he aduised wel the Erle of the Ile perdus neuew, who was right well mounted on a good horse, and so toke him with his one hand by the neck and pulled him down on his horse mane and gaue him a right great stroke with his leuer betwene his shoulders, and as he thus held him, Arthur came and toke him by the leg and tumbled him ouer his horse out of the saddle, and threw him to the earth, & so toke his hors and did mount theron. And whan the Erle saw his neuew on the erth, he spurred his horse to come to his rescew. And than Arthur embraced him so at his comming, and spurred so his horse, that he drew him clene beside his saddell, and in the spite of al his enemies he toke him prisoner & caused him to yelde to king Emendus, and so was put into the keping of the faire Florence, and than she caused him to be vnarmed, for he was right weary and was very hote & sore chafed.

And than Arthur dasht into the prease, and there dyd what he list him selfe, for he beat downe knightes and wan horses, and themperour saw wel how that he all onely discomfited his knightes, the which greeued him right sore, and also the duke of Hyggar was right sore displeased in his minde, bicause he saw Arthur doe all that day so no-

bly,

bly, and at the last he knew well how that was he that had slaine his nephewe at the Citie of Argence, wherefore hee woulde faine haue runne on him to haue slaine him, but he doubted much the King of Orquenie.

Then hee sayde to the Emperour, Sir the Earle of the Ile Perdue is taken prisoner, and all your knights cleane discomfited, except you put thereto some other manner of remedie, and all the shame that is done to vs, is done by yonder knight with the white shælde, and by the other knight with the great leauer, and verilie it is he that slew my nephew sir Isembart at Argence, and sore wounded my cosin sir Rowland, and also hee hath slaine my cosin sir Fyzmont my treasurer, and so he hath done me right great damage, and I know well he is a right faire knight and a young, and of his handes such as you may see, and this I saie because of your lone Florence, whome you shall haue, but his prowesse and goodnesse maye peraduenture cause her to loue him, for the heart of a woman is sone tourned and chaunged, this knight hath done you right greate damage, and is likelie to do you more without you take right good hede, and put thereto right good counsaile. Therefore sir I require you let mee haue the tourney to morrow, and I shall so handle him that I promise you hee shall not be here againe the third daie.

Well Sir saide the Emperour, I graunt you your desire. Sir saide the Duke, I thanke you, and so they lefte their talking as at that time. And Arthur all that season layde on round about him as freshlie as though he hadde but newlie begunne the tourney, and the King of Orquenie beheld him meruailouslie, and spake neuer a worde, and when hee had long beholden him, hee toke at his high prowesse such hardinesse, that hee abandoned himselfe into the preasse, and laide on frælye with his sworde.

Then the tourney was more greate and more thicker then it was of all the daie before, and so there Gouernar brake his Leauer, then he laid hand on his sworde, & did

therewith as much as anie good knight ought or might do. And so at last Arthur and the King of Orqueny did so much that they vnhorsed all the Earles companie and were set on foote sore beaten, insomuch that they had much paine to stand on their feete. Then Arthur stood in the field with his sword in his hande, saying: Lordes if there be anie more that will come, let them preasse forth, I am readie to answere them, and so at last the King of Orquenie and he returned from the field. Then the King of Emendus encountered them and embraced them all armed as they wer, and speciallie Arthur, and thanked him much of the paine that he had suffered that daie, for sir all onelie by your prowesse this daie the Emperours people are discomfited. And as they were thus talking together, there came to them a knight from the Duke of Bigor, who said to the King Emendus, Sir the Duke of Bygor demaundeth of you the turney to morrowe. Then stept forth the king of Normall and sayd, sir may it please you to suffer mee to haue to morrowe tourney against the Duke of Bygor? Sir it pleaseth me right well saide the King Emendus, therefore I desire you doe your part, for we haue the honour this daie, therefore doe your diligence that we may haue it to morrow also. Sir said he, doubt not, I will doe my true endeauour: Then he toke Arthur by the hand and said: Gentle knight the floure of all chiualrie, I desire you as hartelie as I can, doe so much to morrowe as you may win a King for euermore, as that it would please you to shewe part of your high prowesse to morrowe in aiding of my quarrell, and in the defence of the noble honour of my Lord the King heere present. Yea sir saide the King Emendus, and thereto I will desire you for by your high prowesse wee haue the honour this daie, therfore it should grieue vs greatly and we should loose it to morrow. Then Arthur said, sir in a right good will, I shall doe my indeauour. And when Florence heard that, she was not content in her minde, for she thought that Arthur had bene sore wearie of that dayes iourney, & thought that it should greatlie anoie him, if hee tourneyed the next

daie,

daie, and so she thought shee woulde let that tourney if shee might, then she commended the King her Father to God as at that time, then she toke with her into her tent the Archbishop, and diuerse other of her Barons, and King Emendus caused Arthur to be brought into his Tent with all his whole Baronie, and all the Emperours Knightes spake of nothing but of Arthurs prowesse, for they saide that there was not againe in all the worlde so good a Knight as hee was, beholding and considering all his deedes, and how that he had borne himselfe in this tourney, and the Emperour said that he would rather resemble to him then to haue such another Empire as his own was, and the bruite of Arthurs renowme spread farre abroade, till at last it came to the hearing of sir Rowland, and then hee saide, I thanke God that such a Knight hath iusted against me, for my honour is the more. Then the King Emendus came into his owne Tent, and then caused Arthur to come to him, & there were all the other Kings who did much honour to Arthur, and there were diuerse that said to the King of Sorolops, Syr beholde heere this Knight full of bountie, & worthie to haue great honour, and all that they said by Arthur, who as then was right hot. Then the king commaunded two Squiers to stand with a towell and blowe winde in his face, & thus Arthur stode before the king, and he was goodlie for to beholde, for he was straight, long, and bigge, & aboue all other right gratious of his wordes, for euerie man had great disport at his lowlie and goodlie wordes. Then the king commaunded that there should be brought to Arthur a mantell to cast on him, to the intent he should take no colde, and the king of Orquenie did put it about him, the which became him right well, and then there came to them Gouernar, to whom there was made right great feast and ioy, ther came thether the Earle of the Ile of Perdue, whome Arthur had taken prisoner in the tourney, and in his companie thirtie knights to pledge him of his raunsome, and the king made him right great cheere, and sir Rowland and the Emperors Seneschall, who had iusted before with Arthur, by that time

were healed of their hurtes, and were come also into the Kings tent to sport them and to beare tidinges of the tourney. And when the Earle of the Ile Perdue sawe them he had great ioy, and demaunded of them how they did. And they aunswered and said how that they had bene sore hurt, but they were well amended. Then the Dale said to the King: Sir it is of truth that I was taken in your turney, therefore sir I am come to you to be deliuered of my raunsome, therfore may it please you to shew your pleasure, and I am readie to accomplish your commandement. Certaine sir said the King, it lieth not in mee, for that matter lieth in the pleasure of Arthur, who is here present, who toke you prisoner in ỹ field: Sir said Arthur, sauing your grace that is not so, for the turney is yours, and I am but as one of your Knightes and of my Ladies your daughter, therefore sir it were no reason that I should saie or do any thing whereas your grace is present. In the name of God sayde the King, we will that you shall speake your minde, and it shall please vs right well all that euer you will saie or doe: Then the King of Walefound said, sir you shall doe thus, for it is reason that you do as my Lord the King will haue you. Well sir said Arthur, in the name of God, and so stood vpon his feete, and saide to the King: Sir and it like your grace, sith it is your pleasure that I shall speake, I saie that this Earle here being present shal kepe you companie this dinner time, and after dinner to sport & to plaie him with you as long as it shall please him, and when it will please him to returne to the Emperour, that hee and all his companie goe franke and free, and I will desire him to take of my gift this sworde, the which I thinke be good and sure, the which Gouernar had brought to him before from maister Steuen, by the commaundement of Florence, to the intent that hee should giue it to the Earle, and indede there was not a better sworde in all the Emperours hoast, and there Arthur desired the Earle for his loue to take it for a remembrance and also desired him to take a horse of his gifte, in recompence of the horse that he had taken from him in the fielde.

And

And when the king heard Arthur haue these wordes, he had greate ioye and loued him with all his heart because of his gentlenesse. Then the Earle aunswered and saide, Gentle knight of heart, I haue riches sufficient, and am able to be set in a right greate raunsome, though it were twentie or thirtie Duckets, and also I haue swords and horses sufficient, howbeit the high prowesse that is in you & the greate gentlenesse of your heart, prouoketh me to receiue all your curtesse, and verilie I take all your offer of you on the condition that you will from hence forth take my aide and succour in all your businesse against all personnes, except my Lord the Emperour. Then Arthur all smiling thanked him much. Then the king embraced the Earle for the loue of Arthur, then was water brought forth and the king washed and the Earle, and so dined together, and made good chære, and were right richlye serued, and after dinner they sported them together till it was time for the king to go to his rest. Then the Earle toke leaue of the king, & so commended him to God. And Arthur conuaied him a greate space, and did giue to the Earles knightes many good horses and palfraies, whereof they thanked him right greatly, and at the last Arthur toke his leaue of him, and so departed, and then the Earle went straight to the Emperours Tent, whereas he found him accompanied with the Duke of Bygor and many other noble knightes, and there the Earle made great praising of Arthur before the Emperour and shewed how of his gentlenesse hee had suffered him to goe quit, and how that he had giuen him many great gifts, and also to his knightes. Verilie said the Emperour, there is not such a knight in all the worlde, neither of beautie nor of prowesse, for he is the soueraigne knight of al other, for I sée none like him of prowesse, I wold I had giuen the best citie that I haue, on the condition that hee were retayned as my knight: and when the Duke of Bygor heard the emperour praise so much Arthur, he was in his mind right sore displeased, & said to the earle, sir you make here a great pleating of a flying vagabond, for no man knoweth what

he

he is, nor from whence he commeth, and you make of him here such noise, that no man taketh heede of anie thing els, I cannot tell you what he hath giuen you, certainelie it is no honour for you to take anie giftes of a man fugitiue, that is fled or banished out of his owne Countrie, but sir, I will you know certainlie that whatsoeuer giftes he hath giuen you, to morowe shall I giue you his head from his shoulders, therefore I holde him wise in that he hath departed of his treasure in his life daies to you and to your companie, for I warrant him he shall neuer do so againe. Wel sir saide the Earle, threaten him faire and easilie that hee know it not, for and he doe I feare me least that he will flie away, and then you cannot giue me his head, and for whereas you saie that no man knoweth what he is, I assure you he is a right noble wise Knight, and it maketh no matter to a noble Knight whersoeuer he becommeth, for his bountie will shew right well his estate, and whereas you saie that he is a vagabond, and is fled out of his own Countrie, for it had bene better to your nephew that he had fled into England ere that he met with him at Argence, for there he lost his life, and there you fled awaie without bidding of anie farewell, he needeth not to haue anie care though you saie thus of him, for an ill coniue empaireth neuer the honour of a noble wise man, and I assure you I will shewe him these vilanous wordes that you saie of him, and if any ill come to you thereby take it in good worth. Then the Duke began to ware angrie, and so the matter wold haue ben worse and ỹ Emperour had not ben, for he caused them to be departed, and to be in peace. Now let vs leaue to speak of them, and returne to Florence.

How that Florence fained her selfe to be sicke, to the intent that Arthur should not tourney the next daie, for she was in feare that Arthur had beene wearie, because of the trauaile that he had indured the first daie of the tourney, and how that the Em-

perour

perout when he knew that he went to see her, and so did her father king Emendus, and all the other Kings, Dukes, Earles, and Barons, and all the whole chiualrie. Chap. 80.

When that Florence was departed from the king her Father, and entered into her Tent, then she drew her into her secret chamber, and called to her master Steuen and saide: Fayre swet master, I am right sore displeased in my heart because that the King my Father hath desired my loue Arthur to tourney againe to morrowe in the companie of the king of Normall, for I see well he doth not consyder the trauaile that he hath endured this daie, for if he were made of steele he cannot endure thus euerie daie to trauell. alasse if anie euill or dishonour should come to him I shuld die for sorrowe, I see well they that thus desire him to goe forth againe so morrowe loue but little his health, wherefore I will finde some meanes to put off the tourney for to morrowe, to the intent that he shall bee the more fresh the next daie after, therefore I will send worde to the King my father how that I am sicke in my bed, desiring him that as to morrowe the turney may be deferred till the next daie, but master I desire you let Arthur haue knowledge of the truth, for else I feare me he would be sorrowful for my disease. Madame saide the master, you speake wiselie, and I will tell why, first, thereby Arthur shall well rest him, and secondlie it is so that hee is as nowe greatlie praised of his curtesie, and is taken as chiefe companion with the King your father and with all the other Kings and Barons, and as I vnderstand he is greatly in the grace of the Emperour and of all his Knights, for all his whole assemblie loueth him, and as soone as the Emperour heareth of your disease, he will come and see you, accompanied with all the nobles of his compaine, and when the king your father heareth of his comming to you, I doubt not but that he and all his other foure kings, with all the noble men of their companie,

nie will in like wise come to see you, so then thereby here shall be assembled all the whole thiemalrie, and so then at some houre convenient while they bee all here, it shall bee well done to assaie the vertue of the Chaplet, and to see to whom the image will give it to. Alasse master I love this Knight, and I would not for anie thing that another should have it, and I feare me least the Image will give it to some other person. When the master all smiling sayd, madame what peraduenture and the Image give mee the Chaplet, would you be content, and as he spake he smelled to a faire rose that he held in his hande. Master quoth Florence, you please me right well, and I love you faithfully, and also I doe Arthur. Madame saide the master, then sith I please you and that you love me and Arthur also, then it maketh no matter whether that I or he have the Chaplet, sith that your love is on vs both. Yea, but master saide Florence, in my love there is a difference. And what is that difference, I praie you madame shewe me the truth: Truelie master that rose that you holde in your hand right well doth signifie it. This rose madame, said the master, and I praie you how? Hearken master to me and I shall shewe you, it is so I see in that Rose three manner of thinges, first the closure without, the which keepeth from hurting the bud till it bee a full rose spread abroade, and when it is spread, then the leaues be faire and red, and in the middest of that rose ther are little graines, resembling to golde, and out of this Rose there may be felt such odour and smell, that it pearceth thorough out the nose, euen to the heart, for the heart wyll reioyce with the good smell thereof. In the name of God sayd the master, all this that I saie is true, but madame what doth this signifie? Master said Florence, I shall shewe you, the closure without the which keepeth the budde from hurting till it be spread abroade, signifieth you, who hath kept me till this daie without empairing, for it is now time that the rose spread abroade, that is to saie, to marrie me & to keepe my land, as pertaineth to the daughter of a king, & these leaues of the rose that be so faire & red, signifieth your

truth

truth and faithfulneſſe, for I haue found euer in you great truth and bountie toward me, and alſo to my father and to all the whole realme, & maſter in this roſe there be graines like vnto golde, the which is the preciouſeſt mettall of all the world, and that is ſignified by the great & excellent learning that is in you, the which is more precious then golde, for thereby you haue alwaies kept and defended me in all needs, and maſter by theſe three points I loue you. But the fourth thing that is in this roſe, is the ſweete ſauour therof, the which pearceth all the whole bodie euen to the heart, for in the fragrant odour therof both the bodie and the hart is reioyced, and certainly maſter this fourth loue that commeth thus of the roſe, is mine owne loue Arthur, who is ỹ chiefe Roſe, & abous all other moſt faire, and aboue al other knightes moſt valiant, as the Roſe is chiefe of all flowers. Madame ſaid the maſter, I ſee well you haue had a good & a ſage maſter, and I ſee wel how that you loue me well without, but you loue Arthur inwardlie, and by my ſoule you cannot doe better, for you can haue none better then he is, and knowe you for certaine that none ſhall haue you but onelie he. Gentle maſter ſaid Florence, helpe me therto, for all my truſt is in you. Madam, as I vnderſtand he is come into the Seneſhalls tent. Well maſter ſaid Florence, then go your waie to him & ſhew him that I will that he come and ſee me, and bring with him the Seneſhall & ſuch other companie as he will, & then ſhall I ſee by their countenance if they be content though I make Arthur a litle good & louelie ſemblance, for oftentimes the will of the hart ſheweth it ſelfe fairelie outward, for it is hard to know another mans will, without there be made to him ſome manner of ſemblance, wherby he ſhal haue occaſiõ to vtter ſomwhat of his will. Madame ſaid the maſter, I ſee well it is a ſubtill thing of a womans wit when they liſt themſelues, then ỹ maſter roſe & went to the Seneſhals tent, at which time Briſebar ſaid, here lacketh now none in this cõpanie but ỹ maſter, & with ỹ word he entred in at ỹ dore, & thẽ ſir Miles ſaid, ſirs, whẽ one ſpeketh of ỹ wolfe lightly he ſeeth his taile, & ſo they

welcom-

welcommed the maister, and caused him to sitte downe by Arthur. Then the maister said to Arthur, sir howe have you done in this tourney, how seemeth to you the knightes of this Countrie, be they not as valiaunt as the knightes of Fraunce. Certainlie maister saide Arthur, they be as valiant, or rather more hardie, for there is none that I have seene but that they ought right well to be received into the high order of chivalry. Sir said the maister, you may not departe from hence nowe till you se my Ladie Florence, for if you doe she will not be content. Maister said Arthur, in the name of God I would be right glad to se her, but I knowe not her pleasure in that behalfe, let us goe and se her all together, and so they arose & went all together with Arthur, and the maister went in before to Florence, and saide: Madame beholde here is Arthur, who is come to se you. He is right welcome said Florence, and so she arose against him, and the Queene of Orquenie toke Arthur by the hand and set him downe by her, and she demaunded of him howe that he did sith the tourney. And he answered her howe that he did right well. By the good Lord said Florence, in the tourney you suffered much paine and travaile, and right well there you did, wherefore your lover if you have ante, ought to love you the better, and this she said all smiling, and laid her hand upon his head. Madame as God helpe me said Arthur, I have not as much love as I would have. In good faith saide the Queene of Orquenie, if shee were right high and noble she should be right well employed on you. Yea truelie said Brisebar, I would he were beloved as well as I would according to my will, and when Florence hearde that she smiled and saide, sir Brisebar by the faith that you owe unto the high order of chivalrie, and to Saint George, what is your will in that case. Madame said he, I will not shew not that, for peraduenture it should displease you. Nay by my faith said Florence, I will not be displeased whatsoeuer you sate, therefore shew mee your minde, also I commaund you so to doe. Madame saide he, sith it is your pleasure I shall shew you, I would that you loved him in such

wise

wyfe that he were your lord and hus band, for a more swe-
ter, courteiier, nor a better knight can ye not haue again in
all the world. for a more gentill gracious company could
not be found againe, as should be of you twain. Wel Bri-
sebar said Florence, and say ye this with good heart. Ye a
truely madame by all the saints of Paradise. Well sir Se-
neshal said Florence, and what should be your minde. Ma-
dame saide he, I pray to God I neuer go out of this place
but I would it were so on the condition that it cost mee as
much as I am worth. Than she demaunded the same of al
other, and they all with one voyce saide the same. Wel sirs
said she behold wel whether ye haue wisched your profit in
this or not, for ye all know well how that this emperour
demaundeth me of the king my father, and would haue me
to his wife, and therefore if it were so that an other take
me he would haue great despite and moue against him
warre, whereby should ensue that all ye should be put to
paine and trouble, and in perill of your lyues, for ye be all
my men, wherefore ye ought to defend me against all mine
enimies. Madame said Brisebar, by my soule I care not for
that againste whom so euer it be, and it be not against my
lord your father, for if Arthur might be euer among vs, we
needs not to care for all the world, nor any maner of paine
that I should suffer for his sake, should neuer greeue mee.
Well than qd Florence I see wel that ye would suffre paine
and peril of your bodie on the condicion that I would haue
him to my hus band, and than she demanded so of all other
knights if they would in like wise. And they answered yes
all with one voice. And how should I be sure of this, saide
Florence. Madame saide they all, we faithfully assure you
by the faith of our bodies and leasing of our lands & goods.
Than Florence said to Arthur, sir ye haue here many good
friends. Madame said he, I thanks them and god reward
them, and I shall deserue it to them whan I may. By my
faith qd the maister, I beleue you wel, for ye haue a large
& plenteous heart, & so therwith Florence brak their words
of that matter, & fell in communication of other matters,

till it was time to depart. Then Arthur toke his leaue of Florence and of all other, and maister Steuen conuaied him forth and said to him in his eare, sir be not troubled in your minde though as to morrow you heare that my Lady Florence be somewhat diseased, for she willoos it for such causes as you shall knowe right well hereafter. Well quoth Arthur, I am and euer shall be content with her noble pleasure, and so then the maister toke his leaue of Arthur, and returned againe to Florence, and Arthur went straight to the King of Orquenies tent, and then they both went together to the King Emendus tent, who as then was rising from sleepe, and so they three sate down together and talked of many things till it was time to go to their supper, whereas they were richlie serued, and after supper they sported them together till it was time to goe to their restes. Then the King departed and all other for that night.

How the tourney the next daie was deferred because of Florence sickenesse. Chap. 81.

On the nert morning betimes the maister rose and leapt on his horse, and so in greate hast rode straight to the Kings tent, and ther he did alight, and so was brought to the kings beds side. And when the king sawe him there so earlie, he demaunded what tidinges? Certainlie saide the maister, my Ladie Florence hath ben this night right sore sick, and is as yet right sore bolden with the colick in her body, therefore sir she desireth your grace that the turney may be this daie deferred till to morrow, by which time she trusteth to be well amended, so that she will come and se the turney if God will send her anie ease of her paine. Why Saint Marie said the King, gentle maister hath she then such pain, I should be right sorie if she should for me to die, as God forbode, without anie issue of her bodie; for I will neuer haue wife nor I haue no more children but shee, wherefore then the Realme of Sarzolois should without heire of right flocke, which would be a great damage to all this realme, I thinke verilie she had too great heat yesterdaie in beholding

the turney. Sir said the master, with Gods leaue she shal a-mend to morow, but in good faith sir it were time that she were wel married: Well master said the King, I shal thinke thereof right shortly. In the name of God sir qd the master, it is time that I returne to my Lady, but sir for Gods sake defer the turney till the next daie, because of Florence sick-nesse. Then the Emperour sent a knight of his to Florence to know what malady she had, but Florence had commanded that if anie bodie came from the Emperour, he should not be suffered to enter into her tent, so thereby the knight coulde not be suffered to enter, and so returned againe to the Em-perour, & shewed him how that no body could enter into her tent to speak with her, & then the emperour said, wel I will go se her my selfe, then all the kings, dukes, earles, and ba-rons that were in the companie mounted on their horses, & rode forth with the Emperour. And when the king Emen-dus heard that the Emperour was riding to Florence his daughter, then he mounted on his horse and all his kings & knights with him, and when they were all met and assem-bled together, there was so much people as though all the world had ben ther, & at last a messeger came to master Ste-uen and said, Sir the Emperour and the king, and all other noble men that be in this field are comming to se my Lady Florence. Then the master went and did shew that to her, Then she commanded that ther should be made redy a rich bed before her pauilion, right before the face of the image w the chaplet, and the image was properlie vesset with a kir-tle of purple satten, and a gowne of greene sarcenet, & vpon the bed ther was a rich Quilt wrought with cotten, cou-ered with sendall stitched with threds of golde, and sheetes of white silke, and ouer all a rich furre of Ermines, this bed was right rich, and Florence laid hir downe in hir bed in a light kirtell of chaungeable violet tartarine somwhat blushing on a red coulour, and she had a kerchefe of white silke on her head all lose vntied, wherefore there might be easilie seene vnder the kerchefe her faire throte as yui-rie, and her faire golden heire flying about her necke,

and her faire face was in a meane, neither too long nor too round, freshlie coloured like the Rose on the Lillie, and on her there was cast a mantell of greene Silke, and shee did cast out her armes thereon, so that her white hands and her long fingers were stretched abroade on the mantell, and the Quéene of Orquenie sate by her, who saide to the master, sir make your selfe now as though you were displesed because that my Ladie is sicke. That is well said quoth the master, and so shall I doe, therewith hee rusht together his hat and made semblaunce as though hee had beene angrie, whereat the Quéene and Florence didde smile right sweetlie. By that time the Emperour and all the Kinges and Knightes were come, then the Emperour went on the one side of the bedde, and the king her Father on the other side, and so sate them downe on the sides of the bedde, and all the other Lordes and Knightes stoode round about the bedde. Then there came also the King of Orquenie and Arthur with him, and they leaned them downe on the beddes féete. Then the Emperour did salute Florence, and she said how that hee was welcome. Then the King her father demaunded of her how she did, and laide his hand on her head. Then she beheld her father and saide, sir I haue bene this night and all the morning ill at ease, but thanked be God I doe now better then I did. God be thanked saide the King: Then the king of Orquenie who was right privie to her counsaile, saide: Madame thinke not long, for with Gods helpe you shall soone bee whole: And then she beheld him and smiled a little and said, sir I would be glad thereof, and so thus they talked together of one thing and other a great space. And Florence said how that their companie did her much good.

How the Image in the Pauilion did set her Chaplet on Arthurs head in the presence of the Emperor & of ten other kings, & of all the whole assembly, wherwith the Emperour was right sorowful because he thought to haue had Florence in marriage, but he failed of his purpose, for the

Image tooke no regard neither to the Emperour, nor to anie other there, but onelie to Arthur, to whom freelie she did giue her chaplet. Cap. 82

AND when the master sawe his time and knew how that all the whole Baronie were there assembled, he rose vp on his feete and said in open audience: Mine owne deere and redoubted Ladie Florence, our Lord God hath done you this daie greate grace and honour, for I beleeue verilie that neuer before this time there were so manie noble men assembled together as be now here present for to see a Ladie that is diseased, for madame you may see here about your bed an Emperour, ten Kings, Dukes and Earles more then fiftie, and all the whole Baronie of the Empire of Inde the more, and also of ten other Kingdomes, wherfore madame you ought to be right ioyous and more at ease in your heart, for they all loue you and are glad to please you, and also as I vnderstand my Lord the king your father hath great will if God be pleased to prouide for you a right high and noble marriage, and I thinke that if it please you now his minde may be well satisfied, for I beleeue hee shall neuer see againe in one daie so many noble men assembled together as here be now present, wherefore now he may fulfil his pleasure, and according to my minde it were time that you were married. Then Florence set her vp in her bedde, and a Ladie did cast a mantell about her necke, and saide: Master it is of truth how that the King my Father here present hath had a great season good will to marrie me, insomuch that hee is now welnigh at the point thereof if it be his pleasure, but it is so that my Lord the king my father by seeming taketh no heede to accomplish such destinies as were destinied of me at my nattuitie, and because peraduenture that all you my Lords that be here present at this time knoweth not what it is that was destinied on me, therefore I shal shew it here in open audience. It is of truth that my Ladie my mother whom God assailed when I was borne, sent me by the king

of Orquenie and mine vncle the Archbishoppe, and by the Quæne of Orqueny who are here present, to the mount of aduentures, and there it was destinied on me by ỹ Quæne of the Fairies, that no creature shuld haue me to his wife, but onelie he to whom the image in my pauilion shuld giue the Chaplet that shee holdeth in her handes, and if that anie other should take me he should die an euill death therefore, and to this couenant did seale and sweare ỹ king my father and all his other Kings and twelue pæres of his Realme, & so on that point take me who so will, if he list to put himself in the aduenture, if he haue not the Chaplet, therfore let the King my father doe as it pleaseth him, I praie to God he do so that it may be for the best. Then the Archbishop arose & said to ỹ King, sir it is true all that euer my neece hath said, for I was present and both sawe and heard al this that she hath said, for as God help me if I were a man of the world, and so that I might haue her to my wife, I would not presume to haue her for all the world, except I had first ỹ chaplet. Then the King of Walefound rose and saide, according to my minde it were best that all the whole chinalrie the which be here assembled goe all to the Image, and first let my Lord the emperour begin, for he is most worthiest both of nobleneffe, behauiour, and riches, where it should seeme that he is worthiest to haue the chaplet, and if he faile therof, then let all other assaie euerie man after other, till it bee giuen to one or to other. In the name of God said the King of Orquenie you saie right, and so let it bee done. And the Emperour said he was well agreed therto: Then Florence said, I cannot tell who shal haue it, but God giue me him in marriage, so that my heart may be in rest, peace, & ioy, and so he may loue mee, and I him. Then it was agreed on all parts that whosoeuer had the Chaplet should haue the Ladie without anie repelling of that couenant, & thereto Florence consented. And when it was thus agreed on all parts, then there was laid before the feete of the Image foure rich cushions of silke & gold, & then it was ordeined that the king of Orquenie & duke Philip of Sabarie shuld keepe ỹ place, &

to see that none should haue anie wrong there that daie, & also it was ordeined that Arthur and Gouernar should take heede and marke well to whom the Image would giue her Chaplet vnto. Then the Emperour saide, faire Ladie, will you be glad and I haue the Chaplet: Sir said Florence, by the reason of hauing therof you shall be more neere my part whosoeuer shall haue it, and the more ioy shall I haue, & the better shall he please me. Verilie saide the Emperour, then will we go and assaie, and therewith he rose, and the Duke of Bigor, and the Earle of the Ile Perdue led him straight to the Image, and ther he kneeled still on his knees from the morning till it was neere euen song time, but hee was as neere as he was at the beginning, and at the last he rose ful of enuie & shame, & sore displeased in his heart, but he made at that time no semblaunce. Then after him went thether kings, Dukes, Earles, Barons, & knights, each after other, all such as were to marry, but nothing they obtained, so that there were no more to assaie but such as kept the place, and then Duke Philip of Sabarie went to ỹ image, for he was to marrie, but he sped as his fellowes did before. Then the king commanded that Arthur and Gouernar should go and assaie: Then Arthur answered and said, a gentle king here hath bene this daie many noble kings and other Princes ỹ haue failed, wherefore then should I presume to assay to attaine to that they haue all failed, I thinke it were but a folie for me to assaie. Well said the king, but I will that you go and assaie according as the conenant is made. Yea truly quoth the Emperour, we will that you shall go: Sir quoth the king of Diquente, you must nedes fulfill the kings pleasure & the Emperours: Well sir said Arthur, I am content sith it is their pleasures, and then he commaunded Gouernar to goe before, and so he did, but no comfort he had there, then Arthur rose and went to the Image, and as sone as he was on his knees, the Image beganne to take colour as fresh and as quicke as though he had bene aliue, and fayre and sweetlie she turned her selfe toward Arthur and did set the chaplet on his head in ỹ sight of all the assemblie, wher-

with the Emperour was right sore displeased. And when the Duke of Bygor sawe that, he was sore troubled in his minde, for he hated Arthur to the death, insomuch that in a great furie he stept to Arthur and toke the Chaplet from his head, and all that while Arthur was on his knees. And when Gouernar sawe how that he toke awaie the Chaplet from his master & set it on his owne head, his blood began to tremble for anger, and stept forth to the duke and laid his hands on the Chaplet, in such wise that he rashed it cleane from his head, and a great deale of his haire therewith, & so deliuered the chaplet to Florence, and shee toke it and set it on her owne head, and so then there was none that durst touch it. And when the Duke of Bygor saw how that Gouernar had taken from him the chaplet & part of his haire therewith, he lift vp his fist & strake Gouernar a great blow on the cheeke and did hurt him right ill, and caused him to bleede sore at the mouth & at the nose. And when duke Philip of Sabarie sawe Gouernar hurt and bleeding, he drewe out his sword and strake the duke of Bigor in the middest of his brest, in such wise that the point of his sword appeared a foote behinde at his backe, and therewith the duke fell downe starke dead to the earth: and when the Emperour sawe his duke dead, he cried on his knights to arme them and to take Duke Philip. Then the Emperours knights assailed him on all parts, and he defended him right valiantlie. Then the King of Orqueny stept forth when he saw his nephew in that case, and drew his sword & laid on among them right fiercely. Then Arthur dasht into the preasse with Clarence his good sword in his hande, and he laide on and gaue such strokes that he beate downe knightes by greate heapes. Then euerie man ranne to their harneis on both partes: Then Florence said to the Seneshall, what do you stand and looke on, and see Arthur in perill of his life, you ought to sustaine his quarrell. And when her Seneshall hearde her saie so, he stept out into the field, and cryed out as loude as he coulde, to harneys Sirs incontinentlie and helpe to aide and succour Arthur.

Then

Than stept forth Brisebar and sir Miles, & wel to the nombre of .v. C. And whan the king Emendus sawe the matter began to kindel so sharply, he toke his horse and rusht into the prease with great paine, and what with fairenes and foulenesse together he departed them, & commaunded that none should be so hardy to strike one stroke more as at that time. Than themperour came to the king and said, sir king ye have begiled vs, and slaine our duke and many of our knightes, therefore sir be in certaine, that as long as I live warre shall not faile you til the houre that I have the head of the king of Orqueney and of Philip his neuew, and of this knight Arthur. Sir Emperour said Arthur, oftentimes a man faileth of that he desireth, nor I know not him that will strike of our heads as long as I have in my company clarence my good sword. Yea, yea sir Emperour saide the king of Orqueny, be not halfe so hastie, for or ye have our heades first there will many leese theirs, and one thing I assure you, that if it were not for the displeasure of my lord the king I should go se you in your own countrey betwene this & Ester, with such a company of people, that it should be hard for you to number them, for ye shal finde them that little doubteth you. Than the king Emendus commanded him to be in peace, and toke themperour by the hande and saide, sir be ye not displeased, ye and I wil go apart & agree right wel together. I am content said themperour. Than they avoyded from them every man. Than the king saide, sir ye know that it was agreed both by you and by me, and by all other, that who so ever should have y Chaplet shold have no wrong, but shold enioy it peaceably, therfore your duke did amisse to take it from Arthurs head. Sir saide the Emperour though my duke did wrong yet I was sufficient ynough to make amends for this trespasse, though that Governar had not taken it from his head and pulled away his here therwith, and yet worse what neede duke Philip to slay him therfore. In the name of God said the king, duke Philip did but his office, for he was one of the kepers of the feelde, to see that none should have wronge, and your duke

strake Gouernar on the face, wherfore he had his desert. Why sir saide the Emperour, though he strake the knight, yet was it no reason that duke Philip should slay him, and the king of Orqueney to slay many other of my knights. Sir said the king, though the king of Orqueny was moued he coulde not chose, for he was puissaunt ynough to haue made amends, for the death of your Duke that his neuew slew, but your knightes came on him to haue slaine him in my presence, therefore blame not the king though he relieued his neuew, for a gentilmans hart ought not to faile his knights in time of neede, and specially his own neuew. In the name of God qd the Emperour, he hath slaine my duke, and he is a duke, therefore I will that he dye for the cause, and than it is duke for duke. Truely saide the king this were hard to doe, for if ye begin any noise or trouble I haue great feare that it will turne to your owne hurt, for it wil be ouermuch for you to acheue to that ye wold haue, but sir I se wel ye be right sore displeased, but sir oftentimes dead men maketh peas, and by mariage many thinges are appeased, sir I shal put to my paine how that ye shal haue for all this Florence my daughter to bee your wife, on the condicion that al ill wills & heart brennings may be quenched on all parts and euery thing pardoned. And whan the Emperour heard that, he smiled a little and saide, verely sir for the loue of Florence, I wold forgiue and pardon a right great trespalle. Sir said the king, I will go speak with my lordes and come againe to you incontinent, than the king departed from him and called to him his iiii. kings and the archbishop and diuers other knights and saide, lordes this Emperour is right sore displeased, and to say the trouth he hath right good cause why, and I can finde none other agrement in him but either he will haue duke Philips head, or elis he will come on vs right shortly with a great host, or elis without he haue Florence my daughter, this is the amends that he will haue for the death of his duke, therefore gentle kings and Lords shew to me your mindes in that behalfe. Sir said the king of Hales found, it is my minde and

aduise that it is good to eschew all perills that may happen to come both to the bodie & to the soule, and to our behauiour & friends, for a thing of little cost you see well how that the Emperour is the most chiefe christian Prince of the world, and right puisant both of behauiour and of friends, therfore sir be you not abashed to giue him Florence your daughter, for thereby shall you winne many great friends, therefore sir it were better for you to giue her to him then this knight Arthur, of whō we know nothing, but that he is a knight, right good, faire and beautifull. And in verie deede so he is sir, quoth the King of Normall, all this same is mine opinion, and mine also said the King of Ismaelite. In the name of God said the king of Orquenie, against that I haue agreed ones vnto, and set thereto my seale, shall I neuer be contrarie, for I will neuer breake mine oath, nor I will neuer loue the Emperour. Nor I also said the Archbishop, by the faith that I owe vnto you, I shall bee of that accord that the Emperour should haue Florence.

Then the King Emendus & in the name of the other three kings answered and said. Well sirs that I am King ouer you all shall agree you in this matter well inough, you shal see right well what I shall doe in this matter. Then the King of Orquenie and the Archbishoppe departed from the counsaile not content in their mindes. And when the King Emendus sawe that the King of Orquenie and the Archbishop his brother were departed from him, he went straight to the Emperour and his three kings with him and saide, Sir we shall be your friends and well willers, and you also to yours, and are content to fulfill our will, so that you will in like manner doe to vs. First we sir will ỳ you pardon & forgiue ỳ king of Orquenie & duke Philip his neuew & to all other, all manner of ill will that you haue to thē, for all manner of deeds done by them or any of theirs, & on this condition I & these iii. kings giue you Florence my daughter in marriage, & I put you in possessiō of her by this gloue, and so drew it off his hand & gaue it to ỳ emperour, & he receiued it with great ioy, & thanked the heartely, & pardoned

all

all the ill will that he had to anie bodie, and so there they toke each other by the hand and went talking together to their Tents.

How that Proserpina Queene of the Fairies who resembled to Florence, laide her downe in Florence steede, and sent her to the Port Noire with the Archbishoppe and all her Knights. Chap. 83.

When the King of Orquenie and the Archbishop were departed from the King Emendus, and sawe how that the King hadde graunted Florence his daughter to the emperour, they went straight to Florence, whereas they found Arthur, Duke Philip, and Gouernar, and they were all still armed, to the intent to defende them if anie neede were. Then the King of Orquenie caused them to bee vnarmed, and toke Arthur by the hand and said: Sir as long as I liue and haue anie lande I shall not faile you, but I shall aide you to die in the quarrell to defend your right. Sir said Arthur, God that formed all thinges preserue you and reward your gentlenesse. Goe we quoth the King and speake with Florence, and so they went to her, and as then shee was still sitting on her bed all afraide of the brunt and fray that was there, and the Queene of Orquenie sate weeping for feare of the King her husband. Then there sate downe the King, the Archbishop, Arthur, and Gouernar, and also there was the master and Duke Philip. Then the King said to Florence, madame be in peace and rest, and doubt you of nothing, but it is so, my Lord the King your Father hath giuen you to the Emperour, and hath put him in possession of you by the gloue of his hande, and all the other Kings are of his accord, but the Archbishoppe your vncle and I are departed from them because we will not consent thereto in anie wise, therefore madame maye it please you now to shew vs your mind whether you be content to haue him to your husband or not, for if it please you it behoueth

he

vs to be content, and if it pleaseth you not to haue him, here I offer my selfe to you that ere hee haue you against your will, I shall rather aduenture to loose my head from the shoulders, and I shall put in ieopardie to slaie the Emperour in defending of this Gentleman Arthur in his right, if you be so content. And when Florence heard him say so, she began right sore to weepe, & when she might speake she said, ah gentle King now I see wel I haue no more friends but you, and such other as be heere present, alasse I am of that estate that I ought of right to haue many more, but when my father and mine owne men faile mee, alasse to whome shall I complaine, alasse vnkinde Father will you giue me him whom I hate mortallie, and take from him that I loue faithfullie, and therewith her heart was so oppressed with bitter sorrowe, that shee fell on so sore a weeping that it was great pittie to beholde her, and when shee might somewhat speake she said, certainly I had rather die then to haue the Emperour, and as God helpe mee you bee all my friendes, and so I will retaine you as long as the world serueth me, the which yet somewhat comforteth me, wherefore I will no longer hide my heart from you, and so she turned her selfe toward Arthur and saide, beholde heere him who hath my Chaplet, my destinie is on him, wherfore I will haue none other but him, for him I loue and will do. And when the King of Orquenie heard her saie so, hee had great ioy and said, madame we be all your owne men and friends, and of your counsaile, and would alwaies your honour and profit, and as God helpe me you cannot doe better then to set your heart on this noble Knight Arthur, for better, more wise, & more godlier then he is cannot be found, and sith it pleaseth you, as for my part I am of the same accord, and to him I offer now my selfe heere present, now let all other speake euerie man for himselfe. Then the Archbishop said, faire Ladie you are my neece and I am your vncle, in good faith I am agreed to your pleasure, and I promise him faith and trouth, and to aide him against all persons. And I also promise the same said Duke Philip.

Then

Whan the maister rose and sais, madame I am your clerke and alwaies I trust I haue counsailed you to your honor and profit, and I alow you in this matter, and am faithfully agreed therto, but I counsaile you let my lord heare the archbishop ensure you both to gether hand to hand. Whan they all answered with one voice, the maister saith right well, and all we be agreed thereto. Whan the Bishop toke Arthur by the hand and the Ladies hand also, and ther did ensure them together with words of matrimonie, wherof eche of them had great ioye. Whan that Florence and Arthur were thus enlared to gether, the King of Orqueney saide, sirs now haue we purchased war with the king and with the Emperour, for as sone as they know of this matter, they will be right sore displeased with vs all, therefore now let vs see by what meanes either by warre or force, or how this matter may be brought to passe. And as they thus talked together, sodainly there sate on the bed by Florence Proserpine queene of the faire. And whan they beheld hir they had wonder of hir sodaine comming, and they could not well know hir from Florence they resembled so neere to gether, but than Proserpine said to ỳ king, sir ye demand & studie how ye may bring about this matter, I shall shew you, I am she that did destinie on Florence ỳ she shuld haue Arthur, therefore I shall shew hir how he shall doe, therefore Florence faire daughter, send ye in continent Gouernar and Brisebar to your Castle of clere toure, and let all your tents & pauilions and such other abilementes of war as ye haue there, be conuaied in all hast to the port noyre, & garnish that castel richly & surely in such wise, that ye may be able to sustaine the defence of an whole host for ther shal be made against you right great war, for the king Emendus your father will be so ill content with you and with Arthur, that if he might haue you both in that fury, he would cause you both to dye a shamefull death, for he hath now so great loue to the Emperour, that they be as all one, but for that there is not now so great loue betweene them, but I shall cause here after as great war betweene them, so that

eche of them shall be desirous to slye other, wherfore faire daughter Florence rise out of your bedde apparaile your selfe, and doo on the masters gown and his hat, and mount on your horse and take the queene of Orqueney with you and also the Archbishop your vncle and duke Philip, and al your other knights, and ride you straight to the port noire, and the king of Orqueney here present, and the master, and Arthur shall abide heere still with vree, for I will lye here still in your bedde in the sterde of you, for ye knowe well there is no creature can know the one of vs from the other. Doe yee your waies, and let me alone with the remnaunt of the matter. Madame said the master, for Godes sake thinke well on the honour of my Ladie Florence, and wee shall beleeue you well. Then Florence departed her knights asunder, and did sende them one after another all to Argence, and commaunded them there to abide for her, so they all departed and within foure dayes they arrived at Argence, and there they founde the fayre Lady Margaret of Argenton who was come the daye before from the porte noyze and she receyued them with ioyfull cheere and there they shewed her how they were come thether to abide the comming of their Ladie Florence, and when shee hearde that, she was right ioyfull, and caused all her house to bee apparailed right richly to the intent to receiue the Ladie Florence right honorably, and sent for many of the gentlemen of her countrey to giue attendance on her. Than Gouernar and Brusebar departed from Florence and went to the clere toure and conuaied all ther stuffe to the port noire both treasure and abilliments of warr, and vittaile sufficient to garnish the house withall for the space of vii. yeare, and they had xvii. chariots continually carrying seamen workes together of such stuffe as pertained to Florence, and to the furnyshing of the place, so that it had of euerye thing sufficient for the space of vii. yeare.

How that the lady Margaret of Argenton with al her whole harony went and mette Florence, and receiued her into Argen with ce right great feast and ioy.

And

AND the third daie after that Florence Knightes were departed from her, then she and the Queene of Orquenay and the Archbishop departed, and went first to the Citie of Pancopone, the which pertained to the Bishop, and there he commaunded all his people to be readie on a daies warning in their best apparell for the warre, and in likewise did Gouernar in the Realme of Blaunch Tower, so then Florence departed from Pancopone and went straight to Argence. And as sone as the Ladie Margaret had knowledge that she was two daies iourney from Argence, shee mounted on her horse and fiue hundred in her company, and went and encountered the Lady Florence of Gozolois, and when she met her she did right humblie salute her and said: Madame you be right heartelie welcome into this Countrie, and madame beholde me here who is and shall be your humble damsell at commandement. Certainlie faire Margaret said Florence, I take you and will doe for my speciall friend and faithfull louer. Then the Ladie Margaret went to the Bishop and to Duke Philip, and right louelie did salute them, and then she demaunded of Florence howe it was with Arthur. And she answered and said: Faire ladie Margaret he is abiding in the Court with the King of Orquenie and with maister Steuen. And I praie you madame how doth he? Verilie saide she, right well. Then am I glad said the Ladie Margaret, for Arthur is my Lord and chiefe Father, for he hath rendered to me againe my lande, whereof I was disherited by the nephewe of the Duke of Bygot. Well said Florence, care not for that, for you haue now well reuenged both of the vncle and of the nevew. Madame said she, blessed be them that hath brought that about, and thus they rode forth on their waie, and they encountred sir Miles and sir Artaude, & diuerse other knights pertaining to Florence, and all other Knightes of that Countrie drewe thether by greate flockes, and when they were neare to the Citie of Argence, then there issued out of all the honest Burgeses of the Citie, riding on good horses,

and

and faire Faulkons and Sparhaukes on their fists, and they were well to the number of fiftie well araied all in one sute halfe Scarlet and halfe graene, with tabours and trumpets before them. Then the Bishoppe sawe well how that the Citie of Argence was right noble and goodlie, for he sawe the bright Sunne glimmering on the faire Churches and high steeples, couered all with faire Lead, and also he sawe the rich banners and streamers pight out of windowes of the faire houses, and the battlementes were pight full of shaldes, basenets, healmes, and Speares, to the intent to shew the strength of the City, and the streates were hanged with clothes of golde and of silke, and with reede Sendall, chaungeable with graene, and all the bells of the towne solempnlie did ring, so that it was great ioy to see and behold the noblenesse of that Citie. In this manner Florence entered into the Citie, hauing in her companie aboue fiftie one hundred knightes, and the Burgeses of the Citie mounted vp into their windowes to beholde Florence, who was led betweene the Bishop and Duke Philip, and thus they rode till they came to the pallace, and ther descended: so mounted vp into the hall, then Florence entred into her chamber and apparailed her, and by that time her dinner was ready and the Tables readie couered, then Florence and the Archbishop and all other sate them downe to dinner, and were right richlie serued, and so there Florence soiourned the space of eight daies. Now let vs leaue Florence at Argence and returne to the Emperour and to King Emendus, and to Proserpina, who was laide in Florence bed in the stead of her.

How Proserpina was allured to the Emperour in the steed of Florence, & how the king banished out of his Countrie the King of Orquenie, and also the king of Valesound & master Steuē & Arthur. ca. 85

IT it was that when Florence was departed from y court of king Emendus her father, y that he had giuen her to y

Emperour, than ech of them went into their owne tents to dinner, and the king of Orqueney who was abiden still in Florence tent with Proserpine quene of the fairy, who resembled so nere Florence, that the one could not be knowen from the other, and ther he and Arthur dined with hir, and after diner themperour came to king Emendus & said, sir ye have given me Florence your daughter, & sir I know well how that the king of Orqueney & Arthur be still with hir in hir tent, and they have bene alwaies contrary to me, wherfore I doubt me least they tourne Florence minde frome ward, therfore sir I pray you let us go and fiance hir this night, and let us be maried to morow. Sir said the king, I am content, & I promise you that all such who so ever they be that be contrary against your minde, shall incontinent forsake my company, than themperour and the king, & the other three kinges went streight to Florence tent, and assone as they were entred the king of Orqueney & the maister and Arthur rose and welcomed them, than ỳ king sate him down on the one side of the bed and themperour on the other side, than the king said to Proserpine wening to him it had bene his daughter Florence, faire daughter it behoueth you to be fianced this night to this Emperour, and to morow ye shall be wedded with great ioye. Well sir sayde Proserpine, sith it is your pleasure I am content, let it be done incontinent, than the king demaunded for tharchbishop his brother, to thentent to ensure them together. Sir said the maister he is gone to pancopone for a busynesse that he hath to do ther and duke Philip also. And wher is Florence seneschall and all other knights. Sir surely they be all gone with him. In the name of God sir saide themperour, the archbishop hath bene alwaies contrary to me in that I should have Florence, therefore sir never trust me but that he is gone to doe some maner of treason, to the entent that I should not have hir. Than stept forth the maister & sayd, sir Emperour ye say not wisely, to call the archbishop traitor, or to say that he seeketh to worke any treason against you it is to largely sayd, for ther was never as yet any no-

ble

ble man of Hozolois that euer did anie treason against you or against anie other man liuing, and though that he be not of the accord of this marriage he doth but right, for sauing the honour of my Lord the king here present, all that be of that accord are forsworne, and haue broken their promises and couenaunts, and doth against their owne seales, and as for me as long as I liue shall I neuer accord thereto. No matter said the king, will you not then accord thereto, but holde all the other forsworne, by the faith that I owe vnto God, if you were not the sonne of a king I wold make you well to knowe how you haue spoken foolishlye here in my presence, but thus much I saie vnto you, I charge you incontinent that you auoide this Pauilion, and I defend you the comming againe to my sight, and discharge you out of Florence counsaile. Well sir said the maister, sith I see then that I must nedes leaue your Court and comming before you, & banished me from the counsaile of my Ladie, for this Emperour here present, wherefore let him be certain that as long as I liue he shall neuer put ring on my Ladie Florence finger nor wed her for all the power that hee hath or can haue. Then the king was sore displeased and rose and had thought to haue striken the maister, but the king of Hozmall and the king of Ismaelite did holde him, and therwith the maister went out of the pauilion. And when the king of Malefound saw his sonne cast out of the court, and how the king would haue striken him, hee rose vp and said to the king: Sir for the eschewing of all ill and trouble before this time, I was agreed that this Emperour shoulde haue your daughter, wherin now I confesse me that I was forsworne, and did therein contrarie to mine owne seale and promise, the which consentment now here I openlie reuoke and denie, for as God helpe me I will be no longer forsworne, therefore I saie to this Emperour that he take her not, for if he doe, let him be certaine that there is and shall be in the Realme of Malefound a king who is not his friend, but he is and shall be his mortall enimie. And when King Eumenus heard him speake in that manner, he was

right sore displeased, for he loued and beleued him right wel before and said, sir king either consent to this marriage, or ells forsake the presence of me and shortly auoide this pauilion. Well sir than I will depart, and I warrant you I will no more desire to come into your sight, I say no more but God giue grace ye do wel, and therwith he went out of the pauilion and went to his sonne maister Steuen. Than the king of Orqueney rose vp and said to the king, sir I haue great meruaile where ye haue taken this counsaile to estrange your selfe from your friendes and counsellers, verely sir ye be in an ill minde in this case, and all for this emperour, who shall neuer doe you so much good, but by the faith that I owe to my ladie Florence, if he were not here in your presence, I should take his head from his sholders, & let him take good heede that after that he is married that he cary hir not a myle out of this place but I shal be ther redie to encountre him & not to his pleasure, what saide the king doe ye menace and threat here before me, shortly I charge you auoide this pauilion, & beware that I see you no more in my sight, and in the despite of you all the emperour shall haue Florence my daughter. Wel sir said the king of Orqueney sith ye haue banished me out of your courte and of your presence, I assure you I am able right well to withstande your malice, but sir I counsaile you conuey this Emperour surely whan he departeth into his owne countrie, least that he be not encountred with all to his displeasure, than the king of Orqueney toke Arthur by the hand & saide, sir come ye on with me and leaue this courte, for no noble man ought to abide here. Sir said Arthur, I will go with you with a right good will, than they departed out of the pauilion, and there they found the king of Valesound & maister Steuen, and to them he said, now sirs we be all banished out of the court of king Emendus, God now be our help, than they trussed vp their tentes and sent their people euerie man home to his own countrie, & so than they mounted vpon their horses and so departed, and they had not ridden a leage and a halfe, but the king of Walesounde was

halfe, but that the King of Valefound was in a Vdalite Ar-
die. When the King of Orquenie demaunded of him what
he ailed to study. Syr quoth he I muse in what manner we
may do annoyaunce to this emperour who wold haue our
lady against her owne will and ours, the which sore grie-
ueth me. Well sir said the king of Orqueny care not for that
matter, for I ensure you he shall not wed her this yere. Sir
sayd he it can be none other wise, for the emperour and the
king his father will now lead hir to Cornit and there mance
her against her will Wel sir said the king of Orqueny feare
ye not that, for be ye in certaine that as for Florence she is
already at the citie of Argence where as she abideth for vs.
Why said the king of Valefound and who is it than that
lieth at Florence bed in the stede of her and is so like her.
I shal shew you quoth the king of Orqueny, herd you neuer
speaking of the quéne of the ladyes of the fayry that be in
the mount perillous whereas Florence was conuayed as
soone as she was borne. Yes mary quoth the other king I
haue heard thereof diuers times. Well sir than so much I
say to you that she y lieth in my ladies bedde is Proserpine
quéne of the fayry, and she did destenye her at her natiuitie
that she should be like in all things to her, and so she is as
ye may se, wherfore ye shall know full well by to morrow
this time that there was neuer Emperour and king so abu
sed and abashed as they shalbe. In the name of god said the
king of Valefound I neuer heard speaking of this matter
before, but let vs hast vs and so speak with my lady Flo-
rence at Argence, and there let vs aduise further what shal
be done in this matter. Syr ye say right well and so let vs
doe, for I am sure we shall haue great warre. Than they
sente two Squiers before them to Florence to giue her
knowledge how that they would be with her the wednes-
daye nexte after in y morning. And whan Florence knew
that, she had right great ioy, and caused incontinent the
places to be apparelled where as they should lodge, & than
the archbishop and duke Phillip rose & went & encountred
them, & when they were met togither they made great ioy

each of other, and Duke Philip embraced Arthur, and the Bishop was with the Kinges and so entered into the citie, and all the Burgeses and communaltie of the citie made great feast of Arthur, for he semed to them so gratious and so faire that they all said: A good Lord what a noble couple should it be betwene our Lady Florence and this noble knight Arthur, wold to god he had wedded her. Than they all alighted at the pallace, and there Florence met them & embraced euery king each after other, and in likewise did the fayre lady Margaret. Than Florence came to Arthur and said mine owne swete louer ye be right hartely welcome. Mine owne dere Ladye god encrease in you noble bountie and honour. And than the ladye Margaret ran to master Steuen, and each of them right swetly embraced other, than they all went to their chambers and apparelled them, and than they went to dinner and were serued right richly, then al these kings and Florence and the lady Margaret departed and went to the port noyse and commaunded all their people to drawe them thither-ward as shortly as they could and so they rode forth, and on a tewesday betimes they arriued at the port noyse than Florence went vp to her pallace where as she had neuer ben before, & than she thanked Arthur in that he had fordone the enchauntements & the aduentures of that place, and Gouernar & Bristebar had apparailed that place in euery thing that was honable, and thus they were in great ioye and triumph the space of eight daies, & then these kings and Florence went into a faire chamber to counsaile, and the Bishop, and Arthur, Duke Philip, and the master were with them, and then they recounted to Florence how that they wer departed out of the court in great displeasure, and how that the King Emendus had banished them al out of his presence, and also we know well as sone as he hath knowledge that you be here and we with you, we shall haue sharpe & great warres made vnto vs, wherefore it is conuenient that we aduise wel what shal be done in this matter. Then the master rose & said, Lords if you think it to be done I shal shew

you mine aduice and they all answered & said, master sais on what you will it shall please vs right well to giue you audience. Then the master said, madame you be the proper & right heire of Sorolois, & our proper Ladie, & we all your men, the discord that is betweene my Lord your father and vs, moueth properlie by the reason of you, and not for ante trespasse that euer we did him, therefore madame it is reason that you take vppon you this quarrell and businesse, and take your hart to you and be not too soft in this matter, for when my Lord y King your father shall be come hether with all his power to assige you as I am sure he will do, he shall not haue so hardie a knight in al his companie but he shall be afeard to gird his sword about him to come against your companie, for you be a great Queene and a puissaunt, therfore send for your people, and let duke Philip do in like case, and my Margaret also, & when all your people be assembled together, whosoeuer then will be so hardie to assaile you, let him be sharplie answered and defended, & madame behold heere Arthur to whome this matter toucheth right neere, who is faithfully yours & you his, therefore me thinketh it wer reason that he were chiefe captain of this matter, and let him maintaine this war fiercelie and vertuouslie, and the King of Orquenie and y King of Walesound my father, let them returne into their own realmes, for peradventure the King Emendus will send for them againe, and will repent him in that he hath banished them out of his sight, and if they fall into accord with him againe, then shal they doe much good for vs in this matter with the king, for then they shall shew him his follie in that he would marrie my Ladie Florence his daughter against her will, and how that he doth great wrong to make war against Arthur, but sir Arthur according to mine aduice be you of good hart, & if they will nedes make warre against you, doe to this Emperour as much domage as euer you can. Then the King of Walesound sayde: Faire sonne verilie you haue well and wiselie saide, I am agreed thereto, let it be done as you haue said.

As God help me saide the Bishop, I am agréd with ȳ same saying, & to the same they were all agréd. Then the King of Walesound saide to Arthur, Sir we bee all established that you haue the whole conduct of this matter, therfore do your indeuour, and here wee giue you the charge of my Ladie Florence, and the Bishop her vnckle shall abide with you and Duke Philip also, and with him master Steuen my sonne, and if you haue anie need send vs word, and we shal not faile my Ladie at no time, and if wee happen to fall at anie accord with the King, then shal we blame him for his follie, and as for vs and our people, we faithfullie promise you that if anie sworde be drawen against you, we shall bee euer readie to reuenge it to the best of our powers. That shall not be failed saide the King of Orquenie. Sirs I thanke you said Florence, so then they established Arthur chiefe captaine of the matter, and so the two Kings departed out of the counsaile, and toke leaue of Florence and Arthur, and of all other, and returned into their owne Countries. Now let vs leaue to speake of them and returne to the Emperour and King Emendus, howe that they were amazed at the Church dore, when they hadde thought to haue married Florence.

How that Proserpine Queene of the fairie, was ledde to the Church to haue bene wedded to the Emperour weening that it had bene Florence, but when the Bishop had thought to haue put the wedding ring on her finger, sodeinly she vanished away, so that none wist whether she became, and so then they stoode all abashed, as though the cloudes had fallen from heauen. Cap. 86.

SO it was that when the King of Walesound and the king of Orquenie was departed from King Emidus in great displeasure, howbeit the King as then when hee saiwe that they wer gone he repented him of his folly, howbit he made

no

no manner of semblance for the loue of the Emperour, but said to him, Sir let vs goe to the Citie of Cornite, and there shall yee affiaunce Florence, and to morrowe be married to her: Sir with a right good will said the Emperour. Then Proserpina was apparailed & lead forth to Cornite, where there was redie the Bishop of Pancopone, and as sone as they were come to the Citie, then incontinently the Emperour was assured to Proserpina in the stede of Florence, and so there was great feast and ioy all that night till euerie man went to their rests, and in the morning they arose, and Proserpina was apparailed right richlie, and so the King of Normall and the King of Ismaelite did leade her to Church, and as sone as she came to the Church dore, there was readye the Bishoppe of Pancopone, in his Pontificalibus, and there did aske the Banes betweene them, and so proceeded forth in the wordes of Patrimonie. And when the Bishoppe thought to haue set the wedding Ring on her finger, sodainlie shee vanished awaie, so that none knewe where shee was become, wherewith the Kinges, Dukes, Earles, and all other, were as greatlie abashed as though they had tumbled out of the Clowdes, then the Bishop blessed himselfe and so did euerie man rounde about him, and they saide, this is a wondrous case, I thinke wee bee inchanted, howbeit neuertheless they heard out the Seruice with great deuotion, praying to God to keepe them from the illusions of the fiend of hell. And when the seruice was done they returned to the Pallace, and all that daie they were sore troubled in their heartes, and so three daies after they searched continuallie all about the Citie for Florence, and on the fourth daie there came a Knight to the Pallace, and did salute king Emendus and the Emperour, and said, Sir I see well you be sore troubled because of Florence, but I can shew you tidings right well where she is, surely Sir she departed from Argence the wednesdaie next after Pischaelmas daie, and in her company more then fifteene hundred Knightes, and Sir with her is the Archbishoppe your brother, and Duke Philip of Sabarie, and are as nowe at

the castel of the port noyse, and she hath caused the place to be fortified with artillarie & with all maner of vitaile sufficient to finde a siege for the space of vii. yeare, and Florence hath sent all about for men of war, and duke Phillip hath also sent into his owne countrie for all his power, and as for all the power of Argenton is there all readie with hir, & also there is with hir Arthur and Gouernar, maister Steuen, and sir Brisebar, and al hir whole chiualry. Yea friend said the king, is all this true. Yea sir, as God help me, for I haue seene all this with myne eyen. Of the king of Orques ney & of the king of Walefound can ye shew me any word, saide the king. Sir I can shew you certaine word of them, for I encountred them but late as they were ridinge into their owne countries. As God help me saide the king, I repent me that I spake to them so folishly this last day, but I did it in a great displeasure. In the name of God sir sayde The emperour, if ye haue done them any trespasse ye may right well make them amends, and in your so doing ye shal doe right well. Verely sir saide the king, and so will I doe, but what counsaile & remedie shal we make for this knight Arthur, who hath thus taken away Florence my daughter but by my crowne if I may take them, they shall both suffer a shameful death, nor as long as I lyue I shall neuer cease till I haue them, and than shall the drabbe my daughter be mured vp in a stone wall, and the false ribaude Arthur hanged by the necke, but I vnderstand they haue furnished the port noyse for the space of vii. yere, and also they purnay them of people as much as they may. Sir qd the knight that brought the tydings, that is of trouth. Wel sir saide The emperour, I shall shew you what we shall doe, ye shal send for all your power, and so shal I doe for mine, and so let vs beseege the castell of the port noyse, & though that it were made of yron & steele, yet shal it not endure against our strength. As God help me sir saide the kinge, the castel doubteth no man, but I alow wel let vs beseege the castell round about, til we haue famished them, for otherwise shal we neuer haue the place, therfore let vs send for our people

till

till we haue sufficient. You saie right well quoth the Emperour, I will goe and returne into mine owne Countrie, and you shall find mée and I line at the Port Noire within fifteene daies of Easter next comming. And there shall you finde mée also saide the King. Then the Emperour commaunded to trusse all his stuffe, and so take leaue of the King and departed into Inde, and as sone as the Emperour was departed, then the King said to the King of Portmall, Sir goe you home into your owne countrie and summon vp all your men of warre, and méete with mé at the Port Noire the fifteene daie after Easter, and I praie you speake with the King of Walesound, and make the peace betweene him and me, and desire him to be at Argence the saide daie with all his power to goe with mé to the Port Noire, and shew him that I shall make to him a large amends for that I haue done to him, in like wise he sayd to the King of Ismalite that he should speake with the King of Orquenie, and so they promised to doe, and departed and went each them into their owne Countries, and then they sent all about for their people, and shewed the other two Kinges their message that they hadde from the King Emendus, and how that the King desired them to be at Argence the fifteenth daie after Easter. And they aunswered how that they would not faile to be ther at the day, and so each of thē apparailed themselues and all their people in as hastie wise as they could. And the Emperour and the King Emendus also made them readie in all hast to go to the Port Noire, and at the Emperours commandement there came with him the King Godifer and the King Joras, and the King Tomodos, and all their whole power.

How Arthur sent Gouernar to his cosin Hector Duke of Orgoule, desiring him to come & helpe to sucour him against the Emperour of Inde, & against the King Emendus, who would besiege him in the castle of the Port Noire. Chap. 87.

So

SO it was that when the King of Orquenie and the king of Valefound were departed from Arthur, out of the Port Noire, as you haue heard here before, then within a little space after there came to Arthur a spie straight from Cornite, and there he recounted to Arthur all the dealing of the Emperour and of King Emendus, and howe that they summoned together great people to come to besiege them at the Port Noire. And when Arthur heard that, he said to Duke Philip: Well sir then there is no more to do, but let euerie man doe the best he can, wherefore it is time that you send to Sabarie to your Seneschal, that he bring hether to you all your chiualrie nowe at this Easter, and you my Ladie Florence, send forth your letter to your Realme of Blaunch Towre, and let my Ladie Margaret send to Argence, and I shall send to Orgoule to my cosin Hector.
Why then saide Florence, haue you then a cosin in these parts? Yea madame, by the faith ý I owe to your grace, for if I might haue him once by my side, I doubt but little the mallice of this Emperour. Then she made her Letters and sent sir Meuelon to the clære Towre, and so departed. And when he was there arriued, anone he found sir Perdicas who was chiefe gouernour of all that Realme of clære Tower, and to him he deliuered Florence Letters, and incontinentlie on the sight of the Letters, he summoned together all the noble men of the citie ý of all ý whole realme, & when they were assembled together they were to the number of thirtie thousand men of warre, and so they put themselues straight into the waie to go to their Ladie Florences to the Port Noire. And also the Ladie Margaret sent Sir Miles vnto Argence to sir Emerie, who brought with him welnigh fiftene thousand. And Duke Philip sent sir Brisebar into Sabarie to gentle Clemenson his marshall, who brought with him twentie thousand. And Gouernar went to the Citie of Orgoule to the noble Duke Hector cosin to Arthur, and then it was shewed him howe the Duke was at Brule with the Countesse of Brule, who as then was a

little

little diseased, and Gouernar rode so long that on a Saturdaie betimes he arriued ther, then he mounted vp the staires and entered into the hall, and there he found Hector sitting by the Countesse his mother in lawe, eating together of a dish of fish, and as soone as Hector sawe Gouernar he rose & embraced him, and his heart reioiced for gladnesse when he sawe people of his owne Countrie, and then he demaunded tidings of his cosin Arthur, and Gouernar answered and said, sir he heartely commendeth him to you, & desireth you to come to helpe to succour him against his enimies. And I praie you what be they said Hector, that be his enimies, for as long as I liue whatsoeuer they be, though they be neuer so great or puisant, but I shall make them to tremble and quake if they will abide and loke me in the face. Then the Countesse said, faire son, I wold you should not spare to help to succour our friend and louer the noble Arthur. Then the Dutchesse of Orgoule the faire Ladie Alice embraced Gouernar, and demaunded of him how Arthur did: Faire ladie said he, he heartelie commendeth him to you. Then he said to Hector, sir hast you for it is neede. Then Hector called to him sir Octebon his Seneshal, and commaunded him that he should send into all the countrie of the Earledome of Brule that all that might beare harneis, that in all the hast they should come to him to the citie of Brule, and in like wise he sent into all the Dutchie of Orgoule to sir Clarembault, that he should assemble all his hoast, and in al hast to come to him to the citie of Brule, and when all his people were assembled together, then Hector take leaue of his countesse his mother in lawe, and of the faire Ladie Alice his wife, who desired Gouernar to recommend her to the gentle Arthur. So they departed from Brule, and entered into their waie towarde the Port Done, and so long they rode till at the last they were within two leagues of the Port Done, and then they entered into a great deepe valley.

How

How Hector as he went toward the Port Noire to succour Arthur, he encoutred one of the kings that was comming toward the Emperour, & had in his compaine well to the number of eighteene thousand men of warre; the which Duke Hector slew and all his people, so that there was none that euer escaped saiuing two, and so they fled awaie, and there Hector got a great bootie & much treasure, and great abundance of victualls, the which was all brought into the Port Noire.

Chapter. 38.

THus as Hector & his people were entered into this great valley, they perceiued whereas ther came toward them about the number of eighteene thousand men of warre. Then Hector demaunded of Gouernar if that hee knewe them. And he aunswered and said, sir nay in good saith, but I doubt mee least they be of our enimies. Then Hector made all his boast to be armed, and when they wer armed, Gouernar prested forth and demaunded one of them from whence they were. And one of them aunswered and said, friend it is Godifer who is going toward the Emperour, to helpe him to lay siege to the Port Noire to the intent to take it, and to slay a knight that is therein, who hath taken away Florence daughter to king Emendus, the which Ladie should haue beene wedded to my Lord the Emperour, wherefore ther is none that is in ỹ castle or taketh part with that knight, but he shall die a shamefull death. What saide Gouernar, then thou doest threten mee, and yet thou callest mee friend, but I shall that for thy labour, therefore defend thy selfe, then Gouernar drewe his swoorde and strake so the knight betweene the shoulders and the necke, that hee clane him downe to the waist, and then

Gouer-

Gouernar saide, I thinke I haue assured this knight to be on our part, for I thinke he wil abide here still in this place.

Then saide Hector, I see well that betweene Gouernar and this knight there was but little friendshippe, then Hector sawe where King Godifer did dresse himselfe to come on Gouernar as fast as hee might, but Hector met him first and strake the King so rudelye that he ouerthrew him wide in the open fielde, then Hector tourned him with his sworde in his hand to haue striken off his head, but his people succoured him and ranne on Hector on all sides, but Hector strake among them that he brake the great prease, then Gouernar dasht into the thickest of the prease without sparing of anie bodie, for hee cut off armes, legges, and heades, great plentie. Then Sir Clarembault entered into the prease, and sir Othes in like wise: then there beganne such a fraie that it was pittie to beholde, then King Godifer was remounted againe, and Hector laide on round about him, and he went so much forward that he was closed in among his enimies, howbeit he gaue among them so greate strokes, that all that euer he attained vnto went to the death, but his enimies did cast at him knives and daggers, so that at the last thereby they slewe his horse vnder him, then he leapt on his feete with his sworde in his hand, but his enimies oppressed him greatlie. Therewith Gouernar came to him all in a great rage, and he was also at his comming so beset with his enimies, that his horse was slaine vnder him, and then Hector and Gouernar were in that case that it was harde for them to escape, till at the last sir Clarembault and all his rout came to them, and so then there beganne so fore a battaile that it was wonderfull to beholde, and then Hector and Gouernar did so valiauntlie that each of them gate him a new horse, and so in the spite of all their enimies they were againe remounted, and then they dasht into the prease and gaue so mightie strokes, that they confounded al that euer they attained vnto, then ỹ king

Godifer

Godifer came on them with so great a preasse, & they drew by dint ane force Gouernar and syr Othes out of the preasse, and closed them so rounde about, and gaue them so many great strokes that they slew their horses vnder them, & then they defended them as valiaunt Knights ought to doe, and oftentimes they called for Hector to helpe to rescew them, but the preasse was so great & thicke that Hector in no wise could get to them, and yet ther bee did mervailes with his handes, for he all to frushed shields, and vnbarred helmes, and cut downe Knights, but Gouernar and syr Othes were so ouerladen that they were both taken prisoners and led out of the battaile. Then Gouernar saide, A deere maister Arthur, to God I you commend, he that all things formed keepe and saue thy noble bodie. But when Hector knew that they were taken prisoners, hee was so sore displeased, that he almost enraged for sorrow, & so abandoned himselfe among his enimies, & gaue so great & horrie strokes, that euerie man fled before him, for he strake none but they left their lines or else sore wounded. And in ỹ meane seson Gouernar & syr Othes were led forth toward ỹ emperour, who was comming after, and as they were thus led forth, they met with syr Brisebar and Clemenson, Senechal to duke Phillip of Sabarie, and Brisebar knew Gouernar as sone as he saw him, then Brisebar cried and said, saint Marie saue Arthur the good Knight, for I see well that Gouernar is taken therfore gentle Knight helpe to succour these two Knightes who are pertaining to the gentle Arthur, then all his companie set fiercelie on them, and within a lyttle while they were all slaine, and hewen in small peces, and then Gouernar and syr Othes were remounted againe, and they said to syr Brisebar: Ah syr for Gods sake haste you as fast as you can for you shall finde heere before in a greate valley the noble Hector, rosin to Arthur, fighting with king Godifer, who hath with him a great companie, wherefore I feare me greatlie that this noble Duke Hector hath too much in hand ẏlyke to escape. By saint Marie saide Syr Clemenson, ponder I see them, Brisebar followe me, then

they

they all together in a front went together as fast as they might, and they wer all welnigh to the number of twentie thousand fighting men, then Clemenson dasht into ỳ preasse with his sword in his hand, then he strake the first that he encountered in such wise that he made his head to flie from his shoulders, and syr Bilsebar met so with another that he clave his head to his teeth, and they dide so much at their comming, that they two beat downe and slew more then xx knightes. And when Hector sawe that, he saide, what knights be these or from whence are they come. Then Gouernar who the same time came into the preasse, and wered Hector and said, Sir I trust that I haue done so much that you shall haue noble succour, and when Hector sawe Gouernar, his heart reioyced and said, friend helpe to succour yonder two knightes, for they are worthie to haue helpe. Then by that time al the whole companie of twentie thousand was come into the preasse, and ther they slew knights great plentie, so that King Godifers companie were nigh discomfited. And when the King sawe that, hee was so sore displeased that he was almost dead for anger, then he dasht his spurres to his horse, and gaue Hector such a stroke that he strake awaie of his sheeld and harneis a greate quarter, but as God would that stroke did not enter into the flesh, ỳ Hector strake the King so rudelie on the healme, that hee clave his head downe to the shoulders, and therwith he fel downe to the earth starke dead, and when his people sawe that, they turned and fled awaie, but Clemenson and Bilsebar followed in the chase, so that of eightéen thousand they left aliue but two persons. Then Hector and Gouernar came to Clemenson, and Bilsebar, and each of them saluted other, ỳ Hector thanked them of their good succour. Then they went all to the chariots and carts that King Godifer had brought thether, wherein they found greate plentie of golde and siluer, and store of victualles, the which Hector caused to be conueied to the Port Noire. Then Gouernar saide to Hector, Sir I will goe before to my Lorde Arthur and shew him of your comming, and come you after

faire and eastlie. Well saide Hector, goe your waie in the name of God, and so he departed & went to the port Noire, and mounted vp into the pallace, and there he founde Arthur, Florence and the Bishoppe, and master Stenen and Duke Philip. And when Arthur and Duke Philip sawe Gouernar, they sawe well by his harneis that he had bene at some battaile. Then Arthur demaunded of him what tidings: Sir said he, right well thanked be God, Sir beholde yonder commeth your cosin Hector and all his hoast, who hath discomfited and slaine the King Godifer, and of eightéene thousand that he brought with him there is left aliue but two persons, with ý which King we met in a faire valley, and he was comming towarde the Emperour to haue holpen him to haue destroyed you, in the which fraie I was taken prisoner, and also the Countesse of Bzules Senesthal Sir Othes, but thanked be God and Duke Philip, for his Senesthall the gentle Clemenson, and sir Brisebar did rescew and deliuer vs, so now the King Godifer is slaine and all his companie, and Hector bringeth with him great plentie of golde and siluer, and victualls, the which he wanne in this battaile, I knowe well it mounteth to the number of two hundred Chariots and Cartes. A good Lord said Arthur, the victualls is more welcome then Golde or Siluer. Then by that time Hector, Clemenson, and Brisebar alighted at the port Noire, and lodged al their hoast about in the Castle, then Arthur ranne and embraced Hector all armed as he was and said, cosyn you be right heartlie welcome to the helping of the noble Florence heere present. Trulie said Florence, blessed bee the neighbour that is readie to helpe at néede, but Arthur how is it that you haue hadde such a kinsman so neere vs, and would neuer shew it to me. Madame quoth Arthur, I did for none ill intent, so then Hector was lead into a chamber to be vnarmed, and Duke Philip receiued Clemenson and Brisebar, and Sir Othes with great ioye, and when Hector was vnarmed then he went into the pallace, and Florence beheld him and lyked him wonderfully, for she sawe well that he was bigge and

well made, then she saide to Arthur, Sir this Gentleman seemeth well to be of a redoubted lignage. Sir quoth the Bishoppe, hee seemeth well to bee of the nature of a noble man. Yea sir quoth Hector that I warraunt you if I were at a table faire covered, with meate and drinke theron. As God helpe mee saide Duke Philip, hee saith well, for it were now time to eate some meate. Then Squiers set up tables, and in the meane time Florence and Arthur, Duke Philip and the Archbishoppe, went and leant out at a window, and at last they sawe where there were comming Florence Seneshall and sir Perdicas, and thirtie thousand in their companie of Florence retinue, and they all followed the white Banner of the Realme of Blaunch, then Florence said to Arthur, Sir behold yonder commeth our folke that shal help our neighbours. Madame quoth Arthur, they be welcome, then they saw also wher there came sir Piles and Sir Emerie and fifteene thousande in their companie, then the faire Ladie Margaret said, madame behold yonder commeth my companie, who are come to helpe you at all times. Margaret my loue, I thanke you quoth Florence of your good aide, and God giue mee grace so long to liue that I may deserue it vnto you. And when Hector saw so many standards and streamers comming, hee saide, as God helpe me if this were the Emperour, to this comming I would then haue trust to see him, and by the good Lord I shall see him as shortlie as I can. So then these knightes diode alight and mounted vp into the pallace, and Gouernar and Baisebar appointed euery man his lodging, & these knights were receiued with great ioy, and they went to dinner and were serued right richly with all maner of dainties.

How the Emperour of Inde and the King Emendus, accompanied with eight kings, and well to the number of three hundred thousand men of warre laide siege about the castle of the Port Noire, whereas Florence and Arthur were, whereof ill turned to the emperor, for there he lost three of his kinges, and an hundred thousand of his men. Chap. 89



AFter dinner when the tables were taken away, then Florence and the Bishop and Arthur went together and leaned out at a windowe, and duke Philip and the master and Hector leaned out at another windowe, then they saw whereas the King of Normall and the King of Ismaelite with all their powers take their lodging and pight their field about the castle, and the King Emendus was at Argence, abiding for the King of Valefound and the King of Orquenie, and when they were come to him, then the King Emendus made his own peace with them, and made them a large amends in that he had done before banished them his court, and said how that he did it but in hast, and then repented him of his so dealing, & when they were thus accorded, then they all together set forth in their waie toward the Port Notre, & the two Kings went before, & the King with the great dragon of Sorolois came

th the reward with all his boast, so that al the country was ouer spred with people. Now I see well saide Arthur, that we shall haue warre, but by the faith that I owe vnto god, if I may once medle with them, they shall not all retourne againe. By the good Lord said Hector, they lodge very nye vs, and yet they be not our friends. Than of themperours company there came king Jonas, and after him ther came king Clamados, and than after came themperour himself, and he was right sorowfull whan he knewe of the death of king Godifer and of his company, & how that all the treasour and vitaile was taken into the port noyze, and so the Emperour was lodged on the left side of the castell. Than Florence said to the bishop, sir how say ye is not yonder people sufficient to take a lady prisoner. Certainly madame qd Arthur it is of trouth they are greatly to be doubted. Sir said Hector let vs go to them and giue them their welcom. Verely saide the maister now shall be seene who is a noble man, verely I am sonne to a king, therfore ought I by reason to loue deedes of chyualry and to beare harneis, therefore bicause of this matter I wold faine be made a knight, and than I would gladly sir Hector go in your company to bydde yonder galants wel come, for I would be loth that he should go and I to tary behinde. And whan the bishop herd the maister say that he would be made a knight he had ther at great laughter & sport and said, maister by the good lord it is much better to be in a chambre with ladies and damosells, than to be yonder without and to abide the breaking of sharp speares, and it is hard to finde a clarke to be a good knight. Wel sir said the maister all that maketh no matter, for I truste to do so well, that I shall bring in one day in to this place two of those kings prisoners, than they all that heard him began to laugh, & so al that day they sported them at the maisters words, till it was time to go to rest, & than every man went to bed & toke their restes til the next morning. and in the morning al these lords arose betimes & assembled them together in the middest of the palais, than Hector said to Arthur, cosin yonder people without hath good lysse

to sleepe, for there is none to wake them, by the good Lord, me thinketh we were verie slow, let vs goe to them and see how they doe. In the name of God quoth Sir Clemenson, so let it be, for we doe not our indeauours to abide so long, therefore let vs issue out and deale valiauntlie with them. In the name of God quoth Arthur, everie man to harneis, and so everie man went to arme them. Florence was not at that appointment, but when she knew thereof she came to them and said, Sirs what meane you to doe, this matter must be done wiselie, for you know not preciselie as yet for what cause this great assemblie be come about this castle, peradventure they be come to doe honour to our marriage betweene Arthur & me, for I cannot beleeue that the King my father be come on me in harneis, wherefore in my minde it wer not best to assaile them first, but if they assaile vs, then let vs defend our selues in the best wise we can, sir marques you are a noble man to goe on my message to the King my father, wherefore I praie you go to him and humblie commend me to his grace, and saie that I require him to send me word of his midde, and why that he is come hether in this manner of wise at this time, I pray you marke well these words that I haue said to you, a wise man never needeth anie teaching, but and you see that hee will needes keepe still his froward mind to me warde, then I will that you saie to his foure Kings & to all his chiualrie how that I send them word that they be al my men and subiects, wherefore if there be anie of them so hardie to drawe anie sword against me or anie of mine, tel them that by the faith that I owe to my Ladie Eglentine my deere mother, whose soule I trust liueth with the Lorde, that I shall cause them to be hanged by the neckes, though that they neuer so noble or be gentle, and after that I wil you I enquire why this Emperour is come into my realme, and if you see that he be come for our ill, and that he would haue battaile, shewe him preciselie that he shall haue battaile right sharp & strong to morow betimes without longer delay. In ỹ name of God said duke Philip, I see wel we haue a good head of our house, ma-

dame

dame you follow right well the noble steps of your linage.
Well madame said ỳ marques, I trust I shall so fulfil your
message that you shal be content, and so he toke his leaue of
Florence and of all the whole Baronie, & rode forth till hee
came before the King Emendas, at which time he was ac-
companied with his foure Kings, and also ther was ỳ Em-
perour and all his Kings, & other Dukes, Earles, Barons,
and Knights. there was also the king Jonas, & king Claue-
dos, and diuerse other noble men pertaining to ỳ emperor.
Then the gentle marques entered into the same place and
did salute the King and all his companie, and said, Sir I am
come to you from my Ladie Florence your Daughter, the
most noble & gentlest Lady liuing, who right dearely com-
mendeth her vnto your grace, as to her owne deare father, &
Sir she is greatly abashed of this greate companie in har-
neis, that you haue brought hether at this time, for sir it is
a great abashment to a noble gentle maiden to see so manie
helmes and shields shining against the Sun, wherefore Sir
she requireth you to know your pleasure and minde. Then
the King with a fierce loke said, Sir Knight I will not re-
ceiue her salutation, for I loue her not at my heart, but I
hope to do her domage both of body and of goods. Sir said ỳ
marques, and for what cause certainlie said the King, shee
hath done me shame & despite, for she hath gone away from
me with a straunge knight, and she is come to hide her self
in this castle, and there folishly shee keepeth companie with
this straunge knight, the which is a shame to her for euer-
more, and also she hath done me despite, for I had giuen her
to this Emperour to haue ben his wife, and she will not fo-
low my will, and therfore because of the shame ỳ shee hath
done me & doth yet like a false strumpet, I shall put her into
a perpetuall prison, to the intent that she shall do me neuer
more shame, and I shall hang the ribauds knight by the
necke that caused her thus to do, for the despite that she hath
done to me I shall doe her another, for I will neuer depart
hence til I haue brought this castle downe to ỳ hard earth.
Then the noble marques answered & said, sir as touching

the shame that you laie against my Ladie for comming into this castle I shall answere you, Sir my Ladie is of great nobleneſſe and honour, and a Quæne called by the right of her mother, wherefore it is right that sometime she goe and sée her owne Countrie, and to take her pleasure of her owne, and sir in that she departed without your lisence, was for feare and doubt of this Emperour to whome you woulde haue giuen her against her will and heart, for shee doubted leaſt that he would haue had her against her will, and therfore ỳ maister by his learning made you to be abused at the Church dore, & sir she came not hether so simplie, that she ought to be blamed, for she brought with her Duke Philip and the Archbishoppe, and well fiue hundred other Knightes in her companie, and sir the Bishop is her vncle and your brother, wherefore he would be as loth that shee should doe anie otherwise then well as your selfe would be, but that nædeth not to be feared, for she is of such wisedome that she can rule her selfe well inough, for ther is not a wiser Ladie againe in all the world, and sir also Duke Philip hath bene alwaies with her, and therefore such people as be daily with her can report her dealing, and so cannot you that know nothing therof, and yet there is none that speaketh anie villanie of her but you, the which thing sir mée thinketh you ought not to doe, and sir indæde ponder good Knight Arthur is with her, & though it be so that she hath retained him to be her seruaunt, I thinke therein she hath done wisely, and so haue not you done in letting him depart out of your Court, for he is the flowre of all the chiualrie of the world, and she by wisdome hath retained him, for when he went out of your court he left not his fellow behind him, and sir if she haue a good knight retained vnto hir, she is not such a Ladie but that she is of such abilitie ỳ she may right well guerdon him for his seruice, for she is not come to this Castle in the despite of you, nor yet for the loue of him that you so sore despise, but sir she did it because you would giue her to such a man as shee never loued nor cannot loue, nor will not loue as long as she liueth, without it be by force,

and

and sir she is not so poore a Ladie but that and you wouldē giue her neuer so rich a man against her will, yet you may be sure that there shoulde neuer good life be long betwaine them, and because that this Emperour would haue her and she loueth him not, therfore she is come to that most strong castell that she hath, whereas she careth neither for him nor yet for anie other that would doe her anie displeasure, therfore sir take heed what you doe, for you know well that you would haue her to doe cleane contrarie to that was destinied to her in the mount Perillous at her nativitie, and sir a thing predestinate is harde to bee broken, but Sir I will shew you what you shall do from hence forth, leaue medling anie farther in this matter, for of one thing I make a warrant, that there is in her companie and hoast a great number of the best Knightes of the world, Sir leaue this matter and deale like a true King, and agree to the promise that yōu were before accorded vnto, and that was whosoeuer should haue the Chaplet of the image, should in likewise reioyce my ladie Florence you daughter, and to this you haue written your hand and set to your seale, and in like manner hath done all your foure Kinges here present, and all the twelue peres of your realme, now Sir you do against your owne seale and couenaunt that you made like a king thus to send for your people in harneis to assemble against a woman, the father against the daughter it is vnnatural and a great shame, it is no deed of a king to do against his own couenant and promise, spare for Gods sake forbeare for doing of anie hart against your owne child for ante singular loue ỹ you haue to this Emperour. Certainly said the king, I will not forbeare my mind, for all the treasure of the world shal not cause me but the Knight shall be hanged by the necke, & she put into perpetuall prison. Well sir said the Marques, then begin when you will, & do ỹ best you can, peraduenture all will not be as you would haue it, but neuertheles to you foure Kings, and to all the xii peres, & to all other Knights that be here present, I say vnto you all, my Lady Florence sendeth you word by me that she meruaileth greatly ỹ you

be come hether in harneis to war against her, considering ꝑ you be all her subiects, and she is your right lady & mistres, therfore Lords take good hed what you do, for she straightly chargeth you that you nor any of yours draw no sword nor weapon against her nor anie of hers, for & you doe, she promiseth by the faith that she oweth to my lady Eglentine her dere mother that was, that ther is none of what degree so euer he be of, but that she will cause him to be hanged by the necke like a false traitour, wherefore sirs by my counsel take hede what you do. Then the King of Orquenie said to the king Emendus, Sir you cause vs to haue great maruel in that you haue summoned vs to come hither against our naturall Ladie, and to do against our promises, writings, & seales, sir it is of truth I am your man and I ought to go with you whether so euer you will haue me in any iust quarell, but reason nor right wil not that I shuld make war against our right Ladie, whose subiects and men we be and must be, for she is and shall be our Lady by iust inheritance, but by the faith that I ow to God and to my crowne of the realme of Orquenie, neither I nor anie of mine shal moue any war against her, & of the same accord were all ꝑ foure kings & xii. peres, for each of them said that they would neuer beare harneis against their owne ladie, nor do against their own promises made before. Then the king Emendus said, Lords I cannot tell what you will doe, but I promise you all that I will neuer depart out of this place till I haue destroied this castle, and all the knights that be therin hanged by the necks. And they all answered him & said, sir do as it pleaseth you, and we shall giue you the loking on, but we will not helpe thereto nor anie of ours. Then the marques saide to the Emperour, Sir my Ladie would faine knowe why you be thus entered into her Realme with such number of men of warre. Certainlie Sir said the Emperour, I come hether to seeke her as for mine owne, for she is giuen to me by her father, and because that she denieth my will therefore, I am come hether to haue her whether she will or no, and I will doe worse to her then I would do to a

false

false traitour, and I shall hang by the necke that rybaude knight that kepeth hir at his pleasure, and duke Philip of Sabary also who doth sustaine hir in hir folish mynde. And whan the king of Orqueney heard themperour menase and threate and say so of his neuew duke Philip, he saide, ye sir Emperour faire and easely, for or ye can bring that about, ye shal haue no cap nor hat to put on your head, for though that she be giuen to you, yet she is not deliuered to you, ye may wel muse on hir deliuerance, but I ensure you ye get hir not so lightly as ye wene, & sir as for the knight whome ye dos menase to hang by the neck, sir it were a great sinne so to doe, for his nourishing cost him more than so, but sir take to morow some appintment betwene him and you to doe some deedes of armes together, or ells take part of his men, and so shall he do of his, and than and ye can take him binde him fast, and than hang him by the neck, & then shall ye be cleane out of suspicion betwene Florence and him, for than ye may be sure he shall trespasse you no more, sir loue hath brought you hither, but ye nor all your knightes are nothing worth without ye doe some deedes to be prayssed, sir mount on your horse to morow, for loue gouerneth you, my lady is so faire, & she would gladly giue some faire strok with your sword for hir loue, for alway gud knights getteth grace among faire ladies, therefore sir to morow wyn hir amourous grace with some deede of chiualry, for in gud faith ye haue it not. Wel qd themperour, get we the knight that sporteth him so with hir. Ye sir qd the marques he will not so lightly be got, for sir he is within & ye be without in the raine, and he is in the shadow abiding in the sight of this faire lady, the which is a great shame to you, therefore put him out of this castell and get your selfe in, but sir how saye ye, shall this assembly be made to morow or not. By my faith saide themperour, I shall make him assemble to morow of iiii. thousand, & also of xviii. M. men of armes. Sir said the marques, will ye promise this faithfully. Yea truely saide themperour.

And I promise faithfully for ye other partie, said ye marques,

that

that you shall be receiued, and then he spake as loude as he could and said, Lords and freends such as be subiects to my Ladie Florence, that on paine of your liues you moue not nor make anie war against my ladie Florence, nor against any of hers, & then he said to the Emperour, Sir for Gods sake begin the battaile betimes because of the heat. Then ỳ king Clamedos said to the Marques, is this lady Florence so faire as it is said. A sir Marques, thinke you nothing on her, for your emperour doth inough for you both. Wel fried said the king, I heare saie she hath with her a swete little rose, white, tender, & young, who is called Flozet. Sir said ỳ Marques, in dede ther is such a one with my lady, & I assure you she is right swete, & maketh oftentimes for me & such other knightes of my companie goodly chaplets, and sir as yet to my knowledge she hath no loue nor paramour, & Sir I thinke you haue a iolly wanton eie, therfore sir come and see her to morrow, for she shall be on the walls of the castle, and I will shew her vnto you if I can meet with you. & Sir when you haue seene her, set your fete together and assay if you can leape vp to her, take on you to morrow this enterprise for the Emperour, with a good will said he, and said to the Emperour, Sir I require you let me haue the battaile to morow. Well qd the Emperour, sith you will needs I am content, & so he toke his glone in pledge, & the king thanked him, and the Marques departed, & went to the Castle & recounted to Florence & to Arthur worde for word as you haue heard before, then they answered that they had of him a right good messenger, & graunted him the battaile the next day with thirtie thousand against the king Clamedos.

How Philip Duke of Sabarie & master Steuen sonne to the King of Valefound were made Knightes, and of the discomfiture that Arthur made on the Emperour. Chap. 90

AND when Duke Philip of Sabary heard how that they should haue a battell ỳ next day in ỳ morning, he said to ỳ lady Florence, madam I require you let me be made knight, for

for I may not be in the place where as so many noble men be, without I were a knight. By the faith that I owe to God said Florence, with a right good will. Than maister Steuen stept forth and saide, madame my lord the archbishop here present reputeth me but as one more meeter to beat furres than knights, but madame by the faith that I owe to God, I would faine be made a knight, and therof I require your grace, and than euery body began to laugh. Well sir qd he, laugh not thereat, for I iest not, I will be made a knight and I may, than he went to the ladie Margaret of Argenton and saide to hir in hir eare, mine owne dere Lady will it not please you that I be made a knight, I beseech you giue me leaue to be one, and she answered him faire and softly in counsaile and said, yes ywis sweete loue, I would be glad thereof, than he rose from hir and sayde aloude, my Lady Margaret of Argenton how say ye shall I be made a knight. Certainly friend qd she, I would be glad thereof, on the condicion that ye will take armour, horse and other necessaries of my gift. Madame saide he, I thank you, and I shal be glad to follow your pleasure with the licence of my lady Florence. Certainely qd Florence I am content therwith. And whan all the other Lords & knights saw y the maister meaned good faith, they were right glad thereof, and so went as far that night to their rests and in the morning for duke Philip Florence prepared horse and harnesse and all other furniture, and faire Lady Margaret ordeined in likewise for maister Steuen, than tharchbishop ministred the seruice, and Arthur did gird on the maisters sword, and Hector did on duke Philips, than Arthur and Clemenson led forth the maister betwene them, and Hector and sir Perdicas led forth duke Philip, and so they offered to the bishop, and he did giue them the neck strokes of knighthood, according to the vsage that was than in that countrey, than Arthur and Hector armed them, and than caused a great horne to be blowen, & by the sowning therof euery knight went to their harnesse, and than they take their leaues of Florence, and than Arthur said to the Par-

ques,

nes and to sir Clarembalt and to sir Dibes, sir I pray you go and fortifie the gates of this castel with iiii.C. pauesses, and so they did, and than they issued out of the castel in good ordinance. And Arthur ordeined their battaile right strong & marueilous, in the first battaile there was him self, sir Bilsebar & sir Clemenson, & in their company vii M. hawberts and they were commanded to kepe their right way vnder the mountaine, then followed after them Hector and Gouernar and Florence Senefchall, with foure thousande with them, and the maister and Duke Philippe, and sir Perdicas went about the mountaine, to thentent to close round about the Emperour: and they had with them eight thousand. Than the Emperour on his part called to him King Clamados and said, sir go arme you and your men, and go make assaute to the castell of the port Noyre, and if ye fortune to encounter the Knight Arthur, loke that ye take him and bring him aliue to mee, for I will make him be hanged so high and so nere to the castell, that Florence may see him euery daye when she will.

Sir qd the king, doubt ye not it shal be don, but it is an olde said sawe, he that reckneth without his hoast must recken twise, and so did he, for he failed of his enterprise, than the king caused to be blowen a great trumpe, and than euery man ran to his harnesse, and the king Clamados ordeined iii. battailes, and therle of thyle Perdue did leade the first battaile, and the duke of Calion with him, and they had in their company x. M. men: and the second battell was led by the duke of Galace, and he had with him x. M. men, and the king Clamados himselfe led forth the third battaile & other x. M. with him, and so they went forth with banners displayed, and toke the right way toward the castel, the which way Arthur was comming towarde the felde, and so they went forth so long till at laste the duke of Calyon and the erle of the yle perdue who led the first battaile encountred Arthur and Clemenson and Bilsebar and their company, than Clemenson desired of Arthur to haue the first course with his speare, and Arthur did graunt him, than he dasht

his

his spurres to his horse sydes and ran at the Duke of Cali-
on who came against him, and they met so rudely that Cle-
menson strake so the duke that his speare went cleane tho-
roughout his bodie, and so ỹ duke fell downe to the earth. A
Jesu saide Arthur, what aide is this at the first mating,
our enimies hath by this dede great losse and discomfort.
And when the Earle of the Ile Perdue saw the duke slain,
there arose in his hoast a great and terrible crie, & they ran
all at once on Clemenson, but ye like a valiaunt knight
defended himselfe with his sword, and gaue right greate
& puisant strokes among them, then there was none could
hold Brisebar, but he rusht into the prease, and the first that
he encountred withall he beate downe to the earth, and the
second did neuer crie after. Then Arthur and his com-
panie came into the prease, and there beat downe and slew
knightes by great heaps, and Arthur with his good sword
Clarence plunged in among his enimies, and beate downe
knightes and horses in such wise that all fled before him, as
they would haue fledde from the death, for there was none
that abode him but he receiued death at his handes, & Cle-
menson stode still and beheld him and had great wonder at
his dedes, and as he stode loking on him he encountred so
a knight, that he claue him to the teth, then Clemenson
toke of his dedes great hardinesse on him and dasht into
the thickest of the prease, and sir Brisebar followed him so
farre that they were enclosed round about w̄ ther enimies,
& the prease was so great that their horses wer slain vnder
them, and so by great force they were taken prisoners, and
lead forth out of the field toward the Emperour, but as for-
tune would Hector met them, and as sone as he saw them
he spurred his horse with his spurres, and strake so the first
that he claue him to the chin, and from the second he toke a-
waie his shoulders, then Gouernar toke his sword in his
hand and did helpe Hector to discomfit them that led awaie
the prisoners, and in the spite of them all they were re-
mounted and retourned againe to the hoast, and Hector
tourned his horse and strake in the prease so rudelye

with

with the first that he met he strake off his head, and euer he ceased he slew ten each after other, and at last Hector, Clemenson, Brisebar, and Gouernar met together, and betwæne them they did such dædes among the Emperours people, that all fled betwæne them, then the Earle of Galace came into the field with ten thousand men in his companie, and then the battaile begann to bee so terrible that ther was many slaine & hurt of both parties, and when Arthur saw so many of ỳ emperours people assembled together against his men, he dasht to his horse with Clarence in his hand, & strake so rudely in the preasse, that he cut off heads, legges, armes, and hands, and vnbarred healmes, and confounded and beate downe all that euer he touched, and at last hee encountered the Earle of the Ile Perroue, but hee thought he would not slaie him but he strake him with the pommell of his good sword on high on the healme so rudelie, that he was so astonied with the stroke that he wist not where he was, and so all in a traunce hee fell on his horse necke, and in the relæuing he strake at Hector, who as then had broken part of the preasse, to the intent to followe Arthur, but Hector gaue him such a stroke that he auoided the saddle and fell downe to the earth, then Brisebar and Gouernar toke him, and so he was sent into the castle to Florence like a prisoner. And when the Duke of Galace sawe that he had lost him, he was right sorrowfull, and in great rage dasht into the preasse, and met with sir Ansel, and gaue him such a stroke that his sword went cleane throughout his bodie, but yet as God woulde hee was not wounded to the death, but he fell downe to the earth in a great traunce. Then Gouernar toke and conuried him out of the preasse, and sent him to the Castle. And when Florence sawe her knight sir Ansell so sore wounded shee was right sorrowfull, and caused her Surgeons to search his woundes, and when Arthur sawe the stroke that the Duke of Galace had giuen sir Ansell, he was right sorrowful, for he thought verilie that he had bene dead, therewith hee broched his horse and encountered the Duke with greate malice, and gaue

him

him [illegible] a stroke that he claue him to the shoulders. And when his people sawe that he was [illegible] and that they had as then no captaine, they were greatlie abashed [illegible] turned them to flie, but Arthur and Hector chased them till at last they met with the king Clamedos, and ten thousand in his companie, and so they all dashe together, & then there began a terrible battaile, but the kings companie was so great, that Arthur and his companie had much to doe to defende their liues, till at last maister Steuen and Duke Philip and sir Perdicas wer come round about the mountaine, so that they were at the backes of their enimies, so that king Clamedos toke no heede thereof till they were on them vnawares, and as soone as maister Steuen sawe the kings host he blew such a blast that there arose a mist in the kings host that they were so abashed therewith, that they had thought to haue fled way, but then Duke Phillip & the maister rusht into the preasse, & each of them beat downe him with whom they encountered, and there the maister did meruayles in armes, and at last Governar sawe him and said to sir Clemenson, by the good Lorde sir, maister Steuen by seeming hath giuen vp his minde to be a Priest, for I thinke he will neuer fate seruice, beholde ponder how valiantlie he fighteth, for there he sawe him giue right greate and valiaunt strokes, what shall I saie more, so much did Arthur there and his companie, that the king Clamedos and all his wer vtterlie discomfited and fled awaie as fast as he might to the Emperours tent, and recounted to him all the losse that he had in that battaile, and shewed him how that the Duke of Calion and the duke of Galace were both slaine, and the Earle of the Ile Perdue taken prisoner, and all his companie slaine, said also, verilie sir there was neuer seene such a knight as Arthur is, & he hath in his companie of the most valiaunt knightes of the worlde. And when the Emperour heard all this he was so sorrowfull and full of displeasure, that he was neere enraged of his wit, then he caused Hornes and Trumpets to be blowen, to the intent to cause his people to arme them, and to the Emperour

himselfe armed him, and also did King Jonas and fifténe thousand in their companie. And when Arthur heard that he said to his people, Sirs thanked be God it is right well happened to vs in the beginning of this war, and our people this date hath taken paine, wherefore they bee wearie, therfore in my minde it were best þ we drawe our selues againe into our castle, & let vs see what this Emperour will doe to vs, wherto euerie man was agreed and so they withdrew them and mounted vp into the Castell, & entered into the pallace. Then Florence demaunded of Arthur howe he did. And he answered and sayd, deare Ladie thanked be God right well. And in likewise did the faire Ladie Margaret to maister Steuen, then the Earle of the Ile Perdue came to Arthur, who receiued him right sweetlie and said, Sir be of good cheere and be not dismaide, for you shall haue heere but a good prison, and the Earle thanked him right sweetlie.

How the Emperour spake with the Queene Proserpina, thinking to him that it had bene the faire Ladie Florence, but he was deceiued, for she did set a great discord betweene him & the king Emendus, as you shall heare after. Chap. 91.

When the Emperour and his companie were redie apparailed they leapt on their horses & followed after Arthur with fortie thousand in his companie, & when he came neere to the castle, he beheld the scituation thereof a great season, and at the last he saw the Queene Proserpina and a damsell with her issuing out of the Castell, and hee thought verilie that it hadde bene the Ladie Florence that hadde fled out of the castle, and with that sight he cleane forgate his displeasure, and all the losse that he had in the battaile, before, and so he dasht to his horse and thirtie persons with him, and when he had ouertaken her & seene her perfectlie in the face, he saide to himselfe, verilie this same is Florence,

and

and so than he forgat all maner of other thinges and layde his handes on the raine of his horse and sayde, faire damosel whether are ye going so fast this way. Certainly sir said she, it hath bene shewed me that ye and the king my father are right sore displeased with me, but sir it greueth me more your displeasure than my father, wherfore sir I think to go to an abbey here by, and there to be made a nonne, for your displeasure all onely. Damosel said themperour, if it please you we two shall be soone agreed. Sir saide she, I thanke you, but how shall that be, will ye haue me to your wife, & I you to my husband. Yea truely said themperour. Sir said she, I am content therwith, but how shal I doe for the king my father will slay me if he may haue me vnder his rule, & sir by the faith that I owe vnto our Lord my body was neuer defouled with yonder knight Arthur, nor yet with any other. Wel faire lady saide the Emperour, and if that be of trouth, I ensure you your father shall doe you no hurt but my part shall be therein. Sir saide she may I trust on this, for it sore forethinketh me that euer I did any displeasure to you. Ye truely said themperour, think not the contrary therefore now be in peace, and so themperour toke hir with him into his tent, and cleped and kissed hir often times, that at the last it came to the hearing of King Emendous how that themperour had a great battel with them of the castel, and how that he had lost all his people that he had sent thether, than he armed him & well to the number of xxx. thousand and came to the emperours tent to comfort him of his losse, than it was shewed to themperour how that the king was comming toward him. He shalbe welcome said themperour. Sir saide Proserpine, I am now vnder your keping, for gods sake let my father doe me no villany. Be not afrayde for I warrant you saide the Emperour. Than the king entered into the Pauilion, and as soone as he sawe Proserpine, he thought verely it hadde bene Florence his daughter and sayde, what thou strumpet arte thou now here, dareste thou be so bold as to come in my sight. where is that rebaud knight Arthur that hath kept thee thus long, is

be now become thy saueguard. I trow now thou wenest to make thy peace, but by the faith that I owe vnto the crown of Hainolois, thou shalt neuer escape out of prison, as long as I liue thou shalt do me no more shame nowe that I haue done. Sir said themperour for God sake be not so sore displeased, for she hath done no trespasse, and if she haue I forgiue it hir for euer, and sir so shall ye doe for the loue of me, and Florence I require you kneele downe before your father & cry him mercy. Sir said she with a right good will, than she kneled downe before hir father and saide, gentil king and dere father haue mercie on me and forgiue me your ill wil, and the king who was full of fierce yre and despite lift vp his foote & strake hir therwith in the middest of the brest, and so ouerthrew hir wyde open to the earth. And when themperour saw that, he was right sore displesed and said, sir king ye haue done me great villany, for I had assured hir that she should haue had no hurt neither of you ne of none other, and she is in my pauilion and in my keping, and she is mine: yet ye bete hir here before my face. Tush sir Emperour saide the king in an ill houre she is aryued here, for whether ye will or not she shall be cast into perpetuall prison, than the king toke hir by the arme and drew hir towards him, to thentent to haue lead hir forth out of the tent, but the emperour toke hir in his armes and saide, sir king holde you still, or by the faith that I owe to mine empyre, if ye set hands on hir any more, ye and I shalbe enimies together for euermore.

Than was the king more displesed than he was before, and lift vp his hand and gaue hir a great blow or two vnder the cheke as she stode in the Emperours armes. Than the Emperour saide, what stroke ye hir for all my entreatie, and betwene myne armes in my keping, by the faith that I owe vnto God it for greeueth me, and therewith he toke his sword in his hande and gaue the king a puissant stroke.

Than the king drew his sword & gaue againe themperour a great stroke, than the Kings company assayled them

the Emperour, and the Emperours ranne on the King, and so there were to the number of thirtie thousande on both parties, then there began among them a great battaile and a fierce, so that ther were many slaine and hurt, and among them there was such a noise that Arthur and his company might well heare them as they were in the castle, and they went to the windowes and looked out at them to knowe what noise that was, and there they sawe a fierce battaile without in the field among their enimies, and they sent out a spie to knowe the truth what it might be, and he went & came againe, and reported to Florence and to them all how it was, and for what occasion the battaile was betweēn the King and the Emperour. Neuer trust mee saide Florence but that Proserpina is in the Emperours Tent, and they thinke all how that I were there among them, for I remēber well she said once to me and to Arthur also how that she would cause as much bate and strife to bee among them as euer was leue. Verilie madame said Arthur, you saie very truth, for I am well remembred so I heard her once saie, & euer this battaile encreased more and more, for the people drew to on both parties, the which had turned to greate damage on both parties if the foure Kings had not bene, for they did so much that with greate paine and iepardie they departed them, and then sodainly Proserpina was vanished awaie, so that none wist where she was become, and as swne as euerie man was vnarmed, the Emperour departed and went his waie toward his owne countrie, and his people comforted him to the best of their power, and the King was in his Tent and trembled with anger, and therewith there came to him one of the Emperours Dukes and sayd, Sir my Lord the Emperour quitteth you of the gift of Florence your daughter, for he careth neither for her nor you, nor for any of your loues, nor for anie thing that you haue or shall haue, and by me he defieth you, and biddeth you to beware of him at this next Easter, for then hee will come & make warre against you with an hundred thousand men of warre.

Then the king of Orqueny said, Sir say vnto your Empe-
rour that if he come he shall finde that we will speake with
him not to his pleasure, and I assure you if he come not he
shall be sought whereseuer he be, to the intent to haue his
head brought into this Countrie, therefore shew him that
if he will come and bring himselfe into this Realme hee
shall ease vs of much paine. Then the Duke departed and
the king Emendus abode still in great melancholie. Then
the king of Malefound said to him, Sir here is begunne a
great businesse, and many inconueniences are like to fol-
lowe thereby, therfore sir it shall be needfull for you to pur-
ney for people, and for the best knights that you can get, for
the Emperour is a puissant Prince, and hath many friends,
gentle king suffer your selfe to be counsailed both to your
profit and honour, Sir for Gods sake leane this abusion
thus to laie siege to your daughter, and do no more against
your owne promise and agreement, nor striue no more a-
gainst your daughters destinie, for there is no profit canne
come to you thereby, but many euill inconueniences may
ensue thereby, and hath done alreadie as it hath appeared
by the Duke of Bygor, for hee hath receiued death, and Sir
you were in great displeasure with the King of Orquenie,
and with me, and banished vs out of your Court, also Sir
you were in great abusion at Cornite at the Church dore,
when you went to haue married Florence to the Empe-
rour, & now you be fallen with him at great mortal warre,
and Sir this Emperour hath lost a king and two Dukes &
all their people slaine, and all this is done because you bee
obstinate against Florence destinie, therefore now sir doe
you the best, appease your selfe and make peace with your
daughter, and with the good Knight Arthur, and desire him
to aide you against this emperour, for one thing I say, that
he hath in his companie many of the best knights of all the
world, and sir if you may haue them you needs not to feare
the Emperour nor yet all the world. Sir I counsaile you
thus to do: yea said the King, and would you haue me to do
thus, how should I then haue anie honour or fame in this

world,

woꝛld, ſith ſhe ſhamefullie hath foꝛſaken me, and is gone awaie with this ſtraunge knight. Well ſir quoth the king of Walefound, your daughter I aſſure you right ſagelie behaueth her ſelfe as ſhe that nothing will do againſt her deſtinie, and becauſe you would haue conſtrained her to haue married againſt her will, therefoꝛe ſhee is come into this ſtrong Caſtle foꝛ to withſtand the Emperour, Sir ſhe hath with her your owne bꝛother the Archbiſhop, and her coſin Duke Philip of Sabarie, and fiue hundꝛed of her knights, and ſyꝛ there is none of all theſe that foꝛ all the good in the woꝛld they would not ſuffer anie inconueniences betweene her & this knight Arthur, but ſyꝛ ſhe feareth that this Emperour would doe her domage, therefoꝛe ſhe hath retayned him and ſuch other as be of his companie, becauſe that hee is the moſt beſt knight of all the woꝛld now liuing, wherein ſyꝛ ſhe hath don wiſelie, foꝛ you may ſee how at al points they haue diſpleaſed this Emperour, and ſlaine of his men, Sir your daughter is your owne, & this Emperour is now your moꝛtall enimie, but ſyꝛ your loue ought foꝛ to bee on your daughter, & beare you fiercelie againſt your enimies, and not againſt her whom you ſhould loue. Then the king ſaid, ſir by the good Loꝛd I am at this preſent time ſo ouercome with diſpleaſure, that I cannot as now receiue your woꝛds in good part, I ſhal aduiſe me to night, & to moꝛrow I ſhall anſwere you. Sir you ſay well ſaid the kings & princeres. Then the king was vnarmed and all other in likewiſe, then the tables were ſpꝛed & euerie man ſate downe & made good cheere, and ſo paſſed foꝛth the time with ỳ king till it was time to go to reſt.

How that after the Emperour was thus departed in diſpleaſure, and had defied the king with mortall warre the next Eaſter following, by the ſubtill art of Steuen all the Kinges hoaſt was brought euerie man faſt a ſleepe, and in the meane time the maſter & fiue other Knightes with him bare the king Emendus faſt a ſleepe as he laie, bed and all vp into the pallace of the caſtle of the Port Noire. Chap. 92.

THus the King Emendus and his Lordes were in their Tents right sore troubled & abashed of the debate that was risen betweene the King and the Emperour for the loue of Proserpina, as you haue heard here before, all that season Arthur and his companie were in the Castel laughing, and hauing good game of the beginning of the occasion of the strife betweene the King and the Emperour, and so al that daie they were in great feast and ioye till it was time to goe to their restes, and so euerie man went thereto saue the master, and he was in his doublet because that the weather was somewhat hot, and in his companie there was Philip, Brisebar, Gouernar, Hector, Clemenson, and Perdicas, and they plaied and sported them together till it was verie late, then Gouernar said to the master, Sir yonder in the Skie you see many Starres, but I praie you howe can you knowe by them what shoulde fall after. Sir saide the master, the science thereof is right pleasaunt and goodly. I praie you master said Hector loke now vp into the Heauen and beholde the Planets, and loke and you can perceiue anie thing that should aduauntage or else be hurtfull to vs, and so for their pleasure the master loked vp and beheld the heauen a great space, and at last he said, Lordes and friends, and you beheld the Planets and could consider them as wel as I doe, you should clærelie perceiue that we be at the end of our warre, for we shall haue shortlie peace, & as I thinke verilie we shall haue Arthur to our Lord and master.

Sweet master said Duke Philip, and I praie you how shal all this come to passe. Verilie Sir I see well by the course of the starres many meruailes, for the Planet that as now runneth, who hath the gouernaunce ouer the King Emendus is now in that point, that if wee might haue the King we should lightlie haue peace with him, and I knowe well by the Planet that he is as now laide in his bed in his Pauilion, and is fast asleepe and all his hoast, and I know such a charme that if I did cast it, neither he nor anie of his shall awake till it be to morrowe faire daie, therefore let vs goe

out

out into the field and bring hether the King, and then shall we haue our peace sone made. In the name of God sayde Bruisebar, shame haue he that faileth so to doe. Let vs goe straight waie said Gouernar, then they all apparailed them and went out of ỹ castell as priuelie as they coulde, and desired the marques to keepe the gates open til they returned, and when they approched neers to the Tents, then the master blew such a blast that there arose a great storme and a thicke mist, so that they lost cleane the sight of the Tentes, and therewith everie man that was waking in the field fell fast a sleepe, then the master and his companie went to the Kings tent, and there they found him in his royall bed fast a sleeps, and great lights of ware burning before him, and so among them they toke the whole bedde and the King lying in it, and bare it faire and softlie vp to the Castle, and diddle set downe the bed in the great hall of the Pallace, and so set foure Torches of ware burning before him, and so they did let him lie still. Then the master saide, I will retourne againe to the Tents and awake the King my father & shew him how that we haue the King within the Castell with vs, And so he went to his Fathers Tent and vndidde his inchauntment, and then he was brought vnto his fathers beddes side, and then hee sate him downe faire and softlie, and abode till the King his father awaked by himselfe, and then the master sayde, Syr be you a sleepe. Naye saide the King, who be you that speaketh to me thus earlie. Sir I am Steuen your sonne, by Saint Marie said the King, who hath brought you hether, get you hence, for and king Emedus may take you, there is no golde nor siluer that shall saue you from the death. Sir said the master, the King is as now more in my daunger then I am in his, for Sir hee is in the Castle fast a sleepe. A sleepe in the Castle saide the King, how can that bee, howe is hee come thether, or howe should he be a sleepe among his enimies: Sir truelie wee haue this night borne him to the castle in his beede fast a sleepe, for Sir by the subtill art of Nigromancie I brought him and all his hoast fast sleepe, therefore Sir I am come

to you for to haue your counsaile what wee shall doe with him, either slaie him or saue him aliue. Slaie him sayde the King, I charge you loke that you touch him not to his hurt, but honour you him as much as you maye: abide you heere a little space, and I will arise, and goe speake with the King of Orquenie, and as soone as hee was readie they went both together to the King of Orquenie, who was as then fast a sleepe in his tent, then they awaked him and recounted to him all the matter. Then the King of Walefound said, Sir for Gods sake helpe to make the peace among vs. Then the King sayd, Sirs I thinke it were best to goe and awake all the other Kings and twelue peeres, and let them come hether, and so they were incontinently sent for, & they came thether straight waies, & as soone as they were come and heard all the cause how it was. Then the King of Walefound said, Sirs let vs euerie man set to our hands to make the peace, for as now we are neere at the point, let vs go all to the castle, & saie to the King how that all we were borne in like wise as he was vp into the Castle whiles that wee were a sleepe, and then when he seeth and heareth that we all be taken prisoners, and that he hath none now in all his hoast that is able to maintaine his warre, he will the soner be conuerted & broken from his purpose. And they all answered and said, sir you be right aduised in the matter, we be all content thus to doe, then they all departed so priuelie that none of the hoast espied them, and went vp into the castle, and so ther they went to their beds, and laie still it was in the morning, then in the morning betimes the maister & Hector went to Arthur and awaked him and said, Sir you haue heere in your companie the King Emendus and all the other foure Kings and the twelue peeres. And wher are they said Arthur: Heere within this faire chamber said Hector. A gentle maister said Arthur, blessed bee the houre that euer you were borne, for now I trust wee shal haue peace, let vs goe cause Florence and the Archbishop to arise, and so they did, and when they were vp and readie and heards these tidinges, they were right ioyfull, then the Archbishop

sayd,

sayd, let vs goe and cause to arise the King of Walefound, & the King of Orquenie, and the king of Ismaelite, and the king of Pozmall, and all the twelue péres, and then let vs take counsaile together, and sée what shall bée done farther in this matter, and Duke Philip went foz them, and as sone as they were come they saluted Arthur and Florence. Then the Archbishop said, Sirs now there is no moze to do but let euerie man take their harneis, then Arthur, Duke Philip, Hector, and Gouernar armed them, and two hundred other knightes in their companie, then the Bishoppe sayd, Sirs nowe shall the King Emendus doubt when hee seeth you, and the sooner he will agrée to make peace with you. Then the king of Walefound saide, Faire Ladye Florence you shall goe to the king your Fathers bedde and awake him. Alasse sayd Florence, shall I goe to him and hee hateth me deadlie, I feare mee he will slaie mée. Madame quoth the king of Pozmall, there is not so harde a hearted man but ỹ a woman wil molifie him, foz ther was neuer so great wzath but a woman may appease it, therfoze madam goe your waie to him, foz I warraunt you you shall make your peace your selfe. Well quoth Florence I shall goe to him, God be my helpe, then shee departed and went softlie into the chamber whéras the king her father laie, then shée opened the windowes and put out the lightes of ware, and went faire and softlie to the kings beds side, and when shée sawe that hee slept fast, shee sate her downe by him on the beddes sete.

How king Emendus when that he awaked forgaue all his ill will to Florence his daughter, and did put all gouerning of his realme into her hands. Cap. 93.

Thus as Florence sate on her fathers beddes séte a good space, at last the king felt one sitting on his beddes sete, therwith hee awaked and opened his eyes, and beheld the greate windowes open before him verie fairely glased,

and

and the Sunne shining all about the chamber the which was right richlie, tho the king merualled greatly where he was, and was sore afraide and blessed him oftentimes and saide, God bielle mee where am I, what am I betraied, what art thou that sittest on my beds feete. Sir said she I am your daughter Florence, and when the king perceiued that it was she, he said, who hath brought thee in this place whereas I am, sith thou hast shamed thy selfe with a fugitiue knight. Sir said Florense, for Gods sake saie you so no more, for by the holie Baptisme that I receiued at the Font stone and on the dampnation of my soule my bodie was neuer by him nor by anie other empaired in word nor in deede. Certainlie said the king, foole as thou art, I beleeue thee not, why hast thou else bene so much in his companie without doing of anie other thing, for like whereas the heart is, there is the bodie abandoned, for the bodie enclineth to the heart. Why sayde Florence, it needeth not alwaies to accomplish all the will of the hart, but such as are honourable and good. Then said the king, what honour is this for you thus to holde your selfe in prison priuelie hidde with a straunge knight, and to leaue such a noble marriage as I would haue giuen to you. Sir said she, if it please you I shall shew you, as to that I haue left you and come hether, it is of truth I sawe well you were of the minde to haue giuen me in marriage to this Emperour, the which truelie was against my minde, for I hate him to the death, insomuch that I would it had cost me the one halfe of my landes, so that I had his head from his shoulders, so that I should not offend God, and sir in this greate hatred if I should haue taken him my heart should neuer haue bene in peace till I had caused him peraduenture to haue lost his life, and thereby should I haue bene reputed a false murtherer, and dampned my soule perpetuallie, and to you this should haue bene a greate shame and a reproch, for I am sure if I should haue died in the quarrell I should haue saide gramercie to him that would haue brought mee his head, for I am in feare I should haue put my soule in ieoperdie

so

to haue gone to the dwell of hell, as finding in some manner of wates to haue shortned his mortall life, and so in this I should haue become cruell, and lost my womans heart, Sir I assure you this was will and intention, and Sir to eschew all the perills and inconuiences I am come hether, for I knowe well that if I had tarried with you, you would haue caused me to haue had him against my will, therefore I durst not discouer my courage vnto you, but I shewed my minde to your brother the noble Archbishoppe, who is mine vncle and father in God, and confessour, hee hath all this season taken heede to mee both comming and going, in chamber and out of chamber, therefore enquire of him and of Duke Philip of Sabarie, and of all my other barons and Knightes, Ladies and Damsells, whether then I haue dishonestlie ordered my selfe or not, and sir, as for the Knight that you speak of, I haue none otherwise done with him but as my destinie hath giuen me, and sir thus hath beene my dealing, therefore sir for Gods sake haue pittie on me your owne humble childe, you be my Lorde and father, and I am your daughter, you are left vnto me in the steede of my mother, who I am sure and she had liued would haue endured great trouble rather then I should haue ben married against my will and destiny, and sir sith you are left me in the steed of my mother, for Gods sake then leaue your fatherlie hart and take a motherlie heart vnto you. Sir accomplish my desire and let neuer this emperour haue me, I loue you and doubt you as I ought to do my deare father, wherefore Sir open your heart and take pittie on your child, and therwith she began ruefullie to weepe, so that greate plentie of siluer droppes fell downe on her breasts. And when the King saw her and heard her speake so humblie, his heart could no longer endure in that rigor, but it beganne to melt and say te: Well daughter Florence appease your selfe and weepe no more, I shall speake with my counsaile, where is Guyllam my chamberlaine? cause him to come to me, for I will rise. Sir quoth he, hee is without in the field in your Tent. Iesus said the King, and how am I then brought into this place.

Ter-

Certainlie sir we brought you hether right softlie for feare of waking of you, and in like wise so be al your foure kings and twelue peeres, for they knew nothing therof til they awaked this morning. Verilie quoth the king, this was wonderfullie well kept of vs all, giue me my doublet and I will rise, then Florence gaue it him and laced his sleeues, and toke a kerchicke and did cast it about his shoulders, and toke a combe and right softlie did combe his head, ỹ which right well pleased the king, and so she made him readie at al points and issued out of the chamber and led Florence by the hand, who made somewhat semblaunce to be sorrowful, and when they were entered into this pallace the king sawe all his other foure kings and twelue peeres, then he smiled a little and said, Lordes the Ladie of this place hath made better war then anie of vs hath done, for we are now more in her daunger then she is in ours. Then the king of Normall said, sir then it is needful for vs that we take good heed that we displease her not. Well said the king, but were all we brought hether without knowledge of our people in the field, by the faith that I owe to God I haue wonder how it might be. And therewith they heard a great cry and clamor without in the fielde among his people, and the king merwailed what it might be. Verilie sir said the king of Orquenie, I beleeue it be for you and for vs, because they knowe not wher we are become. For Gods sake said the king send word out to them, and shew how that I command them to be in peace, and so incontinently ther was a messenger sent to them. Then the king of Normall sayde vnto Florence, madame I require you departe out of this chamber for a season, for we will speake with the king in counsaile, then she departed.

Then the king of Normall sayde, Sir before you came to vs we were speaking of you, and I shall tell you what it was, Sir it is of truth that you knowe well the destinie of Florence your Daughter, that whosoeuer take her in marriage, without it bee hee to whome that shee is destined vnto, shall not escape without death, as it appeareth plaine-

Plainelie by this Emperour, for I beleeue verilie that if he enforce himselfe anie farther to haue her, it will cost him his life, and Sir you did see how that the Image did giue her Chaplet vnto this Knight Arthur, who is aboue all other most chiefe in chiualrie, and Sir you diuse seale and sweare to keepe the appointment that was made, and in like manner did we all your Kinges and Peeres, therefore Sir it is our minde and counsaile that you accomplish your promise, whereto you haue set your writing and greate seale, and Sir doe you so that you maye haue the accorde and good will of this Knight Arthur, the which shall bee right needfull for you for the sustaining of your warre, and Sir all we be of this accord. Why sirs saide the King, and will you haue me to giue my Daughter and heire vnto a straunge knight, and we knowe nothing of his gentlenesse or parentage, for he may be of such linage that it should bee great villanie to me and to all my Realme to giue her vnto him, and also you that counsaile mee thereto shoulde bee greatlie blamed.

Then the king of Valefound sayde, Sir a man ought not to demaund for good Wine whereas it groweth, nor a wise valiaunt man from whence he commeth, we see and know well the high surmounting beautie of his bodie, for sir in all our Realme there is not a goodlier man at all pointes, and also we may see his great gentlenesse howe that he giueth all about vnto knightes horses and harneis, roabes, and golde and siluer great plentie, and he is endued aboue all other with this noble vertue of Liberalitie, and sir the sweetnesse and grace that is in him cannot be recounted, and the redoubted chiualrie that is in him is incomperable, sir if there were nothing else in him it were sufficient inough for him to attains thereby vnto greate excellencie and noble dignitie, howbeit sir send for his cosin Hector, who is heere within this place, and also for Governar who is a right sage knight, and let vs take their promise to tell vs the truth where Arthur was borne, and

of

of what linage he is come, for peraduenture we shall soner know it by them then by himselfe, for I am sure he will not praise himselfe, for I never sawe so good a knight and so little aduenture. Then they said all with one voice, Sir this king saith well, then they sent for Hector and Gouernar. When the King Emendus sawe Hector who was bigge and great, and well furnished in all his members, and holding his hand on the pommell of his sword and loked fiercelie. Then the King said, this Knight is to be redoubted, I wot not what he is. Then they answered and said, Sir the emperours people knoweth right wel to whom he belongeth, Sir Iurelie Arthur and he calleth each other cosins. Then the King called them to him and said, Lordes we haue sent to speak with you, you be both faire persons and haue right greate semblaunce to be wise, and so we beleeue verilie that you be, yet neuertheleſſe wee will haue your promise that you shall shew vs the truth of that thing that we will demaund of you, and that for loue or promise, loſſe or winning to you or to anie other that you haue, shall shewe nothing to vs but the truth of our demaund. Certainelie sir we faithfullie promise you to shew you anie thing that we can doe, so that it turne to no villanie to vs nor to our Lord and maister. Well sir said the King, I praie you who is your Lord and maister: As God helpe me sir, Arthur is our Lord. And what holde you of him said the King. Verilie sir saide Hector, a Dutchie and an Earledome, I holde of him. That is a great thing said the King, and you sir Gouernar what hold you of him. As God helpe me sir all that euer I haue in this world. Then he is a great man said the King. Yea sir surelie said Hector, that he is. And of whome was hee borne said the King, of what Countrie, and of what linage. As touching that you shal pardon vs, for that will we not shew you without his licence, then Arthur was sent for, and as soone as the king sawe him all his displeasure passed away, then the king desired him so heartelie, that at the last hee gaue licence to Hector and to Gouernar to shewe the King what he was.

Then

Then Hector said, Sir by the assurance and promise that I haue made to you I shall shewe you the truth now that he hath giuen licence, Sir this Knight Arthur is the onelie sonne to my Lord the noble Duke Britaine, and nephewe to the Earle of Bloys, and of the linage of the duke of Lancaster in England. By my promise sayd Gouernar, all that Hector hath saide is truth. In the name of God sayde the king, then he is of a sufficient gentle lignage, how saie you my Kings and Peeres. As God helpe me sayd the King of Norrmall, Sir all we will counsaile you that you deliuer to him the honour that God hath predestinate for him, that is to saie, let him haue my Ladie Florence your Daughter, and vnto this Sir we be all agreed, how saie you my Lords doe I saie well or not. And they all aunswered with one voice, that they were all of the same accorde. And then the Archbishoppe was sent for, who was soone agreed to this purpose. Then the King saide, Lordes and frendes you will that I shall doe this as you be all accorded vnto, wherwith I am content, and if good happen to come thereof it shall please me right well, and if it bee otherwise, the blame shall be to you, for you cause me thus to doe. And they all aunswered and saide that they were content to beare the burthen thereof. Then the Bishop said, Sir refuse not thus to do, for he hath ben assured to her ever since the time that the chaplet was giuen at Corbie. Wel said the king, since it is so farre forth gone, I will then make no longer delaie in the matter, then he called Arthur to him & sent for Florence, and said, daughter Florence I haue bene in communication before this time with the Emperour to haue married you to him, who as at this date I hate aboue all men liuing, for as now I would not that I had done so for this castle full of gold and siluer, but now my Kings and peeres of this Realme doth counsaile me to giue you in marriage to this Knight Arthur, and if it please you I am content therswith, therefore shewe mee your pleasure.

Right deere father said Florence, he is nearer to my hart then euer was the Emperour, Sir I will not refuse him, but

am ready to fulfil your pleasure. Than the king toke a ring from his finger and sayd to Arthur sir here I give you Florence my daughter, and put you in full possession of hit by this ring, & of all the honour that partaineth to hir to haue during my lyfe, on the condicion that I will be king still as long as I liue, and you to be king after my death, and from hence forthe I put the keeping of all my realme into your handes, and I will sit still in peace now in myne olde dates, and ye shall haue the payne and trauaile if nede requireth, and God be your guyde in all your workes. Than Arthur knæled downe and toke the ring. Than all the other foure kinges toke him vp and did him honour and reuerence, as to their Lord and soueraine, and Arthur toke the faire lady Florence in his armes & kissed hir right swetly, the which he neuer dyd till the same tyme, and that he sware on al the saints before the king, to put him out of suspect, wherof the king had great ioye, & so was cleane out of all sorow whan that Arthur was put in possession of the Ladye Florence. Than ther began great feast and ioye, and than they went to dinner & were serued right richly, and than it was published throughout all the hoast both within the castell and without how that Arthur was ensured to the faire Ladie Florence, and accorded with the king, than in all the hoast there was made great feast and triumph for ioy, and euery man sayde to other now haue we a noble and a good Lorde, now let the Emperour do what he lyst, and blessed be the mother that bare this noble knight Arthur, and God saue al them that euer hath giuen counsaile in this matter. then they al dyd send vnto the king, and requyred him that their new lord might come into the hoast to the entent that they might se him, and whan the king heard their request, it pleased him right well, and commaunded that Arthur shold be apparayled in royall vestures, than Arthur was arayed as it appartained to a Lord of such a great host, he had on a cote of Skarlet, and a sircote of grene sarcenet furred with menyuers, and ouer that a garment of Silke rayed with Golde, and a longe mantell of Violet Satin, and his

seemed to be as faire as an Angell descended from heauen. Then the King stode before him and held in his hand Florence his daughter, who did right sweetlie behold him, and the foure Kings and twelue peeres stode and beheld him, he was high and bigge, and surmounting all other in stature. Then the King caused him to mount on a faire Palfraie. And when the Ladie Margaret sawe him, she sayde to Florence: Madame beholde what a mannerlie man God hath sent you, he hath done more honour for you then for anie creature in all the world. Then the foure Kinges and twelue Peeres, and Pedor, Gouernar, Duke Philip and the maister, and more then fiue hundred other Knightes mounted on their horses & conuaied Arthur into the hoast, and Clarence his good sworde was borne all naked before him, signifying that he was chiefe champion of all ỹ realme. Then the King caused to be cried throughout all the hoast, how that he had committed to Arthur the cure and charge of his Realme, and charged euerie person that they shoulde obey him as their proper king and soueraign Lord. And as he rode throughout the hoast and passed by, euerie man said welcome our new Lord, God increase thine honour, and so euerie man made great ioy to beholde him. And thus the King soiourned at the Port Paire eight daies in great feast and ioye.

How Arthur demaunded licence of King Emendus, father to his Ladie Florence to depart into Britaine to see the Duke of Britaine his Father, and the Dutchesse his mother, the which licence they gaue him with much paine, and Florence was in great sorrowe for his departing.

Chap. 95.

AT the end of eight daies the king made to be tried that the hoast shuld depart euery man homeward, & commanded them to be redie at a daies warning, & gaue the gold & siluer great plentie. Then Arthur came to the King & sayd, sir it is of truth that

whan I departed out of myne owne countrey I promised to my lorde my father and to my Lady my mother that if I liued I would be with them againe at the ende of.v. yeares at the farthest, the which shall be now at this halontide, and I know well that if I breake my promise with them, they shall neuer haue ioy, and I am sure they wil beleue no maner of messenger though he be neuer so true. Therefore sir by your licence I will depart and go see them, and returne againe in as short space as is to me possible. Ah sir said the king take good hede what your desire is, for one thing I promise you I will neuer put on my spurres for any kinde of businesse that may hap to fall to my realme and yours, for the charge thereof is now in your handes, therefore sir doe as shall be for your honour. Sir saide Arthur as long as I liue there shall nede no feare to be had, and certainly I wil tary as litle space as I may, for as God help me I would I had bene there and here againe, sir here is the king of Orqueney whom I shall leaue in my stead to do euery thing in myne absence that shal be nedeful to the realme. Sir I wil take with me my cosin Hector, duke Philip, master Steuen and sir Bedisebar. Sir said the king take with you whom it shall please you sith you will needes go, depart when you wil, in the name of God, who be your guyde and safegard, and take your leaue of Florence or ye depart, then Arthur went into Florence chamber, whome he found weping, for it was shewed hir how that he wold go into his own countrie, she was set on hir beds side, & the lady Margaret held before hir a kerchiefe to wipe with all hir eyen, then Arthur embraced hir and said, mine owne dere lady weepe no more, for as God help me it greueth my hart right sore, to see you doe thus, mine owne sweete Ladie for Gods sake be content. Ah dere heart saide Florence, now that you haue me & that I am giuen vnto you, & now you will leaue me, alas it is but a little season that you haue held company with me, wherefore I am right sorowfull. Ah right deere and sweete Lady sayde Arthur, as God send me ioye and sauegarde of you, there can not be to mee so great sorrow

as

as to leue your noble company, therfore I wacte gentle hart thinke not that I will leaue or forsake you on whome all my hart and faithfull loue is set and fred, and by whome I haue all my welth and honour, for I promise you as faithfully as euer any louer can promise his Lady, that as sone as I can I will returne againe to you, for I shall think till that season be come as long or longer than ye shal doe, and madame I doe it not but for the loue that I owe vnto my lord my father and mother, for I feare me that they should be in sorow for my sake, wherefore mine owne good lady & deere heart, giue me licence to depart as for this time. Certainly deere loue, qd Florence, I can not endure to displese you, and I see well how ye be minded to go, wherefore in gods name go on when ye will, & returne againe as shortly as you can, and I require you bring hither with you my lord your father and mother, to the intent that he may see me who is and shalbe his daughter. Madame saide Arthur with a right good will if I can bring him thereto, and therwith he cleped and kissed hir, the which was the secõd time that euer he kissed hir, than Arthur required the faire lady Margaret that she should not depart out of his ladies company. And therwith tharchbishop came to them, and Arthur desired him that he would comfort & counsaile his lady Florence in his absence, and so he departed and toke leue of the king and of all other, and so entred into his iourney, & toke with him Hector, duke Philip, the maister, Gouernar, and Brisebar, and xl. other knights, than Hector sent before them a messenger to his citie of Orgoule wher as Arthur was richly receued of the countes and of the faire Lady Alyse and of all the barons of that countrey, & there Arthur tarryed foure dayes, making great ioye, and on the fift day Arthur and his company departed and Hector with him, & so entred into their way, making great ioy as yong people should doe, for they were glad of their newe Lord Arthur, who was swete, young and curteous, and of great power, and thus they rode forth so merely singing, and the maister was in a coate of sarcenet violet, & a mantel of red sendal,

and his hat in his hand because the weather was very hot, for it was in the moneth of August, and the merrie morning was faire and fresh because of the swet dewy, the lustie birds did sing merilie, and the weather was faire and clere, and this master was young, having a lustie hart and full of new loue, then he beganne merrilie to sing, saying, this swete paine of loue slayeth mine heart, and all is for you mine owne Ladie. And when Arthur heard him sing, and considered well the ditties of his song, he then perceiued well how that his heart was set on loue, the which pleased him right well, and caused him to remember his Ladye Florence, and then he said to the master, Sir did euer anie loue cause you to wake one night. Of a truth Sir saide he, sith that I first thought on my Ladie I was neuer so fast a slepe, but that I thought my spirit and hert was with her. Sir said Brisebar, then though you sing I blame you not, for I am sure you thought on her. By the faith that I owe to God master said Duke Philip, what was the thing that gaue you occasion to loue your Ladie best for. What sayd ye master, will you then confesse me, be you a Priest, I see wel you will plead with me, I must defend my selfe, I praie you good master yet shew vnto me. Well sir saide the master, I shall shew it you. I loue her because shee is gratious and gentle of heart, for her grace and gentle hert hath retained me into her seruice, insomuch that I quite all the world for her, for as God helpe mee I haue found in hir grace, gentlenesse, and swetnesse. Well master said Philip, yet for all this you knowe not whether that she loueth you, or beareth to you anie faith or truth. Yes truelie Sir saide the master, I knowe well shee beareth to mee both faith and loue. Well master, I praie you tell mee whether had you leauer to haue the loue of her without truth, or else truth without loue, for a woman cannot well loue mee and you and euerie bodie, and doe for you and for mee and for other, for in that point there lacketh truth when that loue resteth not on him that attendeth therefore, and if shee rest on him, then her loue is not generall, and ether she loueth

 you

you without truth, or else che is true without loue. What said the maister, loue without truth is nothing worth, for truth is the vpholder of loue, or faithfull loue is formed of truth, and what profite should it be for me if she were neuer so true and loued me not, the one cannot bee without the other, what should it auaile me to go seeke for her truth and she loue me not, for loue is the drawer, and truth is the vpholder, for truth is the verie ende of loue, and therewith he began to sing, faith and truth is in my deere Ladie, and so they all did laugh at him and made greate feast and ioye.

How Arthur in the waie as he went to Britaine he arriued in a faire medowe that was ioyning to the towne of Lyons sur le Rone, and there hee found the King of Malogore, accompanied with diuerse Earles and other Barons, and they had there cried a great tourney, and there Arthur and his companie were friendlie receiued, and had great cheere both of the king and of all other Lords & knights.

Chap. 95.

IN this manner as you haue heard before Arthur and his company rode forth till they came vnto foure miles of Lions, and then they sent Bawdewin in before to take vp their lodging, and as he approched neere to the towne of Lyons he sawe the faire medowe the which was betweene Vienna and Lions pight full of tents and Pauilions, and swarming full of knights and horses, and at last Bawdewin espied the Pauilion of his old Lord & master the young King of Malogore, who did put him to Arthur, & there was the Earle of Forrest and the Earle of Neuers, and the Earle of Foys and the Marshall of Pyrpoys, and the Lord of Beauieu and the dolphin of Vienne, and a great number of other people, for they hadde holden a great turney y daie before, and the same daie the king had al these noble men at

dinner with him in his Pauilion, and in the nert daie they should depart, and when that Bawdewin sawe the Pauilion of his olde Lord the young king of Walagore, he dressed himself the nert waie thether, and without the Pauilion dwre stode the Lorde de la Lounde, and with him ten other knightes, and all they beheldе Bawdewin as he was comming, and each of them said to other. What is he that commeth so rudelie, or from whence commeth he, I cannot tell said another, but it semeth hee hath hast, and euer Bawdewin approched nærer & nærer. And at last sir de la Launde said, verilie me thinketh it should be Bawdewin my Lorde the kings Squier. Verilie said another and so it is in dæd. Then Bawdewin alighted from his horse. And when sir de la Lounde sawe verilie how it was he, as fast as he could he ranne and embraced him and made to him great ioy and feast, and knightes then of all partes of the field beganne to assemble there, till at last tidinges came to Alexander the young king how that his olde seruant and squyer Bawdewin was come, then hee commaunded that hee shoulde bee brought to him, and so he was, and when he was before the king he knæled down and saluted the king. Then the king said, friend thou art welcome, and how hast thou done sith thy departing. Certainlie sir saide he, right well, for a man cannot be in the companie of such a knight as I haue bene withall that can fare amisse. In the name of God saide the king, and how fareth that noble knight Arthur. Sir verily he doth as the best renowmed and praised knight of all the wide world, and the most honoured, and most hath done of dædes of valure and of prowesse I being present, and there recounted many of his dædes, whereat the king & all other hadde greate meruaile, and moreouer sir saide Bawdwin I saie that hee is at this houre the man of greatest power that I knowe now liuing, for hee shall bee the noble king of Sorolois, for he hath assured the faire Ladie Florence, Daughter and heire to the mightie king Clamendus of Sorolois, who hath vnder his rule foure mightie kings and twelue peeres in his Realme, and they bee

all

all his men and holdeth their lands of him.

By my soule said the King, this is a greate thing that you speake of, a friend where is he nowat this present time, or wher did you leaue him. Sir behold yonder you may see him comming homeward into his owne Countrie. Sir I must goe before into Lyons to take vp his lodging: What be they that come with him quoth the King: Sir ther is with him a noble Clarke who is called master Steuen, and he is sonne to a King, and also the Duke of Sabarie named Sir Phillip and sir Hector Duke of Dagoule, sir Wisebar & Gotemar, with other forties Knightes of greate valure. In the name of God said the King, he shal haue in these parts none other lodging but onelie mine. Then he commanded all the Earles and Barons about him to mount on their horses, and commanded to bring him his owne horse, for he sayd plainlie he would goe meete Arthur on the waie. Sir sayde Bawdewin, you saie right well, and doe noblie to him that honour, for sir trulie he loueth you entierlie, and I assure you he is a man of right great valure. And when the Lord de la Lounde heard these tidings of Arthur he hadde right great ioy and ranne to the Ladie his wife and to the Ladie Kollylon, and to all the other Ladies and Damsells, and recounted to them the comming of Arthur, & repeated of his deinsaning and honour as he had heard Bawdewin say before, and also he shewed them how that the King and al the whole assemblie were taking of their horses to ride to meet with him on the waie. And when these Ladies heard all this they were in great ioy because of his romming. Then the Ladie of Kollylon saide, I see well then that the crowning that we do to him where we shewe him loue is well bestowed and employed on him, for it is a greate honour to vs sith he hath borne him so valiantlie euer since, therefore let vs also goe and meete with him and bidde him welcome, and doe him all the honour that we ranne. In the name of God said all the other Ladies, and so let it be done, then they appareiled them with royall deuises, and by that time the King and all his Earles and other companie were mount-

ted on their horses, and the Knights and Damsells also and so rode forth together in companie. When Bawdewin spurred his horse as fast as hee could to bring these tidinges to Arthur. And when Governar saw Bawdewin retourne againe so fast, he said to Hector, Sir Bawdewin turneth again, what it meaneth I know not. And when he was come againe vnto Arthur he saide, Sir behold yonder commeth the young King of Valogore and the Earle of Foys, and the earle of Forrest and the Earle of Meuers, the Lord of Beanieu, and the Lorde de la Lounde, the marshall of Pyrpoys, and the Dolphin of Vienne, and all their Ladies with them, and they are comming to meet with you to welcome you into this countrie, and more then a thousand horses in their companie, and the King will not suffer you shall haue anie other lodging but with him. And when Arthur heard this he had right great ioye and said, A good Lord I thank your grace that you haue given me so many honors, then hee saide to the maister and to Duke Philip, Sirs hold you neere me, and so they did, and then he said to them Certainlie Sirs you shall see heere people of a noble behauiour and honour, and well ordered, and so they rode forth faire and easilie till both parties approched neere together, and as soone as Arthur saw the King and his Baronie, and speciallie the fresh Ladies and Damsells, he and all his did alight from their horses, and in like manner did the King and all his companie, and there they mette and embraced each other with much great ioye and triumph, and Hector and Governar were much made of because of their olde acquaintance among them. Then Arthur went to the Ladies & would not haue suffered them to haue alighted from their horses, but the Ladie Rollyon did whether he would or not, and she ranne to him and embraced him right streitlie, what shall I saie more all the whole assemblie were in great ioye because of the comming of Arthur. And when Duke Philip and the maister saw the great feast and honour that was done to him, both of the king and of all other Earles and Barons, knights, and Squiers, Ladies & Damsells,

tells, then in their harts they praised Arthur more the they did before. Then Wisebar said, this Gentleman I se well is no Orphane in his owne Country, he needeth not to take for the Emperour if these people will helpe and aide him, a Florence I se wel you be well assured, would to God with a will that you were now heere present that you might see this ioy. And this king held still Arthur by the hand and demaunded of him what Knightes the master and Duke Philip were. And he answered and said, sir this is a soue-raigne Clarke, a Knight, and a Duke, and sonne to a King, a right noble and puissaunt, and sir this other is Duke of Sa-barie, a right noble and valiaunt knight; then the King tooke them by the handes and said, Lords you be right hear-tely welcome into this Countrie, and to you sirs we will make feast and ioy, as for Arthur we care not for, let him make himselfe cheere and be still. Then they mounted on their horses and rode forth toward the Tents in the field, and the king would haue made them to haue ridden before him, to the intent to doe them the more honour thereby, but then the master said, Sir for gods sake pardon us, for we be seruants to my Lord Arthur here present, for we hold of him, therefore sir by your lisence we will not ride before him. Sirs quoth the king, as in that you shal beare him honour, therefore by the faith that I owe vnto you you shall ride on before, so then they went forth before, and the Earle of Flor-rest, and the Castle of Foys, and the Earle of Penebsmere with Arthur, and Hector of Gouernar were with the Dol-phin of Vienne and the marshall of Syrpois, and in this maner they came to the Kings Tent, and they did wash their hands and went to dinner, then the king sate downe on the high bench, and commaunded Arthur the master, and Duke Philip to sit downe by him, and all other ac-cording to their estates, and there they were richly serued. When the Lords sent a present to Arthur of fresh Chap-lettes, to the intent that he should giue them vnto the ladies there, and then Arthur should giue them vn-to the king, and to the master, and to Duke Philip, and

and

gaue to all other Earles and Barons, and when they had di-
ned, then the Lord de la Launde came to Arthur from the
Ladies and said, Sir all the whole assemblie of Ladies and
Damsells sendeth their commendations vnto you, as to
him that they once crowned king of all knights that were
assembled together at that time, and they all desire you that
vpon will come into their Tent to sport you with them, and
to bring in your company whome it shall please you best.
So then the king, the master, Duke Philip, and all other
Earles and great Barons went together, and there they
were receiued with great ioye and feast, then these Ladyes
began to daunce and to sing with these Lordes & knights.
And at the last the king sayde to master Steuen, A gentle
master why do you not plate and sport you among these la-
dies and Damsell, be they not indifferent faire, gentle, and
noble king said the master by my soule they are gentle, no-
ble, and beautifull, but sir with sporting among them I can
litle skill. Why master said the king, what plate then will
you sport you with all. Verilie sir said Duke Philip, he can
many goodlie plates if he would vse them, for there is not in
all the world his match. A gentle master saide the king, by
the faith that you owe vnto Arthur, I require you shew vs
some of your sports and pastimes. Master quoth Arthur, I
pray you doe so. Well said the master sith it pleaseth you I
am content, then within a while the master caused in the
middest of the house of a faire fountaine to appeare,
and in the highest thereof there stood a horse of Christall, and
out of diuerse places thereof there issued out streames of
sweet Christaline water, and that horse stode quaking, see-
ming to be quicke, and roundabout this Fountaine there
seemed to be faire greene bushes, and faire greene hilles co-
uered with Violets sweete smelling, and Roses, and other
sweete flowres great plentie, and diuerse manner of birdes
singing melodiously, and so all the Ladies and Damselles
that were there left their daunsing and singing, and wash
their hands at this fresh fountaine, and made chaplets of
the faire flowres that they saw there growing, and beare-

ned

ned to the swéete harmonie of the Birdes, and they hadde great meruaile what it might be, or from whence it might come so sodainlie, and all the Lordes and Knightes were greatlie abashed with that sight. Then the maister causeb to bée comming into the hall two hundred yarlets, vestured all in coates of Skarlet, paled with grene, and two hundred Trumpets sounding all at once, then the Knightes and Ladies beheld what it might meane. And at last they entered into the hall, and after them by séeming there came a clarke right faire & gratious, and he had on a robe of scarlet lined with grene sendall, and his cappe in his hand, and this Clarke had standing by him a fresh greene batherne full of faire blossomes right sweete smelling, & in the highest of this tree there was one braunch that surmounted all the other, whereon there sate a Nightingale, the most faire and gratious of all the world and best singing, then she lift vp her head and filled her throate full of winde, the more shriller to tune out her sweete voice, her singing pleased so well all the Ladies, that each of them wished to haue her in a cage. Then the King and Arthur arose and went neere to this Ladie, then the Ladie marshall put vp her hand, to the intent to haue taken the Nightingale, but she could not attaine thereto, then the Clarke that kept the batherne sayd: madame and if you will haue my birde, peraduenture you shall haue her and if you be such as ought to haue her, for if it be so that you or anie other Ladie heere in this companie did neuer trespasse in marriage, neither by thought nor deede, such a one may take her at her owne will, but and if they haue done anie fault let them not offer to haue her, for they shall faile of her. And when y King heard y, he laughed a good pace & said, let vs see who will enterprise to haue this iollie birde, and then euerie man was agreed that all the Countesses should assaie each after other, then the Lady marshal thought to haue departed awaie priuelie, but then the Clarke called to her againe and saide, madame you wer the first right now that would haue taken my birde, and so shall you be againe nowe at this time, therefore madame

come forth and assaie what you can doe, then the king caused her to assaie whether she would or not, and then she put vp her hand, but she could not attaine thereto by two cubites of length. And when the Ladie Rosylon saw that, then she said, madame this bird teacheth vs to speak of our vnlde workes, now it appeareth if you haue bene alwayes in your praiers or not, once you said words to me the which you know not, but now I saie to you such as I see, then the Countesse and great Ladies went one after another, but al they failed of their purpose. And at the end the king caused the Ladie Rosylon to assaie, and as soone as she did put vp her hand toward the birde, the gentle Nightingale did descend downe and sate vppon her hand, and yet this was not to her very great praise, for she had not bene long married. Then the Earles did laugh at their wiues, but yet some of them were not verie well content. Then the master causeth sodainly all this to vanish awaie both Clarke and tree, bird and all, then euery man meruailed what this might be, and they thought that they had dreamed all this, and the king smiled at this matter, and went and sate downe together the king and Arthur and the master, & all the other Lords. Then the king said, as God helpe mee I would it had cost me the halfe part of my Realme, so that this master were alwaies in my company, and that hee loued me as well as he doth Arthur. Sir saide Arthur, hee hath right well shewed to me that he loueth me, for Sir sith I departed from you I haue had warre with seuen kings and an Emperour, and this Emperour will come againe nowe at this next Easter to make warre with the mighty king of Hongrie, for the defiance is made betweene both parties, wherefore I must returne againe as shortly as I canne. Why Sir saide the king, shall you then haue warre the next Easter? Yea surelie Sir, for it is sworne and cryed on both parties. And when shall you wedde this Florence of whome I haue heard so much speaking of. Sir saide Arthur, if God will giue the honour of this warre I shall wedde her incontinently after. By Saint John saide the king,

I would I were at that houre at the date of your wedding. Why Sir saide the Dolphin, and you wouldo so, then goe thether. Why sir saide the King, if I goe will you goe also. Yes Sir with all my hart, and that I faithfully assure you: Well said the King, keepe your promise, and I assure you that I will go with fiue hundred men of armes with mée. And without me shall you not goe saide the Earle of Forrest. Promise that faithfullie quoth the King, and as much sayd the Earle of Nevers, and to farre went this matter that the earle of Mount Belliall, and the Earle of Foys, and the Lord of Beaujeu, and the marshall of Myrpois promised all together that each of them would goe with two hundred in their companie, and ther appointed againe to mét in the same place in the middest of lent. Then Arthur thanked them and said, Sirs I trust at the said day to be héere againe with you, and bring with me my déere father and mother, and so then we will departe together. And when these Ladies heard howe that Arthur would bring thether the Dutchesse his mother, then they all desired of their husbandes that they might goe with the Dutchesse when she were come, and the King was well content therewith, and desired the Earles and Barons that it might bée so. And so at the last it was agreed and accorded that they should all go together. Thus was Arthur and his company three daies with the King and with these Earles in greate feast and ioy.

How Arthur & Hector his cosin with all their companie ariued at Bloys, and how the Earle of Bloys father to Hector, & the Countesse his mother, & all the whole Baronie of the Realme met them on the waie, and receiued them with great ioy, for they had bene before in great feare that Arthur their nephew and Hector their sonne had bene dead. Chap. 96.

SOon on the fourth day Arthur and his companie take leaue of the king, and of the Earles & Barons, ladies & damsels,

and

and toke his right iourney towarde the towne of Estampes, then Arthur sent Jaket his Squire before to Bloys to giue the Earle knowledge how that Arthur his nephew & Hector his sonne would be with him the Sundaie next following, then Jaket departed and mounted first to Orliaunce, and there he found the Earle of Bloys, who was right sorrowfull in his heart because he could heare no manner of tidings of Hector his sonne, wherefore hee was in greate doubt least that he shuld haue bene dead, then Jaket mounted vp into the hall whereas the Earle was, and as sone as he sawe Jaket he arose and embraced him, and demaunded of him how Arthur and Hector his sonne did. As God helpe me sir said Jaket, they doe humblie salute you by me, and sendeth you worde how that they will bee with you this Sundaie next comming, whole and in good healthy thanked be God, as great Lordes and puisant, for sir I saie vnto you how that Hector your sonne is Earle of Vrgule and Duke of Orgoule, and is right rich and puisant. Yea Jaket sayd the Earle, and who hath giuen him this honour. Sir by the mother of God my Lord Arthur who did conquere it with his sworde, as he that is the best Knight of all the world. A good Lord sayd the Earle, I humblie thanke your grace, sith that my childe is so well prouided, then the Earle did send a messenger to al his friends, giuing them knowledge how that his sonne was comming homeward, who was right puisaunt and noble, commaunding them for ioye to hang the streetes of the towne. And as sone as the Countesse heard of these tidings, she mounted vp into her Chariot and came to Orliaunce to the meeting of her sonne, and so the Earle and all his companie did meete Arthur & Hector, and their companie at Clerrie, and there received them with great ioy, then all the nobles men of the Countrie came thether to see Arthur and Hector, and so altogether they went to Bloys, and there they soiourned eight daies making great feast and ioy.

How

How Arthur ariued in Britaine, and how the Duke his father and all his chiualrie met & receiued Arthur with great honour and triumph, and how that the Dutchesse his mother swoned for ioy when she sawe her sonne Arthur, and in like manner did Iehannet his olde loue, whereof the master and Philip had great feare least that Iehannet should draw awaie Arthurs heart from Florence, because of the great loue that they sawe betweene them.

Chap. 97.

AT the ende of eight daies Arthur called to him Jaket and said, friend you must goe to my Lord and father, and to my Ladie my mother, and to Jehannet, and salute mee right humblie vnto them, and shew them how that I will be with them the fiftenth daie after Saint Martine, and shew also to my Lord & father how that there commeth in my companie a kings sonne and a Duke right mightie and puisant, then saie that I desire him to send for part of his friendes to kepe them companie when they shall be come to him. Sir saide Jaket I shall doe your message in the best wise, for he was gladde to goe. Then Gouernar saide, Jaket I praie you let me be humblie recommended to my Lord and to my Ladie, and to Jehannet. It shall be done Sir said Jaket, and so departed, and rode so long till at last he came to Nauntes on a friday at night, and there he demaunded tidings of the Duke, and there it was shewed him how that the Duke and the Dutchelle were departed to the Castle of the Forrest, and from thence they should depart to the Abbey of Jannebon, and then they shall come to the Citie of Vennes, and there to sojourne till it be neere Christmasse, & then to come againe to Nauntes, whereas they will keepe open Court, for he hath summoned all his Barons to be there at Christmasse with him. So then Jaket tarried there all that night at Nauntes, & in the morning he departed and went to Vennes

nes, whereas he found the Duke and the Dutchesse, & they were as then loking out at the windowes of the pallace, and ther they talked together of diuerse matters, till at the last the Dutchesse began to weepe, then the Duke demaunded of her why she wept so sore. Why sir said she, alasse behold the great nobleneſſe of this countrie and the faire forrest that be therein, and the valure and bountie of the lustie Countrie of Britaine, alasse sir who shall kéepe and obtain this Countrie after vs, sith that Arthur our déere sonne is dead, and sir we shall neuer haue more children together, alasse Sir when I remember all this my heart dieth in my bodie for sorrow. Dead madame saide the Duke, and God will, for if that were true we shuld haue great néede of comfort, but yet I haue trust in God that he shall lend vs ioy of our child, and to haue shortlie some good tidings of him, it is not yet fullie fiue yeare sith his departing, and within that tearme his promise was to come againe, wherfore madam, I praie you weepe no more, for it grieueth me to see you doo thus, and as they were thus talking together, Jaket came into the pallace and entered into the hall, and as soone as the knightes and Squiers saw Jaket they embraced him and demaunded how that Arthur did. And he answered how that they did right well & was comming home-ward, then Jaket mounted vp into the chamber, & there he found the duke and the dutchesse together, and the dutchesse espied him first and ranne to him and said: a my friend how doth Arthur my sonne? Madame he humblie saluteth you & also my Lord héere present, and also Jehannet. What Arthur my sonne, friend said the Duke, and where is he? Sir he will be héere with you by the ende of these fiue daies. And how doth he said the Duke. Sir as the most honoured noble knight, best proued that is now liuing in this world, for vnder the heauen there is no knight of his valure and high prowesse, and sir he hath giuen to Perot his cosin an Earledome and a Dutchie right great and noble, he is now twice as rich as the Earle his Father is. Yea Jaket quoth the Duke, wher hath he gotten this land, & who hath giuen

it

him. Sir as God helpe me Arthur did giue it him, and he wanne it valiantlie with his swoorde, but Sir this deede is nothing to the regard of a thousand deeds that he hath done sith he departed. Then the duke smiled & ioyned his handes together and lift vp his eyen to heauen and thanked God. And the dutchesse wept for ioy, and so did Iehannet also. Then the duke said, Iaket, who commeth with my sonne Arthur. Sir there commeth with him a Clarke of great wisdome, and is chiefe counsailour with the faire queene Florence, and he is sonne to a king right mightie and puisant, & also there is with him a mightie duke who is called duke Philip of Sabarie, and diuerse other noble knightes to the number of fortie. Why friend Iaket said the duke, is Arthur then so much honoured, that the sonne of a king and a duke, and so noble a companie commeth with him. Verilie your sonne is in this case that ere this yeare goeth out, he shall be crowned king of a puisant Realme. A good Lorde said the dutchesse, I render to you grace & thankes sith you haue giuen vs such a childe, of whome is reported so much honour. Well quoth the duke, madam mount vp into your Chariot and let vs goe to Nauntes and meete him there, so then they departed and went from Vennes and came to Nauntes in an euening late, and Arthur and his company rode so til they came to Saimur, and entered into the Abbey of saint Florence, and there he lodged all that night, & was wel receiued and honestlie, and in the morning Arthur sent a messenger to his father, giuing him knowledge how that he woulde bee with him at Nauntes on the sundaie next comming. And when the duke heard that, hee saide to the dutchesse his wife, madam let vs go & meet our sonne & this noble companie that commeth with him, for I haue greater desire to see him thē al ẏ world, & then by ẏ time all ẏ dukes friends, louers, subiects, wer come to him to the number of fiue hundred, then they al together moũted on their horses. And Iehannet was in ẏ chaire with the dutchesse, & so they rode forth & within iii. leagues thence they met wᵗ Arthur & all his company, & as soone as Arthur saw his father he did

nyght and vyd of his bonet, and in lyketwise did his father to him, and ther they embraced and kissed eche other oftentimes. Then the duke saide, my swete friend & dere childe ye be right hartely welcome to me, as he that hath beene more desired with me than all the creatures living. A dere sonne how could ye euer haue the heart thus to leue your mother who hath ben so dolorous for your absence that she hath wept euer since your departing, and as the Duke ended these wordes his mother came to him and embraced & kissed him, but she was so ouercome with ioy, that she could speake no word of a great season, but so they sate downe together, and when she might speake she saide, my swete and dere childe ye haue long holden vs in darkenesse, for neuer sith ye departed my hart was in any ioye, but now swéet hart my ioye is increased that I may haue you in myne armes, and there with she kissed him and wept right pitiously for ioye, so that Arthur could no longer kepe his heart and eyen from weping, the which he did neuer beefore sith he came out of his childhode, nor neuer after did for no maner of trouble that came to him. And whan that duke Philip saw the pitifull and ioyfull meting betwen the child and the mother and father, and saw how that they wept, for all the golde of the world he could not kepe him selfe but that his eyen were full of droppes of water, than came to them Iehannet and cleped and kissed Arthur right tenderly and saide, a my louer Arthur ye be hartely welcome vnto me, sir ye left me right sorowful when ye departed last out of this countrey, but my swéete lady your dere mother hath kept me right tenderly for the loue of you, and oftentimes we haue wept together our fill for the loue of you, a mine owne swete loue I vnderstand that god hath giuen you a better and a more gentiller Lady than I am, sir all this agreeth with me right wel, for sir I haue right great ioye of your welth.

Sir I offre mee to serue you and to loue you with a good and faithfull heart, for ye are my Lord and I am your daugher, and therewith as one ouercome with sorow, she

wept

wept right tenderly & toke Arthur in hir armes. And when Arthur sawe hir so wepe he could not kepe his eyen from distilling of salte teares for hir sake, for he loued so the damosell that he was sore tempted to haue repented him in that he had flaunced Florence. And whan the maister saw the great loue of the father and the mother & their childe, & of Jehannet, he saide to Philip, sir I doubt me of these people least they withdraw away from Florence Arthurs hart, and I pray you behold and see how they loue him, saw you euer so much honour done to any creature liuing. Fere not quod Philip, he hath brought me into this countrie, I warrant you he shal depart againe & returne into ours. Than the Duches and Arthur rose vppon their feete, than all the noble men of that countrie came about him and made him as great feast and ioye as they could, then the Duke went to the maister and to duke Philip and receiued them with great honour, and so they all mounted and went to Nauntes, and there then all the burgeses of the citie issued out al in one sute and liuerie and met with them. And also the bishop of the town and al the whole clergie encountred them and made great ioye and generally so dyd all those of the citie. Than the duke made great honour vnto duke Philip and vnto the maister. And whan they were alighted from their horses, than they mounted vp into the palays where as they made great feast and ioy the space of vii. dayes, and then euery man departed. Then Arthur sayde to the duke his father, and present there was the maister, duke Philip and the duches, sir Oliuer of pliac, & diuers other barons, there he recounted all his fortune, and howe that he had fyaunced Florence, & how that the warre was begon & taken betwene him and the Emperour of Inde, and how that all this war was layde on his hand and charge, and therefore he prayed the duke his father that he wold go with him into the countrie of Horoloys, to the intent to help him. Then the duke saide, sonne Arthur with a right good will, and I shall bring with me all my strength with banners displaied, and than if we may finde this emperour we shall shew

him what these Britons can do. And when ꝑ maister heard that, he smiled and embraced the Duke and saide, Sir you haue noblie answered without anie counsaile, it seemeth well you are the father and he the sonne, Sir by the faith that we owe vnto God wee shall keepe you good companie. Then the Duke sent all about for his strength. And in the meane season Arthur lead the maister, Duke Philip, sir Brisebar, and all the other Knightes of Sorzoloys in all the Townes and Cities of his Countrie, and thus they passed the time till it was neere Lent, and then they retourned againe to Nauntes, whereas they found all their boast readie apparailed to depart. Then Arthur take of them ten thousand after his owne choice, and all the remnaunt bee sent home againe to keepe the Countrie in sauegard in the Dukes absence, and they soiourned foure daies at Nauntes, and so departed and tooke the high waie to Lyons, and sir Oliuer, Gouernar, and Brisebar had the conueiaunce of the host, and the duke, Arthur, Hector, the maister and Philip tooke their waie straight to Paris to take leaue of the King of Fraunce, who receiued them with great ioye and honour, for he loued the Duke entirelie, and the King made great cheere to the maister and to Duke Philip, the maister praised much the noblenesse of Fraunce, thus they were foure daies with the King, and then they departed and the dutchesse with them, and take their leaue of the King, then the King said to the Duke, sir if you lacke men of war, you shall haue part of my strength, then the Duke thanked him and said, I trust we haue people sufficient, so they departed and rodde so long on their iourney till they came to Lyons on a wednesdaie in the morning, and there they found Gouernar, Brisebar, and Sir Oliuer, who badde made readie for their lodginges, and then the King of Valogore and all his Earles and Barons were assembled together, and were lodged about Vienne, and when they knewe that Arthur was comming, they mounted on their horses and met with him, and they all made greate honour to the Duke of Britaine, and the Ladies receiued the Dutchesse right

honora-

honourablie, and so they rode forth together, and then the young king ranne to the maister and embraced him in his armes, for he loued him well because of his merueilous cunning, then they came to the pauilions and there alighted, and the dukes Pauilion was pight vp right richlie, and there they soiourned foure daies in great ioye, and the king desired the maister that he wold shew as then some pastime among that companie, then the kinges Squier were afore him readie to doe seruice. Then the maister caused each of them to thinke either without anie dread, and each of them beheld other, and were greatly abashed, and had great merualle where their fellowes heades were become, then they loked on the earth whether they were fallen downe to the ground, and therewith they sought each others head all about the house, and the king & all the whole assemblie had right great sport thereat. Then on the fourth daie they all departed and toke their right waie to the Port Noire, Gouernar, Brisebar, and sir Oliuer did guide forth the hoast, and Arthur sent Bawdewin his Squier before to the port Noire to apparell and garnish the castle, and to drawe thether all this garrisons, this noble companie rode so long til they came but a daies iourney from the Castle of the Port Noire. Now let vs leaue speaking of them for this time, and returne to Florence.

How after that Arthur was departed from king Emendus and Florence to go see his friends, Florence then departed from the Port Noire, & the Queene of Orquenie & the Ladie Margaret of Argenton with her, and went to sport her in her owne Realme and castle of the cleere Tower, wheras the Emperour came & besiged hir, for ere she was ware therof he and his company were layd round about the Towne, and they were to the number of two hundred thousand, what of Emperines and of Sarasins.

Chap. 98.



IT is truth that when arthur was departed from the Port Noire to goe into Fraunce and into Britaine for to see his friends, then Florence and the Queene of Orquenie and the Ladie Margaret, were of accord that they would not go with King Emendus into the Realme of Soroloys, but they were determined to goe to the cleere tower, and there to abide till the returning of Arthur, whereas they might euerie daie priuelie talke each vnto other of their loues, so then Florence toke her leaue of the King her father, and so departed, and toke with her the Queene of Orquenie and the ladie Margaret, and fortie other knights with them, and so they trauailed till they arriued at the cleere Towre, and there they were in great sport and ioy, but it is oftentimes said, he that hath an ill neighbour hath oftentimes an ill morning, for as soone as Florence was

come

come to the cléere Towre, and that it was knowen that she would abide ther a good space, sir Perdicas prouided for all things that was necessarie for the place, then a spie went to the Emperour of Inde and said: Sir, Florence is nowe at the cléere Tower, and you may nowe and you will soone haue her, for shee is come thether priuelie, and but with a small companie. And when the Emperour heard that, hee sent incontinentlie for as much people as he couldе get betwéene him and Babylon, and he assembled there together as much people that all the Countrie was ouer spred with them, and Florence knew nothing of all this till the time that the Emperour had besiged her round about with more then two hundred thousand men, and when shee sawe that she was in that case, she was right sorrowfull & wept pitiouslie euerie daie more and more, for she sawe well shee could not send out for anie succour to anie bodie, there was such watch made all about the place, then she bewailed Arthur and sayde, A Arthur sweete friende, you are ouerlong from this businesse, certainlie if you lése me you shall lése your true louer, a déere loue I am yours, & now you know nothing in what mischiefe I am, for nowe your louer is in great perill, thus Florence made the greatest lamentation of the world, and her people did comfort her in the best wise that they might. Now let vs leaue speaking of Florence, and returne to Arthur.

How Arthur was right sorrowfull because that his horse did stumble vnder him, and how the master shewed him that Florence was besieged by the Emperour in the castle of the cleere Tower, wherof Arthur was in great feare and trouble. Cap. 99.

When the Emperour & all his hoast were within a league of the Port Notre, Arthur and the Duke his father, and the king, and the master, rode each by other talking of diverse matters, sodainlie Arthurs horse foundred vnder him

and fell groueling to the earth, but Arthur held him ſtill in the ſaddel till the horſe and he roſe both again to gither, and from thence forth Arthur was in ſo great a ſtudie that no man could haue a word of him but with great paine, and in this maner he endured a great ſeaſon. Than the king began to reaſon with him but he could ſkant haue any word of him, than the King and duke Philip called to them the maiſter and ſaide, ſir what ayleth Arthur for ſith his horſe ſtumbled he would neuer ſpeke no worde by his will, we maruaile what he ayleth. Wel ſaide the maiſter go to him and demaund of him the queſtion, than they rode to him, & the king rode on the one ſide and duke Philip on the other ſide and the maiſter before him, than the maiſter all laughing began to ſing melodiouſly, and the king and duke Philip did laugh at him, and Arthur euer rode forth as though he had bene halfe a ſlepe, and with the ſport that they made he lift vp his eyen, and whan he ſawe them about him making ſuch ſport a little he ſmyled. Than the maiſter ſayde to him, ſir what chere is with you, what ſport make ye to my Lord the king here preſent who is come hither for your loue, ſir now ye be come into your owne Realme and into your owne power, and ſir theſe Lordes haue forſaken their owne countries to come hither with you.

Than he anſwered and ſaide, gentill maiſter pardon me, for I know wel ye ſay but trouth, but ſyr I enſure you euer ſyth my horſe fell vnder mee my heart hath bene ſo heauy, that I can in no wyſe make any good cheere, I can not tell what it meaneth, I pray to God all be for the beſt, I doubt me greatly of my Lord the king of Norroloys, or ells of my Lady Florence leaſt that this Emperour hath done to them any tribulacion. Sir ſaid duke Philip doubt not that, for if it were ſo ye may be ſure my lorde & vncle would ſoone haue ſent meſſengers to you, therefore make good chere and reioyce your barons and ſuch noble men as be come hether for the loue of you, and namely this great hoſt who hath ſo farre trauayled for your ſake.

Ah dere friend duke Philip ſaide Arthur, I require

you make you then good chére and semblaunce, and so then the King and Arthur, the master, and duke Philippe rode forth together throughout all the host, and comforted their people as well as they might, then they arriued at the Port Noire, and mounted vp into the Pallace, and all the hoast was lodged without in the field, & all the Ladies and damsells that came thether with them meruailously beheld the strength and scituation of that place, and reputed in theyr mindes greate nobleneſſe and valure in Arthur for the atchiuing and conquering of that place. Then the master did deuise to them all the aduentures that were in that place. Then the dutcheſſe, mother to Arthur had right great ioy, and then the master lead them to the garden to sée it, and when they saw the place so faire and so delectable, they wished neuer to depart thence. So then these ladies went and rested them at the Fountaine, and Arthur and the King, Hector, and all the other Earles, and the Lorde Beauieu, were all together in companie, but Arthur was still in melancholie. Then the master went into his owne chamber to loke his bookes to knowe what was the cause that Arthur was so sad, then anone he perceiued by his bookes and cunning what perill that Florence was in, and howe the Emperour had besieged her round about, then incontinentlie he went to Arthur and said, Sir the matter goeth ill to worke, for this Emperour hath besieged Florence in her Castle of Clære tower with a greate number of people, so my Ladie is in great perill without some remedie be soone found for her, she weepeth right pittiouslie, and maketh the greatest lamentation of the worlde, shee crieth out on Fortune and saith, alasse now haue I al lost, I was borne in an vnhappie houre, a gentle heart Arthur, God that formed al things of nought kepe and defend you from all euil incombraunce and giue you honour, for as for me I am in great daunger, Fortune shame haue thou, for thou hast done me many troubles, alasse my swéte loue is farre from mee, and mine enimye hath approched neere mee, my loue is absent, and him that I hate is too nére my presence,

alasse

and fell groueling to the earth, but Arthur held him still in the sadel till the horse and he rose both again to gither, and from thence forth Arthur was in so great a studie that no man could have a word of him but with great paine, and in this maner he endured a great season. Than the king began to reason with him but he could skant have any word of him, than the king and duke Philip called to them the maister and saide, sir what ayleth Arthur for sith his horse stumbled he would neuer speke no worde by his will, we marualle what he ayleth. Wel saide the maister go to him and demaund of him the question, than they rode to him, & the king rode on the one side and duke Philip on the other side and the maister before him, than the maister all laughing began to sing melodiously, and the king and duke Philip did laugh at him, and Arthur euer rode forth as though he had bene halfe a slepe, and with the sport that they made he lift vp his eyen, and whan he sawe them about him making such sport a little he smyled. Than the maister sayde to him, sir what chere is with you, what sport make ye to my Lord the king here present who is come hither for your loue, sir now ye be come into your owne Realme and into your owne power, and sir these Lordes haue forsaken their owne countries to come hither with you.

Than he answered and saide, gentill maister pardon me, for I know wel ye say but trouth, but syr I ensure you euer syth my horse fell vnder mee my heart hath bene so heauy, that I can in no wyse make any good cheere, I can not tell what it meaneth, I pray to God all be for the best, I doubt me greatly of my Lord the king of Sorzoloys, or ells of my Lady Florence least that this Emperour hath done to them any tribulacion. Sir said duke Philip doubt not that, for if it were so ye may be sure my lorde & vncle would soone haue sent messengers to you, therefore make good chere and reioyce your barons and such noble men as be come hether for the loue of you, and namely this great host who hath so farre trauayled for your sake.

Ah dere friend duke Philip saide Arthur, I require

you

you make you then good chére and semblaunce, and so then the King and Arthur, the master, and duke Philippe rode forth together throughout all the host, and comforted their people as well as they might, then they arined at the Port Noire, and mounted vp into the Pallace, and all the hoast was lodged without in the field, & all the Ladies and damsells that came thether with them meruailouslie beheld the strength and scituation of that place, and reputed in their mindes greate noblenesse and valure in Arthur for the atchining and conquering of that place. Then the master did deuise to them all the aduentures that were in that place. Then the dutchesse, mother to Arthur had right great ioy, and then the master lead them to the garden to sée it, and when they saw the place so faire and so delectable, they wished neuer to depart thence. So then these ladies went and rested them at the Fountaine, and Arthur and the King, Hector, and all the other Earles, and the Lorde Beauieu, were all together in companie, but Arthur was still in melancholie. Then the master went into his owne chamber to loke his bookes to knowe what was the cause that Arthur was so sad, then anone he perceiued by his bookes and cunning what perill that Florence was in, and howe the Emperour had besieged her round about, then incontinentlie he went to Arthur and said, Sir the matter goeth ill to worke, for this Emperour hath besieged Florence in her Castle of Clére tower with a greate number of people, so my Ladie is in great perill without some remedie be soone found for her, she wéepeth right pittiouslie, and maketh the greatest lamentation of the worlde, shee crieth out on Fortune and saith, alasse now haue I al lost, I was borne in an vnhappie houre, a gentle heart Arthur, God that formed al things of nought kepe and defend you from all euil incombraunce and giue you honour, for as for me I am in great daunger, Fortune shame haue thou, for thou hast done me many troubles, alasse my swéte loue is farre from mee, and mine enimye hath approched neere mee, my loue is absent, and him that I hate is too nére my presence,

alasse

alasse mine owne swéete lone Arthur, if I were in your armes, then I would thinke my selfe better assured then to be in this strong castle, for then would I neither feare king nor Emperour, alasse where are my men? my good friends that they do not their diligence to study for my deliuerance, a King of Orquenie you doe a great trespasse against your true and faithfull louer Arthur when that you doe not deliuer me out of daunger, he loueth you aboue all other, and now you to be thus false to him, certainlie he would neuer haue failed you, but he would haue put his bodie and goods in ieopardie for your sake, and now thus you to leaue mée in this dolour, alasse good King come and deliuer me, and if you can render me vnto this gentle Knight Arthur who loueth you with all his heart. Thus Sir saide the messer, I knowe well that she doth complaine euerie daie with such wéeping chére, that I must néeds wéepe when I thinke on her, and the Quéene of Orquenie and the Ladie Margaret doth comfort her all wéeping, for it grieueth their hearts to see her weepe so sore, and thus sir all thrée of them bee in great sorrow, I can scarce tell you who is in the greatest. Trulie said Arthur it was not for naught that my heart was so heauie, now I know well the signification thereof, alasse master and doth not king Emendus know what case she is in? Yes Sir said the master, he assembleth people on all sides of his Realme of Sorroloys, and also all his foure Kings with all their powers be come to him, and they are all readie to drawe thether ward, and they will remoue on mundaie next comming, but it will bee fiftéene dayes ere they come thether, and sir all the kings complaineth greatlis that you be out of the Countrie, for they saie that if you had bene in the Countrie the Emperour had neuer bene so bolde to haue come thether, Sir I doubt me greatly of Florence, for she hath not past fortie knights with her, wherefore I feare me least that shee cannot endure to kéepe the place till the King her father and all his hoast be come thether. And when Arthur heard that he was sore displeased, and said to the young king of Valogore: A gentle king, I

require

requite you for Gods sake let me go thether, or else I shall die for sorrow, and if I praie you abide here with all this hoast till mandale, and then let the hoast followe after me to the cleere tower, and let Duke Philip and my Seneschall and the marques haue the guiding of them, and my Lorde my father shall abide here still with you, and also my Lady my mother, and all these Ladies and damsells, till such time as I send you word, and sir, I will haue with me the maister and Hector, Gouernar and Sir Brisebar. And when all the Barons heard him saie that he would go, they counsailed him to take more people with him, but he would not, and so toke a sop in Wine and toke leaue of the King and of all other, and embraced his father and mother, and commended to God all the other Ladis and Damsells, and so he departed and his companie with him, and rode forth as fast as euer they might, and trauailed so long both by daie and night till they came to the Emperours hoast. Then Arthur said, Lordes we approch nere to our enimies, I thinke it were best that we did put on our harneis, and so there they alighted and did put on their harneis.

How Arthur and the maister, Hector, Gouernar, and sir Brisebar, entered into the cleere tower whereas Flotence was besieged, and they fine discomfited a puisant Saracin King, who was called the Souldan, who was come thether to helpe the Emperour, and there were all the Saresins and Turkes slaine. Chap. 100.

WHen that Arthur and his foure fellowes were armed they mounted on their horses and rode forth till it was about three of the clocke, then they rode to the bottome of a great mountaine, and there they alighted, and Arthur alone a foote mounted vp to the highest thereof, and there he sawe the castle of the cleere Tower, whereon there were pinacles of bright Christall, and it did shine so against the Sunne, that no man could clerelie loke against it, and he

sawe

salue the Emperours great Host, whereby seeming to him all the world was theirs of people, and he saw well within that people late round about the Castle, so that none could issue out nor none enter into the place, and he saw well how that on the same side that he was on there lodged a great number of Sarasins, and then Arthur complained pitiously for the mischiefe that he saw his Ladie Florence in at that time, and as he thus beheld the Castle, he saw where as there came toward the mountaine forth Sarasins armed, then Arthur went down to the valley against to his company and sayd, Lordes, I thinke all the world of people be in this Countrie, how shall we deuiate our selues. Sir said Brisebar, there is nothing to be done but let us mount on our horses and doe as Knights should doe, Sir there is none of us but that he is well worth a Knight. Well said Arthur, now that shall be seene, for yonder commeth forth more of our enimies to awake us if we sleepe: Let them come said Gouernar, and he tooke a great Speare and did plunge it in the rest, and therwith the Sarasins were come, who saw well these sixe Knightes, and one of them prea-sed forth before his fellows, and Gouernar with his speare slew him, and then the master strake so another with such vertue, that the Speare went cleane throughout his bodie, then he set his hand vpon his sword and laide on so among his enimies, as a Woulfe doth among Lambes. And when Brisebar saw him doe such deedes of armes, he sayde, here is a good master he chasteneth well his disciples, then Brisebar strake the first that he encountered with so rudelie, that his harneis auailed him not a button, for her was pearced to the hart, then Gouernar and he beat downe Sarasins euen as he would himselfe. And when Hector saw that, he feared least all the Sarasins should haue ben slaine ere he had done anie thing against them, then he rusht into the preasse and cut off armes, handes, and legges, and made heads flie into the fielde, and beate downe Sarasins and horses meruaillouslie. And when Arthur saw all this he smiled & said, Lordes leaue me my part, what mee thinketh

ye

ye take all, that is no equall parting, than he datht into the thickest of the preſe, and the firſt he ſent to the earth Saraſin and horſe, and the ſecond he claue downe to the chinne, and ther he gaue ſo puiſſant ſtrokes, that he confounded all that euer he attained vnto, and to make ſhort, theſe fiue knightes did ſo valiantly that of all theſe ir. Saraſins there eſcaped not one but they were all ſlaine. Than Arthur ſaid Lords let vs now deuiſe how we may finde the meanes to enter into the caſtel, it is ſo cloſed on all ſides that none can enter into it but he muſt paſſe firſte throughout thirtie M. men of war. I ſuppoſe this Emperours hoſt endureth fiue leges in breadth ſo I can not ſee how we ſhould enter, euery man giue his aduiſe and counſayle, for here on this part of the caſtell that we be on is all ouer ſpread with fell Saraſins. Sir ſaide the maiſter ſuffre a little: I ſhall giue you my counſaile how we ſhal enter into the caſtel, I ſhal cauſe vs all to lowe for the ſeaſon as black as any pitch, ſo y we ſhall not be knowen but for Saraſins, let vs arme vs with the armour of theſe dead Saraſins, and than let me ryde on before, and I ſhall leade you ſafely throughout all their hoſt, for I can well ſpeake the language. Ye ſay well ſayde Hector, than they all armed them with harneys of the Saraſins that they had ſlayne, and than they mounted on their horſes, and the maiſter rode on before till they came to the Saraſins tent, and the maiſter had on the harneis of the Soudanes ſeneſhal who was ſlaine before by Arthur, and the Saraſins that ſaw him thought verely that it had bene the ſeneſhal, and they demaunded of him from whence he came. And he anſwered and ſaide, friends I go to play me all about the fielde, and I purpoſe to go to the caſtel gates to entre in if I may, and to ſlaye all them that be with in the caſtel, than there were diuers that offered them ſelfe to haue gone with him, but he ſayde he would haue no more company than he had, and ſayde, ſyrs there is none of you that ſhall go with me, therefore I charge you on payne of your lyues that ye ſtir not tyll ye heare me blow my great horne, and than come as faſt as ye can.

Then

Then the maister and his companie rode to the castle gate and called the Porter and said: my friend open the gate & let vs in and God shall reward you, for we are christen men and are soldiers, and I promise you that if you will let vs in and the Ladie of the place receive our seruice, then shall she doe like a wise Ladie. Sirs said the Porter, and you be soldiers you are welcome, for my Ladie hath great neede of such, then he let downe the bridge & opened the gate, then these fine Knightes entered, and the Porter lift vp agayne the bridge and closed the gate againe after them. When it was shewed Florence that fine straunge soldiers were entered into the Castle to helpe and to aide her, then shee commaunded that they should be brought to a chamber and vnarmed, and then to be brought to her presence, and when they were vnarmed they loked so blacke that euerie man was afraide of them, and some said, God graunt they be not spies, and so they were brought to Florence, and as soone as shee saiwe them shee trembled for feare, and when she sawe that they were all goodly persons and much like of nature, she feared them greatlie least that they had bene spies, and demaunded of them of whence they were. And they answered how that they were Saracins borne, but as then they had renounced their beliefe, and were christened in Fraunce at Paris, and the king of France was their godfathers, and then shee demaunded of them whether they came straight out of Fraunce. And they answered yea. Then the Ladie Florence demaunded of them and saide, friends did you euer heare of a Knight who is named Arthur, and he is sonne vnto the Duke of Britaine. Yes truelie madame said they, wee heards well of him, he departed from Paris the same time that we did depart, and he diode hast him greatlie to come into this Countrie, and hee bringeth with him the Duke his father and the Dutchesse his mother, & well to the number of ten thousand other knights readie apparailed for the warre, and moreouer as it is sayd, he bewaileth greatlie a gentle Damsell of this Countrie, for whose sake he hath oftetimes right pitifullie sait forth

many

many a greate ogd, and madame oftentimes he speaketh and complaineth to a greate man of dignitie who is in his companie, and also madame as it is saide there is one with him named maister Steuen, and another Gouernar, and the third Pedor, and diuerse other that we haue forgotten the names of them. Well sirs I se well that by such tokens as you report you haue sene them, but I pray you doth Arthur thinke so much on the Ladie that you speake of. Yea truelie madame said the maister, then the Lady Florence began pitifullie to weepe, and the Ladie Margaret held ready a kercheefe to wipe her eies ther with, and when Arthur sawe her wipe so he said, right faire Ladie weepe no more, for surelie we shall neuer faile you till death haue made an end of vs. And as they were thus talking to Florence, the Sarasins in the field that saw them enter into the castle in that peaceable manner, then they perceiued well howe that the leader of them was not the Soudans Seneschall, and thought verilie that they had a great mocke, wherfore they all ranne to their armour and armed them, and more then fiue hundred of them went to the castle and did knocke and beat at the gate. Then the watchmen of the castell did crie, Sirs to harnets, for part of your enimies are at the gate. Then euerie man of the Castle ranne to the windowes to looke what it might be, and when Arthur sawe how it was, he commaunded his company to arme them, and so they armed them, and so did all that were with in the castle, for Sir Perdicas caused a great horne to be blowen, & by the sounding thereof all those of the castle ranne to their harneys. Then Florence said, friends for Gods sake issue not out of the Castle, for you be not able to resist against their power they be so many in number and you so few, but I require you defend this castle as well as you may: madame saide Arthur, be you in rest and peace, let vs alone hardie, then he mounted on his horse, and so did his other foure companions, and to the number of foure other Knights of the castle, and so he rode to the gate and caused the Porter to set it open.

Then Arthur, by great random dasht into the preasse with his white shelde couered all in black, & holding a great bat-chet in both his handes and layde on rounde about him on those Sarasins that he made heads, armes and hands to fly into the felde, and beat downe horses and Sarasins in such wise that it was maruaile to beholde him, and Hector and Gouernar on their partie beate downe Sarasins by great heapes, and the maister, Brisebar, and sir Perricas did as valiantly, as any good knights ought to doe, but aboue all other Arthur dyd excellently, for he layde on rounde about him, and confounded all that euer he attayned vnto, so that euery man fled from before him, and sayd how that he was a diuel of hell, and none earthly creature. For he anoyded the stretes where as he passed, and made great heapes of dead knights, so that Florence knights had great maruaile of him, and also Florence and the quene of Orqueney, and the lady Margaret blessed them at his deedes, and sayde how that he lacked but little of the prowesse of Arthur. And at the last Hector was beaten downe, for his horse was slaine vnder him, and so his enemies had thought to haue ledde him away as a prisoner, and therewith Arthur came thether, and in that fury he slewe more than xb. knightes, and remounted Hector againe on his horse in the spite of all his enemies, and than he dasht againe into the preas and beate downe all that euer he attayned vnto, and Brisebar and the maister dyd right well their partes, but specially Arthur made place before him. And whan Florence sawe these .v. knights do so valiantly, she said vnto such knights as were about her, Sirs for gods sake and ye loue me go and helpe to rescewe yonder fine knightes.

Then the great common bell was sowned and euery man than ran to their harneis, and so they were to the number of an hundred and an halfe on horseback, and three hundred on foote, who were in long Jackets and greate bascnets on their heads, with gad swordes girt about them, and longe speares in their handes, to the entent to slee with them their

enimies horses, and so they issued out of the castle and slew many of the Sarasins, that within a little while they were neere all discomfited. And when the soudan sawe his people so overladen and slain, he caused a great grille horne to be blowen, then euerie man that heard it ran to their harness, so that they were to number of thirtie thousand, & the soudan was a young lustie courageous knight, and mounted on such a horse that there was none like him in all the worlde in goodnesse, for whosoeuer was mounted on his backe needed not to doubt anie man liuing, for what by force of the horse and of the man, there was none by likelihoode that might resist against him. Then the soudan dasht into his horse with his sharpe spurres, and he rusht forth as though he hadde flowen in the aire like a birde.

And when Arthur sawe him comming, he desired greatlie to haue that horse, then he toke a great mightie speare and ranne at the soudan and brake his speare by the might of that horse, for the horse was able to haue borne two men armed without anie paine, and as Arthur passed forth after his course, the Sarasins inclosed him rounde about, then he drew his good sword Clarence, and there hostes of his enimies without number, but they charged him with so many strokes, that they slewe his horse vnder him, then he leapt on his feete and did put his white sheilde before him, and with Clarence his good sworde he did cut so among his enimies as a carpenter doth hew chippes out of a great tree, and they did shoot at him with their bowes of Turkey, wherewith they did him much trouble, and more had done and his good white sheild hadde not beene. When Florence sawe as longe as hee could crie, Swéet Jesus saue and defend yonder good knight from all daunger and perill.

And when Arthur heard her voice his hardynesse increased, for such was his manner the more that hee hadde to doe the more was his stringth, and euer his courage increased, and then he leapt in verie lightlie among

among his enemies and began so to deseuer a sunder the great flockes of the Sarasins that none approch nere him but that he receiued death for his mede. At the last Hector espyed him and sawe how that he was on foote wherewith he was so displeased that he was in a great rage, than he couched his spere & ran at the Sowdan who was running at Arthur, but Hector strake him so rudely that he perced him to the harte and so he fel downe dead. than Hector tok his good horse and deliuered him to Arthur, & when Arthur hadde him he was more glader of the horse than he would haue bene of all the treasure in Fraunce, than he mounted vp on him and rusht into the thickest of the prese, and there he dyd mervailes with his hands, for ther he cut of armes, handes and legges, he clave a sonder helmes, & made heads to flye into the fælde, and beate downe knights and horses all to gether in heapes, and than there was none that he encountred withall that escaped from the death, than there came vnto him the maister, sir Brisebar, and sir Perdicas, & xl. other knights vpon horseback of Florence companye, and a thre hundred on foote, than they all layde on these sarasins and bet them downe lyke dogges. Than Arthur encountred the Sowdans brother and gaue him such a stroke with his good sworde clarence that he clane him downe to the sadel.

And when that the Sarasins sawe how that the Sowdan and also his brother were dead and slaine, they made such roring and sorow among them that the Emperour as he was in his tent might wel here the noyse, and demaunded what it was. And one shewed him how that it was the Sowdan who was scarmishing with them of the castel, and therewith there came to him a knight who had one of his armes cleane striken of and sayde, sir Emperour the Sowdan is dead and his brother Saladyne also slayn, for sir ther be come fyre as I thinke rather dinells of hell than earthly creatures, for they have all slaine and confounded, and specially there is one among them that maketh ways where so euer that he commeth, there is none so hardy y dare abide

him

him a stroke of his handes but al dieth before him, therfore sir Emperour cal your men to harneis or ells we shal be al slaine.

Than the Emperour was sore displeased and sayde, what hundred diuels of hell hath brought hither these fyre knightes, who thus confoundeth all my people, than he cryed to harneis, and caused hornes to be blowen in his hoast. Than euery man ran to their harneis, so that anone there were together more than an hundred thousand men, and Arthur, Hector, Gouernar, the maister, Brisebar, & sir Perdicas were all be spent with the bloud of the sarasins that they had slaine. Then the queene of Orqueney who had all the day wel aduised Arthur and his deedes saide vnto Florence, madame certainly I think that yonder knight is Arthur, for as I deme yonder shelde is your white shield, and I thinke he that is by him is Hector, the maister, Gouernar and sir Brisebar. Madame said Florence that can not be, for they are as black as any pyke. And as they thus talked they saw where as the Emperour was comming, & a hundred thousande folowing after him. A I waete Jesu sayde Florence, kepe and defend now yonder knights, for I fere me now that they shalbe slayne, and the Emperour came thether wards as fast as he might with great noise of trumpets, tabours & hornes. And when that the maister heard that he came to Arthur and sayd, sir we haue to lytle number of people to abyde yonder Emperour at this tyme, we haue done all ready sufficient for one daye, therefore sir let vs returne againe to the castel, for our company are right sore trauailed. Ye say wel sayde Arthur, cause the retraite to be blowen, and so it was done, than Arthur and his people entered into the castel, and closed the gate after them & drew vp the bridge, and they had slayne in that battaile to the number of fiftene thousande Sarasyns, than Arthur mounted vp into the palays, and Florence met with him, and she dyd of his helme and thanked him greatly and all his company of the paine and labour that they had taken that daye, than they loked out at the window and saw

whereas the Emperour was beholding the dead bodies of the Soudan and of his brother, and of fifteene thousande other Sarasins.

How Frolle was taken for a moneth betweene the Emperour and Arthur. Chap. 101.



THen Arthur out of windowe called downe to the Emperour, Sir you do your selfe shame and villanie, that have ill regarded thus to entertain a knight by stealth, and under the assurance of truce that was tak-

ken betweene my Lorde her Father and you thus to cause such number of people to come on her, Sir if there were in you either valure or truth, you would not thus haue done, first you shoulde haue giuen her warning, and haue made your defiaunce, and haue giuen her a certaine daie of battaile, and then to haue taken her if you might, this shoulde haue bene your honour, and not thus to awaite her in her chamber with all this number of people, and she nothing knowing thereof before. Well saide the Emperour, whatsoeuer thou art thy tongue is faire filed, woulde to God I hadde that head of thine that lokest so blacke. Why Sir saide Arthur, woulde you then so faine haue my heade? Truelie saide the Emperour, on that condition I woulde it hadde cost me one yeares rent of all my landes. Yea sir sayde Arthur, then giue this Ladie a certaine daie of battaile that she may in the meane season send for her people, so that she may answere you, and Sir I promise you that I will bee there, and then gette my head and your caune. Truelie saide the Emperour I am content, but what assuraunce shall I haue that you will bee there? Sir saide Arthur, by the faith that I owe vnto my speciall Ladie. Well sayde the Emperour, and I giue her daie for a moneth, and truse in the meane season, and then the assurance was made on both partes: Then Arthur saide holding Florence by the hand, Sir Emperour beholde what a iewell this is, Sir ought not a man to be right valiaunt to obtaine such a Ladie, so tender, so swete, and so ruddie of coulour? Then the Emperour was sore displeased and saide: What thou prating fole, me thinketh thy visage is couered ouer with blacke Cordewan, would to God I had thee in my keeping, sir sayde Hector, all smiling, take no heed of his saying for he is but a fole, then the Emperour departed and went to his tent, then Arthur sayd to Florence, madame we haue now truse with the emperour, so that we may well prouide for men ere the truse breake, for the terme therof is a moneth. Well sir go Florence I thank you therof.

and of the pain that you and your companie hath taken this daie for my ſake, but ſir I ſhall deſerue it when I may. Madame it is alreadie deſerued, but madame maye it pleaſe you to leaue the loning of the Knight that you ſaie you loue ſo well, and take me to your louer and giue me your loue, and I promiſe you I ſhal deliuer you from this Emperour, for this other Knight is now in France in great ſport, and thinketh but little on you, for he hath many faire Ladies in his Countrie at his commaundement. Sir ſaid Florence, his ſport and ioy is a great pleaſure in my heart, for I am his both with heart, thought, and bodie, and neuer to bee falſe to him, for as God helpe me I hadde rather ſuffer my head to be ſtriken off then I ſhould doe or thinke any falſenelle to him. Why madame loue you then him ſo inwardlie and ſo truelie. Yea, or elſe ſaid ſhee, I praie to God I neuer haue ioy in this world. Well then ſaid hee, I ſee wel that my loue cannot preuaile. Nowe you ſure ſaide Florence, therefore be in peace and ſpeake to me no more thereof. In like manner the maſter praied the Ladie Margaret of her loue, deſiring her to loue him and to forſake the Clarke. And ſhe anſwered that to die in the paine ſhe would neuer bee falſe to him. Then Arthur ſaide to the maſter, let vs leaue theſe Ladies for we are come to late, for by ſeeming they are aſſured to other. Sir ſaide Florence, I know not your name, but I deſire you goe and vnarme you and then we will goe to dinner, for our meate is readie, then they were lead into a chamber & vnarmed. And then Brunebar when he ſaw his owne hands ſo foule and blacke, it abhorred him and ſaid, the diuell take this blackneſſe ſo that we were rid therof, then he ſaid to the maſter, Sir I require you take away this blackneſſe from mee and from all my companie. Then the maſter laughed a great pace, & ſo did all his companie: Well ſaid Arthur, I am well agreed that it ſhould be now taken awaie from vs all for it is time. Then the maſter tooke a boxe and difmunted them all, and then they all were in their firſt ſauour, then Arthur tooke on him as chiefe, and in a goodlie ſtreate hee entered into the Pallace

whereas Florence tarried for them to wash their vantes, and as sone as she sawe them shee knewe well Arthur and them all, then she ranne to him and embraced and kissed him sweetlie before them all and saide: Mine owne Lorde, deare heart, and loue, you be right heartelie welcome, as hee for whom I haue wept many a salt teare, but sir I praie you who made you so blacke as you were right now. Madame by the faith that I owe vnto you master Steuen, and there recounted to her all the cause why, then there began greate feast and ioy throughout all the castle, and also throughout all the towne, when it was knowen how that Arthur and Hector were come into the Castle, then they were in their mindes better assured then though the King Emendus and all his power had bene there, and Ladie Margaret made as great cheere to the master as was to her possible, and so they went to dinner and were right richlie serued, and after dinner Arthur saide to Gouernar, it is needfull for vs now to prouide for euerie thing that is necessarie for vs, to the intent that we be not deceiued at the daie of our battaile, therfore I will that you goe to my Lord the King of Sorboys and recommend me humblie to his grace, & shew him how that I am at the Cleere tower, and recount vnto him how that we haue spedde, and howe that wee haue truse for the space of a moneth, and then is the date sette of battayle betweene the Emperour and vs, also salute from me the king of Orquenie, and saie how that I desire him to summon against the said tearme all the power of Sorboys both on horsebacke and on foote, so that they may be heere about the end of foure wekes, and I will in the meane time go vnto my Lord my father, and to all his companie, and bring him hether. And when Florence heard that she saide, Sir haue you brought them into these partes. Yea truelie madame, and with my father there is a noble King of that Country: and faire loue where be they. Madame I leste them at the Port Noire. Well said Florence, I require you go to them and bring them hether, for I would gladlie be acquainted with my Lord your father, whose daughter I am, and tru-

sting so shall continue, but I praie you tell mee how doth my Ladie your mother. Madame I assure you she is also at the Port Noire, accompanied with fiue or six Countesses who haue left their owne Countries to come hether to see you. A deere heart saide Florence, blessed bee the houre that euer you were borne sith that you haue brought so noble a companie with you to see me, for now my father king Emendus shall not think that I am ill bestowed on you, sir I require you let me see them as shortlie as you can, then Gouernar toke his leaue and departed toward Sorolois.

How the young king of Malogore and the Duke of Britaine, with diuerse other Earles and Barons, accompanied with a great armie of men of warre, arriued at the cleere tower, to the intent to succour Florence and Arthur, who were besieged by the Emperour, who had nigh enraged out of his wit when hee knew that they were come into the Castle. Chap. 102.

ON the morning betimes Arthur departed from the cleere tower, and toke with him Hector and Eziſebar, & fiue other Knights of Florence, and the master abode still with Florence, thus Arthur rode forth three leagues, and then he espied the banner of the Duke his father and of all his hoast, for the young king of Malorge hasted him as much as he might for the feare that he had of Arthur. And when Arthur sawe the Banners and Standardes wauering with the Winde, and the healmes and shieldes shining against the Sunne, then his heart reioyced and saide, a gentle Fraunce God increase thine honour and nobleneſſe, and then he approched neere to his Father and made to him reuerence, and there was greate ioye at their meeting, and the Duke demaunded of them how that he had spedde.

And

And he recounted to him and to his company all the whole matter as it was done, and so they rode forth together tyll they came into the Emperours hoast. And all that season Florence was lening out of ỳ battilments of the toure, for with bir eyen she had conuayed Arthur before as far as she might, and at the last the quene of Orqueney had espied the French hoast comming, and sawe the french banners dysplayed with the wynde. By Saint Mary sayde she, faire Florence what people be yonder that I see comming bitherwarde, I thinke it be the Emperour. And whan Florence sawe them she was in feare of Arthur and sayde, alas I doubt that if they haue encountred with my loue Arthur, that they haue slayne him, and therwith shee beganne pitiously to weepe.

Than it chaunced that a knight who came streight from Arthur to the intent to shewe bir how that hee was comming saide, Madame be ye well assured for yonder people that ye see comming they are pertaining to my Lorde Arthur, then she apeased bir selfe, and first she sawe the great baner of the duke of Britaine, and saw helmes and sheldes flambe against the sonne, also she behelde the goodly company of younge knightes mounted vpon good horses, and she heard horses braye and bete with their feete, then she prayed much in bir heart the noble countrey of Fraunce, she thought it was a better sight of them then it was of the men of war of bir owne countrie, for they were more better horsed and harneysed a great deale more properly, and than they saw comming after that the great baner royal of the king of malogre, and her heart reioysed to see the noble company that came with him, then she saw the Erle of Nepers baner and the noble Burgonions right properly bestow, then the Duke of Forest and the Dolphin in his company, and than came the Erle of Foys, and then the Erle of Boumt belyal, than the Lord Beauieu, and last of all came the baner of Pyppoys, and all this company were to the number of fiftene thousand knightes, beeing of stout courage and chosen for the nonce.

Then

Then Florence saide, a my sweete lord Arthur, it seemeth wel that you are not hated in your owne countrie, sith you bring with you so many noble men of warr, and of so greate dignitie. Certainlie madame said Margaret, these people will destroie this Emperour and all his hoast, they seeme no men but rather Angells of heaven, beholde madam how light and quicke they be in their armour, a noble Realme of Fraunce blessed bee thou sith such people commeth out of thee.

And when their people were lodged, then Arthur ranne to the King and the Duke his father, & all the other earles and Barons to mount vp into the Castle. Then the King saide to Arthur, sir I require you shew me the gentle Florence: yea faire sonne said the Duke, shewe mee our deere daughter that shall be: Sir you shall see her anone sayde Arthur, then he sent before Duke Philip to Florence, to the intent that she should make her selfe fresh against their comming, and as soone as she sawe Philippe shee made to him right great ioy, and demaunded of him how he did, & howe that he liked the Realme of Fraunce. Madame said hee, I like it verie well, for I assure you Fraunce is a noble and gentle Countrie, madame beholde here commeth the noble Duke of Britaine father to Arthur, and with him King Alexander of Valogoze, and diverse other Earles and Barons who are comming hether to see you, and Arthur desireth you to apparel your selfe with vestures of ioy, then she went to her chamber and apparelled her selfe according to her estate, and as to receive such noble men as were come to her-ward, and the Duchesse of Orquenie and the faire ladie Margaret did helpe her, then these Ladies alighted at the Perron, and so mounted vp into the Pallace, then the maister ranne to Florence and said, madam come on your waie and see the duke of Britaine and the King, and other earles and Barons, and she who was the gentle Rose on the Lillie young and tender, alwaies having a smiling countenance, and the most gratious of all the world issued out of her Castle, and two Knights led her forth, and two other

Knights lead the Quéene of Loraine, and when the young King and the duke of Britaine and either Earles saw her, they mervailed greatlie of the excellent beautie that God had giuen her. Then the King stept foorth and his bonnet in his hand and enclined himselfe to her, and right courtlie did salute her, and she answered him and said, Sir you be right heartelie welcome into this countrie, the which is and shall be at your noble commaundement, & all other things whereof I haue anie power. Then the King did salute all the Ladies each after other. Then the Duke of Britaine came to Florence and saide, my right deere Ladie God increase your noble honour as vnto the most noble Ladie of all the world. Then Hector saide, madame this is the Duke of Britaine father to Arthur, wherwith she was right glad and embraced him and said, Sir you be right heartelie welcome into the land of Florence your daughter, as hee that shall be mine owne Lord, into whose hands and protection from hence forth I put me and all my Realme of Sorolois. Then he toke Florence by the hand and would not let her depart for anie person that came to them, then all the other Earles and Barons did salute her, and she rendered againe to them such salutation that euerie man was well content, and euerie man mervailed greatlie of her beautie, and of the wise and sage wordes that she had to euerie bodie. So then the King and the Duke and Florence sate them downe together, and the Ladie Margaret toke the Earle of Neuers and the Earle of Forrest and sate downe with them, and the Earle of mount Sciuall, and the Dolphin, & the Lord Beauieu loking out at the windowes and beheld the Emperours great hoast, and at last Arthur and the master came to them.

Then the Dolphin saide, sir Arthur as God helpe mée I haue great desire to knowe what people these bee that bée heere with this Emperour, and to sée howe they can couch their Speares. Let vs go to them saide the Lorde Beauieu and let vs make them know how Frenche men be come hether. A great shame take her saide the Earle of mount Sciuall

man, that taketh no truse abide behinde. Then sir saide Arthur, if it please you we shall not doe thus, for then should we breake our truse & not kepe our promise made to them, for then they would be reputed to falle in breaking of our tenaunts, and our French men have bene alwaies reputed true, therefore let vs abide till the date be come, except they breake the truse their selues. And sir saide the Lord Beauieu, how long shall your truse yet indure. Sir gooth Arthur, it muste endure yet fifteene dates. Ah sir saide the Dolphin, if it were not you, shame haue he that set the day so long: What, all this long season we shall but lie here still like Swine, and doe no good. And as they thus talked they heard greate noise without in the emperours hoste, for there was a great rumour among them because of the French boates comming into the castle, and therewith they sawe euerie man runne to their harnets, and anon they espied the Emperours Senechall mounted on a good horse, and a great speare in his hand, and his sheld about his necke, and per cause straight towarde the French boate, who were lodged without the castle gate to the intent to knowe what people they were, but the Lord de la Lounde when he sawe him comming in that maner, he thought he desired to haue iusted with some of the French men, then he mounted on his horse and tooke a great speare and ranne at the Senechall. And when the Dolphin sawe that he saide to Arthur: Sir me thinketh by the Lord de la Lounde that hee thinketh but little on your truse, for if he bide he shall not well thus to doe. I praie you beholde how fast he runneth. Yea sir saide Arthur, I see him well, God kepe his bodie from ante hurt. And when the Senechall sawe him comming so fast towarde him, hee plunged himself in his saddle, & did cast his speare from him, & put his sheld behind him, for he would not iust because of breaking of the truse. And when the Lord de la Lounde sawe that, he knewe well he was not comming to iust, therefore he discharged himselfe and rained his horse, then the Senechall saluted him and demaunded what people they were that were nowe come to the castle with such an hoste.

Certainlie

Certainlie sir they be people of Fraunce, who heare tidings of a great warre that this Emperour should have vpon him, and therefore they be come into this Countrie as souldiers retaining vs whosoeuer will: Souldiers quoth the Seneschall, and therewith he lift vp his eyen and beheld the hoast ouer all, and ther he saw the goodlie young Squiers vntrussing of their sumpters & carriages, and pitching vp of their tents and pauilions, and he saw the goodly Knights raine their horses vp and downe in the fields, some lighting, and some mounting, and there he saw the armourers furbush their harnets, and the speares and shields clauing against the Sunne, the banners, Standards and streamers wauering with the winde, then he said to himselfe by Saint Martin what people are these, are they mortall men or Angells of Paradise, who may endure against them. A Fraunce an honourable Countrie aboue all other, blessed bee thou that nourishest vp such people: Then he saide to the Lorde de la Launde, certis sir will not these people abide and be retayned with my Lord the Emperour till this warre be done, and he shall giue such wages and fees, that of reason they shall be content. Sir saide the Lorde de la Launde, if you will knowe the certaintie goe and speake with our Lordes and maisters who are entered into the Castle, to goe speake with a Ladie, I know not what she is, but it is reputed she is right gracious and faire. By saint Marie said the Seneschall, if I goe thether I doubt me of them within the castle, least they take and keepe me there as prisoner, wherefore I will goe first & speake with my Lord the Emperour, then he departed & went straight to the Emperours tent, & saide to him: Gentle Emperour ther is come out of ỹ noble realme of France the most goodlie companie of men of war ỹ euer was seene in all this world, & as I deeme they be well to the number of xv. M. & one of them shewed me how ỹ they wer souldiers, & the captains are gone into the castle to speak w Florence sir I feare me least ỹ Arthur hath retained them on his partie, for he can get much people, therefore sir after my counsaile you shall send to them in faire maner, & desire

you

you them to become your men during your warre, and if they will not doe so, then giue them targets both of golde and of siluer, and such other things as they neede, for if we and you may get them you shall be able to conquere all the world if you list. Then the King Jonas saide to the Emperour, Sir it were but well done to know what people they were, and wherefore they be come, for I vnderstand that Arthur hath bene in Fraunce, and Sir it might so fortune that hee hath brought them with him to the intent to anoie you, and Sir if they be come to make warre against you, then begin you first on them, and rather to pase them to morrowe, and strike off all their heads, and hang vp their captaine, and hay Arthur quicke, and as for the Trumpet Florence deliuer her among our knaues and boies, for she hath done you greate anoiaunce, & therefore sir lend to yonder people of France, who are now come, thinking to winne all the world, & commaund them to come to your seruice, and if they will bee with you, then intreat them as you would doe strangers, and if they will not come to you, then commaund them on paine of their liues incontinente to departe out of this Countrie, and sir if they will not doe thus, graunt me the enterprise and I shall giue you all their heades. Then the Seneschall was in his minde vnpleased with the foolish proud words and said, by God sir King if you eate no meat til all this be done, I feare me least it will be too late for you to eate, but sith it is your minde, I counsaile my Lord the Emperour heere present to giue you leaue to atchieue this enterprise either to bring them to my Lords seruice, or else they to depart out of this Realme, or else all their heades. In the name of God said the King Jonas, I praie & require my Lord the Emperour to giue mee licence to atchieue this enterprise if I can, and I promise faithfullie to goe speake with them ere that I sleepe without anie longer delaie, and I shall knowe what is their wills and mindes. Certainlie gentle King, quoth the Emperour, you haue a noble & a valiant heart, doe as it pleaseth you, for I giue you leaue: then he toke his gloue, and the King toke it and thanked him,

and

and so then they went to dinner, and all the noble company of Fraunce and Britaine were in the Cleere tower, where as they dined in greate delight and spoyt, and were serued right richlie, and after dinner they spoyted them till it was about one of the clocke.

How king Ionas all alone came to the castle of the cleere tower, and there did his message from the Emperour of Inde the more. Chap. 103.

When king Ionas issued out of the Emperours hoast all armed, wel and freshlie mounted, and so all alone without anie companie he came to the clare Tower, and vnder a faire Olive tree he alighted and mounted vp into the pallace, and ther he found Florence and the King of Valagoze and the Duke of Britaine sitting together, then the King Ionas spake before Florence in open audience, so that euerie man might well heare him, and saide: The high soueraigne God who all things formed of naught, defend and keepe the puisant Emperour of Inde the more, and all his friends wheresouer they bee, heere or elsewhere, first to thee Florence ther as thou sittest, I saie from ỹ mightie Emperour that thou goe to him onelie in thy kirtle on thy bare feete, with thy haire hanging about thy shoulders, & on thy knees cry him humbly mercy of the great outrage that thou hast done to him, and I thinke that he will haue mercie on thee that thou shalt not die anie cruell death, for if thou wilt doe thus, I thinke hee will giue thee pardon of thy life, and marrie thee to one of the grooms of his kitchin, and if thou wilt not doe thus, knowe for certaine that to morrowe next comming this Castell shall bee rased downe to the hard earth, and thy selfe burnt in a faire fire, and the burden that is called Arthur hanged vp by the necke. Then Florence beganne to smile and sayde, Sir Ionas shewe vnto your Emperour that before this bee performed there shall not abide one tooth in his head, but I shall cause them to bee rashed out each after other, and as for

comming into my castel against my wil let him know wel I haue such people about me that shal defend it right well against him, for therof they be desirous. Then the Dolphin kept forthe as he that was full of yre because of the rude wordes that kinge Jonas had spoken of Florence and Arthur and said to the king, thou foule olde churlish vilaine if thou weret not a messenger I would rashe out thyne eyen out of thyne head with mine owne handes, what art thou come hether to speake vilany to so high a lady and princesse as Florence is, to saye that she should be giuen to a kechin grome in mariage, thou olde fole saye vnto theine Emperour that he come to my lady Florēce creping on his hands and knees, and to take of hir such Judgement of death as she wil assigne him to dye of, and if he wil not so do let him flye fast out of this countrie, for as for me nor none of my company haue taken no trewse with him, therfore I vtterly defie him, and first here before thy face thou abused folish potarde I defie thée and all thy malyce. And whan king Jonas sawe the great perill & daunger that he was in he was nye for anger out of his wit, and there with he set his hand on his sword and than Brisebar kept to him with a great leuer in his hande and sayde, sir king faire and softly not so hardy in thy head that thou ones styr, for and thou do thou shalt neuer speake word more with thine Emperour, than he held his peace and stode stil, for he saw wel that if he had moued he had bene but dead. Than Brisebar sayde, if thou hast any more to say speake and anoyd fast out of this presence if thou loue thyne owne lyfe.

Than the king Jonas sayde to the king of malogre and to the other Lordes of Fraunce and Britaine, sirs it is so the high and mighty puissant Emperour hath harde speaking of you how that ye be come hither with much people in harneis, for what cause he knoweth not, whether it be to be with him or against him, if it be for him and that ye wil come and dwel with him he wil giue you golde and siluer, rentes and landes and great possessions, and he wil loue and honour you in such wise that of reason ye shall holde

you

you right well content, and if you bee come to bee against him he would know it, to the intent that he will take counsaile what he shall doe against you, and in this behalf shewe me your mindes.

Then the king Alexander of Galagoe spake first and saide, Sir you seeme to be a wiseman, I knowe not what I should call you, for I knowe not your name, but this I saie vnto you, shew vnto your Emperour that he hath too little land, and is of too small a power, and hath too little store of golde and siluer to retaine to his seruice such people as we be, but if he will dwell with vs and serue vs truelie, let him come to vs and we shall doe right well for him, and if he haue no wife wee shall marrye him to one of our Damsells who hath bene long one of our launderys. And whē king Jonas heard him that he called him a wise man, and that he would marrie his Lord the emperour to a lurde Damsell, he was then so angrie for despite that hee was nigh in a great rage, and saide to king Alexander, Sir you haue an outragious heart to call me a wise man, and wold marrie my Lorde to one of your Damselles, and he is the most mightie Prince and most honoured that euer bare crowne of golde on his head, and moreouer you woulde haue him to come and serue you, therefore Sir I saie vnto you on his behalfe, that he shall be to morrow assembled against you with twentie thousand speares in his companie, therefore beware of him and of his, for in his name I defie you and all yours, and sir Dolphin to you I say, beware that you come not there, for and you do, I promise to take that head of yours cleane from your shulders, then he went to Brisebar and tooke him by the chin so rudelie that he made al the teth in his head to dash together, and said, by the faith ỳ I owe vnto the emperour of Inde, I shall neuer depart out of this country till I haue hanged thee by ỳ neck before Arthur, and all these Frenchmen ỳ be here present. And when Brisebar heard himself so rudely handled and so churlishly threatned, he gnashed his teth together, & stared with his eies as though he had ben mad, & therwith lift vp his

kener and gaue king Jonas therwith such a stroke betwen the sholders that he fel flat to the earth, and Brisebar dasht downe with his knees on his belly, and with a short knife he cut of a great part of the haire of his berde, wherewith king Jonas brayed and cried out a great pace. And the duke Philip did laugh thereat and sayde, sirs beholde what a good barbour Brisebar is, me thinketh he doth shaue very hard, behold how the heires come out rootes and all. Then Florence rose and sayd, friend Brisebar arise and let him alone for he is a messenger, therewith Brisebar departed from him, than the king arose and went downe the staires all ashamed, and so mounted on his horse and went to the emperours hoast, and by that tyme the sonne was farre drawen into the west. And when the Emperour saw king Jonas in that case he demaunded of him who had arayed him in that wyse.

And he answered, sir the French men in the blaunch foure hath thus arayed me, and ther he recounted to themperour how that they wold mary him to one of their lauenders, and would haue him to serue them. Ye saide the Emperour are they than of that mynd, than I commaund you that to morow next ye bete downe this castel, and that the harlot Florence be taken and brent and the ribaude Arthur hanged by the neck and al the remnaunt slaine. Than king Jonas said, sir I vndertake on paine of my head that al this that ye haue deuised shal be done to morow betimes, and so he went to his tent as for that night. Then the noble knights in the castel went to counsaile to determine how they shold do the next daye, for they knew wel that there should be battaile made to them. than maister Steuen said to king Alexander, sir I know wel that this king Jonas that lately departed from vs will make on vs a fierse assawte to morow next, therfore there is no more to do but now let it be seene what French men can doe, and if we holde them rudely at this beeginning they shall be the lightlier discomfited here after, nor also they will not so lightely againe assemble againste vs, therefore lette euery knight shewe forth the

best

best that they can do, and blessed be he that now shal do va-
liantly, for me thinketh that it were best that ye send for all
your people that lyeth without in the Tentes and let them
come into the Castell as priuely as they can without any
noyse, also conuay all their stuffe with them, for now all
this night the Emperours people will slepe faste, because
they think to fight to morow, and whan our people be come
into this castel let vs all kepe our selues in our harnesse as
priuely as we can, and than we shal let downe the brydges
and set open the gates, and so in the morning our enemies
shall think that we be all fled awaye this night for feare, &
then I think we shal se this king Jonas and all his compa-
ny come and enter into this castel, and as soone as they be
entred than we may slep to the gate and close it fast, and so
than they cannot escape vs, nor they that be without shall
not help them, for if we should go and issue out and fight in
the plaine fielde with them all we should haue ouer much
to doe, and by likelyhood lese many of our people, for they
be in numbre an hundred against one of vs, and whan we
haue slaine all them that shalbe entred within this castel,
than let vs set open the gates and let the remenaunt enter
who will, and if they will not come to vs we may go whan
we wil and loke on them in their tentes, and the more that
be dead the fewer enemies we shall haue. And when Flo-
rence heard the maisters counsaile it pleased hir right wel,
and saide how that she would that they should do as he had
deuised. Madame saide king Alexander, your grace not dis-
pleased we shal not doe thus, ye be daughter vnto a high &
a mightie puissant king, and I am also a king, and it were
shame for such people as we be to take our enemies closed
in a nette or trap, for rather we should go seke them in the
open fielde with banners displayed. Ye say right wel sayde
Florence, but sir they haue done against me more vilanie
and trespasse than this case is, for they be come hither into
my countrie and hath enclosed me here in my castel with-
out any reasonable cause, wherefore it is no shame to take
vauauntage of them if we can.

In the name of God auaunt said the Dolphin you say but truth, for it is good policy in war to spie auauntage on our enimies, so that ther be no treason in the case. wherfore let vs doo thus as is deuised. I am agréd therto said the duke of Britaine, for time inough hereafter we may issue out on them, but I promise you I will be the Porter and kepe the gate, & I shall giue them free entrie as many as will come without anie daunger, but at the going out of the Tauerne it shall behoue them to paie for their shot, for such shall enter that shall not finde againe their going out, then euerie Knight did laugh at this newe Porter, them Florence embraced him & said, a mine owne deere Lord and father, it appeareth right well that you bee of the stemme of Arthur your sonne, and so at the last they agréed all to this counsaile. Then Brisebar mounted on his horse and rode forth to the French hoast without the castle, and came to Sir de la Launde who had the guiding of them, and they two together did conuaie that same night all their hoast as couertly as they could into the castle, so that none of the Emperours people espied them, and they within the castle did rest them all that night, til it was neere on the point of the daie light, then they heard seruice, and after that ordered all their people, and the Duke of Britaine and all his companie kept the gate, and entered into the great vaults and sellers ioyning thereto, and kept himselfe priuelie and close without anie noise, & in the market place of the towne was the Dolphin, and in another streate the Earle of Forrest and the Earle of mount Beliall, and in another corner the Earle of Peuers and the Earle of Foys, and the young King of Galagores, maister Steuen, Arthur, Brisebar, & sir de la Round accompanied with fiue hundred of her knights kept the passage to the pallace, and Duke Philip and Duke Hector were in the pallace with Florence, and all these noble men and all their companie were readie armed, and all closed in chambers, sellers, and vaults, and so kept themselues close without anie noise making.

How

How that the Emperour and king Ionas, accompanied with fiftie thousand men of war, came to the cleere tower for to haue made assault thereto, and then they found the gate open, and entered both into the towne & into the Castle, for they thought verilie that all the French men had bene fled, but they were deceiued, for then the French men leapt out of their ambushments and shut fast the gates, and there slew King Ionas and all the fiftie thousand, so that none escaped aliue but one, and the Emperour who was taken prisoner. Chap. 104.

ON the morning when King Ionas saw the daie begin to spring, he leapt out of his bed and made to be cryed throughout all his hoast that euerie man should to harneis, to the intent to make assault to the cleere tower, then King Ionas assembled there together to the number of fifteene thousand persons, then there came to him a Knight & sayd, Sir, Florence and all the French men are fled awaie this same night priuelie, for the gates of the Castle and Towne standeth wide open, and the French men hath left behinde them much baggage ther as they were lodged without the towne. And when King Ionas heard that, hee had neuer so great ioy before, and said: I knew wel that as soone as they knew that I would come against them, they durst not for their lines abide anie longer, I am angrie with nothing but that Florence shoulde thus escape vs, then hee caused a great horne to be sounded, then there assembled about him on horsebacke well to the number of fortie thousand, & with great noise of Trumpets, Tabours, and Hornes, they rode to the Emperours Tent, who was as then risen out of his bed, and stode without his Tent, with great plentie of people about him, and as soone as King Ionas sawe him, hee alighted and sayde: Sir I am right sore displeased, for Florence and all the gallants of Fraunce are this night

priuelie fledde awaie, I am sure Arthur hath lead them into his Countrie, but Sir and it please you mount on your horse and go ride to the Castle and take the possession therof. and so shal you haue the conquest before King Emendus doth come, for when he is come you shall haue a great aduauntage of him, for then he shall be without and faine to lodge in the field, and you shall bee at your ease within the towne and castle. And when the Emperour heard how that Florence was escaped from him, hee was nigh out of his minde for displeasure, then he demaunded for his harneys, and so armed him and diuerse other with him, so what of his companie and of king Jonas, there were to the number of fiftie thousand, so the Emperour rode foorth with Banners displaied, and with great noise of Trumpets, Hornes, and Tabours, and came to the first gate of the Castle, then there the Emperour sawe the foundation of the great wals the which were right high and thicke, and the greate and deepe ditches full of water, and the gates richlie builded, mightie, and strong, and the sharpe cutting Port-cullises of bright Steele, also he beheld the high and mighty Towers pight full of wauering vanes, then he praised the castle so much in his heart, that he would not giue it againe for all the golde of the world, and then he saide to King Jonas, verilie this Castle pleaseth mee right well, I shall make it my chamber, he said trulier then he was ware of, for there died he in great mischiefe, and was buried in the Castle.

Sir said Jonas, heere you and I will take vp our lodgings, and thus oftentimes people speaketh of a thing that they knowe but little what the conclusion shall bee, then by aduenture as the Emperour looked in at a window of ỳ chiefe tower he had a blush of Florence, for as then hee was past the first gate and ward, then he sayd to her, a gentle Pusell make good cheere, for verilie you haue ỳ Emperour to your boast. And when Florence heard him saie so her hart trembled for feare and saide, a I weete loue Arthur, it is needfull this daie that you be the chiefe flowre of all Knightes, sweet heart deliuer me this day from this Emperour, and by that

time

time the Emperour with all his fiftie thousand were passed the gates and wards, and were come to the chiefe pallaice, then the noble and true Duke of Britaine rusht out of his ambush, and lift vp the bridge and closed fast the gates, and did put out his standards ouer the wall of the gate into the castle ward, and caused to be blowen a grisly Horne, then Knightes leapt on horsebacke on euerie side, then Arthur came downe out of the chiefe dungeon well mounted on horseback, well armed, and cried Britaine Saint Malo, then he broched to his horse and with great randon he dressed him to the Emperour, and strake him so rudelie with his spere, that he bare downe Emperour horse and all in a heape, then Arthur had thought to haue taken him, but he might not the preasse was so thicke. And when Arthur sawe that he was held so short with so great a number, he toke Clarence his good sword in his hand and did cut downe therewith all that euer he attained vnto. And when King Alexander and his companie sawe the noble prowesse of Arthur they toke on them great hardinesse, then King Alexander ranne and encountered King Jonas so rudelie that he slew cleane ouer his horse crouper and his legges vpwarde, and with his fall he had almost ouerthrowen the Dolphin, who laide on with his sword as a man out of his wit, & when he sawe King Jonas make a forke with his legs vpwarde, he lift vp his sword and strake him betweene the legges so rudelie, that his right legge flewe cleane into the fielde, and sayd, goe thy waie thou doting fole couer thine arse for shame, shame haue thou, and ther this King Jonas was all to be troden with horse feete, and the Emperour was so bruised with his fall, that nigh the chine of his backe was broken a sunder, and so was laide vnder a Pine tree on his shield and could not sturre to helpe himselfe. Then all the Earles and the Lord Beauiro, sir de la Launde, and Briesbar, dasht into the preasse, and did there such valiantnesse in armes, that they did in a manner with their enimies what they list themselues, for they were neere hand discomfited because of the fault of their Captaines, and so then they had

thinges to chuse whereupon he ran to the gate, but they the Giants were readie to receiue them, who thrust at them, & for the blowes strake off their heads, armes, and legges, that especiallie Arthur dealt wonderfull strokes about them, and beate downe all that euer he attained vnto, so that euerie man fled before him, so mate that pitifull rable abashed so much that all the Emperours hoste cleane discomfited and slaine, howbeit they endured many paine and labor at first, for they were a great number of people, & by that time it was about nowne, then Arthur and all his companie returned them and take their dinner, then they returned to the pallace, and as they went they sawe lying vnder a pine tree y Emperour, who had his thine sore hurted & almost broken, then Arthur caused him to be taire and easilie vnarmed, and made him to bee borne to the pallace, and to be laide in a faire goodlie chamber, and appointed sixe Knightes to waite and giue attendaunce on him, and ten Squiers to serue him, then Arthur caused all the best Surgions of the Countrie to be brought to him to heale him of his sore hurtes, and Arthur kept the Emperour as honourablie as a man ought to keepe such a person as he was.

Then Arthur saide to his companie, Lordes, what shall we do with yonder great boast that is without, for I think that if they once knowe that the Emperour be taken and King Jonas slaine, they will flie awaie, and so shall they escape from vs, therefore let euerie man giue aduise what is best farther to bee done. Merlin sir saide master Steuen my counsaile is, that in the highest tower in this castle that you set out the Emperours Banner displaied, to the intent that they without in the boast may see it, and then they will thinke verie that the Emperour hath wonne this place, & so then they will abide still and thinke themselues well assured, & as soone as euerie man of our companie hath dined let vs issue out with banners displaied & fight with them, for people without a gouernour are halfe discomfited, for they shall haue no heart nor power against vs, & let vs make

king

king Alexander our captaine and gouernour, for a king ought to gouerne an hoast, and then let vs doo so that king Emendus when he commeth may haue but little to doe. Then euerie man said how that the master had well aduised, and they agreed all so to doe, that euerie man went to dinner, and when they had dined euerie man cried to harneis, and so armed them, and they without in the hoast were right ioyfull when they sawe their Lords Banner displaied in the top of the Castle, and then king Alexander & Arthur ordeined that the Banner of Britaine shuld be in the waie ward, and that Arthur shoulde bee in the companie of his father the Dyke of Britaine, and next after him in battaile should be the Earle of mount Beliall, then the Earle of Nuers, then the Earle of Foys, and then the Earle of Forrest, next after the Lorde Beuteau, and then the Delphin, and then the Lord de la Lound and Sir Raisebar, and then last of all king Alexander their chiefe captaine, & master Steuen in his companie, and when all these noble men were thus set in good ordinaunce their Banners displaied, then Florence beheld wel their noble and high countenances, and praised him much in her hart & said, a gentle countrie of Fraunce right noble art thou, God keepe the therein and maintaine it, sith thou hast nourished vp such a noble companie of knights as here be now at this time present, so then they issued first out the banner of Britaine with the checkered armes, and so all other euerie man in good ordinaunce. And when the Emperines sawe them come forth, then they knew well how that the emperour and king Iomas were both slaine or taken, & they were so abashed, that they thought all to haue fledde awaie, then king Floines, brother to the Emperour, and king Brandales, and king Elmadan, cosin germaines to king Floines, mounted all on their horses, and rode all about their host and did encourage their people, then the king Floines called to him the Earle of the Ile Perdue, and commaunded him to ride against the French hoast, and demaunded of them what people they were, and what they would, to the ende them that

if they demaund battaile they should haue it on the mor-
dale next following without any faile, so that they will giue
truse in the meane space. Wolden the Earle rode straight
to the Duke of Britaine who was in the formost hunt, &
right nobly did salute him. And when Arthur saw him he
made to him right great ioy, and then the Earle desired him
that he would cause them to speake with their chiefe Cap-
taine.

Then Arthur brought him to the presence of King A-
lexander, then the Earle did his reuerence and saluted him,
and demaunded of the King for what contention he and all
his companie did approch so neere to the Emperours hoast.
Certainlie friend said the King it is so that you and your
companie be entered into the land pertaining to the gentle
Ladie Florence, and you haue wasted & exiled all her coun-
trie and subiects wrongfullie and without anie reasonable
cause, and you haue besieged and assalted her person in her
Castle without anie defiaunce made to her before, where-
fore we are readie in purpose to raise your siege & to driue
you out of this Countrie if we can. Sir quoth the Earle,
cause your hoast to tarrie and returne againe to your Ca-
stle, and King Florapes brother to the Emperour desireth
of you truse and respite of battaile till mundale next com-
ming, and then he promiseth you to deliuer you battaile
without anie faile, for as at all our hoast is sore troubled be-
cause of our Emperour, for we know not where he is, for
sir we see well that the Castle is not deliuered to him sith
we all for your readie to battaile, and he abiding behind and
all his, we know not where to seeke him. Certainlie sir
quoth the King, your emperour is within the Castle in
prison, and the chiefe of his battle hath broken a sunder, and
as for your King Yonas, he is dead and all that came with
them, for sir as for the respite that you demaund, I shall
take counsaile in that behalfe, and then giue you an an-
swere, then the King sent for all his Lords and shewed
them the requests of King Florapes, and desired them to
giue him counsaile in that behalfe, then the Duke of Bri-
taine

laine desired the master to giue first his aduise, then the master sayd, Lordes, it is of truth that this king Floripes is a cruell Prince and greatlie redoubted, for throughout all the Emperours lande the people will doe more for him then for the Emperour himselfe, and sirs you maye well see before you all the hilles and great valleies be full of men of warre, so that for one of our companie there is an hundred of theirs, and also though the emperour wer dead, yet these people are not without a Captaine as long as they haue with them this king Floripes, therfore my counsaile is let vs giue them this truse till mundaie, sith it cõmeth of their owne desire, for our people are right sore trauailed of the paine that they haue had this morning, and their horses be also right wearie and sore chased, and Sir there be many of our knightes and people sore wounded, so that they maye well take their rest the space of these foure daies, and so by mondaie euerie man and horse shall be well refreshed, how be it on the other side, I see well that as nowe their hoast is in a manner without anie ordinaunce, and in great trouble for the missing of their emperour, so that if wee should goe on them at this point, I thinke that wee shoulde discomfite them all, but we should haue no honour in that behalfe, for we should but discomfit people that wer but as halfe dead, therefore let vs accomplish their request, and on mundaie let vs assemble against them, and then if God giue vs the victorie, then our praise and honour shal be the more greater and more laudable. And when the master had thus deuised, they were all agreed to his saying. So the King Alexander graunted the truse to the earle till the mundaie following.

Then the earle returned and saide to king Floripes and to such other as were with him, Sirs it is so the French men hath graunted to you truse till mundaie next, and as for the emperour he is in prison sore wounded, and the king Jonas slaine and all their companie, but of one thing I assure you all, sith God first made mankinde there was neuer so goodlie a sort of men of warre assembled together as they

be,

be, and as God helpe me if we were halfe as manye more people as we be here alredie we could not endure against them, they order their battailes in so goodlie a maner. Hold your peace sir Earle said king Floripes, & if you be afeard flie awaie, for as God help me as soone as mundaie is come I shall neither eate nor drinke till I haue againe my brother the Emperour, and put them all to death by the sword, then he sent for all the noble men of the host and chiefe captaines, and toke their faith and trouth to helpe him in his quarrell. Then king Alexander and all his companie returned againe to the Castle and alighted at the gate, and there Florence met them and conuaied them vp in the pallace, and then she demanded of them the cause why they returned againe so soone without battaile. Madame sayd the Duke, it is so that king Floripes hath desired of vs truse till mundaie next comming, the which wee haue graunted him. In the name of God said Florence so be it, so then euerie man vnarmed them throughout all the Castle, and after they went and visited the Emperour and kept him companie, howbeit he was sore empaired because of the hurt that he had. Now let vs leaue to speake of them, & returne to Gouernar that was going on message into the Realme of Sorolois to king Emendus.

How Gouernar went into the Realme of Sorolois, to the intent to giue knowledge to king Emendus how that the Emperour had besieged his daughter Florence in her castle of Cleere tower, desiring him to haste his hoast to rescew her at that time. Cap. 105

When ỳ Gouernar was departed from Blaunch tower as you haue heard here afore, he rode so long till at last hee arriued at the faire Citie of Palestine, & there he heard tidings of ỳ mighty king Emendus, how that he had knowledge ỳ the Emperour had besieged his daughter in her Castle of Blaunch tower, wherefore he assembled his hosts together as fast as he might, to the intent to rescewe Florence his

daughter

daughter, and there it was shewed him how that the chiefe gouernour of his host was the king of Orquenie, who was put to the way ward with thirtie thousand halberts, & after him the king of Normall with other thirtie thousand, & then the king of Valefound with other thirtie thousand, & then the king of Ismaelite with other thirtie thousand, and then ỳ mightie king Emendus with an hundred thousand in his companie, & then there were of Duke Philips companie fifténe thousand, & of ỳ Ladie Margarets of Argentons companie fifténe thousand, who were brought by sir Emerie. And when Gouernar heard these tidings hee was right ioyfull, and so mounted on his horse, and rode so long till he came within a daies iourney of the Citie of Cornite, then he encountred ỳ king of Orquenies banner with a right noble companie, and so rode foorth and passed by all those great routs, at last he spied sir Ansel neuew to sir Nemelon, Florence marshall, & each of them embraced other, & so to them ther came sir Rowland of Bygot, and sir Wicer of Damason, and sir Artaude, and sir Morice of Fence, and all these were Florence knights, and knew well Gouernar and made to him great chére, and at last ỳ king of Orquenie came to them, and he embraced Gouernar, and to him made right great feast & chére, then Gouernar did alight, but the king made him to remount againe, and demanded of him how Arthur did. Sir qd Gouernar, he is at Blaunch tower, there I left him, and with him Duke Hector, Brisebar, and master Steuen, sir it is so that the Emperour hath besieged Florence in the Castle, and he hath with him people without number, & he had inclosed ỳ castle round about ere we entered, howbeit we entred by the subtill wit of master Steuen, but sir I am sure there is by this time w Arthur the most noble companie of all the world, for hee hath brought with him out of his countris the king of Valagore and foure earles, and foure barons, & also the mightie duke of Britaine his owne father, and they are well to the number of xv. M. knights of Fraunce of great price and valure, wherfore I think by this time they haue made some maner

of

of skirmish with their enimies, for they are hardy knights and courageous, and it is greate meruaile if they lie thus long still. Yea said the king, is Arthur then of that vertue and strength that he hath brought with him such people, as God helpe mee. I am right ioyfull thereof, now it shall bee well knowen if he be an Orphane in his owne Countrie or not. Sir sayd Gouernar, hee heartelie doth salute you, and desireth you to hast your people as fast as you can towards him for the reseewing of Florence. With a right good will sayd the king, with Gods grace we shall be ther by wednesdeie next comming at night, let vs goe and speake with my Lord the king of Norgalois, so they passed forth by the great hoasts, and Gouernar saide, beholde I thinke heere bee all the world of people, then much people demaunded tidinges of Arthur, and so did all the kinges in their owne proper persons, and so at last they approched ỳ great hoast of king Emendus, and passed forth by all the great routes till they came to king Emendus, and as soone as he sawe Gouernar his heart reioyced in his bodie, and embraced him and demaunded tidings of Arthur: Sir said Gouernar, I left him at the Blaunch tower, and there he recounted to the king how that they entered into the Castle, and shewed him how that Arthur had brought with him out of his Countrie the most noble companie of all the worlde, and also his Father the Duke of Britaine, and there hee shewed the names of them all, both of the king, earles, and Barons, whereof the king had great ioye, then the king of Orquenie sayde, Sir your daughter is not ill bestowed, I thinke he will defend her right well against the emperour. That is true quoth the king, but is there ante greate companie with these noble men. Yea Sir truelie quoth Gouernar, for ere I departed from them they had discomfited the Soudan and also his brother, with thirtie thousand Saracins of his companie. That is a great thing quoth the king. Sir quoth Gouernar, Arthur desireth your grace to aduaunce your hoast as hastelie as you can, and now Sir I will returne againe to Blaunch tower, for I thinke long to knowe the state of

my

my Lord Arthur, and so toke his leaue. Goe your waie friend quoth the king, and salute from mee my Daughter Florence and Arthur, and al such as be come with him, and thanke them on my behalfe for comming into this Countrie to the aiding of my daughter. Then the Archbishoppe embraced Gouernar, and so Gouernar departed, and hee & the king of Oquenay went together to his hoast. And when sir Anseau of Malesound knew that Gouernar would departagaine he said to ỳ king of Oquernie, sir my ladie Florence is besieged, wherefore I will by your lisence go with Gouernar and see my Lorde mine vnckle who is with Arthur. Then stept forth sir Miles and Sir Rowland of Bygor and Sir Viceer, and Sir Artaude, and Sir Morante, and they all demaunded lisence of the king to goe with Gouernar, and he gaue them all lisence, then they tooke their harneis and mounted on their horses and went foorth on their waie, and passed all the hoasts.

How Arthur accompanied with the French men discomfited king Floripes, brother to the Emperour, and slew all them that were in his companie.

Chap. 106.

SOn it was that the next daie after that the truse was taken Arthur rose vp earlie in the morning and entred into the pallace, and ther he found the Dolphin and the Lord de la Lound, and so each of them did salute other, then ỳ Dolphin sayd, verilie it anoieth me greatlie thus long to be closed in a mew, I would gladlie goe and sport me abroad in the fields, but first let vs goe take our harneis with vs because our enimies be so nere vs, and so they all three dide arme them, and Bryseban also, and mounted on their horses and issued out at the gates, & rode downe by a faire valley by the riuer side, till they were wel the space of a mile and a halfe from the castle, then ỳ Dolphin beheld well ỳ pleasant riuer & the good ỳ medowes on both sides, & praised much the countrie in his mind, then he dasht his spurs into his horse

and galoped downe along by the ryuer side tyl he came to a thicke wood, and whan he had thought to haue returned a-gaine, he perceiued a knight armed issuing out of the same wood mounted on a good horse, and came renning towardes him by great randon, and when the dolphin saw him he encountred him with such force that the knight brak his spere but the Dolphin strake him so rudely that he put his spere through his body, and so the knight fell downe dead. Then Arthur sayde to his company, I see well the Dolphin is a knight of great valure, and had scant finished his wordes but that he perceiued issuing out of the wood king Clamados with two hundreth in harnesse with him comming against the dolphin with great fiercenesse, and whan the dolphin saw that he dasht to his hors and toke his sword and strake so the first that he claue him downe to the teth, than all the remnaunt ran on him at all sides, but then Arthur rusht into the prese, and the first that he encountred he dasht his spere cleane through his body so farre that he wounded an other knight that was behynd him nye to the death, then he drew out his sword and layde on among them that wer in hand with the Dolphin, and gaue among them so great strokes that he cut of armes, heads, and legges, and beate downe knightes and claue asonder shældes and made great place afore him, for none approched nere him but that he receiued death & also the dolphin dyd as nobly as any knight could doe, and Arthur beheld him, and vnder his helme dyd laugh at his noble valure, then Brisebar and sir de la lound dasht in to the prese so rudely that eche of them beat downe his enemie, than they layde on with their swordes like two wylde Lions. And when the king clamadas saw his people so slayne with iiii. persons he was right sorowful & replet with yre and said if the other frenchmen be like these foure all the worlde cannot endure against them but by the faith that I owe vnto the Emperour I shall ryd one of them out of this mortal lyfe, and therewith he lift vp his sword and strake Brysebar so rudely that the gentil knight was nye stryken downe, for his hors with the stroke fel down on his

knees

knées, then there fell on him so many folkes that they drew him downe to the earth. And when the Lord de la Lounde sawe that, he began for to crie as fast as might, help Arthur for Brisebar is else lost, then the Dolphin espied that and rusht into the thickest of the preasse, and hee and Sir de la Lound did as much as the could to rescew Brisebar, but it auailed them not, for ther were to many on him, and so he was taken prisoner and deliuered to twentie men to keepe, and they ledde him forth out of the hoast right rudelie, and they vnarmed him and did beate him right ill. And when Arthur knew that Brisebar was taken and lead out of the field, he was right sorrowfull and sore displeased, then hee dasht into the preasse so rudelie that he confounded all that euer he attained vnto, and clane a sunder shældes, and vnbarred healmes, and vnnailed haulberts, and cut off heads, hands, and armes, and threw downe knightes, for none abode him without death, so that all fled before him, and he and the Dolphin and sir de la Lounde held themselues euer together in one front. And all this season Brisebar was led forth of the field till they came to the foote of a great mountaine, beating and ill intreating of Brisebar their prisoner, but it was not long after till they were displeased and sorrowfull, for within a little after they dranke of the same cup, for Gouernar, sir Ansell, sir Piles, sir Rowland, sir Vixier, sir Artude, and sir Morant the same time descended downe this same mountaine, for they were comming out of the Realme of Sorolois as you haue heard before. And when that Gouernar sawe those people deale so foule with Brisebar, his bloud trembled in his bodie for feare of Arthur, for then he doubted that the Blaunch tower had bene taken and destroyed, and his Lorde Arthur dead, then hee said to Sir Rowland, by Saint Marie I doubt me greatlie of my Lord Arthur, for yonder is some of our company that is taken prisoner, therefore gentle knightes helpe to rescewe him whosoeuer it bee, then Gouernar rode forth with great randon, and when he approched neere to them,

he knew right wel how that it was Brisebar that was taken prisoner, than he set his hand on his sword and layd on among them lyke a wolfe among a many of shepe and dyd cut downe and slew all before him, so within a while all the xx. knightes were all slayne, than Gouernar came to Brisebar and sayde, a friend it semeth well this people dyd neuer nourish you vp that thus foule & shamefully haue dealt with you, whereof I am right sory, and so losed him out of bandes. And when Brisebar sawe him he had right great ioy and sayde, a friend euer at nede a man shall knowe his friend, but for gods sake hast you to help my Lorde Arthur who is at great mischiefe here by this riuer side, for as help me God I am more sory for him than for my selfe.

And when Gouernar heard that he galoped forth incontinent and all his company after them, and as sone as they came to their enimies they found the lord de la lound ouerthrowen to the earth and taken prisoner, and was leading forth, and therewith Gouernar layde on round about him, and his company with him, and they bet downe knights on euery side, than Gouernar toke a horse and deliuered it to sir de la lounde, and in the spite of all his enemies he made him to remount, and then Gouernar went all about seking of Arthur, and sir Rowlande with him, and at the last they found him in the thickest of the prese, where as he did marualles in armes, and the dolphin did help him to the best of his power. And whan Gouernar sawe him he dasht in among them and frusshed downe all that euer he attained vnto, for he was a maruailous good knight and of great vertue, and sir Rowlande and his fellowes did help them to their powers, and Gouernar went before doing great meruailes. And when Arthur saw him his hart quickened and toke great pittie of the paine and labour that he sawe him take and endure so long, and therwith he layd on more rudelier than he had done before of all the day, for such was his maner the more he had to doe the more grew euer his strength and hardinesse.

Than came in sir Brysebar well armed and horsed,

for

for he had bene before at a good market where as he hadde choyse of the best, and he bare down his enimies before him by great hepes. And whan king Clamados saw his people so discomfited he tourned him selfe to flye & said to a knight that was by him, go & hast you to themperours hoast and bring with you iiii C. howbertes to succour me, and so the knighte rode as fast as he might till he came to king Floripes and to king Brandolyn who were seeking all about the hoast for king Clamados, but they could here nothing of him, wherewith they were greatly displeased, and at last the knight messenger came to them and saide to king Floypes, gentil king hast you to succour the noble king Clamados who is yonder by the riuer side, and he and his rompany are fighting with x. Frenchmen, who I think are out of their mindes, I beleue they be not earthly people, but rather fendes of hell, who are come for to destroy vs all, for I am sure they haue slaine by this time nye two hundreth of the best knights of king Clamados, and sir king Clamados his selfe is wounded in fiue places of his bodie, and without ye hast you the faster he is but either dead or taken. Verely friend saide king Floripes, and how is it they haue not slaine all these Frenchmen sith they be but x. persons. Slayne sir said the knight, nay speke not thereof, but sir praye to God to kepe you from mischiefe, and that they approch not to nere you when ye that medle with them, for ther is none that approcheth to thē with out death, sir hast you or els ye will leese your good king Clamados, than king Floypes commaunded a great grisly horne to be blowen, than al the hoast armed them hastely and mounted on their horses and toke their speres and shieldes and made so great bruite & noise that duke Philip as he was in the castel herd them, and loked out at a windowe and saw all the hoast arming them and mounting on their horses.

Then it was shewed him how that Arthur and the Dolphin, sir de la lound, and sir Wrisebar were issued out of the castel all armed and were ridden downe by the ryuer side, and whan he saw all the people of the hoast drawing the-

therwarde, hee thought well that there was some traie toward, wherefore he feared greatlie Arthur and his companie, then he caused the great watch horne of the Castle to be blowen three times, so that it was heard throughout the towne and Castle, whereby euerie man knew well that there was some new tidinges, wherefore they armed them and mounted on they' horses, then all the Earles, Lords, and Knightes did arme them and mounted on their horses, sauing the duke of Britaine, King Alexander, and the maister, who as then were not risen out of their beddes, and all these Lordes and Knightes with Banners displayed issued out of the castle, and they were welnigh to ỹ number of fifteene thousand in foure battailes well ranged and in good order, and they rode downe a long by the Riuer side, and Duke Philip rode formost, till at last he met with the first companie of the Emperours hoast, and they encountered rudelie together, and so both parties euer increased, so that there was betweene them a greate mortall battaile and a fierce, the Emperines were fortie thousand, and the other parte were but fiftéene thousand, howbeit they slewmanie of their enimies, and King Brandalyn was chiefe gouernour of the Emperours hoast, and in this meane season Arthur and his fellowes did so much that they cleane discomfited all King Clamados companie, then King Clamados was right sore displeased and ranne at Arthur, and strake him on the white shéld, for he thought that he woulde sette little by all his losse so that he might ouercome him, but the stroke rebounded again without doing of anie hurt, for the shéld was to hard for him to empaire it, and when the king sawe that he was nigh madde for anger, and therewith gaue Arthur another greate stroke, but it auayled him nothing, then Arthur strake at the king, who was afeard of his stroke, and thought to stoppe a little a side, but it was to late, for Arthur light so on him ỹ he claue his shield clean a sunder in the middest, and the stroke entered into his shoulder, and strake cleane off the arme from his bodie, and as the sworde did glaunce downe, it share also cleane away

the

the calfe of his legge, and when the king sawe that he was so sore wounded, he turned him and fled away as fast as hee might, and ten other with him, for there was no more left alive of his two hundred men, and yet they were all maymed and hurt, then king Clamados fleede till he came to the remnaunt of the Emperours host, whereas he founde king Flozipes, and there he fell down before him and said; A gentle king why doe you tarrie thus long, that you take not vengeaunce on these French gluttons who haue thus araied mee, wherefore king haste you, succour our people, when king Flozipes sawe him in y case hee was right sorrowfull and of ware a great oath and said that he would neuer eate till he had the heads of them that had thus ill araied him and broken the truse, then he commaunded hornes and Trumpets to be blowen, so that euery man within the hoast did arme them, and mounted on their horses, & made great noise and bruite, so that the Duke of Britaine as hee was in his chamber within the Castle heard well the great noise, & then he demaunded of his seruaunts what it might bee.

Sir said they, verilie it is our company that are fighting without in the field with the Emperours hoast, for Sir all the Lordes of this castle are issued out, saying you & king Alexander, whom I think be yet in his bed. By Saint Marie sayd the Duke, is not my Banner there among them. No truelie sir nor none of your men. And quoth the Duke I lese mine honour this daie, get mee my harneis, and so hastelie he armed him, and then hee entered into the chamber wherein king Alexander was, & recounted to him all this matter, then the king was right sorie that he had not gone forth with the host, so then he armed him & all his, & mounted on their horses, and so in good ordinance they issued out with banners displaied, and rusht into the battaile to helpe their companie, and when Arthur and his nine fellows had discomfited cleane king Clamados & his cõpany, he thought there had ben no more to do at ỹ time, & for then he demaunded if anie of his companie were hurt and sore wounded.

And they all saide, that blessed be God there was none of them that had anie great hurt, and therewith they heard great noise and dashing together with speares and swords, and heard crying Britaine. Well saide Arthur, I believe that our companie of the Castle be fighting with the host without, wherefore let vs goe helpe them, and by that time they had ridden a little waie forth, they sawe whereas the battaile was right fierce and cruell. Then Brisebar espied whereas King Floripes came towardes them with an hundred thousand men, and so shewed them to Arthur and sayd: Gentle knight and noble Lorde, and our chiefe soueraigne Lord, now it is needfull that you shew your noble valure in this iourney, for Sir beholde yonder commeth King Floripes and all the world of men with him. A noble king Emendus how is it that you come not to succour this noble companie.

Friend said Gouernar, bee you certaine that you shall haue by him shortlie noble helpe and succour, let vs leaue our talking and goe on our enimies, for as God helpe me I shall once goe through them or else I shall lie on the ground in the quarrell, for I doubt not death. Well Sirs saide Arthur, doubt not for all the worlde as long as I liue, but Sirs holde you euer close neere me, for I promise you, you shall see me ouerthrowe so many knightes that it shall be trouble to you to number them, let vs goe on them for we tarrie to long. Sir sayde the Dolphin, doubt you not of vs, for as long as we liue we shall neuer faile you, therewith they dasht into the preasse and ouerthrewe knightes by great heapes, but speciallie Arthur did wonderfullie, for he was then as fresh as though he had done nothing of all the daie before. Thus wee will leaue them fighting and returne to master Steuen in the castle, who knew nothing of all this matter.

How master Steuen by his art and cunning caused the Empetines to goe awaie with Arthur,

and

and so encountered the king Emendus and all his hoast. Chap. 107.

SO it was that when maister Steuen had layen in his bed as long as it pleased him, then he arose and went into the hall, and there hee founde Florence and the Ladie Margaret, and then he hadde great meruaile that he saw no bodie else, and demaunded of them where all the noble companie were become. And Florence aanswered him and saide, A gentle maister now is such businesse come that we haue great need of your help, for Arthur and all his companie are without fighting with the Emperours hoast, who are an hundred thousand, & our companie are but eightéene thousand, and also moreouer Floripes is comming on them with another hundred thousand, wherefore by all likelihoode our people will be destroied, wherefore gentle maister as you be sonne to a King helpe now our noble chiualrie by your learning. And when the maister heard these tidings hée went to his chamber and toke his bookes, and did so much by his cunning, that he raised a great mist in King Floripes hoste, so that each of them could scarce see other, whereby they lost their high waie to come on Arthur and his compenie, and toke the straight waie that the King of Orquenie and the greate hoast of the mightie King Emendus was comming, & ere they wist they? horses were neare together, then the King of Orquenies hoast spied and knew well by their Banners and Standards that they were of their enimies, then they ranne to their harneis and [illegible]oled their horses, and mounted on them, and the good King of Orquenie was cleane armed and well mounted on a greate mightie horse, and rode formost of all his companie, the which was well to the number of thirtie thousand, and next after him came the king of Normal with thirtie thousand. And when they were neare to their enimies, then the King of Orquenie ranne against king Brandalin, who brake his Speare all to peeces, but the noble King of Orquenie strake him so rudelie that he felt ouer his horse crouper and his legges

vpward, so that he laie a great space for dead on the earth, but at last he was receiued by his people, then begamne the battaile right cruell and fierce on both partes, and the King of Orquenie and the King of Norgmall did right valiantlie. Now let vs returne to master Steuen, who after, that he went out of his chamber and had caused this greate with to be in the Emperours hoast, he armed him and went downe into the Court of the pallace, and there he found readie a great and a mightie black horse, with redde eyen sparkling as fire, the which horse had neuer eaten prouender, and was bare on all foure fete, for he was neuer shodde, and then the master incontinentlie mounted on him, and as soone as the master was on his back he sodainly vanished awaie, so that Florence nor none that wer with her knew whare he was become, and sodainlie he was borne into the hoast whereas Arthur was fighting with his enimies, and as soone as the master was there, he blew such a blast that ther arose such a winde and storme in the Emperours hoast, that they lost thereby halfe their strength and hardinesse, then the master with his swoord in his hand dasht into the preasse, & gaue many great strokes, but his horse with his fet both before and behinde gaue such strokes, that he ouerthrew whosoeuer he touched, so that there was none that approched nere him but that the horse would run on him with open mouth and deuour him, so that euerie man fledde awaie before the master for feare of his horse, the horse would ioyne together his fete and leape into the middest of the preasse, and there he would lay on with his fete both before and behinde, and bite with his teth, so that he claue a sunder shields, & burst a sunder healmes, so that none durst abide him, and Arthur and his companie when they saw the master and his horse they laughed at him a great pace, then the foure earles and the Britons made place before them, and speciallie Arthur aboue all other did mernailes in armes, and in conclusion they did so much that their enimies fledde before them, and they followed after them and slewe so many of them that they were all cleane discomfited, for they saw well they had

had no succour, and hadde great meruaile where the king Floripes with his hoast was become, that he came not to succour them, then Arthur caused a great horn to be blowen and called together his people about king Alexander, and so then tooke counsaile to retourne againe to the Blaunch tower, then they sawe the master comming to them from the high mountaine on his horse braying like the wind, and when he was come to them he said, Sirs quite your selues well, and shew that you be noble men, come out of the gentle Countrie of Fraunce, for it is so that the noble king of Orquenie and the king of Normall are beyond yonder mountaine fighting with king Floripes, and there are but forty thousand against an hundred thousand, wherfore they are sore ouermatched, for Gods sake let vs goe and succour them. And when Arthur heard that he was as fierce of hart as a raging Lyon, and sayd to king Alexander, gentle king let vs goe shortlie and helpe these gratious kings, certainly I had rather die then they shoulde suffer anie hurt, one of them is cosin Germaines to the faire Florence. Certainlie friend Arthur said the king, I am content with al my hart, then they called their people together and went forth with good ordinaunce and Banner displaied, and such as were wounded and hurt returned to the Blaunch Tower, and so they rode forth such waie as the master lead them, til at last they came to the battaile, then the master dasht his spurs to his horse and rode into the hoast, then his horse beganne to fight with his feete, and to bite with his teeth, then Arthur and his company did laugh at him, then Arthur, Duke Philip, and Gouernar dasht into the prease, and the first that Arthur encountered withall he strake him so rudelie that he claue him to the shoulders, and from another he tooke his head, and so he laide on round about him, and confounded all that euer he attained vnto, then the good king Alexander and the noble Duke of Britaine and all ỳ other Lords rusht into the prease, then there began a fierce battaile. And when the Dolphin saw the noblenesse of Arthur and his companie, he tooke on him thereby great hardines,

then

then he broched his horse with the spurs and dasht into the preasse, and his enimies assailed him on all partes, but he defended him lyke a good knight, but there were so manie against him that they slew his horse vnder him, then he leapt on his feete and slew and drawe downe many knights with his sworde, but at last for all that euer he could doe he was taken prisoner, and when Gouernar saw that he dasht into the preasse, and the first that he encountered he clawe him to the earth, and from another he strake off the arme harde by the shoulder, and so laide on round about him, and after him went Sir Neuelon and Sir Rowland of Bygor, and didde right valiauntlie, but there were on them more then fortie, and they helde them so short that they could not aide the Dolphin, and when Sir Brisebar sawe his companie in that case, then he went into the preasse and closed himselfe iust to Gouernar, and betweene them they slew many of their enimies, for they kept them so close together that no man could part them, at last master Steuen sawe them in that case, he rusht in with his horse and did such wonders, what with his handes and with his horse, that his enimies fledde from his strokes and sayde, shame haue such a Juggeler that hath taught his horse thus to daunce, let vs flie from this feast, shame haue he that giueth him anie thing, we are but dead and we abide him, therfore let vs leaue him, hanged may he be that brought him into this Countrie, therewith they departed and fledde awaie from the Dolphin, then one knight came againe to the Dolphin, and caused him againe to mount on a good horse, and did put themselues againe into the battaile, then Sir Ansell strake so rudelie a knight that he fell downe starke dead.

And when king Brandalin sawe that he was right sore displeased, and strake Sir Ansell so rudelie that bee put his sworde cleane throughout his bodie more then a spanne, therewith the gentle knight fell downe to the earth right dolorously hurt and wounded. And when Duke Yuor sawe that he was right sore displeased, for he thought he

had

had bene dead, then hee ranne at King Brandalin, & strake him with his sword so furiouslie that he made his head lie to the earth and saide, O vnhappie King thou hast taken from vs a right noble Knight, but now thou hast paied for the mends I claime thee as quit, then the King of Orquenis who had well seene Hector doe that daede, he said, a gentle Knight blessed be that wombe that bare thee, for verilie you can well reuenge your friend, then there began greate sorrowe in the Emperours hoast for king Brandalin, then much people of them drew together to beare the dead King out of the battaile, and Arthur caused sir Ansell to be borne to the Blaunch tower to Florence, and there his woundes to be searched.

And when Floripes heard tidings that king Brandalin was slaine, and sawe his people so slaine and wounded, hee was for sorrow angrie and nigh out of his minde, and therwith he ranne at a knight of the king of Morrualls with a great speare, and pearced him cleane throughout the bodie, and so he fell downe dead, and with his sword he strake of the head of another, and the third he ridde out of his lyfe. And when eht gentle king of Morrnall sawe his people so slaine, he ranne at king Floripes and gaue him a greate stroke on the sheeld, but the stroke did him but litle hurt, but then the king Floripes gaue him such a stroke that he claue his shoulder downe to the saddle, and therewith hee fell downe dead, then began there great sorrow among his companie, for he was a right noble and gentle king. And when Arthur sawe that he was neuer so sorrowfull before for anie thing that euer came vnto him, and therewith in a great rage he beganne to flourish with Clarence his good sword, & gaue king Floripes such a stroke on high on the healme, that he claue him cleane a sunder downe to the saddle, so that he fell a sunder in two parts, and when his people sawe that they were so abashed that they had no power longer to defend themselues but little, so then Arthur and Hector slewe of them euen as they list, so thus they were cleane discomfited, and so they fled awaie and saued themselues

selues as well as they might. Then the gentle King of Orquenie came to the place whereas the dead bodie of the noble king of Norgall laye, and wept for sorrow and sayde, certainlie my heart is heauie for your death, a gentle King of Norgall, this warre was euill begun for you, all truth bountie, and beautie was in you, certainelie he had a hard heart that thus slew you, therewith hee alighted from his horse, then king Alexander came to him and all the other Dukes, Earles, Barons, and noble Knightes, and they all made right great sorrowe, then they dressed foorth the dead bodie and did send it to the Blaunch tower. And when Florence heard of the great sorow that they made, she was in greate feare of Arthur, and the Ladie Margaret hadde great doubt of the matter, till at last shée was certified that it was for the death of the King of Norgall, whereof shée was right sorrowfull, and caused the dead bodie royallie to be laide on a rich Bere in the middest of the Quére of the Church.

Then the King of Orquenie sent to the mightie King Emendus foure Knightes in message, certifiyng him howe that they hadde a greate battaile, wherein the good king of Norgall was slaine, and of the Emperours part how that King Brandalyn, king Clamedos, and king Floripes be al thre slaine, and the Earle of the Ile Perdue taken prisoner and maimed for euer, and so then these messengers departed, and then the king of Orquenie caused his Tent to bée pight vp a little beside where as the battaile was, there to abide the comming of king Emendus, and kept still in his companie the king Alexander of Galagore, and the Duke of Britaine, and the Earles and Barons returned to the Blaunch tower to kéep it, and to beare companie with Florence.

How the Emperour died in prison for sorrowe when he knew that his Kings and people were all slaine and discomfited. Chap. 108.

So it was that when the king of Nozmalls bodie was brought into the Church within the Castle, there was made great sozrow in all the citie and castle, insomuch that the Emperour as he lay in his bedde sozе sicke, he heard the great sozrowe that was made without in the Castle, foz he empaired euerie daie mozе and mozе, and as he laye, then he demaunded what it was, and wherfozе that great noise without was made, and then it was shewed him how that it was because of the death of the King of Nozmall, who was slaine by King Flozipes. Yea said the Emperour, and how doth King Flozipes, I charge you tell mee the truth. Sir said hee, foz Gods sake enquire no mozе of that matter till you be perfectlie whole, I will not said the Emperour, I will know it, but then he said to a subiect of his owne that was ther with him, I charge thée to tel me the plaine truth, Sir sith it please you I shall tell you the plaine truth, it is so indeed that all your people are destroied, and your brother king Flozipes, and all your other kings are all slaine, and when the emperour heard that he had so great sozrow, that he closed his teeth together and cast his handes abzoad, and therewith his heart did rive a sunder, and so died foz sozow, and then such as were about him made a greate crie, then Flozence and the Duke of Britaine went into the same chamber, and there they found the Emperour dead, then the Duke of Britaine sent foz king Alexander, and the king of Dzquenie, and foz all the other Lozdes and Barons, and when they were all together then they apparailed the Emperours bodie, and conuaied it to Church, and laid him by the king of Nozmall, and also thether was brought the bodie of king Flozipes, and laid by them, then incontinentlie there went a messenger to king Emendus, and by that time the first messengers were come to king Emendus and said to him, Sir the Emperour is in prison and all his hoastes discomfited, and all his kinges dead and slaine, then the king demaunded who hadde done those noble deedes. Sir sayde hee, as God helpe vs that hath such knightes done as Arthur brought hether with him,

for Sir in all your life you neuer sawe such knightes nor more to be doubted, ther is nothing that can endure against them, but Sir all the world speaketh of Arthur and his cosin Hector, for Arthur all onelie by his noble prowesse hath made an end of all his enimies, howbeit Sir there is one great mischiefe fallen vnto your grace, for the good king of Normall is slaine by king Floripes, but incontinentlye Arthur slew him and claue him a sunder in peeces, & when king Emendus heard of ỹ death of his good king, hæ could speake no word of a great space, and when he might speak he sayd: A gentle knights heart true and honourable to all people, alasse that I haue thus lost you, certainelie it forethinketh me, a Emperour shame haue you sith you haue taken from me my noble and true companion, certainelie I shall take vengeaunce on you as soone as I shall see you, and as ha was thus talking there came to him the last messenger, & sayd: Sir the king of Orquenie doth certifie you that the Emperour is dead. And howe is he dead quoth the king, certainlie Sir quoth the knight, when he heard of the death of his brother king Floripes, and of his other kings, and that his hoast was cleane discomfited, he died for sorow as he that was fore sick before because of ỹ hurt that he had in his backe. Well quoth the king, then I am reuenged on him for my king, howbeit I would he were aliue againe & all his, so that I had againe my good king of Normall, goe your waie againe to the king of Orquenie, and saie that I desire him to ordeine all things in a readinesse to burie the bodies of the Emperour and of the king of Normal, of king Floripes, of king Brandalin, and of king Clamedos, and shew him how that I will bee to morrowe next comming with him, there to do the obseruance of their burying, then the king sayde to his brother the Archbishop, dere brother goe to the Blaunch tower, and prouide right highlie for the burying of these kings according to their estates, and your selfe this night saie the obseruaunce that belonged to their Obsequies, and by Gods licence I shall be ther tomorrow by seruice time.

Sir

Sir sayd the Bishop, I shall fulfill your commaundement with a right good will, and so he departed and went to the Blaunch towre, and then Florence came to him and sayde, mine owne good uncle and friend you be right hartly welcome, then the king of Orquenie and king Alexander, and all other Earles and Barons welcommed him, and when he was chaunged, he and all his garde together went to the Church, and there the Bishop did all the obseruance and all the ceremonies, and there was ordained five rich Beres, and five rich crownes of gold hanging ouer them with banners and coate armours, beaten with the coulours of theyr armes, and when the Bishop had done all the seruice ouer the bodies, then they returned againe to the Pallace and so rested them till the next daie.

How that King Emendus came to the Blaunch towre with all his noble companie, to the burying of the Emperour and of the other foure kings. Chap. 109.

THE next daie betimes king Emendus and all his hoast mounted on their horses, & toke the waie to the Blanch Towre, and commaunded that all his hoast should goe in good ordinaunce as they were wont to doe, with Banners and standards displaied as though they shoulde enter into a battaile if neede were, and then he sent for the King of Orquenie to the Blaunch tower, and for all his hoast, and as sone as the king of Orquenie knew of the king Emendus pleasure hee departed from the Blaunch tower and went to the king, then incontinently the king commaunded him that he shuld arme him and all his, for he said that he would that the French men shoulde see the fiercenesse of his power, so then the king of Orquenie and his companis went into the fore front, & in this manner the king Emendus came toward ỳ Blaunch tower like a mightie puisant king, to the intent that he should be the more praised of the French Lords, & there was leaning at a window of ỳ castle Florence, king Alexander, the Archbishoppe and the Duke

of Britaine together, euer looking for the comming of king Emendus, and at other windowes there stood Arthur, Hector, Duke Philip, and the foure Earles and foure Barons, and the Dolphin, and the marshall of Pyrpoys, and all the other Knightes of Fraunce, and at last they saw comming downe a great hill the banner of Dequenie wauering with the winde, bearing therein a field of golde enrailed with azure, a barre of golde with a Lion rampant of golde, & then they heard Trumpets, Hornes, and Tabours blowing merilie, then they sawe croſſ-bowes and morris-pikes on foote to a great number, and Knightes on horſebacke well raunged and in good ordinaunce, with many standards and Ensignes wauering with the winde, greate horſes braying and beating with their feete, shields and helmes shining against the Sunne, and then next after came the boaſt of the good King of Normall weeping and making great ſorrow without anie Banner ſauing a little gitrene of Sendal of black colour, & euerie Knight of that companie bare their ſpeares & the heads downward, & the ſmall end of their shields vpward. And when ỳ Archbishop ſawe them comming in that manner, he had ſo great pitie ỳ he wept for ſorrow, & Florence alſo could not kéep her ſelfe from weeping, & all other had great pitie of ỳ companie, for it ſeemed well to them ỳ they wer right ſorowful & without a Lord. And after these people came ỳ King of Ismaelites bold with his banner diſplayed, wherin was beaten a liberd of paſſing azure crowned with gold, barred with flowres de Luces of ſiluer, their people wer of a fierce countenance, & made great noiſe with hornes & tabours, and they rode in good ordinance wel ranged in battaile. After them came the Banner of Argenton, béeing in a field of Azure, a Knight armed with golde, on a horſe of ſiluer, and Sir Emerie was chiefe leader of that companie, and ſo ſoone as the Lady Margaret ſaw her banner, ſhe ſaide to Florence, madame my people haue not yet forgotten you. Truely faire Ladie quoth Florence, they be right goodly to beholde, and ſeemeth well to be people to good right good ende, and as they looked farther they ſawe wher-

as the Clemonsoe came riding with duke Philips Banner, bearing golde and grene medled together, powdered with Roses of azure, then Duke Philip saide, yonder I see my Banner. Verelie quoth king Alexander, right greate and mightie is that king that may haue such people at his commaundement; then they saide where came the Banner of the King of Walesound, father to master Steuen, and hee bare a field vert with crownes of golde and chaplets of siluer. And last of all came the rich Banner of King Emendus, wherein was a great flaming Dragon, and then there came so much people that all the earth was couered with them, and there were so many standards and tokens that a man might saie that all the world was comming, then king Alexander and his companie said, where were all these people found that belongeth to this king, it seemeth ye hee hath brought all the world with him. The Florence said to king Alexander, Sir me thinketh it were well done that you and your companie did mount on your horses and go and meete my Lord and Father, Sir he will take it for a great honour and doue. Verely madame qd the King, you haue said like a noble Ladie, and so shal we do, then mounted the King & all the other Earles, Barons and Knights with anie harneis, then king Alexander & the duke of Britain rode together, & the Archbishop Arthur, and so all the other Lordes, two & two together, and they were so goodlie to behold that euerie man had merueile of them, & so they passed by all the companies tilthey came to king Emendus, who receiued them all right louinglie, & thanked them greatlie of the great aide y^t they had done to Florence his daughter, the king Alexander rode on the vpper side of king Emendus, & the Duke of Britaine on ye other side, & so they rode forth till they came to the Blanneh towre, & there they alighted, then Florence came to ye king her father, & they embraced each other, & the king said, faire daughter, you haue a good Lord that so gentle a companie hath brought with him out of his Countrie, and I see you be full well bestowed, then king Emendus tooke the duke of Britaine by the hand, & so they two went

together to church and there was done the seruice for themperour and for the other kinges ful solempnly and ther they wer enterred with great honor, and after that Arthur caused a faire churche to be edified in the same place where as the good king of morial was slaine and there he founded a lodge of .xiii. chanons and eche of them to haue thre hundreth marke of yearely rent, and when all these forsaide obseruaunce was done the king Emendus commaunded that al his tents and paulions shoulde be pight vp without the castell, the which was done incontinent, and their diner was purueied for in the same place, and the king Emendus and king Alexander and the duke of Britaine sate them downe together at one table, and all other kinges and princes sate downe at an other table euery man after his estate and so ther they were serued right richly, and Florence remained still in the castel, and his vncle the archbishop, duke Philip and the master were with him, and whan king Emendus had dyned he called to him Arthur and sayd, Arthur ye haue won on these emperiens great treasure and riches, wherfore cause them to be gathered together and depart them among your knightes where as it shall please you best, and there as ye shal think them wel employed. My Lord sayde Arthur with a right good will, and so than Arthur departed such riches as was won in the felde, in such wise that euery man helde him selfe well content, and euery man said noble knight Arthur God encrease your bountie and honor and God giue you good life, for we haue a rich and a noble Lord of you, than Florence and the bishop came out of the castel to the kinges tent, and as sone as king Alexander saw him he rose vp on his feete and put of his cap and brought him to his father, than the king his father toke him by the hande & set him down by him and said, faire daughter we haue bene right sore displeased for the death of your people, therfore it is now time that ye reioyce vs as in taking of Arthur to your Lord and husbande for we be accorded thereto, and I will that ye shal go to Sabary, and there ye shalbe wedded. Sir said Florence all shall be at your pleasure, how be it for

if it please your grace I will first go to the Port Noire, for there is the Dutchesse of Britaine, mother to Arthur, and all these other Ladies wiues to these noble Lordes that bee come with Arthur, & sir I shall bring them into this Countrie, and doe them such honour as I canne, as I thinke they will doe to me if I were in their Countrie. And when the King her father heard that he smiled and said, faire daughter Florence it pleaseth me right well, goe your wayes to morrowe, and the King of Orqueny, Duke Philip, and Arthur shall go with you, and for the loue of them I shal meet with you and them at Argence. And when the Ladie Margeret heard that the King would go to Argence, she sent hastelie sir Emerie to apparell her pallace, to receiue the king and his companie right honourably, and gaue licence to her hoast to returne home, so they were all that daie in greate toy and sport, and bare great honour to king Emendus, and to all his, thus they passed forth this night.

How after the discomfiture of the Emperour and all his people, the king gaue licence to all his hoast to depart euerie man home, and went himselfe to Argence, there to make the wedding betweene Arthur and Florence, & how that Florence went to the Port Noire, to make cheere to the dutches of Britain & to the other Ladies, and to bring them to Aegence to her father king Emendus. Cap. 110.

ON the next morning the king Emendus rose and gaue licence to all his host to depart, and he put himselfe forwards on his iourney toward Argence, and toke with him king Alexander & the duke of Britaine, & al the other earles and Barons, and brough them throughout diuerse of his cities and castles, and made them right great cheere & feast, and also Florence rose that same daie betimes, and entered into her chariot, & toke with her the Quéene of Orquenie, and the faire Ladie Margaret, & after her there were other three Chariots full of faire Ladies and Damsells, and Gouernar

uernar and Sir Neuelon were chiefe rulers of her house-holde, and the king of Orquenie, Duke Philip, Arthur, and the master kept her companie, and so they rode forth together till they came to the Port Noire. Then Arthur, Brisebar, and Clemenson, were sent somewhat before to shew the Dutchesse of the comming of the faire Ladie Florence, daughter to the mightie Emendus king of Sorploys, and to make purueyance for her comming, so they rode forth so farre till at the last on a Saterdaie at night they arriued at the Port Noire, then they alighted and mounted vp to the pallace, & then they found ỹ dutchesse & all the other Ladies in the chappell hearing of euensong, each of them praying for their Lord for they war in great doubt of them, for they heard no manner of tidinges of them. And as sone as the dutchesse saw sir Brisebar then her heart came to her. And then sir Brisebar kneled downe on his knee, but the dutches would not suffer him to kneele no time, but raised him vp, and then she demaunded what tidings of the duke her husband. Then Iehannet kept forth to beare some tidinges of Arthur, then Brisebar said, madame my Lord the duke doth right wel, and he doth salute you by me, he is with my Lord the king Emendus, who doth to him right greate honour, and to all your other Lordes and knightes, and also madame my Lorde Arthur your sonne dooth humblie recommend him to you, as he that is the best knight and most honoured of all the world, and to you faire damsell Iehannet, he recommendeth him, and know you for certaine that within these eight daies as he shewed mee, he will put you vnto greate honour, therewith Iehannet cast downe her loke to the earth and gaue a great sigh. Madame sayd Brisebar to the duchesse, beholde yonder the gentle Florence, daughter to the noble king Emendus who is comming hether to you, and bringeth with her the king of Orqueny her cosin, and special friend to my Lord Arthur your sonne, and also duke Philip of Sabarie, Arthur, Hector, and master Steuen is with her, and all the people are comming to see you, and to bring you to the mightie king Emendus

vnto

vnto the citie of Argence, and there I think shal be the mariage betweene Arthur your sonne and the noble Florence, a good lord saide the duchesse I thanke thee sith thou hast giuen me such a childe that doth me so much honour. Sir Bryfebar sayde Jehannet is this my lorde Arthurs loue that is comming hether. Ye truely faire loue saide Bryfebar. Certainely sayde Jehannet I would gladly se hir, I shall serue and loue hir with a good heart, yet notwithstanding I had rather haue had Arthur to haue beene my louer than hirs, so they past forth the daye and night, & in the morning there came messengers before that shewed how that Florence would be there at dinner, than the duches and all the other countesses, ladies and damosels dyd aray them right freshly, and mounted on their palfraies and rode to encounter Florence. And at the last Bryfebar saide, madame yonder commeth Florence out of the forrestes side, and at the same time the king of Orqueney and Arthur had a flight at an Heron with a gerfawcon so that all the ladies had sight therof. And whan Florence knew that it was the duches that was comming toward hir, she descended out of hir charict, and the duches did alight from hir palfray, and embraced eche other with great ioye and feast than Florence sayde, madame ye be right heartely welcome into my country as she that I am most gladdest to se of all women lyuing. And whan the duches saw hir she marueiled greatly of hir great beautie and toke hir by the hand & saide, mine owne deare ladye blessed be the houre that euer ye were borne, for there is not in all the world againe none so gentil & so faire as ye be. Madame saide Florence ye say as it pleaseth you, but how so euer it bee I am and shall be your daughter and faithful louer, for your son Arthur is geuen me by the king my father, and so with Gods grace he shall be my Lord and louer. And when Jehannet heard that, hir heart trembled, how be it when she sawe Florence come so richlie and that she was of so great beautie, she wished in hir hart that Florence hadde beene foure and twentie yeares elder than she was, for it greeued hir right sore euen inwardly to the hart

the assurannce of her and of Arthur, howbeit shée helde her selfe content becaûse of the greate honour and profite of Arthur, and therewith she went to Florence and embraced hir and said, madame right high honoured Quéene, of you wil I make mine owne déere loue the flowre of all other, the gentle Arthur. And when Florence heard her she demaunded of the Dutchesse what she was, and what she meant by her saying, then Florence and the Dutchesse sate downe together, and there the Dutchesse recounted to Florence all the whole matter as it was of Arthurs first wife, and howe that Iehannet was sent for into the Forrest, and how that she had alwaies loued Arthur, and called him euer her Lord and déere loue, and kept her selfe true to him.

How Florence becaûse of the doubt that shee had least that Iehannet should take from her Arthur, she gaue her to Gouernar, and gaue them the Realme of Mormall, & caused them to be assured together the same houre, and also the same time shee caused the Ladie Margaret to be assured to master Steuen. Cap. 11.

When Florence had well vnderstood the wordes of the Dutchesse concerning Iehannet and Arthur, then in her minde shee doubted least that Iehannet should let the loue betweene her and Arthur, then she aduised her selfe and prouided therefore right sagely, then she called to her Arthur and the king of Orquenie, Duke Philip, and the master, who sate them downe all together in a companie, and there she desired the dutchesse to recount before them all the whole matter betwéene Arthur and Iehannet. And when the king of Orquenie had heard all the matter, hee had great ioy & smiled thereat right sweetly & said to Iehannet: and God helpe me faire damsell you haue right well deserued that my lady Florence doe to you much honour and good, trulie if she doe not. I shall prouide for you right highlie for the loue of the noble Arthur. Uerilie sayde Florence, by the grace of God I shall make her a great Ladie, call to mée Gouernar,

and

and incontinent he was brought to hir, then he kneled downe before hir. Then Florence saide to the duches, madame by the faith that ye owe to your lord the duke of Britaine and to your sonne Arthur here being present, and by the saluacion of your soule tel me the trouth whether that your sonne Arthur and his knight Gouernar be any thing of kinne and lignage together. As help mee God madame qd the duchesse they are nothing of blod nor kinred, how be it I would also that Gouernar were my sonne for he were wel worthy, for he is a right noble knight, and hath serued my sonne Arthur right nobly and truely, wherefore I am sure my sonne Arthur will remember him when that he seeth time.

Well madame sayde Florence wee shall on our parte remember him, and than she saide to Gouernar, sir I am well and credibly enfourmed that ye haue serued Arthur wel and truely and nourished and kept him vp in his youth right wel & nobly, therefore it is reason that now he make you somewhat amends, and to you faire damosel Jehannet ye haue alwates wel and faithfully loued Arthur, wherfore ye shall in likewise haue amends made to you, than she toke Jehannet by the hand & saide to Gouernar, sir knight here I giue vnto you this fair damosel Jehannet to be your wyfe and spouse for euer, and to you Jehannet I giue Gouernar to be your lord and husband, wherefore I will that eche of you do ensure other here before me. Madame quoth Gouernar I thanke your grace, sith it pleaseth you I am content, how be it madame in no wyse wil I do it without I haue the licence of my lorde Arthur. Then Arthur saide it pleaseth me right wel for I am content sith it pleseth my lady Florence, than a chaplaine of the lady Florence did ensure them together, than Florence said to Gouernar, friend now haue ye a wife without lande, wherefore here in open audience I giue vnto you and to your heires for euer the noble realme of mornal, and thereof I make yau King & Lord, so that ye holde it of Arthur to whome I will that ye go and doe him homage, than Gouernar dyd his feaute to

Arthur, and Arthur receiued it with his eyen full of water for ioy that he had. And when the Dutchesse sawe Gouernar in that great honour she wept for ioye, then Gouernar returned to Florence and thanked her right humblie, then the King of Orquenie said to Florence, my right deere Ladie and cosin, as God help me you haue done right well and honourablie, for you might not better haue employed your Realme of Normal then you haue done, and then he imbraced Gouernar and saide, Gouernar I promise you that you shall haue faithfull counsaile and helpe of me and of mine, and in like manner so did all the other Kings promise him, and so then euerie man bare him honour as they should do to a King.

Now Lordes quoth Florence, yet haue I not done all that I woulde doe, but nowe sith I haue begunne I will make an end, then she called forth the faire Ladie Margaret of Argenton and master Steuen and sayde, you two haue serued me right faithfully and trulie, whereof I thank you both, then shee toke the Ladie by the hand & said, mine owne gentle Ladie you haue borne mee faith, loue, and honour, and I weete company, and you haue bene euer right neere of my counsaile, wherefore madame heere I giue to you my friende and my Clarke, and gentle knight master Steuen, who hath kept and nourished me since the beginning of my youth, and knowen the secretnesse euer of my heart, and euer he hath borne the key of steadfastnesse, faire ladie I giue him vnto you, hee is sonne to a King and shall be a King if hee liue, as hee that is the most amiable Clarke, I weete, sage, curteous, honourable, and true in all points, and to you master I saie you shall haue my iewell, wherefore loue well this Ladie Margaret I praie you if you will be my friend and louer, and I giue vnto you my friend and louer. Then the master kneeled downe and thanked Florence, then the noble marquesse stept forth who was vncle and gouerner of the Ladie Margaret, and thanked Florence with all his heart, then Florence called to her Duke Philip, and sayde: Friend I praie you retourne a-

gains

gaine battelie to the King my Father, and shewe him how that I haue disposed the Realme of Normall and the lande of Argenton, and desire him that he will send me his confirmation in that behalfe vnder his great seale.

Then Duke Philip toke his leaue & departed, and rode to King Emendus and recounted to him al that Florence had commaunded him. And when the King heard all that he was right ioyous for the lous of Arthur, and so was all the Court, so then the king did confirme all Florence desire, and did send vnto her his Letters patents sealed vnder his great Seale, and then Florence was mounted into her chariot, and the Queene of Orquenie, and the Dutchesse, and Jehannet with her, and the Countesses rode each by other next to the Chariots. Then the Countesse of Neuers sayd to the Countesse of Forrest, this noble Ladie Florence hath done right wiselie and noblie to make these marriages. That is true quoth the Lady of Forrest, she hath done it to the intent that Arthur should not resort to Jehannet other wise then reason and honestie would be. Then the Ladie Rollylon sayd, you nowe Florence shall suffer their companie in all honour, and right, thus these Ladies rode forth talking till they came to the Port Noire, whereas they were foure daies in great feast and ioye, and there euerie date Gouernar talked of his marriage, and passed the time in honour with his Ladie Jehannet, and the maister in lyke manner with his Ladie Margaret, I sayd how that it was good to serue such a Lorde and such a Ladie that so bigblie rewarded they? seruantes and friendes, and by that time Duke Philip was retourned from the Kinges Court, and brought with him the Letters Patentes of the Kinges, and there thee deliuered to Gouernar and to the maister the said Letters, then Duke Philippe saide to Florence, madame the King your father desireth you to make as great haste as you can to the Citie of Argence, so that you may be there on munday next comming, for there the King will be readie against your comming, then Florence made her readie, and on the next morning betimes departed,

and

and all her noble companie with her, and did so much by her iourneyes that at last she was within the sight of the high walls and towers of the Citie of Argence, then the King Emendus when he knew of their comming, he caused all his Barons to mount on their horses, and the King Alexander and the King of Galelound, and the King of Ismaelite, and such knightes of the King of Morrmalles as were abiding within the Court, till such time as the King had purueyed them of a newe King, and all the people of the Citie of Argenton went out to meete Florence, Arthur, and the Ladie Margaret, and the people of the lande of Morrmall came to Gouernar and receiued him as their chiefe Lord and king, and did to him homage, then they desired to see their newe Ladie and Queene, who as then was in the Chariot with Florence, apparayled in vestures royall, and when Florence knew their desire she caused her to be taken out of the Chariot, and set on a goodlie palfraie, to the intent that euerie man might see her, and so then they were glad to see her, for she was a right faire and a goodlie Ladie, and so they made to her reuerence and honour, as to their Ladie and Queene, and the people of the lande of Argenton receiued maister Steuen for their soueraigne Lord, and speciallie sir Emerie, and in this wise they came to the citie of Argence, then there met with them the Archbishop and all the whole Cleargie of the Citie, and euerie man to his power made great feast and ioy, then there alighted Florence and all her Kings and Queenes, Dukes, and Dutchesses, Earles and Countesses, Lordes and Ladies, knightes and Damselles, then the noble King Emendus came out of his Pallace, and receiued them right honourablie euerie person after their estate, then there beganne great feast and ioye, and so went vp to the pallace, and there this noble companye were together in great ioy and triumph.

How Arthur wedded the faire Florence, Daughter to the mightie king Emendus with great honour

and

and triumph, and king Gouernar wedded the faire Iehannet, and master Steuen wedded the faire Lady Margaret of Argenton, all in one daie and one houre. Chap. 112.



When that Arthur saw so noble a segnioꝛie and companie were assembled together, hee went to King Emendus and said, Sir and it like your grace there is now in this Citie assembled right high and noble people, foꝛ heere is now fiue Kings, fiue Dukes, & ten Earles, beside other Loꝛdes and Knights, wheꝛefoꝛe Sir maye it please your grace to kæpe open Court foꝛ a certaine space, foꝛ I beleeue verilie there was neuer seene in one daie so many noble men assembled together. As God helpe me sonne quoth the King, I am content, and so shall it bee, therfoꝛe make puruepance, foꝛ be it as you shal thinke best foꝛ your honour and mine, and I will that you wedde Flo-

rence

rence my daughter here in this citie, and Gouernar Iehannet, and the master & the lady Margaret. Sir qd Arthur in the name of God al this shalbe done according to your commaundement, sir king Alexander shal abyde and be lodged here with you in the palays, & my lorde and father the duke of Britaine and all the other kings and princes shalbe wel lodged in the citie in noble & faire houses, and then Arthur made the temple to be apparayled for himselfe to be maried in, and the abbey of Saint Germaine for Gouernar, than there were Iogelers, gesters, and minstrels gathered together to a great number, so that they made great mirth and ioy in euery part of the citie, so that there was neuer seene none such before in no place, than Hector caused a fair quintaine to be pight vp in the myddest of the citie, and thereat ran these younge knightes breking and sheuering of their speares, and some spake of making of a tournay, than was the Dolphin mounted cleane armed holding a great and a mightie speare in his hand, and the same time the King Emendus, the king Alexander and Florence, the duke of Britaine and Arthur were loking out at the windowes of the palais, and all other kinges and princes were in likewyse beholding the lusty knightes breaking of speares in euery strete of the citie against the quintaines that there were made & ordeined, and ther with the dolphin ran at the chiefe quintaine, and gaue thereon such a stroke that he claue the shelde that hanged thereon cleane a sonder, and brake his speare all to sheuers, and so passed forth and kept his course and he was greatly praised of all the princes and barons, ladies and damoseis, and they demaunded who it was, and it was shewed them how it was one of the freshe Lordes, whereof many of that countrie had great despite, and spake thereof in great displeasure, & at last a knight of the countrie of Sorolois who was called sir Bertrade of the toure sayde to his fellowes, Lordes and felowes I se well that these frenchmen that be now here in this countrie be of great price and of fierce countenaunce, and by the occasion of them we are reputed of the lesse valure, for we may here

well

well how generallie they be praised, therefore shame haue they that will suffer it anie longer, wherefore let vs take a tourney against them, and then we shall know what they can doe. In the name of God so let it be saide diuerse other. So therewith water was brought into the hall, and the tables laide, then to the Court there came Kinges, Dukes, Earles, Barons and knightes, from all partes, so that king Emenous, king Alexander, and the Duke of Britain sate together at one table, and all the other kinges sate one against another, and euerie man after his estate, and there they were right richlie serued, and when dinner was done and the Tables taken awaie, some went into the Chambers and beheld the Ladies daunce, and some went and looked out at the faire windowes. And then Sir Bertrade, Sir Angele, another knight, they two went sporting together, and spake of the taking of this tourney against the French men, and they found Sir Clemenson and Sir Perotcas leaning in a windowe, and then they demaunded of Sir Bertrade whereof he and his fellowe did talke. And he aunswered and saide how that it was of the tourney.

And when Sir Clemenson heard they? mindes he was well of the same accords, and saide, let vs goe to Duke Goubert of Plaumes and knowe of him whether he will be of the same minde, so then they went to the Duke. And when he sawe them hee smiled and saide: welcome be you Sir knightes, what tidinges is there with you. Verilie Sir quoth Bertrade, wee saie that wee woulde faine know what people these French men be with their swords, it is saide how that they did beare themselues valiauntlie at the Blaunch Towre against the Emperour, howbeit we knowe it not, for we were not there present, therefore Sir we are in minde to make a tourney against them, and we wold know your minde whether you wil be on our side or not.

And when the Duke Goubert hearde they? mindes, it pleased him right well, and sayde, let vs goe to king

Emen-

Emendus and desire graunt of him for this tourney, and so they all went together and entered into the chamber where as King Emendus and King Alexander of Malagore, and all the other Earles of Fraunce were, there was also Hector Duke of Digcule, and the Dolphin of Vienne, and the Lord Beauieu, the marshall of Pyrpoys, and the Lorde de la Lound. Then the Duke Goubert saide to King Emendus, Sir beholde here this Dolphin who trulie is a gentle Knight, and verilie he made yesterdaie a faire course at a Quintaine, wherof he was greatlie praised, and not without a good cause, and he hath thereby quickned to the hearts of the Knightes of this your Countrie, so that they haue a great desire to make a turney here in this Citie if it please you to giue vs leaue, and Sir we would be right glad and ioyous if it would please some of these French Lordes and Knightes to come forth and play them with vs in this turney, Sir we would take it for greate loue, and praie them thereof right heartlie. Verilie Sir quoth the King of Malagore, we shal not faile them for so little a thing, if it please them let it be done to morrow nert. And so be it quoth Sir Bertrade. In the name of God quoth King Emendus, I will that it shall be to morow, for to morrow we will make the solempnization of the wedding of Arthur and of my daughter Florence, and of Gouernar and Iehannet, and of the maister and the Ladie Margaret, but the fourth daie after I am content that this tourney bee done. Well quoth king Alexander it shal be as it pleaseth you. Then the duke Goubert, Sir Bertrade, and their companie departed from the king and went downe into the Pallace, and there they shewed to all the other Knights of their Countrie how that they had taken a turney against the French men to be holden the fourth daie after the marriage, and so there were to the number of fiue thousand that promised to tourney together of one part against the French men, and made theyr vaunts that they would beare downe to the earth all the French men, and winne all their horses. So this daie ther was great feast and ioye throughout all the Pallace till it

was

and ioye throughout all the palace til it was night, so every man went to their restes till the next morning. The next morning betimes King Emenous and all other kings and noble Lordes dyd ryse, than the king caused Arthur to be apparailed in vestures roial lyke a king, he had on a kyrtil of flaming grene like an emerauld and a mantel of scarlet furred with ermines and so he stode before all the kings with a fresh liuely colour, and he was byg and higher by the head than any other, and ther was held before him by three great lordes a rich crowne of golde a septor royal and a naked sword, in signifieng that he was chiefe champion of all the realme, and all that appertaineth to the croune of Sorroloys, then the duke his father beheld him wel and the water dasht into his eyen for ioye that he had to se his sonne in that great honour, then tharchbishop was redy in his pontificalibus to doe thobseruaunce, and so with great noyse of minstralsie Arthur was roially brought to church, and then Gyenor was apparailed like a great Quene as she was, crowned with golde, and the queene of Orqueney went on hir one side, and the Quene of Ismaelite on hir other syde somewhat behinde hir, and all other Quenes dutchesses countesses and ladies came after hir, and the King Alexander and the King of Orqueney hir cosin led hir to churche, and there Arthur maryed hir with great ioy, and ther was so great feast, ioye and bruite made, that none could scant here other because of the noyse of the instruments. Also Gouernar was in the abbay of S. Germaines apparailed like a King, and with him was duke Philip, the dolphin, Hector, and all the barons of Ormal, and there he wedded Iehannet with much great ioye & pleasure. And also the gentil maister was freshly apparailed like the sonne of a King, he was alwayes free and swete of heart, with a smiling countenaunce and a gracious clerke aboue al other, and also right good and a valiant hardy knight, and with him ther was the king of Walefound his father who had right great ioye when he sawe his sonne gentill and so gracious, there was also with him sir Reuelon, sir Berylebar, sir Orzault, &

sir Rowland of Vigor, then the master wedded the faire ladie Margaret with great ioye and triumph, and when his wedding was done he mounted on a great courser, & a mantel of grene about him, and the King his father by him, and other Knights to the number of fiue hundred, and such noise of minstrels before him as though all the world should haue rent a sunder, and in this wise he came to the Court of king Emendus, and also there came King Gouernar to the court after that he was wedded with greate ioye and mirth, then there was made the greatest ioy and feast that could be deuised, and the master kept his feast at sir Emeries, and Gouernar at the Abbey of Saint Germaines, and Arthur kept the Court in the Pallace, & this feast endured a whole moneth, thus Arthur laie that night with the gentle Florence, and the same night begat on her a faire sonne, whome the King Alexander did holde ouer the Font, and was named Alexander after his name, the which child was afterwards Emperour of Inde the more, and of Constantinople, as you shall heare more plainlie hereafter.

How the French Knightes, and those of Sorolois, of Argence, of Orquenie, of Mormall, of Ismaelite, of



Vale-

Valefound, and of Sabarie, did tourney together, whereof Arthur and Gouernar had the honour.

Chapter. 113.

The fourth daye after the mariage during the feaſt, duke Goubert, ſir Bertande, ſir Clemenſon, and ſir Perdicas went to kinge Alexander and deſired him to remembre the tournay that they had enterpriſed, and with thoſe wordes Arthur came to them, then king Alexander anſwered and ſaide. Faire Lordes in Gods name let it be done to morow, then he dyd ſende for all the Erles, Barons and knightes of Fraunce and ſhewed them of the tournay to be holden the next day whereof they had great ioye, and euery man commaunded that their harneſſe ſhould be made redy againſte the next morning, and then the tidinges ſpread ouer all the citie how that the french men ſhould tourney againſte the knightes of that countrie who were in number x. againſte one frenchman. And when Arthur vnderſtode that he ſent for Gouernar, and when he was come to him he drew him apart and ſaid, friend to morow ſhal be the tourney againſt our men, wherefore we ought to keepe and defende them, wherfore we muſt aduiſe vs how we ſhall doe, for I ſee the knightes of this countrie haue great enuie at theſe frenche knightes, and they are ten times as many as our people be, wherefore I doubt me that our knightes ſhould haue ſome vilany, and I hadde rather dye then ſuffre that, therefore I ſhal ſhew you what we ſhall doe, when the tourney ſhal be to morow begon, I ſhal come to your lodging as priuely as I can, and ther ye ſhal abide me, and then we will arme vs both in ſtrange harneſſe, to the entent that we ſhould not be knowen, and then we will goe to the turney and help our knightes, for I thinke they ſhal haue great nede of vs, and Hector and the dolphin ſhal be in the firſt front, and if I can duke philip, the maiſter of Rhiſebay ſhal not turney againſt our knights, becauſe they haue bene in fraunce, & haue had ther right good there, & as for al ỹ remnant I care not for, as for thē they be our friends & loth I wer to diſpleſe thē, kepe

secret this matter that no man knowe thereof, for I will that you doe this as couertlie as you can. In the name of God so be it quoth Gouernar, and so euery man drew to his rest for that daie, and the next morning betimes euery man rose and so went and heard Seruice, and after toke a sop in Wine. Then the knightes ran to their harneis on euerie side, then hornes and Trumpets began to sound in euerie streete of the Citie, and then Duke Goubert and all his companie were readie apparayled, and so issued into the field. Then King Alexander did arme him and all his companie. Then Arthur came to king Emendus, and with him was the king of Orquenie, then Arthur said, Sir the knights of this your countrie are ten times as many as the French knights are, and sir they are of such conditions that they will neuer recule back though they die therfore, sir I know not the mindes of these your knightes, for if they thinke to ouercome them and take therefore it cannot be otherwise, but that many will die in the quarrel, sir me thinketh therfore that it were well done that I should cause to be armed fiue hundred knightes, and take them with mee to keepe that none ill should be done. In the name of God quoth king Emendus so be it, then departed Arthur for he had that he desired, then he toke with him sir Brisebar and sir Mercelin his nephew, and did shut the chamber doore after them, then he sayd to sir Brisebar, sir I loue you and take you of my priuy counsaile, it is so, there be many knights against our Frenchmen, for I see wel they are ouermatched, wherfore I will goe aide them, and I will haue sir Mercelin armed in my harneis, for he is nigh of the same bignesse that I am of, and he shall take with him fiue hundred knightes well armed, and goe to the turney to keepe the field that no hurt shall be done, and no man shall know but that it were I, and you sir Brisebar and I will goe to Gouernars lodging as priuelie as I can, and there he and I will arme vs in some straunge harneis, to the intent that no man shal know vs, wherefore I praie you discouer me not, so then sir Mercelin was armed in Arthurs armour, & toke with him fiue

hundred

hundred, & issued out of the Citie with great noise of trumpets and Tabours, then Duke Goubert sayd, yonder commeth Arthur to kepe the field to the intent that we should doe no outrage to these French men. So then in the first front was Duke Hector, the Dolphin, and the Lorde de la Lound, and all the other kinges and the Duke of Britaine mounted on their horses to behold the tourney, and also thether came the king of Valesound, and master Steuen his sonne with him, and fiue hundred knightes in his companie.

And when the French men were entred into the field, they were not the tenth parte so manye as the other were. And when master Steuen sawe that he said to his Father, Sir beholde yonder the knightes of great hardinesse, seeing their countenances, for they be nothing abashed for all that they be so farre ouermatched, then Arthur went priuelie to the Abbey of Saint Germaines to Gouernar, and ther they armed them in straunge harneis, & mounted on two great courses. And when the French men wer ranged, then Hector aduised well sir Rowland of Bygor who was comming toward him, then Hector rusht to his horse and encountered sir Rowland so rudelie that hee tumbled ouer his horse taile. then king Emendus saide to the Duke of Britaine, sir this beginning is on your parte, then the dolphin encountred at one time sir de la Lound and sir Morand, and ouerthrew them both to the earth, then the tourney began to be meruailous fierce, but the French knights were sore ouermatched, wherefore they endured much paine, & at last Arthur and Gouernar came towards the preasse all disguised, then Arthur said to Gouernar, sir when you see Hector bid him keepe vs two companie, but be well ware that hee know you not: with a good will quoth Gouernar, and so they rode forth faire and softlie, and when duke Philipps sawe them comming he sayde to the King, Sir beholde yonder commeth two straunge knights, it seemeth by their comming that they are afrayd of the first strokes, therewith they approched to the turney, then Gouernar shewed

to Arthur sir Bertrand by whome the turnay was first be-
gon, & also the duke Goubert who gaue many great strokes
with his swoꝛd, and therwith Arthur and Gouernar stode
stil and beheld them, than king Emendus said, I think yon-
der two knights doubt greatly these strokes. Ye syꝛ they do
wisely qd duke Philip, there with Gouernar ran at sir Ber-
trand and bare him cleane out of his saddel. Mary saide the
king I wene we haue mocked yonder knightes wꝛongful-
ly, we shall sée sone what ethe other knight can doe, there-
with Arthur ran at duke Goubert & encountred him so ru-
dely that he sent both hoꝛse and knight all to the earth in a
hepe, then he toke his swoꝛd and layd on round about him
so that he confounded all that euer he attained vnto, and
Gouernar was not behinde foꝛ his part. Uerely saide the
king who knoweth yonder knights, they seme to be the best
knights of all the woꝛld. Sir sayde the king of Oꝛqueney
but that I sée Arthur yonder without the field I would say
els plainely that it were he, by that time Arthur had bꝛo-
ken that great pꝛese, then he espied where the Dolphin and
Hectoꝛ and the Erle of mountbelial and xxx. of their com-
panie were soꝛe ouerladen, foꝛ there were many on them,
& by that time the duke Gouberte was hoꝛsed new againe,
than Arthur ranne at him and strake him so rudely on the
helme so that he was therby in a trance, and his hoꝛse bare
him all about the fielde, til at the last he came beꝛoꝛe king
Emendus where as he was, and then he came to him selfe
againe and said, all the diuels of hell take such a carpenter,
& he that fiꝛst bꝛought him into this countrey, then Arthur
was soꝛe handled in the pꝛease, but then he rusched foꝛthe
and charged so his swoꝛde on these knightes in such wise
that he and Gouernar beat downe all that euer was beꝛoꝛe
them. And when that the frenche knights saw that these ii.
knights did help and aide them so nobly, then they toke on
them so great hardinesse that they confounded all that woꝛ
beꝛoꝛe them, than knights of the other part saide let vs flie
away foꝛ & we abide, death will follow thereby, and so thew
they fled away on euery syde from him, then the king and
such

such as were in his companie, and all other that did behold the tourney hadde greate mervaile of the deedes of the two knightes, and maister Steuen perceiued well the playe of Arthur, then he knew well that it was he, and said softly to himselfe, ah gentle knight thou wilt not faile thy friends, I cannot suffer anie longer that you shoulde endure more trauaile, then the master bleiwe such a blast that there arose sodainlie in the tourney such a mist that one coulde scarce see another, then Arthur and Gouernar departed as priuely as they could and went to the Abbey of Saint Germaines, and so then euerie man went to their owne lodgings, and as soone as they were vnarmed, all the French men went to king Alexanders lodging, and they went all together to the kings Court, and the king Emendus did welcome them and made to them right great feast and ioy, and was right glad of the great prowesse that he had seene in them that daie, then the king toke king Alexander by the hande and demaunded of him what two knightes they were that so noblie did tourney on their part that daie, and where they were. And he answered and said, Sir I cannot tell you what they be, nor where they are become. Then the king enquired of all the other if they could tell anie tidings of them, and when the king sawe that hee coulde haue no knowledge of them, he fell sodainlie in a greate studie, and as he stoode so musing, Arthur and Gouernar came to the Court, then the king embraced them and demanded if they knew any thing of those two knights that had done so great prowesse: and they answered that they knew nothing of them. So then they washed and went to to dinner, & after dinner they sported them euerie man as he lyked best, and as king Emenons sawe these knightes sporting of them in the pallace, he remembred the two knights, and againe demaunded if anie bodie knew them: and when the master sawe the king in that case, he came to him and sayde fayre and softlye, Sir, beleeue mee certainelie that these two knightes that you desire so fore to knowe, were Arthur and Gouernar.

Then the King had right great ioye, and so went to them and embraced them with weping eies for ioye, and sayd in open audience, sith I haue giuen my daughter to Arthur I repent me not, for I could not haue bestowed her more nobly then on him, for I could not haue beleeued to haue seene so much noblenes in one Knight as I haue seene in him this daie, then the King made so great feast and ioy that it was mernailous to behold, thus endured the feast fiftéene daies. Then all the Ladies would returne into Fraunce, whereof Florence was right sorrowfull, howbeit she did so much that they all abode other fiftéene daies, and so they departed. Then King Emendus and Florence and all the other Lordes and Ladies brought Gouernar and Iehannet into their Realme of Normall, & there they were receiued with great ioy and honour, and tarried there eight daies.

How after the marriage of Arthur the Barons and Ladies of Fraunce returned into their owne coun-



tries, except King Alexander whom King Emendus kept still and made vnto him great cheere, and he tarried there so long till that Florence was deliuered of a faire sonne whom king Alexander held on the Font. Chap. 114.

After that these seauen daies were finished that the French Lordes, Ladies, and Knightes toke their leaue of king Emendus, who conuaied them two daies iourney, then King Emendus and Florence tooke their leaue of the Duke of Britaine, and of all the other Lordes and Knightes, Ladies and damsells, and Florence required them to returne into the Countrie againe as shortly as they might, for she said she would gladly haue gone with them sauing for kæping of companie with the King her Father, so each of them kissed other and so departed, and Arthur and Gouernar did conuey them a little waie, then the Duke of Britaine sayd to Arthur his sonne, good sonne thinke alway to please wel the noble King Emendus, and Arthur promised him so to doe, and then he toke his leaue of the Dutchesse his mother and kissed each other with wæping eyes, so then the Dutchesse toke theyr waie homewards, and Arthur and Gouernar returned to the King and found him and King Alexander together, for king Emendus had so intreated King Alexander, that hee promised him to abide in his companie for a certaine space, and so he abode there so long in great mirth and pleasure til at last the noble Quæne Florence was brought to bed and had a faire sonne. And on a faire daie as king Alexander, Arthur, and Gouernar, were sporting them by a riuer side, there came a messenger riding to them a greate pace and sayd to Arthur, Sir I haue brought you good tidinges, Sir, King Emendus doth send you worde how that your noble Quæne Florence is brought to bed of a faire sonne, wherefore he desireth you to come as fast as you can, for the king will desire king Alexander and King Gouernar to hold him on the font, and when Arthur heard that he was right ioyfull,

full, and said to the messenger, I giue thee for thy tidings an hundred pound land whersoeuer thou louest best to haue it, then the Squier thanked him right humblie, so then they rode forth, and at last came to king Emendus, who made right great ioy of them, & with great solempnitie the childe was then brought to Church and christened, and had to his Godfathers king Emendus, king Alexander, and king Gouernar, and was called Alexander, and at their comming from the Church there was made such feast and chere and reuell, that it was wonderfull to beholde, for there was nothing that could haue made king Emendus more ioyfull then he was, for he had then all his request of God, for his prayer was euer that Florence might haue an heire male of her bodie borne to succeede in his Realme, and this child was the most faireſt childe toward of the worlde, and well formed, big and mightie, and he had on his shoulder a fayre rosse as ruddy as a fresh rose, wherof king Emendus said that it was a signe that he should attaine to much honour, for so he did after indeede, for he was ere he died Emperour of Inde the more, and of Constantinople, and conquered by his prowesse diuerse other Realmes.

How king Alexander returned into his Countrie, & lead with him Arthur, Gouernar, Hector, and master Steuen, and tarried in Britaine so long till Florence sent for Arthur, because that her father king Emendus was departed his life, wherefore shee made great lamentation. Chap. 115.

When that king Alexander had bene a long season with king Emendus, he toke leaue of him and returned into Fraunce, & there went with him Arthur, Gouernar, Hector, & master Steuen, and within a while after that they wer departed, king Emendus what for the great ioye that hee had of his sonne, and for such labour as he toke before, hee fell sicke and lay in his bed, and as the history saith he laie but seuen weeks but he died, and king Alexander and such other as went with him rode so long on their iourneis, till at last

they

they arriued in the land of Britaine, then a messenger went before to the duke, and shewed him how that they would be with him on the munday next comming. And when ỳ duke heard that, hee was neuer so ioyfull before. then the Duke sent for all his Lords and Ladies of his Countrie, that they should bee with him at the receiuing of his sonne Arthur, and of such other as came with him, and so they did, and the same daie Arthur arriued there & was receiued with great feast and ioy, the which feast endured eight daies, then all they connated King Alexander into his owne Realme. It needeth not to be demaunded whether Arthur and his companie had there good cheere or nat.

How Arthur was sent for because of the death of king Emendus, and how he was crowned king of Sorolois. Chap. 116.

ARthur and his companie were a greate season with King Alexander, and had right good cheere, and on a day as he sate at the table there came in a messenger from his Lady Florence, & he kneeled down, & Arthur did arise and went to him and receiued of him a letter sent to him from Florence, the which Arthur incontinentlie opened, and therein he found howe that the mightie king Emendus was dead, whereof he and all that company made right great sorow, then Arthur desired king Alexander that he would go with him againe into ỳ realme of Sorolois, and he willingly graunted him so to do, so then incontinentlie they prepared for their departing, & mounted on their horses, and did so much by their iourneyes that they arriued in ỳ realme of Sorolois, & ther they found Florence making great sorrow for the death of the king her father, but as soone as she saw her Lord Arthur, her hart reuiued in such wise, ỳ she forgat in a manner halfe her sorrow, then the next daie the corps was borne to the Church with great solempnitie, & buried as appertained to such a prince, then within a while after King Alexander said that it was

time

time to make purueyaunce for Arthurs coronation, then there was sent for all the kinges, dukes, Earles, Barons, knightes and Squyers, and all their kinne and friendes, and there came thether people without number, then Arthur was there with great triumph crowned with golde, and tooke homage of euerie man, and after his coronation the feast endured eight daies, euerie man making great toy, sauing Florence, who was still in greate sorrowe for the death of her father, & after this great feast and toy they had made homage to Arthur for their kingdomes, dukedomes, and Baronies, and for all they're londes, then euerie man departed into their owne Countries, and euer after Arthur, Gouernar, Hector, and the master loued each other, and held so fast together that none of their enimies durst euer approch on anie of them, and so they vsed their liues in great honour and loue, and peace and vnion was euer betweene them, and their subiects for as long as they liued there was neuer anie of them that euer mooued anie warre against them, thus Arthur and Florence raigned in great prosperitie, greatlie feared and doubted of all the world, and did many fore conquestes, for he conquered ere he died eight Realmes and diuerse Countries and rich segniories, but he lined not long after.

Heere is deuised how long Arthur liued, and how that he was buried. Chap. 117.

The historie recounteth that the noble Arthur liued but two and thirtie yeres and then he dyed, and the queene Florence, whom hee loued so well, died for sorrowe, and so they were both buried with greate solempnitie, and laide both in the Tombe with king Emendus, on the which Tombe there was written this Epitaph: Heere lieth the mightie king Emendus, Arthur, and Florence his wife, who lead so good a life together, that they were neuer displeased either with other: and Gouernar, Hector, and the master,

ster, made greate sorrowe for the death of Arthur, and the young Alexander sonne to Arthur and to Florence, was in the guiding of king Gouernar, of Hector, and of the gentle master Steuen, who afterwarde was Emperour of Inde and of Constantinople. And thus endeth the history of the valiaunt knight Arthur, sonne to the Duke of Britaine, and of the noble Ladie Florence, daughter to the mighty king Emendus king of Horoloys: and all those that readeth or heareth this history I praie God send them blisse perdurable.

Heere endeth the Historie of Arthur of little Britaine.



MIEVLX.VAVLT.MOVRIR.EN.VERTV.
QVE.VIVRE.EN.HONCTE.

Imprinted at London by Thomas East.

BRITISH
14 JY 1920
MUSEUM